DDC 20

Dewey Decimal Classification

EDITION 20

3

Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2012 with funding from
University of Toronto

http://archive.org/details/deweydecimalcla03dewe

Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index

Devised by Melvil Dewey

EDITION 20

Edited by

John P. Comaromi, Editor

Julianne Beall, Assistant Editor

Winton E. Matthews, Jr., Assistant Editor

Gregory R. New, Assistant Editor

VOLUME 3

Schedules 600–999

FOREST PRESS

A Division of

OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc.

ALBANY, NEW YORK

1989

Copyright 1876, 1885, 1911, 1913, 1915, 1919
by Melvil Dewey
Copyright 1888, 1891, 1894, 1899
by Library Bureau
Copyright 1922, 1927, 1932, 1942, 1952, © 1958
by Lake Placid Club Education Foundation
Copyright 1951, © 1965, 1971
by Forest Press, Inc.
Vol. 2 © 1967 by Forest Press, Inc.
© 1979 by Forest Press
A Division of the Lake Placid Education Foundation
© 1989
OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

DDC, FOREST PRESS, DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION, and DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION, ADDITIONS, NOTES AND DECISIONS are registered trademarks of OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Dewey, Melvil, 1851-1931.
Dewey decimal classification and relative index / devised by Melvil Dewey. -- Ed. 20 / edited by John P. Comaromi, Julianne Beall, Winton E. Matthews, Jr., Gregory R. New.
Contents: v. 1. Introduction. Tables -- v. 2-3. Schedules -- v.4. Relative index. Manual.
1. Classification, Dewey decimal. I. Comaromi, John P. (John Phillip), 1937- . II. Beall, Julianne, 1946- . III. Matthews, Winton E. IV. New, Gregory R. V. Forest Press. VI. Title.
Z696.D519 1989 025.4′31--dc19 88-24629

The paper used in this publication meets the minimum requirements of American National Standard for Information Science - Permanence of Paper for Printed Library Materials. ANSI Z39.48-1984.

ISBN: (set) 0-910608-37-7; v. 1 0-910608-38-5; v. 2 0-910608-39-3; v. 3 0-910608-40-7; v. 4 0-910608-41-5

Contents

Volume 1

Publisher's Foreword xi
Preface by the Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee xiii
Acknowledgments xvii
New Features in Edition 20 xix
Introduction to the Dewey Decimal Classification xxv
About the Introduction xxv
Classification: What It Is and What It Does xxv
History and Current Use of the Dewey Decimal Classification xxvi
Overview of the Dewey Decimal Classification xxvi
Conceptual Framework xxvi
Notation xxvii
Principle of Hierarchy xxviii
Classifying with the DDC xxix
Determining the Subject of a Work xxix
Determining the Discipline for a Work xxx
More Than One Subject xxxi
More Than One Discipline xxxi
When All Else Fails xxxii
How DDC 20 Is Arranged xxxiii
Key Features of the Schedules and Tables xxxiii
Summaries xxxiii
Entries xxxiv
Notes xxxv
Number Building xl
Number Building: Citation and Precedence Order xliii
Citation Order xliii
Precedence Order xliii
The Relative Index xliv
How to Use the Relative Index xlv
Format and Arrangement of the Relative Index xlv
Order in Which Numbers Are Displayed xlvi
Interdisciplinary Numbers xlvi
Terms Included in the Relative Index xlvii
Terms Not Included in the Relative Index xlviii

Options xlviii
Close and Broad Classification xlix
Book Numbers xlix
Selected Bibliography l
Glossary li
Index to the Introduction and Glossary lix
Publishing History of the Dewey Decimal Classification lxi
Tables 1
Use of the Tables 2
Table 1. Standard Subdivisions 3
Table 2. Geographic Areas, Historical Periods, Persons 25
Table 3. Subdivisions for Individual Literatures, for Specific Literary Forms 389
Table 3-A. Subdivisions for Works by or about Individual Authors 389
Table 3-B. Subdivisions for Works by or about More than One Author 394
Table 3-C. Notation to Be Added Where Instructed in Table 3-B and in 808-809 409
Table 4. Subdivisions of Individual Languages 415
Table 5. Racial, Ethnic, National Groups 421
Table 6. Languages 438
Table 7. Groups of Persons 457
Relocations and Reductions 479
Comparative Tables 496
Music 496
British Columbia 505
Equivalence Tables 506
Music 506
British Columbia 514

Volume 2

Summaries ix
Schedules 1
Use of the Schedules 2
000 Generalities 3
100 Philosophy, parapsychology and occultism, psychology 77
200 Religion 127
300 Social Sciences 237
400 Language 692
500 Natural sciences and mathematics 718

Volume 3

Schedules 1
Use of the Schedules 2
600 Technology (Applied sciences) 3
700 The arts Fine and decorative arts 446
800 Literature (Belles-lettres) and rhetoric 643
900 Geography, history, and auxiliary disciplines 693

Volume 4

Relative Index 1
Use of the Relative Index 2
Abbreviations Used in the Index 3
A-Z 5
Manual 731
Use of the Manual 732
Notes on Table Numbers 733
Notes on Schedule Numbers 791
Appendix: Policies and Procedures of the Library of Congress Decimal Classification Division 959

Schedules

Use of the Schedules

Full instructions on the use of the Schedules are found in the Introduction to the Dewey Decimal Classification in Volume 1.

The first three digits of a DDC number are normally found at the top of the page.

A number in square brackets [ ] is not currently in use.

A number in parentheses ( ) is an option to standard usage.

600

600 Technology (Applied sciences)

See also 303.483 for technology as a cause of cultural change, 306.46 for sociology of technology, 338.1–338.4 for economic aspects of industries based on specific technologies, 338.926 for technology transfer, 338.927 for appropriate technology

See Manual at 300 vs. 600; 500 vs. 600

601 Philosophy and theory

602 Miscellany

[.72] Patents

Do not use; class in 608

.75 Trademarks and service marks

Class here comprehensive works on trademarks generally used for products rather than services

Class interdisciplinary works on trademarks and service marks in 929.9

.9 Commercial miscellany

Class interdisciplinary commercial miscellany in 380.1029; commercial miscellany of products and services used in individual and family living in 640.29, of manufactured products in 670.29

603 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

604 Technical drawing, hazardous materials technology, history and description with respect to kinds of persons

.2 Technical drawing

Class here engineering graphics, drafting illustrations

Class drafting illustrations in a specific subject with the subject, using notation 0221 from Table 1, e.g., map drawing 526.0221, drafting in electronics 621.3810221

For architectural drawing, see 720.284

.22 Arrangement and organization of drafting rooms, preservation and storage of drawings

.24 Specific drafting procedures and conventions

Use of this number for comprehensive works on drafting procedures and conventions discontinued; class in 604.2

.242 Production illustration

Nontechnical graphic representations

.243 Lettering, titling, dimensioning, shades, shadows

.245 Projections

Orthographic, isometric, spherical

Including perspectives

.25 Preparation and reading of copies

Examples: blueprints, photostats

See also 686.42 for printing blueprints

[.6] Waste technology

Relocated to 628.4

.7 Hazardous materials technology

Methods of extracting, manufacturing, processing, utilizing, handling, transporting, storing solids, liquids, gases of corrosive, explosive, flammable, infectious, radioactive, toxic nature

Class comprehensive works on and social aspects of hazardous materials safety in 363.17; technology of a specific hazardous material with the technology, e.g., of explosives 662.2; safety techniques for a specific application of hazardous materials with the application outside 300, using notation 0289 from Table 1, e.g., safety techniques in working with hazardous paving materials 625.80289 (*not* 363.179)

See Manual at 363.176 vs. 604.7; 660.2804 vs. 604.7

.8 History and description with respect to kinds of persons [*formerly* 609]

Add to base number 604.8 the numbers following —08 in notation 081–089 from Table 1, e.g., novices 604.880909, students and learners 604.88375 [*both formerly* 607.33]

605 Serial publications

606 Organizations

[.8] Management of technology

Relocated to 658

607 Education, research, related topics

.01–.03 Treatment in areas, regions, places in general; in ancient world

Add to base number 607.0 notation 1 or 3 from Table 2, e.g., in ancient Rome 607.037

[.04–.09] Treatment in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 607.4–607.9

.1 Schools and courses

.2 Industrial research

Class here products research; historical, descriptive, experimental research

Add to base number 607.2 notation 1 or 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., products research in China 607.251

Class product planning in management in 658.5038, management of research for new and improved products in 658.57

.3 Other aspects of education and research

[.33] Students, learners, apprentices, novices

Apprentices relocated to 331.55, novices to 604.880909, students and learners to 604.88375

.34–.39 Specific aspects

Add to base number 607.3 the numbers following —07 in notation 074–079 from Table 1, e.g., museums, collections, exhibits 607.34

See also 381.1 for commercial aspects of fairs and expositions; 900 for fairs and expositions of civilization, e.g., the 1964–1965 New York World's Fair 909.826074747243

.4–.9 Education, research, related topics in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Add to base number 607 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., education and research in Japan 607.52

608 Inventions and patents

Do not use for history and description of technology with respect to kinds of persons; class in 604.8

See Manual at 608 vs. 609

[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 608.7

.7 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 608.7 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., patents from Brazil 608.781

Class history of inventions in 609

609 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here history of inventions, technological aspects of industrial archaeology

History and description with respect to kinds of persons relocated to 604.8

Class historical and geographical treatment of production and economic aspects of industrial archaeology in 338.09, historical aspects of industrial archaeology in 900

See Manual at 300 vs. 600: Comprehensive works; 608 vs. 609

610 Medical sciences Medicine

Class home care of the sick and infirm in 649.8

For veterinary medicine, see 636.089

See Manual at 591 vs. 610; 362.1–362.4 vs. 610; 362.17 vs. 610; 616 vs. 610

SUMMARY

610.1–.9 [Standard subdivisions, medical personnel, nursing]

611 Human anatomy, cytology (cell biology), histology (tissue biology)
- **.01 Anatomic embryology, cytology (cell biology), histology (tissue biology)**
- **.1 Cardiovascular organs**
- **.2 Respiratory organs**
- **.3 Digestive tract organs**
- **.4 Lymphatic and glandular organs**
- **.6 Urogenital organs**
- **.7 Motor and integumentary organs**
- **.8 Nervous system Sense organs**
- **.9 Regional and topographical anatomy**

612 Human physiology
- **.01–.04 [Biophysics, biochemistry, control processes, tissue and organ culture, physiology of specific activities]**
- **.1 Blood and circulation**
- **.2 Respiration**
- **.3 Digestion**
- **.4 Secretion, excretion, related functions**
- **.6 Reproduction, development, maturation**
- **.7 Motor functions and integument**
- **.8 Nervous functions Sensory functions**
- **.9 Regional physiology**

613 Promotion of health
- **.04 Promotion of health of specific sex and age groups**
- **.1 Environmental factors**
- **.2 Dietetics**
- **.3 Beverages**
- **.4 Personal cleanliness and related topics**
- **.5 Artificial environments**
- **.6 Special topics**
- **.7 Physical fitness**
- **.8 Substance abuse (Drug abuse)**
- **.9 Birth control and sex hygiene**

614 Forensic medicine, incidence of disease, public preventive medicine
- **.1 Forensic medicine (Medical jurisprudence)**
- **.4 Incidence of and public measures to prevent disease**
- **.5 Incidence of and public measures to prevent specific diseases and kinds of diseases**
- **.6 Disposal of the dead**

615 Pharmacology and therapeutics
- **.1 Drugs (Materia medica)**
- **.2 Inorganic drugs**
- **.3 Organic drugs**
- **.4 Practical pharmacy**
- **.5 Therapeutics**
- **.6 Methods of administering medication**
- **.7 Pharmacodynamics**
- **.8 Specific therapies and kinds of therapies**
- **.9 Toxicology**

616 Diseases
- **.001–.009 Standard subdivisions**
- **.01–.09 [General topics]**
- **.1 Diseases of the cardiovascular system**
- **.2 Diseases of the respiratory system**
- **.3 Diseases of the digestive system**
- **.4 Diseases of the blood-forming, lymphatic, glandular systems Diseases of the endocrine system**
- **.5 Diseases of the integument, hair, nails**
- **.6 Diseases of the urogenital system Diseases of the urinary system**
- **.7 Diseases of the musculoskeletal system**
- **.8 Diseases of the nervous system and psychiatric disorders**
- **.9 Other diseases**

617 Surgery and related topics
- **.001–.008 Standard subdivisions of surgery**
- **.01–.09 [General topics]**
- **.1 Wounds and injuries**
- **.2 Results of injuries**
- **.3 Orthopedics**
- **.4 Surgery by systems**
- **.5 Regional medicine Regional surgery**
- **.6 Dentistry**
- **.7 Ophthalmology**
- **.8 Otology and audiology**
- **.9 Operative surgery and special fields of surgery**

618 Other branches of medicine Gynecology and obstetrics
- **.01–.09 [Standard subdivisions and special topics of gynecology and obstetrics]**
- **.1 Gynecology**
- **.2 Obstetrics**
- **.3 Diseases and complications of pregnancy**
- **.4 Childbirth (Parturition) Labor**
- **.5 Complicated labor**
- **.6 Normal puerperium**
- **.7 Puerperal diseases**
- **.8 Obstetrical surgery**
- **.9 Pediatrics and geriatrics**

619 Experimental medicine
- **.5 Fowl**
- **.7 Dogs**
- **.8 Cats**
- **.9 Other mammals**

[.23] Medicine as a profession, occupation, hobby

Do not use; class in 610.69

.28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Class here comprehensive works on biomedical engineering, medical instrumentation

Class biological instrumentation in 574.028

.6 Organizations, management, professions

.65 Group practice

Class the economics of group practice in 338.7–338.8

.69 Medical personnel

Class medical personnel (other than nurses) of a specific specialty with the specialty, using notation as directed, e.g., obstetricians 618.2023; critical appraisal and description of work, individual and collected biographies with the specialty using notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., biography of psychiatrists 616.890092

See Manual at 610.69

.695 Specific kinds of medical personnel

Nature of duties, characteristics of professions

Class here medical missionaries

Class medical records librarians in 651.504261, medical secretaries in 651.3741

For nursing personnel, see 610.73069

.695 2 Physicians

.695 3 Medical technicians and assistants

.696 Medical relationships

Examples: relationships between medical personnel and patients, between medical personnel and the public, within medical professions

.7 Education, research, nursing, related topics

.72 Research

.724 Experimental research

Class experimental medicine in 619

.73 Nursing and services of medical technicians and assistants

Class here general medical nursing

Patient education by nurses relocated to 615.507

See Manual at 610.73

SUMMARY

610.730 1–.730 9	**Standard subdivisions of nursing**
.732	**Private duty nursing**
.733	**Institutional nursing and ward management**
.734	**Public health nursing**
.736	**Specialized nursing**
.737	**Services of medical technicians and assistants**

.730 1 Philosophy and theory of nursing

.730 2 Miscellany of nursing

[.730 23] Nursing as a profession, occupation, hobby

Do not use; class in 610.73069

.730 3–.730 5 Standard subdivisions of nursing

.730 6 Nursing organizations and personnel

Class management of services of nurses in 362.173068

.730 69 Nursing personnel

Nature of duties, characteristics of the profession, relationships

See Manual at 610.69

.730 692 Professional nurses and nursing

Including associate-degree nurses and nursing, nurse practitioners

.730 693 Practical nurses and nursing

Example: registered nursing assistants (Canada)

.730 698 Auxiliary personnel

Examples: aides, attendants, orderlies, volunteers

.730 699 Relationships of nurses

Examples: relationships between nurses and patients, between nurses and the public, within the nursing profession

.730 7–.730 9 Standard subdivisions of nursing

> 610.732–610.736 Nursing

Class comprehensive works in 610.73

.732 Private duty nursing

.733 Institutional nursing and ward management

Class nonmedical aspects of ward management in 362.173068

.734 Public health nursing

Class here Red Cross nursing

.734 3 Community and district nursing

Example: work of visiting nurses

.734 6 Occupational health nursing (Industrial nursing)

.734 9 Disaster nursing

.736 Specialized nursing

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., pediatric surgical nursing 610.73677 (*not* 610.7362)

Surgical, obstetrical, gynecologic nursing	610.7367
Pediatric nursing	610.7362
Geriatric nursing	610.7365
Nursing of specific diseases	610.7369
Psychiatric and neurologic nursing	610.7368
Intensive (Critical), emergency, long-term, terminal care nursing	610.7361

For public health nursing, see 610.734

.736 1 Intensive (Critical), emergency, long-term, terminal care nursing

.736 2 Pediatric nursing

.736 5 Geriatric nursing

.736 7 Surgical, obstetrical, gynecologic nursing

.736 77 Surgical nursing

Including ophthalmic nursing, orthopedic nursing

Class nursing for obstetrical and gynecologic surgery in 610.73678, nursing for cancer surgery in 610.73698

.736 78 Obstetrical and gynecologic nursing

.736 8 Psychiatric and neurologic nursing

Example: nursing for mentally retarded people

.736 9 Nursing with respect to specific diseases

For psychiatric and neurologic nursing, see 610.7368

.736 91 Cardiovascular diseases

.736 92 Respiratory diseases

.736 98 Cancer

.736 99 Communicable diseases

.737 Services of medical technicians and assistants

[.737 023] Work of medical technicians and assistants as a profession, occupation, hobby

Do not use; class in 610.6953

.9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

See Manual at 610.9

611 Human anatomy, cytology (cell biology), histology (tissue biology)

Use 611.001–611.009 for standard subdivisions for human anatomy, cytology, histology; for human anatomy alone

For pathological anatomy, see 616.07

See Manual at 573.6 vs. 611; 611 vs. 612

SUMMARY

611.01 Anatomic embryology, cytology (cell biology), histology (tissue biology)
.1 Cardiovascular organs
.2 Respiratory organs
.3 Digestive tract organs
.4 Lymphatic and glandular organs
.6 Urogenital organs
.7 Motor and integumentary organs
.8 Nervous system Sense organs
.9 Regional and topographical anatomy

.01 Anatomic embryology, cytology (cell biology), histology (tissue biology)

Class here specific systems, organs, regions

.013 Anatomic embryology

.018 Cytology (Cell biology) and histology (tissue biology)

.018 1 Cytology (Cell biology)

.018 15 Pathology (Cytopathology)

.018 16 Physiological genetics

> 611.018 2–611.018 9 Histology (Tissue biology)

Class here histogenesis, histophysiology, histopathology, tissue regeneration

Class comprehensive works in 611.018

.018 2 Connective tissue

Examples: adipose, areolar, collagenous, elastic, reticular tissues; pigmented cells; fibers, ground substances

Class cartilaginous tissue in 611.0183

.018 3 Cartilaginous tissue

Contains elastic, fibrous, hyaline cartilage

.018 4 Osseous (Bone) tissue

Examples: spongy and compact bone tissues, endosteum, periosteum

Including red and yellow bone marrow (medulla)

.018 5 Blood and lymph elements

Examples: blood plasma, red corpuscles (erythrocytes), white corpuscles (leucocytes), platelets (thrombocytes), lymph plasma, lymphocytes

.018 6 Muscular tissue

Contains smooth (nonstriated, involuntary), skeletal (striated, voluntary), cardiac (striated, involuntary) muscle tissues

.018 7 Epithelial tissue

Examples: serous and mucous membranes; simple columnar, simple squamous, stratified squamous epithelia

.018 8 Nerve tissue

Examples: neurons, interstitial nerve tissue (neuroglia, neurilemma, satellite cells), meninges, sheaths

.018 9 Histology (Tissue biology) of specific systems, organs, regions

Add to base number 611.0189 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., the histology of the thymus gland 611.018943; however, class specific tissues of specific systems, organs, regions in 611.0182–611.0188

> **611.1–611.9 Gross anatomy**

Class here comprehensive works on gross anatomy and tissue structure

Class comprehensive works in 611, tissue structure in 611.0182–611.0189

See Manual at 612.1–612.8

.1 Cardiovascular organs

.11 Pericardium

.12 Heart

Including ventricles, auricles, endocardium, myocardium

For pericardium, see 611.11

.13 Arteries

Class here comprehensive works on blood vessels

Class blood vessels of a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., cerebral blood vessels 611.81

For veins, see 611.14; capillaries, 611.15

.14 Veins

.15 Capillaries

.2 Respiratory organs

.21 Nose and nasal accessory sinuses

.22 Larynx

Including epiglottis, glottis, laryngeal muscles

.23 Trachea and bronchi

.24 Lungs

.25 Pleura

.26 Diaphragm

.27 Mediastinum

.3 Digestive tract organs

.31 Mouth

.313 Tongue

Including muscles of the tongue [*formerly also* 611.734]

.314 Teeth

.315 Palate

.316 Salivary glands

.317 Lips

.318 Cheeks

.32 Pharynx, tonsils, esophagus

.33 Stomach

Including the pylorus

Class here comprehensive works on gastrointestinal organs

For intestine, see 611.34

.34 Intestine

.341 Small intestine

Contains duodenum, jejunum, ileum

.345 Cecum and vermiform appendix

.347 Large intestine

Including colon, sigmoid flexure (sigmoid colon)

For cecum and vermiform appendix, see 611.345; rectum, 611.35

.35 Rectum and anus

See also 611.96 for perineum

.36 Biliary tract

Contains liver, gall bladder, bile ducts

.37 Pancreas and islands of Langerhans

.38 Peritoneum

Including mesentery, omentum

.4 Lymphatic and glandular organs

Class glandular organs of a specific system with the system, e.g., salivary glands 611.316

.41 Spleen

Class here comprehensive works on the anatomy of the blood-forming (hematopoietic or hemopoietic) system

Class bone marrow in 611.0184

.42 Lymphatic system

For lymphatic glands, see 611.46

.43 Thymus gland

.44 Thyroid and parathyroid glands

.45 Adrenal glands

.46 Lymphatic glands

.47 Carotid, pituitary, pineal glands

.49 Breasts

.6 Urogenital organs

.61 Kidneys and ureters

Class here comprehensive works on anatomy of urinary organs

For bladder and urethra, see 611.62

.62 Bladder and urethra

.63 Testicles, prostate, scrotum

Class here comprehensive works on male genital organs

For penis, see 611.64

.64 Penis

.65 Ovaries and fallopian tubes

Class here comprehensive works on female genital organs

For uterus, see 611.66; vagina, hymen, vulva, 611.67

.66 Uterus

Including the cervix of the uterus

.67 Vagina, hymen, vulva

.7 Motor and integumentary organs

.71 Bones

For the ossicles, see 611.85

.711 Of the spinal column

.712 Of the chest

Example: ribs

For the sternum, see 611.713

.713 Sternum

.715 Of the brainpan

For the mastoid processes, see 611.85

.716 Of the face

.717 Of the upper extremities

Contains scapulas, clavicles, humeri, radii, ulnas, carpal and metacarpal bones, phalanges and sesamoid bones of hands

Class comprehensive works on bones of the extremities in 611.718

.718 Of the lower extremities

Contains hip bones, femurs, patellas, tibias, fibulas, tarsal and metatarsal bones, phalanges and sesamoid bones of feet

Class here comprehensive works on bones of the extremities

For bones of the upper extremities, see 611.717

.72 Articulations (Ligaments and joints)

.73 Muscles

Class muscles of a specific system or organ with the subject, e.g., heart muscles 611.12

.731 Of the back

.732 Of the head

.733 Of the neck

[.734] Of the tongue

Relocated to 611.313

.735 Of the chest

.736 Of the abdomen and pelvis

.737 Of the upper extremities

Contains muscles of shoulders, arms, forearms, hands

.738 Of the lower extremities

Contains muscles of hips, buttocks, thighs, legs, feet

Class here comprehensive works on muscles of extremities

For muscles of upper extremities, see 611.737

.74 Connective tissue

Examples: tendons, fasciae

Class bursae and sheaths of tendons in 611.75

For ligaments, see 611.72

.75 Bursae and sheaths of tendons

.77 Integument

For hair and nails, see 611.78

.78 Hair and nails

.8 Nervous system Sense organs

Class here neuroanatomy

.81 Brain

Class here the central nervous system

For spinal cord, see 611.82

.82 Spinal cord

.83 Nerves and ganglia

Class nerves of a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., optic nerves 611.84

.84 Eyes

Class here the orbit

.85 Ears

Including the mastoid processes, ossicles

.86 Olfactory organs

.87 Gustatory organs

.88 Tactile organs

.9 Regional and topographical anatomy

Including back

Class specific systems or organs in a region in 611.1–611.8

.91 Head

For the face, see 611.92

.92 Face

See also 611.317 for lips, 611.318 for cheeks

.93 Neck

.94 Thorax

.95 Abdomen

Epigastric through lumbar regions

.96 Perineum and pelvic region

.97 Upper extremities

.98 Lower extremities

Class here comprehensive works on the extremities

For the upper extremities, see 611.97

612 Human physiology

Class here comprehensive works on anatomy and physiology

Use 612.001–612.009 for standard subdivisions

Class physiological psychology in 152

For human anatomy, cytology (cell biology), histology (tissue biology), see 611; pathological physiology, 616.07

See Manual at 611 vs. 612; 612 vs. 616

SUMMARY

612.01–.04 [Biophysics, biochemistry, control processes, tissue and organ culture, physiology of specific activities]
.1 Blood and circulation
.2 Respiration
.3 Digestion
.4 Secretion, excretion, related functions
.6 Reproduction, development, maturation
.7 Motor functions and integument
.8 Nervous functions Sensory functions
.9 Regional physiology

.01 Biophysics and biochemistry

.014 Biophysics

.014 2 Physical phenomena in humans

Including the human aura when scientifically considered

See also 133.8 for the aura as a manifestation of psychic power

.014 21 Bioenergetics

For body heat, see 612.01426; bioelectricity, 612.01427

.014 26 Body heat

Including regulation

Class here production, maintenance

.014 27 Bioelectricity

Including electrophysiology

.014 4 Effects of terrestrial agents

Including aerospace physiology

Class space physiology in 612.0145

.014 41 Mechanical forces

.014 412 Gravitational forces

.014 414 Acceleration and deceleration

.014 415 Pressure

Including submarine physiology

.014 42 Electricity

.014 44 Visible light

.014 45 Sound and related vibrations

.014 452 Subsonic vibrations

.014 453 Sound

.014 455 Ultrasonic vibrations

.014 46 Thermal forces

.014 462 Heat and high temperatures

.014 465 Cold and low temperatures

For cryogenic temperatures, see 612.014467

.014 467 Cryogenic temperatures

.014 48 Radiation (Radiobiology)

Class here dosimetry

Add to base number 612.01448 the numbers following 574.1915 in 574.19151–574.19157, e.g., gamma radiation 612.014486; however, class visible light in 612.01444

.014 5 Extraterrestrial biophysics

Class here bioastronautics, space physiology

Add to base number 612.0145 the numbers following 574.191 in 574.1913–574.1917, e.g., gravitation 612.014532

Class aerospace physiology in 612.0144, space medicine in 616.980214

.015 Biochemistry

Class metabolism in 612.39

.015 01 Philosophy and theory

Class theoretical biochemistry in 612.01582

.015 02 Miscellany

.015 028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Class analytical biochemistry in 612.01585

.015 1 Enzymes

Add to base number 612.0151 the numbers following 574.1925 in 574.19253–574.19258, e.g., saccharolytic enzymes 612.01514

.015 2 Fluids, inorganic constituents, pigments

.015 22 Fluids

Example: water

Including electrolytic balance, fluid balance

See Manual at 612.3923 vs. 612.01522

.015 24 Inorganic constituents

Example: minerals

Class inorganic fluids in 612.01522, inorganic pigments in 612.01528

.015 28 Pigments

Class biochemistry of skin pigmentation in 612.7927

.015 4 Biosynthesis

Add to base number 612.0154 the numbers following 574.1929 in 574.19293–574.19297, e.g., biosynthesis of proteins 612.01546

.015 7 Organic compounds

Add to base number 612.0157 the numbers following 547.7 in 547.72–547.79, e.g., carbohydrates 612.01578; however, class enzymes in 612.0151, vitamins in 612.399, hormones in 612.405

Class organic fluids in 612.01522, organic pigments in 612.01528

.015 8 Theoretical, physical, analytical biochemistry

Class physical, theoretical, analytical biochemistry of a specific constituent with the subject, e.g., physical chemistry of carbohydrates 612.01578

.015 82 Theoretical biochemistry

.015 83 Physical biochemistry

.015 85 Analytical biochemistry

.02 Control processes and tissue and organ culture

.022 Control processes

Including biological rhythms, homeostasis

.028 Tissue and organ culture

.04 Physiology of specific activities

Class here comprehensive works on the physiology of physical movements in relation to multiple physiological systems

Class the physiology of physical movements in relation to a specific system with the system, e.g., the musculoskeletal system 612.76

.042 Work

.044 Sports

Class here recreation

> **612.1–612.8 Specific functions, systems, organs**

Class comprehensive works in 612

See Manual at 612.1–612.8

.1 Blood and circulation

Class circulation in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., the brain 612.824

For lymph and lymphatics, see 612.42

.11 Blood

Class the spleen in 612.41, bone marrow in 612.491

For blood chemistry, see 612.12

.111 Red corpuscles (Erythrocytes)

.111 1 Biochemistry

Including hemoglobins

.111 2 Counts and counting

.112 White corpuscles (Leucocytes)

.112 1 Biochemistry

.112 2 Biophysics

.112 7 Counts and counting

.115 Coagulation (Clotting)

Including the role of fibrin, fibrinoplastin, plasma, thrombin in clotting

.116 Plasma

For the role of plasma in clotting, see 612.115

.117 Platelets and hemoconia

.118 Biophysics and biological properties

.118 1 Biophysics

Physical properties and phenomena, effect of physical agents

Including hemorrheology (study of blood flow)

Class biophysics of specific components or functions in 612.111–612.117

.118 2 Biological properties

[.118 22] Immunity (Immunology)

Relocated to 616.079

.118 25 Blood types (groups) and typing

.12 Blood chemistry

Including carbohydrates, cholesterol, enzymes, lipids, minerals

Class chemistry of specific components or functions in 612.111–612.117, biological properties in 612.1182

.13 Blood vessels and vascular circulation

For vasomotors, see 612.18

.133 Arteries and arterial circulation

.134 Veins and venous circulation

.135 Capillaries and capillary circulation

.14 Blood pressure

.17 Heart

.171 Biophysics

Including contraction and dilation of heart cavities, valvular activity, recording methods

For blood pressure, see 612.14

.173 Biochemistry

.178 Innervation

.18 Vasomotors

Nerves causing dilation (vasodilators) and constriction (vasoconstrictors) of blood vessels

.2 Respiration

Including comprehensive works on physiology of the nose

Class physiology of the nose as an olfactory organ in 612.86

.21 Biophysics

Including respiratory movements, rhythm, sounds

.22 Biochemistry

Including oxygen supply, gas exchange, carbon dioxide removal

.26 Tissue (Internal) respiration

.28 Innervation of respiratory apparatus

.3 Digestion

Class here nutrition

Class dietetics in 613.2

.31 Mouth and esophagus

Including ingestion and start of digestion

.311 Teeth

Including mastication

.312 Tongue and tonsils

Class here comprehensive works on physiology of the tongue

Class physiology of the tongue as a gustatory organ in 612.87

.313 Salivary glands and saliva

.315 Esophagus

.32 Stomach and gastric secretions

Class here comprehensive works on gastrointestinal organs and secretions

For intestine and intestinal secretions, see 612.33

.33 Intestine and intestinal secretions

For large intestine, see 612.36

.34 Pancreas and pancreatic secretions

.35 Biliary tract

Contains liver, gall bladder, bile and bile ducts

.36 Large intestine and defecation

.38 Absorption

Transfer of digested food from the alimentary canal into the blood stream

Class absorption in a specific part of the alimentary canal with the part, e.g., intestine 612.33

.39 Metabolism

Class metabolism of drugs in 615.7, of toxic substances in 615.9; metabolism within a specific function, system, or organ with the function, system, or organ, e.g., the metabolism of plasma 612.116

.391 Hunger and thirst mechanisms

.392 Metabolism of inorganic substances

Class here minerals

.392 3 Water

See Manual at 612.3923 vs. 612.01522

.392 4 Elements

Examples: iron, phosphorus, sulfur

.392 6 Compounds other than water

Example: salts

.396 Carbohydrate metabolism

.397 Lipid metabolism

Including fats

.398 Protein metabolism

.399 Vitamins

.4 Secretion, excretion, related functions

Class here the endocrine system

Use 612.4001–612.4009 for standard subdivisions

Class glands and glandular activity in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., salivary glands 612.313

For mammary glands and lactation, see 612.664

.405 Hormones

.41 Spleen

Class here comprehensive works on the blood-forming (hematopoietic or hemopoietic) system

Class the physiology of bone marrow in 612.491

.42 Lymph and lymphatics

.43 Thymus gland

.44 Thyroid and parathyroid glands

.45 Adrenal glands

.46 Excretion

Class here the urinary system

For defecation, see 612.36

.461 Urine

.463 Kidneys

.467 Ureters, bladder, urethra

.49 Bone marrow and carotid, pituitary, pineal glands

Use of this number for other glands discontinued; class in 612.4

.491 Bone marrow

.492 Carotid, pituitary, pineal glands

.6 Reproduction, development, maturation

Class here comprehensive medical works on sex

Interdisciplinary works on sex relocated to 306.7

Class a specific aspect of sex with the aspect, e.g., sexual disorders 616.69

.600 1–.600 9 Standard subdivisions

.61 Male reproductive system

Including function in sexual activity

For climacteric, see 612.665

.62 Female reproductive system

Including function in sexual activity

Class pregnancy in 612.63, menstruation in 612.662

For climacteric, see 612.665

.63 Pregnancy and childbirth

Including placenta

Class comprehensive works on pregnancy and childbirth in 618.2, physiology of embryo in 612.64

.64 Physiology of embryo and fetus

Class here comprehensive works on embryology

Use 612.64001–612.64009 for standard subdivisions

For anatomic embryology, see 611.013

.640 1 Development of specific systems, organs, regions

Add to base number 612.6401 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., development of the eye 612.640184

.646 Development of embryo

.647 Development of fetus

> 612.65–612.67 Postnatal development

Class comprehensive works in 612.6; postnatal development of a specific system, organ, region with the system, organ, region, e.g., postnatal development of teeth 612.311

.65 Child development

.652 Development of newborn (neonate)

First month of postnatal development

.654 Development from infancy to beginning of puberty

From second month of postnatal development

.66 Adult development and maturity

For aging, see 612.67

.661 Puberty and development prior to attainment of full maturity

.662 Menstruation

Including menarche

.663 Full maturity

.664 Mammary glands and lactation

.665 Climacteric

Including menopause

.67 Aging

Class here physical gerontology

See also 616.078 for death

.68 Longevity factors

.7 Motor functions and integument

.74 Muscles

Class locomotion, exercise, rest in 612.76; muscles of a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., eye muscles 612.846

.741 Biophysics

Including contractions, elasticity, irritability, tonus

.743 Innervation

.744 Biochemistry

Including fatigue products

.75 Bones, joints, connective tissues

Class bone marrow in 612.491; locomotion, exercise, rest in 612.76

For mastoid processes, ossicles, see 612.854

.76 Locomotion, exercise, rest

Including body mechanics

Class the total physiology of physical movements (including muscle contractions, breathing, blood flow, digestion during exercise) in 612.04

.78 Voice and speech

Class here organs of speech

.79 Integument Skin

.791 Biophysics of the skin

Including absorbency, contractions, irritability, resistivity, tonus

.792 Biochemistry of the skin

.792 1 Glands and glandular secretions

Example: perspiration

.792 7 Pigmentation

.798 Innervation of the skin

.799 Hair and nails

.8 Nervous functions Sensory functions

Class here neurophysiology, psychophysiology

See Manual at 152 vs. 612.8

SUMMARY

612.801–.809	**Standard subdivisions**
.81	**Nerves and nerve fibers**
.82	**Brain**
.83	**Spinal cord**
.84	**Eyes and vision**
.85	**Ears and hearing**
.86	**Nose and smelling**
.87	**Tongue and tasting**
.88	**Other sense organs and sensory functions**
.89	**Autonomic nervous system**

.801 Philosophy and theory

Use of this number for principles of innervation discontinued; class in 612.8

.804 Special topics

.804 2 Neurochemistry

Including cerebrospinal fluid

.804 3 Biophysics of the nervous system

.81 Nerves and nerve fibers

Class here peripheral nervous system

Class innervation and neural activity in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., heart innervation 612.178

For autonomic nervous system, see 612.89

.811 Motor and sensory nerves

.813 Biophysics

Including electrophysiology

Class biophysics of a specific kind of nerve with the nerve, e.g., biophysics of cranial nerves 612.819

For irritability, see 612.816

.814 Biochemistry

Class biochemistry of a specific kind of nerve with the nerve, e.g., biochemistry of motor nerves 612.811

.816 Irritability

.819 Cranial and spinal nerves

.82 Brain

Class here central nervous system; physiology of memory, of thinking

For spinal cord, see 612.83

See also 153 for psychology of memory and thinking

.821 Sleep phenomena

Physiology of the brain during sleep and dreams

See Manual at 154.6 vs. 612.821

.822 Biochemistry and biophysics

Class biochemistry and biophysics of a specific part of the brain with the part, e.g., biophysics of the cerebrum 612.825

.824 Circulation

Class circulation in a specific part of the brain with the part, e.g., circulation in the cerebellum 612.827

.825 Cerebrum

Including cerebral hemispheres, convolutions, corpus striatum, cortex, rhinencephalon

Class here prosencephalon (forebrain)

For cerebral commissures and peduncles, see 612.826; diencephalon, 612.8262

.825 2 Localization of motor functions

.825 5 Localization of sensory functions

.826 Diencephalon and brain stem

Including cerebral commissures and peduncles

For medulla oblongata, see 612.828

.826 2 Diencephalon

Including geniculate bodies, hypothalamus, thalamus

.826 4 Mesencephalon (Midbrain)

Including corpora quadrigemina

.826 7 Pons Variolii

.827 Cerebellum

.828 Medulla oblongata

.83 Spinal cord

> 612.84–612.88 Sense organs and sensory functions

Class comprehensive works in 612.8

.84 Eyes and vision

Class here physiological optics, eyeballs

.841 Fibrous tunics, conjunctivas, anterior chambers

Including corneas, scleras

.842 Uveas

Contains choroids, ciliary bodies, irises

.843 Optic nerves and retinas

.844 Aqueous humors, crystalline lenses, vitreous bodies

.846 Movements

Class here ocular neuromuscular mechanism

.847 Eyelids and tear ducts

Class conjunctivas in 612.841

.85 Ears and hearing

.851 External ears

.854 Middle ears

Including eustachian tubes (auditory tubes), mastoid processes, ossicles, tympanic membranes

.858 Internal ears

Including cochleas, labyrinths, semicircular canals, vestibules

.86 Nose and smelling

Class here chemical senses

Class comprehensive works on physiology of the nose in 612.2

For tasting, see 612.87

.87 Tongue and tasting

Class comprehensive works on physiology of the tongue in 612.312

.88 Other sense organs and sensory functions

Examples: sense of movement (motion), tactile and proprioceptive organs and senses

Including pain sensations and reactions

.89 Autonomic nervous system

Contains sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems

.9 Regional physiology

Including back

Add to base number 612.9 the numbers following 611.9 in 611.91–611.98, e.g., physiology of face 612.92

Class physiology of specific systems and organs in specific regions in 612.1–612.8

613 Promotion of health

Former heading: General and personal hygiene

Including inherited diseases as a factor

Class here measures to promote health and prevent disease taken by the individual and his medical advisers, comprehensive medical works on personal and public measures to promote health and prevent disease

Class public measures to promote health and prevent disease in 614, personal preventive measures applied to specific diseases or groups of diseases in 616–618, child rearing in 649

See Manual at 613 vs. 615.8

SUMMARY

613.04	**Promotion of health of specific sex and age groups**
.1	**Environmental factors**
.2	**Dietetics**
.3	**Beverages**
.4	**Personal cleanliness and related topics**
.5	**Artificial environments**
.6	**Special topics**
.7	**Physical fitness**
.8	**Substance abuse (Drug abuse)**
.9	**Birth control and sex hygiene**

.04 Promotion of health of specific sex and age groups

.042 Promotion of health of specific sex groups

.042 3 Males

.042 32 Boys under twelve

.042 33 Young men

Aged twelve through twenty

.042 34 Adult men

.042 4 Females

.042 42 Girls under twelve

.042 43 Young women

Aged twelve through twenty

.042 44 Adult women

.043 Promotion of health of specific age groups

Class promotion of health of specific age groups of specific sexes in 613.042

.043 2 Infants and children

Through age eleven

Class here pediatric preventive measures

.043 3 Young adults

Aged twelve through twenty

.043 4 Mature adults

Examples: college-age, middle-aged persons

For persons in late adulthood, see 613.0438

.043 8 Persons in late adulthood

Former heading: Adults aged 65 and over

Class here geriatric preventive measures

[.081–.084] Persons of specific sex and age groups

Do not use; class in 613.04

.1 Environmental factors

Class here acclimation

For artificial environments, see 613.5

.11 Weather and climate

For seasonal changes, see 613.13; humidity, 613.14

.111 Cold weather and climate

Example: arctic climate

.113 Hot weather and climate

Example: tropical climate

.12 Physiographic and other regions

Examples: mountains, seashore

.122 Health resorts

.13 Seasonal changes

.14 Humidity

.19 Air and light

.192 Breathing

.193 Sun bathing

.194 Nudism

.2 Dietetics

Comprehensive works on diet and physical fitness relocated to 613.7

Class human nutritional requirements considered in relation to physiological processes and the role of nutrients in the body in 612.3; diet therapy in 615.854; dietetics for pregnant women in 618.24; diets to prevent a specific disease with the disease, using notation 05 from the tables under 616.1–616.9, 617, 618.1–618.8

For beverages, see 613.3

See also 616.39 for conditions resulting from nutritional deficiencies, 641.563 for cooking for preventive and therapeutic diets, 649.3 for domestic aspects of feeding children

See Manual at 613.2 vs. 641.3, 363.8

.24 Weight-gaining programs

.25 Weight-losing programs

.26 Specific dietary regimens

Example: regimens involving specific foods

Including breast feeding

Class interdisciplinary works on breast feeding in 649.33, regimens involving specific nutritive elements in 613.28

For weight-gaining programs, see 613.24; weight-losing programs, 613.25

.262 Vegetarian

.28 Specific nutritive elements

Examples: diets high and low in carbohydrates, fats, proteins, salt

Class weight modification programs involving specific nutritive elements in 613.24–613.25

.3 Beverages

Class personal aspects of preventing alcohol abuse in 613.81

.4 Personal cleanliness and related topics

Class personal grooming in 646.7

.41 Bathing

.48 Clothing and cosmetics

.482 Clothing

.488 Cosmetics

.5 Artificial environments

In enclosed spaces

Examples: homes, offices

Including indoor temperatures and air conditioning

.6 Special topics

Class here personal safety

Class personal safety in a specific field with the subject, using notation 0289 from Table 1, e.g., personal safety in welding 671.520289

.62 Industrial and occupational health

See Manual at 613.62 vs. 363.11

.66 Self-defense

.67 Military and camp health

.68 Travel health

Example: shipboard health

.69 Survival

After accidents and disasters, in other unfavorable circumstances

For self-defense, see 613.66

.7 Physical fitness

Class here comprehensive works on diet and physical fitness [*formerly* 613.2]

For breathing, see 613.192

.704 Special topics

> 613.704 2–613.704 5 Specific age and sex groups

Class comprehensive works in 613.704, physical yoga of specific age and sex groups in 613.7046

.704 2 Physical fitness of children

.704 3 Physical fitness of young adults

Aged twelve through twenty

.704 4 Physical fitness of adults

Class physical fitness of adult women in 613.7045

.704 46 Physical fitness of persons in late adulthood

Class physical fitness of men in late adulthood in 613.70449

.704 49 Physical fitness of adult men

Class here physical fitness of males

Class physical fitness of boys in 613.7042, of young men (aged twelve to twenty) in 613.7043

.704 5 Physical fitness of adult women

Class here physical fitness of females

Class physical fitness of girls in 613.7042, of young women (aged twelve to twenty) in 613.7043

.704 6 Physical yoga

Class here hatha yoga

Class exercises from the martial arts traditions in 613.7148

[.708 1–.708 4] Persons of specific sex and age groups

Do not use; class in 613.7042–613.7045

.71 Exercise [*formerly also* 796.4] and sports activities

Class here aerobic exercise, comprehensive works on exercise and sports activities for fitness and for improvement in the shape of the body

Class physical yoga in 613.7046, exercises to aid childbirth in 618.24, exercise and sports activities to improve the shape of the body in 646.75, parental supervision of children's exercise and sports activities in 649.57

See Manual at 613.71 vs. 646.75, 796

[.710 247 96] For persons occupied with athletics and sports

Do not use; class in 613.711

[.710 887 96] Treatment with respect to persons occupied with athletics and sports

Do not use; class in 613.711

.711 Fitness training for sports

Including fitness training for specific sports not provided for below, e.g., football

Class here promotion of health of athletes

Class specific kinds of fitness training with the kind, e.g., weight lifting 613.713; fitness training for specific sports listed below with the sport, e.g., swimming 613.716

.713 Weight lifting [*formerly also* 796.41]

See Manual at 613.71 vs. 646.75, 796

.714 Calisthenics [*formerly also* 796.41] and isometric exercises

Class here gymnastic exercises [*formerly also* 796.41]

Standard subdivisions are added for calisthenics and isometric exercises, or for calisthenics alone

See also 613.713 for weight lifting, 613.715 for aerobic dancing, 613.716 for aquatic exercises

.714 8 Exercises from the martial arts traditions

Examples: aikido, karate exercises

Class here fitness training for the martial arts, T'ai chi ch'üan exercises

See also 796.8 for the martial arts as sports

.714 9 Isometric exercises

.715 Aerobic dancing

.716 Aquatic exercises and swimming

.717 Running and walking

.717 2 Running

.717 6 Walking

.78 Correct posture

.79 Relaxation, rest, sleep

.8 Substance abuse (Drug abuse)

Limited to personal preventive aspects

Examples: abuse of analgesics, depressants, inhalants, sedatives, tranquilizers

Class here appeals to the individual to avoid substance abuse for health reasons

Class interdisciplinary works on substance abuse in 362.29, comprehensive medical works on addictive and disorienting drugs in 615.78, comprehensive medical works on substance abuse as a disease in 616.86

.81 Alcohol

Class here personal aspects of prevention of alcoholism

.83 Narcotics, hallucinogens, psychedelics, cannabis

Use of this number for comprehensive works on personal aspects of preventing drug abuse discontinued; class in 613.8

.835 Cannabis

Class here specific kinds of cannabis, e.g., hashish, marijuana

.84 Stimulants and related substances

Examples: amphetamine, ephedrine; cocaine

Class nicotine in 613.85

.85 Tobacco

.9 Birth control and sex hygiene

.907 Education, research, related topics

Class sex education of children in the home in 649.65

.94 Birth control (Contraception)

Including artificial insemination, measures to increase the likelihood of having a child of the desired sex

Class here family planning

Class interdisciplinary works on birth control and family planning in 363.96

.942 Surgical methods

Limited to personal health aspects

Examples: tubal sterilization, vasectomy

Class comprehensive works on surgical methods of birth control for males in 617.463; for females in 618.1, e.g., tubal sterilization 618.12059

.943 Chemical, rhythm, mechanical methods

.943 2 Chemical

Limited to personal health aspects

Example: pills (oral contraceptives)

Class the pharmacodynamics of chemical contraceptives in 615.766

.943 4 Rhythm

.943 5 Mechanical

Example: intrauterine devices

.95 Sex hygiene

Class manuals of sexual technique in 613.96

[.950 81–.950 84] Sex hygiene of specific age and sex groups

Do not use; class in 613.951–613.955

.951 Sex hygiene of children and young adults

Through age twenty

Class sex hygiene of boys and young men in 613.953, of girls and young women in 613.955

.952 Sex hygiene of adult men

Class here sex hygiene of males

Class sex hygiene of boys and young men (through age twenty) in 613.953

.953 Sex hygiene of boys and young men

Through age twenty

.954 Sex hygiene of adult women

Class here sex hygiene of females

Class sex hygiene of girls and young women (through age twenty) in 613.955

.955 Sex hygiene of girls and young women

Through age twenty

.96 Manuals of sexual technique

614 Forensic medicine, incidence of disease, public preventive medicine

Former heading: Public health and related topics

Class social provision for public health services other than those concerned with incidence and prevention of disease in 362.1, public safety programs in 363.1, environmental problems and services in 363.7

SUMMARY

614.1 Forensic medicine (Medical jurisprudence)
.4 Incidence of and public measures to prevent disease
.5 Incidence of and public measures to prevent specific diseases and kinds of diseases
.6 Disposal of the dead

.1 Forensic medicine (Medical jurisprudence)

Examples: determination of time and cause of death; of cause, nature and extent of injury

Including forensic dentistry, psychiatry, toxicology

.4 Incidence of and public measures to prevent disease

Class here epidemiology

For incidence of and public measures to prevent specific diseases and kinds of diseases, see 614.5

See also 351.774 for premarital examinations and certification, 351.816 for registration and certification of births and deaths

See Manual at 614.4; 614.4–614.5 vs. 362.1–362.4

.409 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of epidemiology

Class geographical treatment of incidence of diseases in 614.42, history of epidemics in 614.49

.42 Incidence

Rate, range, or amount of occurrence

Class here health surveys, medical geography

.422 Treatment by areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 614.422 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., diseases in the tropics 614.4223

.423–.429 Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 614.42 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., diseases in the United States 614.4273

.43 Disease carriers (Vectors) and their control

Class diseases transmitted by vertebrates other than humans in 614.56

.432 Insects

.432 2 Flies

.432 3 Mosquitoes

.432 4 Lice and fleas

.433 Arachnids

Examples: mites, ticks

.434 Birds

.438 Rodents

.44 Public preventive medicine

For specific preventive measures, see 614.45–614.48

> 614.45–614.48 Specific preventive measures

Class comprehensive works in 614.44

.45 Isolation

Prevention of the spread of disease in homes, hospitals, schools, public places through isolation

For quarantine, see 614.46

.46 Quarantine

Isolation procedures at frontiers and ports of entry

Class comprehensive works on isolation in 614.45

.47 Immunization

Public measures for preventing disease through protective inoculation

.48 Disinfection, fumigation, sterilization

.49 History of epidemics

Add to base number 614.49 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., history of epidemics in the United Kingdom 614.4941

.5 Incidence of and public measures to prevent specific diseases and kinds of diseases

Class incidence of and public measures to prevent mental and emotional illnesses and disturbances in 362.2

See Manual at 614.5; 614.4–614.5 vs. 362.1–362.4

SUMMARY

614.51	**Salmonella and bacillary diseases, cholera, dysentery, epidemic diarrhea, influenza**
.52	**Eruptive diseases (Exanthems) and rickettsial diseases**
.53	**Protozoan diseases**
.54	**Miscellaneous diseases**
.55	**Parasitic diseases**
.56	**Zoonoses**
.57	**Bacterial and viral diseases**
.59	**Diseases of regions, systems, organs; other diseases**

.51 Salmonella and bacillary diseases, cholera, dysentery, epidemic diarrhea, influenza

.511 Salmonella diseases

.511 2 Typhoid fever (Enteric fever)

.511 4 Paratyphoid fever

.512 Bacillary diseases

For bacillary dysentery, see 614.516

.512 3 Diphtheria

.512 5 Botulism

.512 8 Tetanus

.514 Cholera

See Manual at 616.932 vs. 616.33

.516 Amebic and bacillary dysentery

.517 Epidemic diarrhea

.518 Influenza

Including acute influenzalike diseases in epidemic form

.52 Eruptive diseases (Exanthems) and rickettsial diseases

.521 Smallpox (Variola major) and attenuated forms

.522 Scarlet fever (Scarlatina)

.523 Measles (Rubeola)

.524 German measles (Rubella)

.525 Chicken pox (Varicella)

.526 Rickettsial diseases

Add to base number 614.526 the numbers following 616.922 in 616.9222–616.9226, e.g., Q fever 614.5265

.53 Protozoan diseases

Add to base number 614.53 the numbers following 616.936 in 616.9362–616.9364, e.g., malaria 614.532

For amebic dysentery, see 614.516

.54 Miscellaneous diseases

Limited to the diseases provided for below

.541 Yellow fever

.542 Tuberculosis

.543 Whooping cough (Pertussis)

.544 Mumps (Epidemic parotitis)

.545 Puerperal septicemia and pyemia

Class comprehensive works on incidence of and public measures to prevent septicemia and pyemia in 614.577

.546 Leprosy (Hansen's disease)

.547 Venereal diseases

Class Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome (AIDS) in 614.5993

.547 2 Syphilis

.547 8 Gonorrhea

.549 Poliomyelitis

.55 Parasitic diseases

Add to base number 614.55 the numbers following 616.96 in 616.962–616.969, e.g., schistosomiasis 614.553; however, class trichinosis in 614.562

.56 Zoonoses

Class incidence of and public measures to prevent a specific zoonosis not provided for here with the disease, e.g., Q fever 614.5265

.561 Anthrax

Variant names: charbon, splenic fever

Example: Woolsorters' disease

.562 Trichinosis

.563 Rabies (Hydrophobia)

.564 Glanders (Equinia)

.565 Undulant fever (Brucellosis)

.566 Parrot fever (Psittacosis)

.57 Bacterial and viral diseases

.571 Dengue fever

.573–.575 Bacterial and other viral diseases

Add to base number 614.57 the numbers following 616.92 in 616.923–616.925, e.g., tularemia 614.5739

For bacterial blood diseases, see 614.577

.577 Bacterial blood diseases

Examples: erysipelas, pyemia, septicemia

Class puerperal septicemia and pyemia in 614.545

.59 Diseases of regions, systems, organs; other diseases

.591–.598 Diseases of regions, systems, organs

Add to base number 614.59 the numbers following 616 in 616.1–616.8, e.g., heart disease 614.5912, nutritional diseases 614.5939; however, class epidemic diarrhea in 614.517; allergies affecting specific regions, systems, organs in 614.5993; tumors (neoplasms) of regions, systems, organs in 614.5999

See Manual at 614.5939 vs. 363.82

.599 Other diseases

.599 2 Gynecological, obstetrical, pediatric, geriatric disorders

Class puerperal septicemia and pyemia in 614.545

.599 3 Diseases of the immune system

Examples: allergies; autoimmune diseases; immune deficiency diseases, e.g., acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)

.599 6 Dental diseases

Including fluoridation of water supply

.599 7 Eye diseases

.599 8 Ear diseases

.599 9 Tumors (Neoplasms)

Benign and malignant

Class public programs to control cancer-causing agents in 363.179, to control carcinogens in food in 363.192

.6 Disposal of the dead

Class social aspects and services in 363.75

615 Pharmacology and therapeutics

See Manual at 615

SUMMARY

615.1	**Drugs (Materia medica)**
.2	**Inorganic drugs**
.3	**Organic drugs**
.4	**Practical pharmacy**
.5	**Therapeutics**
.6	**Methods of administering medication**
.7	**Pharmacodynamics**
.8	**Specific therapies and kinds of therapies**
.9	**Toxicology**

.1 Drugs (Materia medica)

Substances used for diagnosis, cure, mitigation, treatment, or prevention of disease

Class here pharmacology

Class drug therapy in 615.58

For specific drugs and groups of drugs, see 615.2–615.3; practical pharmacy, 615.4; physiological and therapeutic action of drugs, 615.7

See Manual at 615.1 vs. 615.7

.11 Pharmacopeias

Add to base number 615.11 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., pharmacopeias of Japan 615.1152

[.12] Dispensatories

Relocated to 615.13

.13 Formularies

Class here dispensatories [*formerly* 615.12]

Add to base number 615.13 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., formularies of the United States 615.1373

.14 Posology

Including incompatibilities

Class here dosage determination, prescription writing

.18 Drug preservation technique

Class here packaging designed to preserve drug quality and potency

.19 Pharmaceutical chemistry

Development, manufacture, analysis of drugs

.190 01 Philosophy and theory

.190 02 Miscellany

[.190 028 7] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 615.1901

.190 03–.190 09 Standard subdivisions

.190 1 Analysis

[.190 15–.190 18] Chemical analysis and assay methods

Numbers discontinued; class in 615.1901

[.191] Manufacture and preparation

Number discontinued; class in 615.19

> **615.2–615.3 Specific drugs and groups of drugs**

General aspects: pharmaceutical chemistry, preservation, general therapeutics

Class comprehensive works in 615.1, a specific drug or group of drugs affecting a specific system in 615.7

See Manual at 615.2–615.3; 615.2–615.3 vs. 615.7

.2 Inorganic drugs

Add to base number 615.2 the numbers following 546 in 546.2–546.7, e.g., calomel 615.2663

Class radiopharmacy (the use of radioactive medicines) in 615.842

.3 Organic drugs

See Manual at 615.2–615.3

.31 Synthetic drugs

Add to base number 615.31 the numbers following 547.0 in 547.01–547.08, e.g., sulfonamides 615.3167

Class a specific synthetic drug not provided for here with the drug, e.g., synthetic vitamins 615.328

.32 Drugs of plant origin

Class enzymes of plant origin in 615.35

.321 Pharmacognosy

Class here herbals, minimally processed alkaloids; comprehensive works on crude drugs and simples (products that serve as drugs with minimal processing, e.g., medicinal teas, baking soda, royal jelly)

For drugs derived from specific plants, see 615.323–615.327

.322 Drugs derived from bryophytes

Add to base number 615.322 the numbers following 588 in 588.1–588.3, e.g., drugs derived from Musci 615.3222

.323–.327 Drugs derived from specific plants

Add to base number 615.32 the numbers following 58 in 583–587, e.g., belladonna 615.32379

For drugs derived from bryophytes, see 615.322; drugs derived from thallophytes, 615.329

.328 Vitamins

Including synthetic vitamins, vitamins of animal origin

Class here vitamin therapy [*formerly also* 615.854]

.329 Drugs derived from thallophytes

Class here antibiotics

Add to base number 615.329 the numbers following 589 in 589.1–589.9, e.g., streptomycin 615.32992

.34 Fish-liver oils

.35 Enzymes

Examples: chymotrypsin, diastase, papain, pepsin, trypsin

.36 Drugs of animal origin

Class here hormones

Class each drug of animal origin not provided for here with the subject, e.g., fish-liver oils 615.34

.362 Thyroid and parathyroid extracts

.363 Pituitary hormones

Example: ACTH (adrenocorticotrophic hormone) [*formerly also* 615.364]

.364 Adrenal hormones

Examples: adrenalin, aldosterone, cortisone

ACTH (adrenocorticotrophic hormone) relocated to 615.363

For sex hormones, see 615.366

.365 Insulin

.366 Sex hormones

.367 Liver extracts

.37 Serums and immunological drugs

.372 Vaccines, bacterins, serobacterins

.373 Toxins and toxoids

.375 Antitoxins, toxin-antitoxins, convalescent serums

.39 Human blood products and their substitutes

Examples: gamma globulins, plasma substitutes

Including blood and blood plasma transfusion [*formerly* 615.65]

For convalescent serums, see 615.375

See also 362.1784 for blood and blood plasma banks

.4 Practical pharmacy

Preparing prescriptions and dispensing drugs

See Manual at 615.4

.42 Solutions and extracts

Examples: collodions, decoctions, elixirs, glycerites, infusions, syrups, tinctures

.43 Pills, capsules, tablets, troches, powders

.45 Ointments and emulsions

.5 Therapeutics

Class here comprehensive works on iatrogenic diseases, patient compliance, placebo effect

Class therapies applied to specific diseases or groups of diseases in 616–618; specific occurrences of iatrogenic diseases, patient compliance, placebo effect with the occurrence, e.g., drug interactions not anticipated by a doctor 615.7045, surgical complications and sequelae 617.01

For specific therapies and kinds of therapies, see 615.8; first aid, 616.0252

.507 Education, research, related topics

Class here patient education by nurses [*formerly* 610.73], comprehensive works on patient education

Class patient education on a specific topic with the topic, e.g., patient education about diabetes mellitus 616.462007

.53 General therapeutic systems

Including eclectic and botanic medicine

Class here Ayurveda (''Hindu medicine'')

Class drug therapy regardless of system in 615.58

See also 615.32 for botanic remedies

See Manual at 615.53

.530 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Class methods of administering medication in 615.6

.531 Allopathy

System of therapy based on the theory that the best cure is a treatment having effects that are opposite to the effects of the disease

Class allopathy as a synonym for orthodox or standard medical practice in medical numbers other than 615.531

.532 Homeopathy

.533 Osteopathy

As a therapeutic system

Class osteopathy as a medical science in medical numbers other than 615.533, e.g., osteopathic medical education 610.7, osteopathic discussion of thyroid diseases 616.44

.534 Chiropractic

See Manual at 615.534

.535 Naturopathy

[.537] Eclectic and botanic medicine

Number discontinued; class in 615.53

.54 Pediatric and geriatric therapeutics

.542 Pediatric therapeutics

Class a specific aspect of pediatric therapeutics with the subject, e.g., medical gymnastics 615.824

.547 Geriatric therapeutics

Class a specific aspect of geriatric therapeutics with the subject, e.g., acupuncture 615.892

.58 Drug therapy

Class here chemotherapy

Class general therapeutics of a specific drug or group of drugs in 615.2–615.3

For methods of administering medication, see 615.6

.6 Methods of administering medication

Examples: external, inhalatory, oral, rectal methods; parenteral methods (e.g., intra-arterial, intradermal, intramuscular, intravenous, subcutaneous injections); administering medication through serous and mucous membranes

Use this number only for works that focus narrowly on methods of administering medication

Class methods of administering a specific drug or group of drugs in 615.2–615.3; general works on a specific type of therapy with the therapy, e.g., drug therapy 615.58, inhalatory therapy 615.836, parenteral therapy 615.855

[.61–.64] Oral, rectal, parenteral, inhalatory medication

Numbers discontinued; class in 615.6

[.65] Blood and blood plasma transfusions

Relocated to 615.39

[.66–.67] Medication through serous and mucous membranes; external medication

Numbers discontinued; class in 615.6

.7 Pharmacodynamics

Physiological and therapeutic action of drugs

Class here pharmacokinetics

For toxicology, see 615.9

See Manual at 612.1–612.8; 615.1 vs. 615.7; 615.2–615.3 vs. 615.7; 615.7 vs. 615.9; 615.7 vs. 616–618

.704 Special effects and actions of drugs

Class here adverse reactions, toxic reactions

Class drug allergies in 616.975

.704 2 Side effects

[.704 3] Aftereffects

Number discontinued; class in 615.704

.704 5 Interactions

.71 Drugs affecting the cardiovascular system

.711 Heart stimulants

.716 Heart depressants

.718 Drugs affecting the blood and blood-forming organs

.72 Drugs affecting the respiratory system

Examples: cough remedies, expectorants

.73 Drugs affecting the digestive system and metabolism

.731 Emetics

.732 Cathartics (Laxatives, Purgatives)

.733 Anthelmintics

.734 Digestants

.735 Demulcents

.739 Drugs affecting metabolism

.74 Drugs affecting the lymphatic and glandular systems

.75 Antipyretics (Febrifuges)

.76 Drugs affecting the urogenital system

.761 Drugs affecting the urinary system

Examples: diuretics, antidiuretics

.766 Drugs affecting the reproductive system

.77 Drugs affecting the motor and integumentary systems

.771 Drugs affecting the bones

.773 Drugs affecting the muscles

.778 Drugs affecting the skin

.779 Drugs affecting nails and hair

.78 Drugs affecting the nervous system

Class here psychopharmacology, comprehensive medical works on addictive and disorienting drugs

Class interdisciplinary works on drug addiction in 362.29, comprehensive medical works on addictions as diseases in 616.86, works on personal aspects of preventing drug addiction in 613.8

For antipyretics, see 615.75

See also 178 for the ethics of using addictive and disorienting drugs

.781 Anesthetics

.782 Sedative-hypnotic drugs

Example: barbiturates

.782 2 Narcotics

.782 7 Cannabis

Example: marijuana

.782 8 Alcohol

.783 Analgesics

Including comprehensive works on drugs used as both analgesics and antipyretics

Class antipyretic use in 615.75

.784 Antispasmodics (Anticonvulsants)

.785 Stimulants

.788 Psychotropic drugs

.788 2 Tranquilizers

Examples: chlorpromazine, diazepam, meprobamate

.788 3 Hallucinogenic and psychedelic drugs

.8 Specific therapies and kinds of therapies

Class comprehensive works in 615.5, drug therapy in 615.58, surgery in 617

See Manual at 613 vs. 615.8; 615.8

.804 Special topics

.804 3 Therapies directed toward a specific objective

Example: resuscitation

.82 Physical therapies

Class here physiotherapy, therapeutic manipulations and exercises

For phototherapy and related therapies, see 615.83; radiotherapy and electrotherapy, 615.84; hydrotherapy and balneotherapy, 615.853

.822 Mechanotherapy and therapeutic massage

Example: acupressure

Class here comprehensive works on massage

Class reducing and slenderizing massage in 646.75

.824 Medical gymnastics

.83 Therapies of light, heat, sound

Including ultrasonic therapy

.831 Phototherapy

.831 4 Heliotherapy

.831 5 Ultraviolet-radiation therapy

.832 Thermotherapy

.832 2 Infrared-radiation therapy

.832 3 Diathermy (Thermopenetration)

.832 5 Fever therapy

.832 9 Cryotherapy

.834 Climatotherapy

.836 Aerotherapy and inhalation therapy

Examples: oxygen and carbon dioxide therapies, pneumatotherapy

.84 Radiotherapy and electrotherapy

.842 Radiotherapy (Radiation therapy, Actinotherapy)

For phototherapy, see 615.831

.842 2 X-ray therapy

.842 3 Radium therapy

.842 4 Radioactive isotope therapy

Class radium therapy in 615.8423

.845 Electrotherapy

Example: electronic therapy

Including magnetic therapy

.85 Miscellaneous therapies

Limited to the therapies provided for below

.851 Mental and activity therapies

For faith healing, see 615.852

.851 2 Hypnotherapy (Suggestion therapy)

.851 5 Activity (Occupational) therapies

For biblio- and educational therapies, see 615.8516

[.851 52] Occupational therapy

Number discontinued; class in 615.8515

.851 53 Recreational therapy

.851 54 Music therapy

.851 55 Dance therapy

.851 56 Art therapy

.851 6 Biblio- and educational therapies

.852 Religious therapy (Hierotherapy, Faith healing)

Including psychic and spiritualistic surgery

.853 Hydrotherapy and balneotherapy

.854 Dietotherapy

Vitamin therapy relocated to 615.328

See Manual at 615.854

.855 Parenteral therapy

.856 Controversial and spurious therapies

Class here quackery

Specific controversial or spurious therapies relocated to the kind of therapy, e.g., controversial dietotherapy 615.854

.88 Empirical and historical remedies

Class here home remedies

For ancient and medieval remedies, see 615.899

See Manual at 615.8809

.882 Folk medicine

See Manual at 615.8809; 615.882

.886 Patent medicines

.89 Other therapies

.892 Acupuncture

Class here comprehensive works on acupuncture and acupressure

Class acupressure in 615.822

.899 Ancient and medieval remedies

See Manual at 615.8809

.9 Toxicology

Class here poisons and poisoning

Class forensic toxicology in 614.1, effects of poisons on specific systems and organs in 616–618

See Manual at 615.7 vs. 615.9

.900 1 Philosophy and theory

.900 2 Miscellany

[.900 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 615.907

.900 3–.900 9 Standard subdivisions

.902 Industrial toxicology

Including toxicology of pollution

Class here environmental toxicology

Class toxic reactions and interactions of drugs in 615.704, toxicology of food additives in 615.954

.905 Prevention of poisoning

.907 Tests, analysis, detection of poisons and poisoning

Class here diagnoses and prognoses of poisoning

The topics listed under 616.075 Diagnoses and prognoses are all included here

.908 Treatment of poisoning

.91 Gaseous poisons

Example: asphyxiating gases

Class here lethal gases

.92 Inorganic poisons

Class gaseous inorganic poisons in 615.91, radiation poisoning in 616.9897

.921 Acids

Class specific acids in 615.925

.922 Alkalis

Class specific alkalis in 615.925

.925 Specific inorganic poisons

Add to base number 615.925 the numbers following 546 in 546.2–546.7, e.g., mercurial poisons 615.925663

.94 Animal poisons

.942 Venoms

Examples: bee, scorpion, snake, spider venoms

.945 Poisonous food animals

Example: poisonous fish

Including mammalian organs; food animals made poisonous by microorganisms, e.g., shellfish made poisonous by red tides

.95 Organic poisons

Class gaseous organic poisons in 615.91

For animal poisons, see 615.94

.951 Synthetic and manufactured poisons

Add to base number 615.951 the numbers following 547.0 in 547.01–547.08, e.g., ethers 615.95135

.952 Plant and plant-derived poisons

Add to base number 615.952 the numbers following 58 in 583–589, e.g., opium 615.9523122, bacterial food poisons 615.95299

Class food animals made poisonous by plants in 615.945

.954 Food poisons

Including toxicology of food additives

Class poisonous food animals in 615.945; plant and plant-derived poisons in 615.952, e.g., bacterial food poisons 615.95299

616 Diseases

Class here internal medicine

Class wounds and injuries, surgical treatment of diseases, diseases by body region, diseases of teeth, eyes, ears in 617; gynecological, obstetrical, pediatric, geriatric diseases in 618

For incidence of and public measures to prevent disease, see 614.4; therapeutics, 615.5

See Manual at 612 vs. 616; 615.7 vs. 616–618; 616 vs. 610; 616 vs. 616.075; 616.01; 616.01 vs. 616.9; 617 vs. 616; 617.4 vs. 616; 618.92 vs. 616, 618.32

SUMMARY

616.001–.009 Standard subdivisions
.01–.09 [General topics]
.1 Diseases of the cardiovascular system
.2 Diseases of the respiratory system
.3 Diseases of the digestive system
.4 Diseases of the blood-forming, lymphatic, glandular systems Diseases of the endocrine system
.5 Diseases of the integument, hair, nails
.6 Diseases of the urogenital system Diseases of the urinary system
.7 Diseases of the musculoskeletal system
.8 Diseases of the nervous system and mental disorders
.9 Other diseases

.001 Philosophy and theory

See Manual at 616 vs. 610

.002 Miscellany

See Manual at 616 vs. 610

[.002 3] Work with diseases as a profession, occupation, hobby

Do not use; class in 610.69

[.002 87] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 616.075

.003–.007 Standard subdivisions

See Manual at 616 vs. 610

.008 History and description with respect to kinds of persons

See Manual at 616 vs. 610

.008 3 Young people

Class diseases of infants and children up to puberty in 618.92

.008 4 Persons in specific stages of adulthood

[.008 46] Late adulthood

Do not use; class in 618.97

.009 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

See Manual at 616 vs. 610

.009 2 Persons

Class life with a physical disease in 362.19, with a mental disorder in 616.890092

SUMMARY

616.01	**Medical microbiology**
.02	**Special topics**
.04	**Special medical conditions**
.07	**Pathology**
.08	**Psychosomatic medicine**
.09	**Case histories**

.01 Medical microbiology

Study of pathogenic microorganisms and their relation to disease

Class here drug resistance in microorganisms

Class resistance to specific drugs in 615

See Manual at 616.01; 616.01 vs. 616.9

.014 Bacteria

Add to base number 616.014 the numbers following 589.9 in 589.92–589.99, e.g., Enterobacteriaceae 616.0145

For rickettsiae, see 616.0192

.015 Fungi

.016 Protozoa

.019 Ultramicrobes

.019 2 Rickettsiae

.019 4 Viruses

.02 Special topics

.024 Domestic medicine

Diagnosis and treatment of ailments without direction of physician

Including advice on when to go to a doctor

For first aid, see 616.0252

See also 649.8 for home care of sick and infirm

.025 Medical emergencies

Class intensive care in 616.028

.025 2 First aid

.028 Intensive (Critical) care

.029 Terminal care

.04 Special medical conditions

.042 Genetic (Hereditary) diseases

Class amniocentesis to diagnose genetic diseases in 618.32042

.043 Congenital diseases

Including teratology

Class congenital diseases of genetic origin in 616.042

See Manual at 618.92 vs. 616, 618.32

.047 Manifestations of disease

Symptoms as problems in their own right

Examples: edemas, fevers, infections, shock

Class here symptomatology [*formerly* 616.072]; pathology, diagnosis, treatment of symptoms of various etiologies

Class interpretation of symptoms for diagnosis and prognosis in 616.075; symptoms of a specific disease or class of diseases with the disease, e.g., symptoms of heart diseases 616.12

.047 2 Pain

Headaches of unknown origin relocated to 616.8491

Class headaches in 616.8491

.047 3 Inflammation

.07 Pathology

Use for detailed descriptions of diseased conditions, causes and manifestations, diagnostic techniques. For works lacking detail, prefer 616 over 616.07

Class forensic pathology in 614.1

For cytopathology, see 611.01815; histopathology, 611.0182–611.0189; medical microbiology, 616.01

.071 Etiology

Class social factors contributing to the spread of a disease in 362.1042, genetic diseases in 616.042

[.072] Symptomatology

Relocated to 616.047

.075 Diagnosis and prognosis

Including ocular diagnosis

Class here differential diagnosis

Class nonprofessional diagnosis in 616.024

See Manual at 616 vs. 616.075

.075 1 Medical history taking

.075 4 Physical diagnosis

Including thermography

Class here comprehensive works on diagnostic imaging

For radiological diagnosis, see 616.0757

See Manual at 616.0757

.075 43 Ultrasonic diagnosis

Class here sonography (echography)

.075 44 Sound

.075 45 Optical diagnosis

Class here endoscopy

Class microscopy in 616.0758

.075 47 Electrical diagnosis

.075 48 Magnetic diagnosis

Class here nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) imaging

.075 6 Chemical diagnosis

Example: immunodiagnosis

Class here clinical chemistry

Class radioimmunoassay in 616.0757

.075 61 Blood analysis

.075 63 Analysis of gastroenteric contents

.075 66 Urinalysis

Class radioscopic urinalysis in 616.0757

.075 7 Radiological diagnosis

Diagnosis involving use of X-rays, radioactive materials, other ionizing radiations

Examples: radioimmunoassay, radioscopic urinalysis

Class here comprehensive works on tomography, on medical radiology

For radiotherapy, see 615.842

See Manual at 616.0757

.075 72 Roentgenology (X-ray examination)

Including computerized axial (computed) tomography (CAT, CT), fluoroscopy

Use of this number for comprehensive works on tomography discontinued; class in 616.0757

See Manual at 616.0757

.075 75 Radioisotope scanning

Often called nuclear medicine

Including positron emission tomography (PET)

See also 616.07548 for nuclear magnetic resonance imaging

.075 8 Microscopy in diagnosis

Class here biopsies

.075 81 Bacteriological examination

.075 82 Cytological examination

.075 83 Histological and histochemical examination

.075 9 Autopsy (Post-mortem examination)

Class forensic autopsy in 614.1

.078 Death

Class interdisciplinary works on human death in 306.9

.079 Immunity (Immunology) [*formerly also* 612.11822]

Including interferon, reticuloendothelial system

Class here immunogenetics

Failures of immunity relocated to 616.97, autoimmunity to 616.978

Class immunodiagnosis in 616.0756

See Manual at 591.29 vs. 616.079

.079 2 Antigens

.079 3 Antibodies

.079 5 Immune reactions

Examples: agglutination, precipitation

Class here serology

.08 Psychosomatic medicine

This number is largely limited to the psychosomatic aspects of the diseases defined in 616.1–616.7, 616.9

Class comprehensive works on psychological and psychosomatic aspects of disease in 616.0019, psychosomatic symptoms considered as problems in their own right in 616.047, mental disorders and their somatic manifestation in 616.89, diseases caused by stress in 616.98

See also 616.8525 for hypochondriacal neuroses

.09 Case histories

> **616.1–616.9 Specific diseases**

All notes under 616.01–616.08 are applicable here

Except for additions, changes, deletions, exceptions shown under specific entries, add to the notation for each term identified by * as follows:

001 Philosophy and theory
002 Miscellany
[0023] The specialty as a profession, occupation, hobby
Do not use; class in 023
[00287] Testing and measurement
Do not use; class in 075
003–006 Standard subdivisions
007 Education, research, related topics
[00724] Experimental research
Do not use; class in 027
008 History and description with respect to kinds of persons
0083 Young people
Class diseases of infants and children up to puberty in 618.92
0084 Persons in specific stages of adulthood
[00846] Late adulthood
Do not use; class in 618.97
009 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
0092 Persons
Class life with a physical disease in 362.19, with a mental disorder in 616.890092
01 Microbiology
Add to 01 the numbers following 616.01 in 616.014–616.019, e.g., fungi 015
When the cause of a disease or class of diseases is known to be a single type of microorganism, use 01 without further subdivision for works about the type of microorganism
See Manual at 616.1–616.9: Add table: 071 vs. 01
02 Special topics
023 Personnel
Nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships
Do not use for the technology of the operations that the personnel perform, e.g., techniques used by a cardiological paramedic 616.12 (*not* 616.120233)
0232 Physicians
0233 Technicians and assistants
024 Domestic medicine
Class a specific kind of therapy in 06, e.g., drug therapy 061
For first aid, see 0252
025 Medical emergencies
Class here comprehensive works on emergency therapy for specific diseases or kinds of diseases
Class intensive care in 028; a specific kind of emergency therapy in 06, e.g., emergency drug therapy 061
0252 First aid
027 Experimental medicine

(continued)

> **616.1–616.9 Specific diseases (continued)**

028 Intensive care
Class a specific kind of therapy in 06, e.g., drug therapy 061

029 Terminal care
Class a specific kind of therapy in 06, e.g., drug therapy 061

03 Rehabilitation
Restoration of a sick or disabled person by therapy and by training for participation in the activities of a normal life within the limitations of disabilities
Class comprehensive works on rehabilitation in 617.03, rehabilitative therapy in 06

04 Special classes of diseases

042 Genetic (Hereditary) diseases
When a specific type of genetic disease has an indirect etiology, class with the system showing the most visible manifestations, e.g., mental retardation caused by hereditary metabolic disorders 616.8588042, not 616.39042

043 Congenital diseases
Class congenital diseases of genetic origin in 042

05 Preventive measures
By the individual and by medical personnel
Class comprehensive works in 613, public measures for preventing specific diseases in 614.5

06 Therapy
Class here rehabilitative therapy; specific kinds of therapy used in domestic medicine, medical emergencies, intensive care, terminal care
Class comprehensive works on therapy in 615.5; comprehensive works on therapy for specific diseases or kinds of diseases in domestic medicine in 024, in medical emergencies in 025, in intensive care in 028, in terminal care in 029; comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and training for persons with a specific disease or kind of disease in 03; comprehensive works on therapy and pathology (07) of a specific disease or kind of disease in the number for the disease or kind of disease, without adding from the add table, e.g., cause, course, and cure of heart disease 616.12 (*not* 616.1206)

061 Drug therapy

062–069 Other therapies
Add to 06 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., X-ray therapy 06422, rehabilitative activity therapies 06515

07 Pathology
Add to 07 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.071–616.079, e.g., etiology 071, diagnosis 075
Class social factors contributing to the spread of a disease in 362.19
See Manual at 616.1–616.9: Add table: 071 vs. 01

08 Psychosomatic medicine

09 Case histories

Class comprehensive works in 616

See Manual at 612.1–612.8

> **616.1–616.8 Diseases of specific systems and organs**

Class comprehensive works in 616, diseases of the immune system in 616.97, tumors (neoplasms) of specific systems and organs in 616.992, tuberculosis of specific systems and organs in 616.995

See Manual at 616.1–616.8

.1 *Diseases of the cardiovascular system

Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) is classed in 616.1025

Class diseases of the blood-forming system in 616.41

SUMMARY

616.11	**Diseases of the endocardium and pericardium**
.12	**Diseases of the heart**
.13	**Diseases of the blood vessels**
.14	**Diseases of the veins and capillaries**
.15	**Diseases of the blood**

.11 *Diseases of the endocardium and pericardium

.12 *Diseases of the heart

Example: cor pulmonale

Class here cardiology; necrosis and other degenerative diseases of the heart

For diseases of the endocardium and pericardium, see 616.11

.122 *Angina pectoris

.123 *Coronary diseases (Ischemic heart diseases)

Comprehensive works on heart attacks are classed in 616.123025; works on heart attacks in the sense of myocardial infarction are classed in 616.1237

Class heart attacks not caused by narrowing or blocking of the coronary arteries with the cause, e.g., heart attacks caused by congestive heart failure 616.129025

For angina pectoris, see 616.122

See Manual at 616.123028

.123 2 *Coronary arteriosclerosis

.123 7 *Myocardial infarction

.124 *Myocarditis

Class here comprehensive works on diseases of the myocardium

For myocardial infarction, see 616.1237

.125 *Valvular diseases

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.127 *Rheumatic heart diseases

Class rheumatic valvular diseases in 616.125

.128 *Arrhythmia

Including allorhythmia

Class implantation of heart pacers in 617.412059, their functioning in 617.4120645

.129 *Heart failure

.13 *Diseases of the blood vessels

Class here angiology; diseases of the blood vessels in a specific region, e.g., the abdominal and pelvic cavities

Class diseases of the blood vessels in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., cerebrovascular diseases 616.81

For diseases of the veins and capillaries, see 616.14

.131 *Peripheral vascular diseases

For cerebrovascular diseases, see 616.81

.132 *Hypertension

Essential and renal

.133 *Aneurysms

.135 *Arterial embolisms and thromboses

For pulmonary embolisms and thromboses, see 616.249

.136 *Arteriosclerosis

Class here atherosclerosis

.138 *Diseases of the aorta

.14 *Diseases of the veins and capillaries

.142 *Phlebitis and thrombophlebitis

.143 *Varicose veins (Varix)

.145 *Venous embolisms and thromboses

.148 *Diseases of capillaries

Including telangiectasis, telangitis

.15 *Diseases of the blood

Class here hematology

For bacterial blood diseases, see 616.94

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.151 *Diseases of erythrocytes

Class here hemoglobin disorders

For anemia, see 616.152; polycythemia, 616.153

.152 *Anemia

Example: thalassemia

.152 7 *Sickle cell anemia

.153 *Polycythemia

.154 *Diseases of leucocytes

Including agranulocytosis

.156 *Reticulosis

.157 *Hemorrhagic diseases

Class here comprehensive works on disorders of blood coagulation

For arterial embolisms and thromboses, see 616.135; venous embolisms and thromboses, 616.145

.157 2 *Hemophilia

.2 Diseases of the respiratory system

Including apnea

Class here dyspnea

.200 1–.200 3 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 616.1–616.9

.200 4 Special topics

Add to base number 616.2004 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–09 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., diagnosis of respiratory diseases 616.200475

.200 5–.200 9 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 616.1–616.9

.201 *Croup

.202 *Respiratory allergies

Class here hay fever

Class asthma in 616.238

.203 *Influenza

.204 *Whooping cough (Pertussis)

.205 *Common cold (Coryza)

.208 *Hyperventilation (Overbreathing)

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.21 *Diseases of the nose, larynx, accessory organs

Class otorhinolaryngology, comprehensive works on diseases of the eyes, ears, nose, throat in 617.51

For laryngology, see 616.22

.212 *Of nose, nasopharynx, accessory sinuses

Class here rhinology

Class the common cold in 616.205

.22 *Diseases of larynx, glottis, vocal cords, epiglottis

Class here laryngology

.23 *Diseases of trachea and bronchi

Examples: bronchiectasis, tracheitis

Class bronchopneumonia in 616.241

.234 *Bronchitis

.238 *Bronchial asthma

Class here comprehensive works on asthma

Class cardiac asthma in 616.12

.24 *Diseases of the lungs

Class here comprehensive works on diseases of lungs and bronchi

Class diseases of bronchi in 616.23, pulmonary tuberculosis in 616.99524

.241 *Pneumonia

Including Legionnaires' disease

See also 616.245 for necropneumonia

.244 *Pneumoconiosis

Diseases caused by dust and other particles

Examples: asbestosis, black lung disease, byssinosis (brown lung disease), pulmonary abscesses, silicosis

.245 *Necropneumonia

.248 *Emphysema

.249 *Pulmonary embolisms and thromboses

.25 *Diseases of the pleura

Class pleural pneumonia in 616.241

.27 *Diseases of the mediastinum

.3 *Diseases of the digestive system

Class allergies of the digestive system in 616.975

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

SUMMARY

616.31	**Diseases of the mouth and throat**
.32	**Diseases of the pharynx and esophagus**
.33	**Diseases of the stomach**
.34	**Diseases of the intestine**
.35	**Diseases of the rectum and anus**
.36	**Diseases of the biliary tract**
.37	**Diseases of the pancreas**
.38	**Diseases of the peritoneum**
.39	**Nutritional and metabolic diseases**

.31 *Diseases of the mouth and throat

Class the oral region (a broader concept than the mouth as a digestive organ) in 617.522, diseases of the teeth and gums in 617.63

For laryngology, see 616.22; diseases of the pharynx, 616.32

.312 *Trench mouth (Vincent's angina)

.313 *Mumps (Epidemic parotitis)

.314 *Diseases of the tonsils

.316 *Diseases of the salivary glands

.32 *Diseases of the pharynx and esophagus

.33 *Diseases of the stomach

Example: gastroptosis

Class here gastroenteritis, comprehensive works on gastroenterology (gastrointestinal diseases)

For diseases of the intestine, see 616.34; typhoid fever, 616.9272; cholera, 616.932; dysenteries, 616.935

See Manual at 616.932 vs. 616.33

.332 *Functional disorders

Examples: dyspepsia, disorders of secretion, gastric indigestion

.333 *Gastritis

.334 *Gastric ulcers

Class peptic ulcers in 616.343

.34 *Diseases of the intestine

.342 *Functional disorders

Including obstructions

.342 3 *Malabsorption

.342 7 *Diarrhea

.342 8 *Constipation

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.343 *Peptic ulcers

Class here comprehensive works on gastric and peptic ulcers

For gastric ulcers, see 616.334

.343 3 *Duodenal ulcers

.343 4 *Gastrojejunal ulcers

.344 *Enteritis

Examples: duodenitis, jejunitis

.344 5 *Ileitis

Including Crohn's disease

.344 7 *Colitis

.35 *Diseases of the rectum and anus

Class here proctology

.36 *Diseases of the biliary tract

.362 *Diseases of the liver

.362 3 *Hepatitis

.362 4 *Cirrhosis

.362 5 *Jaundice

.365 *Diseases of the gall bladder and bile duct

.37 *Diseases of the pancreas

Including cystic fibrosis

Class diseases of pancreatic internal secretion in 616.46

.38 *Diseases of the peritoneum

.39 *Nutritional and metabolic diseases

Inborn (inherited) errors of metabolism are classed in 616.39042

Class nutritional and metabolic diseases of a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., metabolic bone diseases 616.716

For endocrinology, see 616.4

> 616.392–616.396 Deficiency diseases

Class comprehensive works in 616.39

.392 *Beriberi

.393 *Pellagra

.394 *Scurvy

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.395 *Rickets

.396 Other deficiency diseases and states

Examples: emaciation, fatty degeneration, kwashiorkor

Class anorexia nervosa in 616.85262

For multiple deficiency states, see 616.399

.398 *Obesity

Contains nutritional and endocrinal obesity

Food addiction is classed in 616.39808

Class appetite and eating disorders as neuroses in 616.8526

.399 Other nutritional and metabolic diseases

Including multiple deficiency states

.399 5 *Diseases of protein metabolism

Example: amyloidosis

.399 7 *Diseases of lipid metabolism

.399 8 *Diseases of carbohydrate metabolism

.399 9 *Gout

.4 *Diseases of the blood-forming, lymphatic, glandular systems *Diseases of the endocrine system

Class here endocrinology

Class endocrinal obesity in 616.398; diseases of glands in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., diseases of female sex glands 618.1

.41 *Of the blood-forming (hematopoietic) system

Spleen and bone marrow disorders

For anemia, see 616.152

.42 *Of the lymphatic system

Examples: lymphatitis, lymphomatosis

Class Hodgkin's disease in 616.99446

> 616.43–616.48 Of endocrine system

Class comprehensive works in 616.4

.43 *Of the thymus gland

.44 *Of the thyroid and parathyroid glands

.442 *Goiter

.443 *Hyperthyroidism

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.444 *Hypothyroidism

For myxedema, see 616.858848

.445 *Hyperparathyroidism and hypoparathyroidism

.45 *Diseases of the adrenal glands

Examples: Addison's disease, Cushing's syndrome, hyperadrenalism, hypoadrenalism

.46 *Diseases of pancreatic internal secretion (Diseases of the islands of Langerhans)

.462 *Diabetes mellitus

Class here comprehensive works on diabetes

For diabetes insipidus, see 616.47

.466 *Hypoglycemia

.47 *Diseases of the pituitary gland

Examples: diabetes insipidus, dwarfism, gigantism

Including acromegaly, Simmond's disease

.48 *Diseases of other glands

Example: hyperpinealism

Including polyglandular disorders

.49 *Diseases of the male breast

Class comprehensive works on diseases of the breast in 618.19

.5 *Diseases of the integument, hair, nails

Examples: photosensitivity diseases, sunburn

Class here dermatology

Class comprehensive works on allergies of the skin in 616.973, dermatological manifestations of food and drug allergies in 616.975

Class venereal diseases in 616.951

.51 *Papular eruptions

Including urticaria (hives)

Class here dermatitis

For vesicular and pustular eruptions, see 616.52; contact allergies, 616.973

.52 *Vesicular and pustular eruptions

Example: herpes simplex type 1 (cold sores, fever blisters)

Class herpes simplex type 2 (genital herpes) in 616.9518

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.521 *Eczema

Including atopic dermatitis

.522 *Shingles (Herpes zoster)

.523 *Boils and carbuncles (Furuncles)

.524 *Impetigo

.526 *Psoriasis

.53 *Diseases of sebaceous glands

Examples: acne, blackheads, seborrhea, wens

.54 *Skin hypertrophies, scalp diseases, related disorders

For pigmentary changes, see 616.55

.544 *Skin hypertrophies

Examples: callosities, corns, ichthyosis, keratosis, scleroderma, warts (verrucae), xeroderma

.545 *Skin ulcerations

Examples: decubitus ulcers (bedsores)

.546 *Diseases of scalp, hair, hair follicles

Examples: baldness (alopecia), dandruff, excessive hairiness (hypertrichosis)

.547 *Diseases of nails

.55 *Pigmentary changes

Examples: albinism, moles, pigmentary nevi

Including comprehensive works on nevi

Class capillary nevi in 616.99315

.56 *Diseases of sweat glands

Examples: anhidrosis, heat rash, prickly heat

.57 *Parasitic skin diseases

Examples: athlete's foot, mange, ringworm, scabies, yaws

.58 Chilblains, frostbite, chapping

.6 *Diseases of the urogenital system *Diseases of the urinary system

Class here urology

> 616.61–616.64 Diseases of the urinary system

Class comprehensive works in 616.6

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.61 *Of kidneys and ureters

Class here nephrology

Subdivisions are added for kidneys and ureters, for kidneys alone

Class renal hypertension in 616.132, kidney stones in 616.622, kidney dialysis in 617.461059

.612 *Nephritis

Examples: Bright's disease, glomerulonephritis

.613 *Pyelitis (Pyelonephritis) and pyelocystitis

.614 *Renal failure

.62 *Of bladder and urethra

For diseases of the male urethra, see 616.64

.622 *Kidney stones (Urinary calculi)

Renal and vesical calculi

.623 *Cystitis

.624 *Urethritis

.63 *Urinary manifestations

Limited to manifestations of diseases of the urogenital system

Examples: albuminuria, hematuria, proteinuria

Class interpretation of symptoms for diagnosis and prognosis in 616.6075; psychosomatic enuresis in 616.849; urinary manifestations of a specific disease or of disease in a specific organ with the disease or organ, e.g., urinary manifestations of renal failure 616.614

See also 616.07566 for urinalysis in diagnosis of diseases in general

.633 *Pyuria

.635 *Uremia

.64 *Diseases of the male urethra

.65 *Diseases of the genital system

Class here *diseases of the male genital system, *diseases of the prostate gland

Class diseases of the female genital system in 618.1; diseases of a specific male genital organ not provided for here with the organ, e.g., diseases of the male urethra 616.64

.66 *Diseases of the penis

.67 *Diseases of the scrotum

.68 *Diseases of the testicles and accessory organs

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.69 *Sexual disorders

Class here male sexual disorders

Class sexual personality disorders in 616.8583, female sexual disorders in 618.17

.692 *Impotence and infertility

Class here comprehensive works on male and female infertility, on impotence

Class impotence as a psychological disorder in 616.85832; female infertility, artificial insemination in 618.178

.693 *Male climacteric disorders

Class comprehensive works on climacteric disorders in 618.175

.694 *Hermaphroditism

.7 *Diseases of the musculoskeletal system

See Manual at 617.3 vs. 616.7, 617.5

.71 †Of bones

Class here chronic diseases of the skeletal system

Class correction of deformities of the skeletal system (orthopedics), treatment of chronic diseases of the skeletal system in 617.3

For diseases of the spine, see 616.73

.712 †Osteitis

Examples: osteitis deformans, osteochondritis, periostitis

.715 †Osteomyelitis

.716 †Disorders of metabolic origin

Example: osteoporosis

For rickets, see 616.395

.72 *Diseases of the joints

For gout, see 616.3999

.722 *Arthritis

.722 3 *Osteoarthritis (Hypertrophic arthritis)

.722 7 *Rheumatoid arthritis

Class ankylosing spondylitis in 616.73

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

†Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except class treatment of chronic diseases in 617.3

.723 *Rheumatism

Class here rheumatology

Class a specific rheumatic disease with the disease, e.g., rheumatoid arthritis 616.7227, rheumatic fever 616.991

.73 *Diseases of the spine

Example: ankylosing spondylitis

.74 *Diseases of the muscles

Class diseases of muscles in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., diseases of the heart 616.12

.742 *Muscular rheumatism

.743 *Myositis

.744 *Neuromuscular diseases

Class neuromuscular diseases resulting from disorders of the central nervous system in 616.83

.744 2 *Myasthenia gravis

.748 *Progressive muscular dystrophy

.75 *Diseases of tendons and fasciae

.76 *Diseases of bursae and sheaths of tendons

.77 *Diseases of connective tissue

Including Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, Marfan syndrome, systemic lupus erythematosus

Class here collagen diseases

For rheumatoid arthritis, see 616.7227; diseases of tendons and fasciae, 616.75

.8 Diseases of the nervous system and mental disorders

Class here neuropsychiatry

Use 616.8001–616.8009 for standard subdivisions

SUMMARY

616.801–.809	**Standard subdivisions of neurology, of brain diseases**
.81	**Cerebrovascular diseases**
.82	**Meningeal diseases**
.83	**Other organic diseases of the central nervous system**
.84	**Manifestations of neurological diseases and mental disorders**
.85	**Miscellaneous diseases of the nervous system and mental disorders**
.86	**Substance abuse (Drug abuse)**
.87	**Diseases of the cranial, spinal, peripheral nerves**
.88	**Diseases of the autonomic (sympathetic and parasympathetic) nervous system**
.89	**Mental disorders**

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.801–.803 Standard subdivisions of neurology, of brain diseases

As modified under 616.1–616.9

.804 Special topics in neurology, in brain diseases

Add to base number 616.804 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–09 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., diagnosis of brain diseases 616.80475

Class manifestations of neurological diseases as problems in their own right in 616.84

.805–.809 Standard subdivisions of neurology, of brain diseases

As modified under 616.1–616.9

> 616.81–616.84 Neurology Brain diseases

Class comprehensive works in 616.8, diseases of nerves in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., neuromuscular diseases 616.74

For diseases of the cranial, spinal, peripheral nerves, see 616.87; of the autonomic nervous system, 616.88

.81 *Cerebrovascular diseases

Examples: apoplexy (stroke)

.82 *Meningeal diseases

Example: meningitis

.83 Other organic diseases of the central nervous system

Examples: amytrophic lateral sclerosis, Friedreich's ataxia, tardive dyskinesia

Class here diseases of basal ganglia, of the spinal cord

For chorea, see 616.851; epilepsy, 616.853; senile dementia, 616.8983

.831 *Alzheimer's disease

.832 *Encephalitis

.833 *Parkinson's disease (Paralysis agitans)

.834 *Multiple sclerosis

.835 *Poliomyelitis

.836 *Cerebral palsy

.837 *Paraplegia

Neurological aspects only

Class comprehensive works on neurological and surgical aspects in 617.58

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.838 *Locomotor ataxia (Tabes dorsalis)

Class comprehensive works on syphilis in 616.9513, general paresis in 616.892

.84 Manifestations of neurological diseases and mental disorders

Symptoms as problems in their own right

Class here pathology, diagnosis, treatment of symptoms

Class interpretation of symptoms for diagnosis and prognosis of neurological disease in 616.80475, of mental disorders in 616.89075; migraine in 616.857; diagnostic and prognostic interpretation of symptoms of a specific disease or class of diseases with the disease, e.g., of schizophrenia 616.8982075

.841 Dizziness (Vertigo)

.842 Paralysis

[.844] Spinal irritation

Number discontinued; class in 616.84

.845 Convulsions

.849 Miscellaneous symptoms

Limited to coma, enuresis, pain, reflex disturbances, and the symptoms provided for below

Use of this number for other symptoms discontinued; class in 616.84

.849 1 *Headache

Example: cluster headache

Including headaches of unknown origin [*formerly* 616.0472]

For migraine, see 616.857

.849 8 Sleep disturbances

Example: insomnia

.85 Miscellaneous diseases of the nervous system and mental disorders

Only those named below

SUMMARY

616.851	**Chorea**
.852	**Neuroses**
.853	**Epilepsy**
.855	**Speech and language disorders**
.856	**Cutaneous sensory disorders**
.857	**Migraine**
.858	**Disorders of personality and intellect**

.851 *Chorea

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.852 †Neuroses

Class neurotic aspects of a specific disease with the disease, e.g., of asthma 616.238

For speech and language disorders, see 616.855

See also 616.856 for cutaneous sensory disorders

.852 1 †Traumatic neuroses

Examples: compensation and occupation neuroses, posttraumatic stress disorder

.852 12 †War neuroses (Combat fatigue)

.852 2 †Anxiety, phobic, obsessive-compulsive neuroses

.852 23 †Anxiety neuroses

.852 25 †Phobic neuroses

Example: agoraphobia

.852 27 †Obsessive-compulsive neurosis

Example: compulsive gambling

.852 3 †Dissociative reactions

.852 32 †Amnesia and fugue

Subdivisions are added for amnesia and fugue, for amnesia alone

.852 36 †Dual and multiple personalities

.852 4 †Hysterical neuroses

For dissociative reactions, see 616.8523

.852 5 †Hypochondriacal neuroses

.852 6 †Eating disorders

Class here appetite disorders

.852 62 †Anorexia nervosa

.852 63 †Bulimia

.852 7 †Depressive neuroses

Class here comprehensive works on depression

Class postpartum depression in 618.76

For neurasthenia, see 616.8528; manic-depressive psychoses, 616.895

.852 8 †Neurasthenia (Asthenic reactions)

Chronic fatigue and depression

Class comprehensive works on depression in 616.8527

.853 *Epilepsy

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

†Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except use 0651 also for psychotherapies

.855 †Speech and language disorders

Class here comprehensive works on communicative disorders, on voice disorders

Class comprehensive works on learning and communicative disorders in 616.85889

.855 2 *Neurological language disorders (Aphasias)

Diminution or loss of faculty of language in any of its forms due to cerebral lesions, e.g., agnosia, agrammatism, agraphia, apraxia

For written language disorders, see 616.8553

.855 3 †Written language disorders

Class here dyslexia

.855 4 †Stammering and stuttering

.856 *Cutaneous sensory disorders

Examples: anesthesia, hyperesthesia, hypesthesia, paresthesia

.857 *Migraine

.858 Disorders of personality and intellect

.858 2 †Sociopathic personality disorders

Class here self-destructive tendencies, violent behavior

Class sexual disorders in 616.8583, substance abuse in 616.86

For other sociopathic neuroses and suicidal compulsions, see 616.8584

.858 22 †Family violence and abuse

Examples: child abuse, spouse abuse

Class incest, sexual abuse of children in 616.8583

.858 3 †Sexual disorders

Including incest, sexual abuse of children

.858 32 †Frigidity and impotence

Class comprehensive works on impotence in 616.692

.858 33 †Nymphomania and satyromania

.858 34 †Homosexuality

.858 35 †Sadism and masochism

.858 4 Other sociopathic neuroses and suicidal compulsions

.858 42 †Kleptomania

.858 43 †Pyromania

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

†Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except use 0651 also for psychotherapies

.858 44 Homicidal and suicidal compulsions

.858 445 †Suicidal compulsions

.858 45 †Compulsive lying and †defrauding

.858 5 Borderline and narcissistic personality disorders

.858 52 †Borderline personality disorder

.858 8 *Mental deficiency and learning disabilities

Class here feeblemindedness, mental retardation

.858 84 Due to deformity, injury, disease

.858 842 *Down's syndrome

.858 843 *Hydrocephalus

.858 844 *Microcephaly

.858 845 *Cerebral sphingolipidosis

Former heading: Amaurotic idiocy

Example: Tay-Sachs disease

.858 848 *Myxedema

Example: congenital myxedema (cretinism)

.858 89 *Learning disabilities

Regardless of level of intelligence

Class here comprehensive works on learning and communicative disorders

Class communicative disorders in 616.855; learning disabilities associated with a specific disorder with the disorder, e.g., minimal brain dysfunction 616.8589

.858 9 *Attention deficit disorder and *hyperactivity (hyperkinesia)

Class here minimal brain dysfunction

.86 ‡Substance abuse (Drug abuse)

Examples: abuse of analgesics, depressants, inhalants, sedatives, tranquilizers

Class here addiction, habituation, intoxication

Class interdisciplinary works on substance abuse in 362.29, comprehensive medical works on addictive and disorienting drugs in 615.78, personal measures to prevent substance abuse in 613.8, food addiction in 616.39808

.861 ‡Alcohol

Class here alcoholism

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

†Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except use 0651 also for psychotherapies

‡Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except use 0651 also for psychotherapies and do not use 05; class prevention in 613.8 or its subdivisions

[.862] Effect of metallic intoxication on nervous system and mental condition

Number discontinued; class in 616.8

.863 ‡Narcotics, hallucinogens, psychedelics, cannabis

Use of this number for comprehensive works on drug abuse discontinued; class in 616.86

.863 2 ‡Narcotics

Opium and its derivatives and synthetic equivalents

Class here specific narcotics, e.g., heroin, morphine

.863 4 ‡Hallucinogens and ‡psychedelics

Class here specific hallucinogens and psychedelics, e.g., LSD, mescaline, PCP

Class cannabis in 616.8635

.863 5 ‡Cannabis

Class here specific kinds of cannabis, e.g., hashish, marijuana

.864 ‡Stimulants and related substances

Class here specific kinds of stimulants, e.g., amphetamine, ephedrine

Class nicotine in 616.865

.864 7 ‡Cocaine

Class here specific forms of cocaine, e.g., crack

.865 ‡Tobacco

.87 *Diseases of the cranial, spinal, peripheral nerves

Examples: disorders of taste and smell, neuralgias, neuritis, sciatica

Class neurofibromatosis in 616.99383

For herpes zoster, see 616.522; cutaneous sensory disorders, 616.856; diseases of the autonomic system, 616.88

.88 *Diseases of the autonomic (sympathetic and parasympathetic) nervous system

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

‡Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except use 0651 also for psychotherapies and do not use 05; class prevention in 613.8 or its subdivisions

.89 *Mental disorders

Class here comparative abnormal behavior of animals [*formerly also* 156.7], abnormal and clinical psychologies [*formerly also* 157], psychiatry

Class manifestations of mental disorders in 616.84 when considered as symptoms so serious that they become problems in their own right; puerperal mental disorders in 618.76; physical manifestations of mental disorders involving a specific system with the system, using 08 from the table under 616.1–616.9 if appropriate, e.g., psychosomatic ulcers 616.3408

For neuroses, see 616.852; disorders of personality and intellect, 616.858

See Manual at 150.195 vs. 616.89

[.890 083 5] With respect to young adults

Do not use; class in 616.89022

.890 22 Mental disorders of young adults

Aged twelve to twenty

[.890 6] Therapy

Do not use; class in 616.891

.891 Therapy

.891 2 Shock therapy

Examples: insulin and other drug shock therapies

.891 22 Electric shock therapy (Electroconvulsive therapy)

.891 3 Physical therapies

For electric shock therapy, see 616.89122; psychosurgery, 617.481

.891 4 Psychotherapy

For group and family psychotherapy, see 616.8915; mental and activity therapies, 616.8916; psychoanalysis, 616.8917

.891 42 Behavior therapy (Behavior modification therapy)

.891 43 Gestalt therapy

.891 44 Milieu therapy

Utilization of the environment for treatment

.891 45 Transactional analysis

.891 5 Group and family psychotherapy

.891 52 Group psychotherapy

.891 523 Psychodrama

.891 56 Family psychotherapy

Including marital psychotherapy

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.891 6 Mental and activity therapies

Add to base number 616.8916 the numbers following 615.851 in 615.8512–615.8516, e.g., hypnotherapy 616.89162

.891 7 Psychoanalysis

[.891 701 9] Psychological principles of psychoanalysis

Do not use; class in 150.195 unless applied to therapy, in which case class in 616.8917

.891 8 Drug therapy

Class drug shock therapy in 616.8912

> 616.892–616.898 Psychoses

Class here functional psychoses, organic psychoses

Class comprehensive works in 616.89; puerperal psychoses in 618.76; a specific organic psychosis not provided for here with the subject, e.g., psychosis due to brain tumors 616.99281

.892 *General paresis (Neurosyphilis)

Class comprehensive works on syphilis in 616.9513, locomotor ataxia in 616.838

.895 †Manic-depressive psychoses

Including depressive reactions, involutional psychoses

Class here manic, depressive, circular and alternating manic-depressive psychoses

Class comprehensive works on depression in 616.8527

.897 †Paranoia and paranoid conditions

.898 Schizophrenia, autism, senile dementia

.898 2 †Schizophrenia and †autism

.898 3 †Senile dementia

See also 616.831 for Alzheimer's disease

.9 Other diseases

Class here communicable diseases not otherwise provided for

See Manual at 616.01 vs. 616.9

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

†Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except use 0651 also for psychotherapies

SUMMARY

616.901–.909	**Standard subdivisions of communicable diseases**
.91	**Eruptive diseases (Exanthems)**
.92	**Bacterial and viral diseases**
.93	**Bacillary and protozoan diseases, cholera, dysenteries**
.94	**Bacterial blood diseases**
.95	**Venereal diseases and zoonoses**
.96	**Parasitic diseases**
.97	**Diseases of the immune system**
.98	**Noncommunicable diseases**
.99	**Tumors and miscellaneous communicable diseases**

.901–.903 Standard subdivisions of communicable diseases

As modified under 616.1–616.9

.904 Special topics in communicable diseases

Add to base number 616.904 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–09 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., diagnosis of communicable diseases 616.90475

.905–.909 Standard subdivisions of communicable diseases

As modified under 616.1–616.9

> 616.91–616.96 Communicable diseases

Class comprehensive works in 616.9; a specific communicable disease not provided for here with the disease, e.g., mumps 616.313

.91 *Eruptive diseases (Exanthems)

For eruptive fevers, see 616.9223

.912 *Smallpox (Variola major)

.913 *Attenuated forms of smallpox

Examples: alastrim (amaas, Cuban itch, variola minor), cowpox (variola vaccinia)

.914 *Chicken pox (Varicella)

.915 *Measles (Rubeola)

.916 *German measles (Rubella)

.917 *Scarlet fever (Scarlatina)

.92 *Bacterial and viral diseases

Examples: Lyme disease, toxic shock syndrome

Class a specific bacterial disease or group of bacterial diseases not provided for here with the disease or group of diseases, e.g., bacterial blood diseases 616.94

.921 *Dengue fever

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.922 *Rickettsial diseases

.922 2 *Epidemic (Louse-borne) and murine (flea-borne) typhus

Including Brill's disease

.922 3 *Rickettsialpox and tick typhus

Including boutonneuse fever

Class here eruptive fevers, spotted fevers

For North Queensland tick typhus, see 616.9226

.922 4 *Tsutsugamushi disease (Scrub typhus, Japanese river fever)

.922 5 *Q fever

.922 6 Bullis fever, North Queensland tick typhus, trench fever

.923 *Pasteurella and related diseases

.923 2 *Bubonic plague

.923 9 *Tularemia

.924 *Colorado tick fever and relapsing fevers

.924 2 *Colorado tick fever

.924 4 *Relapsing fevers

.925 *Viral diseases

Including comprehensive works on herpesvirus diseases

Class a specific viral disease or group of viral diseases with the disease or group of diseases, e.g., shingles 616.522, herpes simplex 2 (genital herpes) 616.9518

.927 *Salmonella diseases

.927 2 *Typhoid fever (Enteric fever)

.927 4 *Paratyphoid fever

.928 *Yellow fever

.93 Bacillary and protozoan diseases, cholera, dysenteries

.931 *Bacillary diseases

For bacillary dysentery, see 616.9355

.931 3 *Diphtheria

.931 5 *Botulism

.931 8 *Tetanus

.932 *Cholera

See Manual at 616.932 vs. 616.33

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.935 *Dysenteries

.935 3 *Amebic dysentery

.935 5 *Bacillary dysentery (Shigella diseases)

.936 *Protozoan diseases

For amebic dysentery, see 616.9353

.936 2 *Malaria

.936 3 *Trypanosomiasis

Examples: African sleeping sickness, e.g., Gambian and Rhodesian trypanosomiasis; Chagas' disease (South American trypanosomiasis)

.936 4 *Leishmaniasis

Examples: cutaneous leishmaniasis (oriental sores), mucocutaneous leishmaniasis (forest yaws), visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar)

.94 *Bacterial blood diseases

.942 *Erysipelas

.944 *Septicemia and pyemia

.95 Venereal diseases and zoonoses

For tularemia, see 616.9239

.951 *Venereal diseases

Class acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) in 616.9792

.951 3 *Syphilis

For locomotor ataxia, see 616.838; general paresis (neurosyphilis), 616.892

.951 5 *Gonorrhea

.951 8 Other venereal diseases

Examples: chancroid, herpes simplex type 2 (genital herpes), lymphogranuloma venereum

.953 *Rabies (Hydrophobia)

.954 *Glanders (Equinia)

.956 *Anthrax

Variant names: charbon, splenic fever

Example: Woolsorters' disease

.957 *Undulant fever (Brucellosis)

.958 *Parrot fever (Psittacosis)

.959 *Zoonoses

Class a specific zoonosis with the disease, e.g., Q fever 616.9225

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.96 *Parasitic diseases

Class here medical parasitology

For parasitic skin diseases, see 616.57

.962 *Diseases due to endoparasites

For diseases due to worms, see 616.963–616.965

> 616.963–616.965 Diseases due to worms

Class here medical helminthology

Class comprehensive works in 616.962

.963 *Diseases due to flukes (Trematoda)

Example: schistosomiasis (bilharziasis)

.964 *Diseases due to tapeworms (Cestoda)

Examples: hydatid diseases (echinococcosis)

.965 *Diseases due to roundworms (Nematoda)

.965 2 *To filariae

Examples: elephantiasis, onchocerciasis, wuchereriasis

Class here filariasis

.965 4 To other nematodes

Including ascariasis, enterobiasis, hookworm infestations (ancyclostomiasis), trichinosis

.968 *Diseases due to ectoparasites

Class here medical entomology

Class a specific entomological disease with the disease, e.g., Colorado tick fever 616.9242

.969 *Diseases due to fungi

Including fungal allergies

Class here medical mycology

.97 *Diseases of the immune system

Former heading: Allergies and autoimmune diseases

Class here failures of immunity [*formerly also* 616.079], comprehensive works on allergies

Class a specific allergy not provided for here with the subject, e.g., hay fever 616.202

.973 *Contact allergies

Class here dermatological allergies

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.975 *Food and drug allergies

Class here allergies of the digestive system

.977 *Physical allergies

Hypersensitivity to physical agents, e.g., heat, sunlight, cold, humidity

.978 *Autoimmune diseases

Diseases caused by immune reactions to the body's own tissues

Class here autoimmunity [*formerly* 616.079]

Class systemic lupus erythematosus in 616.77

.979 *Immune deficiency diseases

.979 2 *Acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)

.98 Noncommunicable diseases

Class here environmental medicine, diseases due to stress

Use 616.98001–616.98009 for standard subdivisions

Class noncommunicable diseases of a specific organ or system with the subject, e.g., mental disorders 616.89

For tumors, see 616.992

.980 2 Specialized medical fields

Example: travel medicine

For industrial and occupational medicine, see 616.9803

.980 21 Aerospace medicine

.980 213 Aviation medicine

.980 214 Space medicine

.980 22 Submarine medicine

Class diseases due to compression and decompression in 616.9894

.980 23 Military medicine

For naval medicine, see 616.98024

.980 24 Naval medicine

.980 3 Industrial and occupational medicine

See also 613.62 for industrial and occupational health

.988 *Diseases due to climate and weather

Class here medical climatology and meteorology

Add to base number 616.988 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–13 from Table 2, e.g., diseases due to tropical climate 616.9883

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.989 *Diseases due to physical agents

Examples: heat exhaustion, hypothermia

Diseases due to light are predominantly dermatological and are classed in 616.5

.989 2 *To motion

.989 3 *To altitude

Example: mountain sickness

.989 4 *To compression and decompression

.989 6 *To sound and other vibrations

.989 7 *To radiation

Class here comprehensive medical works on radiation sickness and injuries

.99 Tumors and miscellaneous communicable diseases

Only those named below

Use of this number for other diseases discontinued; class in 616.9

.991 *Rheumatic fever

.992 †Tumors (Neoplasms and neoplastic diseases)

Medical and surgical treatment

Class here oncology

Add to base number 616.992 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., tumors of teeth and surrounding tissues 616.992314 [*formerly* 617.63], tumors of eyes 616.99284 [*formerly* 617.7]; tumors of ears 616.99285 [*formerly* 617.8]; then add further as instructed under 618.1–618.8

For benign tumors, see 616.993; malignant tumors, 616.994

See Manual at 616.992 vs. 616.994

.993 †Benign tumors (neoplasms)

Medical and surgical treatment

Example: adenomas [*formerly also* 616.994]

Add to base number 616.993 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., neurofibromatosis (Recklinghausen's disease) 616.99383, benign skin tumors 616.99377; then add further as instructed under 618.1–618.8

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

†Add as instructed under 618.1–618.8

.994 †Cancers (Malignant tumors [neoplasms])

Medical and surgical treatment

Class here carcinomas

Adenomas relocated to 616.993

See Manual at 616.992 vs. 616.994

.994 1 †Of cardiovascular organs and blood

.994 11–.994 15 Of cardiovascular organs

Add to base number 616.9941 the numbers following 611.1 in 611.11–611.15, e.g., cancer of heart 616.99412; then add further as instructed under 618.1–618.8

.994 18 †Of the blood

Including erythrocytes, plasma, platelets

For cancer of leucocytes, see 616.99419

.994 19 †Leukemia

Cancer of leucocytes

.994 2–.994 9 Cancers (Malignant tumors [neoplasms]) of other organs and of regions

Add to base number 616.994 the numbers following 611 in 611.2–611.9, e.g., cancer of lymphatic glands (Hodgkin's disease) 616.99446; then add further as instructed under 618.1–618.8

.995 *Tuberculosis

Add to base number 616.995 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., tuberculosis of the teeth and surrounding tissues 616.995314 [*formerly* 617.63], tuberculosis of the eyes 616.99584 [*formerly* 617.7], tuberculosis of the ears 616.99585 [*formerly* 617.8], pulmonary tuberculosis 616.99524; then add further as instructed, under 616.1–616.9

See Manual at 616.995

.998 *Leprosy (Hansen's disease)

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

†Add as instructed under 618.1–618.8

617 Miscellaneous branches of medicine Surgery

Only those branches named below

Comprehensive works on major, minor, emergency surgery are classed in 617.024–617.026; on surgery by instrument and technique in 617.05; on surgical pathology in 617.07; on operative surgery and special fields of surgery in 617.9

Except where contrary instructions are given, all notes under 616.01–616.08 and in the table under 616.1–616.9 are applicable here

Except for additions, changes, deletions, exceptions shown under specific entries, add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:

001–007 Standard subdivisions
As modified under 616.1–616.9
008 History and description with respect to kinds of persons
0083 Young people
Class dentistry for infants and children in 617.645; surgery for infants and children up to puberty in 617.98; regional medicine, ophthalmology, otology, audiology for infants and children up to puberty in 618.92097
0084 Persons in specific stages of adulthood
[00846] Late adulthood
Do not use; class in 618.97, except class surgery in 617.97
0088 Occupational and religious groups
0088355 Military personnel
Class military surgery in 617.99
[009] Historical, geographical, persons treatment
Do not use; class in 09
01 Surgical complications and sequelae
Examples: complicating preconditions, e.g., heart problems; surgical infections
02 Special topics
023 Personnel
Nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships
0232 Physicians
0233 Technicians and assistants
024 Domestic medicine
For first aid, see 0262
026 Emergencies
0262 First aid
027 Experimental medicine
028 Intensive care
03 Rehabilitation
Restoration of a sick or disabled person by therapy and by training for participation in the activities of a normal life within the limitations of disabilities
Including self-help devices for persons with disabilities
Class rehabilitative therapy in 06
04 Special classes of diseases
042 Genetic diseases
043 Congenital diseases
Class congenital diseases of genetic origin in 042
044 Wounds and injuries
05 Preventive measures and surgery

(continued)

617 Miscellaneous branches of medicine Surgery (continued)

052 Preventive measures
By the individual and by medical personnel
Class comprehensive works on prevention in 613, public measures for preventing specific diseases in 614.5

059 Surgery
Including surgery utilizing specific instruments or techniques, e.g., catheterization, cryosurgery, laser surgery, microsurgery
For surgical complications and sequelae, see 01
See Manual at 617: Add table: 059

0592 Cosmetic and restorative plastic surgery, transplantation of tissue and organs, implantation of artificial organs

06 Therapy
Class here rehabilitative therapy
Class comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and training for persons with a specific disease or kind of disease in 03
For surgery, see 059
See Manual at 617: Add table: 06

061 Drug therapy

062–069 Other therapies
Add to 06 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., X-ray therapy 06422, rehabilitative activity therapies 06515

07 Pathology
Add to 07 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.071–616.079, e.g., physical diagnosis 0754

08 Psychosomatic medicine

09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
Add to 09 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., the subject in India 0954

See Manual at 615.7 vs. 616–618; 617 vs. 616; 618.9209 vs. 617; 618.977 vs. 617

SUMMARY

617.001–.008 Standard subdivisions of surgery
.01–.09 [General topics]
.1 Wounds and injuries
.2 Results of injuries
.3 Orthopedics
.4 Surgery by systems
.5 Regional medicine Regional surgery
.6 Dentistry
.7 Ophthalmology
.8 Otology and audiology
.9 Operative surgery and special fields of surgery

.001 Philosophy and theory of surgery

.002 Miscellany of surgery

[.002 3] Surgery as a profession, occupation, hobby

Do not use; class in 617.023

[.002 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 617.9, except class testing and measurement in 617.075

.003–.007 Standard subdivisions of surgery

.008 History and description of surgery with respect to kinds of persons

.008 3 Young people

Class surgery for infants and children up to puberty in 617.98

.008 4 Persons in specific stages of adulthood

[.008 46] Late adulthood

Do not use; class in 617.97

.008 8 Occupational and religious groups

[.008 835 5] Military personnel

Do not use; class in 617.99

[.009] Historical, geographical, persons treatment of surgery

Do not use; class in 617.09

.01 Surgical complications and sequelae

Examples: complicating preconditions, e.g., heart problems; surgical infection

.02 Special topics

.023 Personnel

Nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships

Do not use for the technology of the operations that the personnel perform, e.g., physical diagnosis by a surgeon 617.0754 (*not* 617.0232)

.023 2 Surgeons

.023 3 Surgical technicians and assistants

.024 Minor surgery

Class here outpatient surgery

.025 Major surgery

.026 Emergency surgery

.026 2 First aid

.03 Rehabilitation

Restoration of a sick or disabled person by therapy and by training for participation in the activities of a normal life within the limitations of disabilities

Including self-help devices for persons with disabilities

Class rehabilitative therapy in 617.06

.05 Surgery by instrument and technique

Examples: cryosurgery, laser surgery, microsurgery

.06 Nonsurgical therapy

Class here rehabilitative therapy

Add to base number 617.06 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., X-ray therapy 617.06422, rehabilitative activity therapies in 617.06515

Class comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and training in 617.03

.07 Pathology

Add to base number 617.07 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.071–616.079, e.g., physical diagnosis 617.0754

.08 Psychosomatic medicine

.09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of surgery

Add to base number 617.09 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., collective biographies of surgeons 617.0922

> **617.1–617.5 Surgery**

Class comprehensive works in 617, surgical treatment of tumors in 616.992–616.994

For operative surgery and special fields of surgery, see 617.9

.1 Wounds and injuries

Class here traumatology

Use 617.1001–617.1009 for standard subdivisions

Class wounds and injuries of specific systems, regions, organs in 617.4–617.5

Class results of injuries in 617.2

.102 Special topics

.102 6 Emergencies

.102 62 First aid

Class first aid for a specific type of wound or injury with the type, e.g., first aid for crash wounds 617.1028

.102 7 Athletic injuries

Class here sports medicine

Class a specific branch of sports medicine with the subject, e.g., promotion of health of athletes 613.711

.102 8 Crash injuries

Injuries resulting from transportation accidents

.103 Rehabilitation

Restoration of a sick or disabled person by therapy and by training for participation in the activities of a normal life within the limitations of disabilities

Including self-help devices for persons with disabilities

Class rehabilitative therapy in 617.106

.106 Nonsurgical therapy

Class here rehabilitative therapy

Add to base number 617.106 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., therapeutic massage 617.10622, rehabilitative activity therapies 615.8+515

Class comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and training in 617.103

.107 Pathology

Add to base number 617.107 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.071–616.079, e.g., physical diagnosis 617.10754

.11 *Burns and scalds

Class burns and scalds resulting from injuries from electricity and radiation in 617.12

.12 *Injuries from electricity and radiation

.122 *From electricity

.124 *From radiation

Class comprehensive medical works on radiation sickness and injuries in 616.9897

.13 *Abrasions and contusions

.14 *Wounds

For abrasions and contusions, see 617.13

.140 6 Therapy

Class removal of foreign bodies from wounds in 617.146

.143 *Incisions, lacerations, punctures

.145 *Gunshot wounds

.146 Removal of foreign bodies from wounds

.15 Fractures

Add to base number 617.15 the numbers following 611.71 in 611.711–611.718, e.g., fracture of femur 617.158

.16 *Dislocations

*Add as instructed under 617

.17 *Sprains and strains

.18 *Asphyxiation

Examples: choking, drowning, hanging, strangulation, suffocation

.19 *Blast injuries

.2 Results of injuries

See also 617.103 for rehabilitation, 617.106 for rehabilitative therapy

.21 Traumatic and surgical shock

.22 Inflammation, infection, fever

.3 Orthopedics

Correction of deformities

Class here treatment of chronic diseases of the skeletal system

Class plastic surgery of bones in 617.4710592

For fractures, see 617.15

See Manual at 617.3 vs. 616.7, 617.5

.300 1 Philosophy and theory

.300 2 Miscellany

.300 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Class orthopedic appliances in 617.307

.300 3–.300 9 Standard subdivisions

.307 Orthopedic appliances

See Manual at 617.307 vs. 617.9

.37 *Deformities

For deformities of the extremities, see 617.39

.371 *Head and neck

.374 *Chest

.375 *Spine

Example: scoliosis

.376 *Hip and pelvis

.39 *Deformities of the extremities

Class amputations in 617.58

.397 *Upper extremities

.398 *Lower extremities

See also 617.585 for podiatry

*Add as instructed under 617

> **617.4–617.5 Surgery by systems and regions**

Class here wounds and injuries of specific systems, regions, organs; surgery of specific organs

Class comprehensive works in 617

.4 Surgery by systems

For respiratory system, see 617.54

See Manual at 612.1–612.8; 617.4 vs. 616

.41 *Cardiovascular system

.412 *Heart

Implantation of heart pacers is classed in 617.412059, their functioning in 617.4120645

.413 *Arteries

Class here comprehensive works on surgery of blood vessels (vascular surgery)

Class surgery of blood vessels in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., cerebrovascular surgery 617.481

For veins, see 617.414; capillaries, 617.415

.414 *Veins

.415 *Capillaries

.43 *Digestive system

Including bariatric surgery

Class surgery of specific organs of digestive system in 617.5

.44 *Glands and lymphatic system

Including bone marrow

Class surgery of a specific gland with the gland, e.g., thyroid gland 617.539

.46 *Urogenital system

Class gynecological and obstetrical surgery in 618

.461 *Kidneys, adrenal glands, ureters

Class here comprehensive works on surgery of urinary organs

Subdivisions may be added for surgery of kidneys

Hemodialysis, peritoneal dialysis are classed in 617.461059

For bladder and urethra, see 617.462

.462 *Bladder and urethra

*Add as instructed under 617

.463 *Male genital organs

.47 *Motor and integumentary systems

For amputations, see 617.58

.471 *Bones

Class chronic diseases of the skeletal system in 616.71

See also 617.44 for bone marrow

.471 044 Wounds and injuries

For fractures, see 617.15

.472 *Joints

Surgery of joints of the extremities relocated to 617.58

For jaws, see 617.522

See also 616.72 for nonsurgical medical aspects of joints

.472 044 Wounds and injuries

For dislocations, see 617.16

.473 *Muscles

.473 044 Wounds and injuries

For sprains and strains, see 617.17

.474 *Tendons

.475 *Bursae

.477 *Integument

Class here surgery of the skin

.477 9 *Hair

Including removal, transplantation

.48 *Nervous system

Class here neurosurgery

Class ophthalmological surgery in 617.71; otological surgery in 617.81–617.88; surgery of nerves of a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., neuromuscular surgery 617.473

.481 *Brain

Including psychosurgery, topectomy

.482 *Spinal cord

Including surgical treatment of spina bifida

.483 *Nerves

*Add as instructed under 617

.5 Regional medicine Regional surgery

Class nonsurgical medicine of specific systems or organs in specific regions in 616

See Manual at 617.3 vs. 616.7, 617.5; 617.5

SUMMARY

617.51	**Head**
.52	**Face**
.53	**Neck**
.54	**Thorax (Chest) and respiratory system**
.55	**Abdominal and pelvic cavities**
.56	**Back**
.57	**Upper extremities**
.58	**Lower extremities**

.51 *Head

Class here otorhinolaryngology, comprehensive works on diseases of eyes, ears, nose, throat

Class ears in 617.8

For face, see 617.52; throat, 617.531

.514 *Skull

.52 *Face

Class eyes in 617.7

.522 *Oral region

Including lips, tongue, jaws, parotid gland

Class the mouth as a digestive organ in 616.31, teeth in 617.6

See Manual at 617.522 vs. 617.605

.522 5 *Palate

.523 *Nose

Class here comprehensive works on nose and throat

Class comprehensive works on diseases of eyes, ears, nose, throat in 617.51

For throat, see 617.531

.53 *Neck

.531 *Throat

For pharynx, see 617.532; larynx and trachea, 617.533

.532 *Pharynx

Including tonsils

*Add as instructed under 617

.533 *Larynx and trachea

Including epiglottis, vocal cords

.539 *Thyroid and parathyroid glands

.54 *Thorax (Chest) and respiratory system

Class surgery of heart in 617.412, of nose in 617.523, of larynx and trachea in 617.533

.542 *Lungs

.543 *Pleura

.544 *Bronchi

.545 *Mediastinum

.546 *Thymus gland

.547 *Diaphragm

.548 *Esophagus

.549 *Male breast

Class comprehensive works on surgery of the breast in 618.19

.55 *Abdominal and pelvic cavities

For urogenital system, see 617.46

.551 *Spleen

.553 *Stomach

Including pylorus

.554 *Intestine

.554 1 *Small intestine

Contains duodenum, jejunum, ileum

.554 5 *Cecum and vermiform appendix

.554 7 *Large intestine

Including colon, sigmoid flexure (sigmoid colon)

For cecum and vermiform appendix, see 617.5545; rectum, 617.555

.555 *Rectum, anus, perineum

.556 *Biliary tract

Contains liver, gall bladder, bile ducts

.557 *Pancreas and islands of Langerhans

*Add as instructed under 617

.558 *Peritoneum

Including mesentery, omentum

.559 *Abdominal hernias

.56 *Back

Class shoulders in 617.572, hips in 617.581

.564 *Backache

.57 *Upper extremities

.572 *Shoulders

.574 *Arms, elbows, wrists

.575 *Hands

.58 *Lower extremities

Class here surgery of joints of the extremities [*formerly also* 617.472], comprehensive works on the extremities, on amputations

For upper extremities, see 617.57

See also 616.72 for nonsurgical medical aspects of joints

.581 *Hips

.582 *Thighs and knees

.584 *Legs and ankles

Leg: segment of inferior limb between knee and ankle

.585 *Feet

Class here podiatry (chiropody)

.6 *Dentistry

.600 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

.601 Oral hygiene and preventive dentistry

Class here dental hygiene

Class surgical complications and sequelae in 617.605

.605 Surgery

Including surgical complications and sequelae

Class preventive measures in 617.601, orthodontics in 617.643, cavities in 617.67

See Manual at 617.522 vs. 617.605

[.605 9] Surgical therapy

Number discontinued; class in 617.605

*Add as instructed under 617

[.609] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 617.6009

.63 *Dental diseases

Tumors of teeth and surrounding tissues relocated to 616.992314, tuberculosis of teeth and surrounding tissues to 616.995314

.632 *Of gums and tooth sockets

Including alveolar abscesses, gingivitis, periodontitis, pyorrhea

Class here periodontics

.634 *Of tooth tissues

Examples: diseases of cementum, dentine, enamel

For cavities, see 617.67

.634 2 *Of dental pulp

Class here endodontics

.64 Orthodontics and pedodontics

.643 *Orthodontics

.645 *Pedodontics

Class a specific aspect of pedodontics with the aspect, e.g., periodontics 617.632

.66 *Extractions

Class here exodontics

.67 *Cavities (Caries)

.672 Preparation and treatment

.675 Fillings and inlays

Examples: amalgam, cement, porcelain, plastic fillings and inlays

.69 Prosthetic dentistry (Prosthodontics)

.690 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Class materials in 617.695

.692 Dentures, crowns, bridges

.695 Materials

.7 *Ophthalmology

Treatment of ocular diseases, correction of refractive errors

Tumors of eyes relocated to 616.99284, tuberculosis of eyes to 616.99584

[.704 4] Wounds and injuries

Do not use; class in 617.713

*Add as instructed under 617

[.705 9] Surgical therapy

Do not use; class in 617.71

[.707] Pathology

Do not use; class in 617.71

.71 Pathology and surgery of eyes

Class pathology and surgery of specific diseases and parts of eyes with the disease or part, e.g., diagnosis of glaucoma 617.741075

.712 *Loss of function

Blindness and partial blindness

See also 617.75 for disorders of refraction and accommodation, color blindness

.713 *Wounds and injuries

.715 Diagnosis and prognosis

Add to base number 617.715 the numbers following 616.075 in 616.0751–616.0759, e.g., physical diagnosis 617.7154

.719 Diseases of corneas and scleras

See also 362.1783 for eye banks

.719 001–.719 009 Standard subdivisions

.72 *Diseases of uveas

Contains diseases of choroids, ciliary bodies, irises

.73 *Diseases of optic nerves and retinas

Class diseases of ocular neuromuscular mechanism in 617.762

.74 *Diseases of eyeballs

For diseases of corneas and scleras, see 617.719; of uveas, 617.72; of retinas, 617.73

.741 *Glaucoma

.742 *Diseases of crystalline lenses

Class here cataracts

.746 *Diseases of vitreous bodies

.75 Disorders of refraction and accommodation, color blindness

Class here optometry

Use of this number for other functional disorders of vision discontinued; class in 617.7

See also 617.712 for blindness and partial blindness

*Add as instructed under 617

.752 Optical work

Setting and adjusting lenses, mechanical work of opticians

.752 2 Eyeglasses

Other than contact lenses, intraocular lenses

See also 617.7523 for contact lenses, 617.7524 for intraocular lenses

.752 3 Contact lenses

.752 4 Intraocular lenses

.755 Disorders of refraction and accommodation

Examples: astigmatism, hyperopia, myopia, presbyopia

For aniseikonia, see 617.758

.758 Aniseikonia

.759 Color blindness

.76 Diseases of ocular muscles and lacrimal mechanisms

.762 *Of ocular neuromuscular mechanism

Examples: binocular imbalance, diplopia, strabismus

Class here orthoptics

.764 *Of lacrimal glands and ducts

.77 Diseases of conjunctivas and eyelids

.771 *Of eyelids

.772 *Trachoma

.773 *Conjunctivitis

For trachoma, see 617.772

.78 *Diseases of orbits

.79 Prosthetic ophthalmology

Fitting of artificial eyes

.8 *Otology and audiology

Class here loss and impairment of function (deafness and hearing impairment)

Tumors of ears relocated to 616.99285, tuberculosis of ears to 616.99585

.81 *Diseases of external ears

For diseases of auricles, see 617.82; of auditory canals, 617.83

.82 *Diseases of auricles

.83 *Diseases of auditory canals

*Add as instructed under 617

.84 *Diseases of middle ears

For diseases of tympanic membranes, see 617.85; of eustachian tubes, 617.86; of mastoid processes, 617.87

.842 *Of ossicles

.85 *Diseases of tympanic membranes

.86 *Diseases of eustachian tubes (auditory tubes)

.87 *Diseases of mastoid processes

.88 *Diseases of internal ears and the aural nervous system

.882 *Diseases of internal ears

Example: Menière's disease

Including diseases of cochleas (labyrinths), semicircular canals, vestibules

.886 *Diseases of the aural nervous system

Including sensorineural deafness

.89 Correction of impaired hearing

Example: use of hearing aids

Class treatment of diseases of specific parts of the hearing apparatus in 617.81–617.88

.9 Operative surgery and special fields of surgery

Class here auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials; comprehensive works on surgical appliances, on prosthetic equipment

Class a specific appliance or piece of equipment with its specific use, e.g., dentures 617.692

See Manual at 617.307 vs. 617.9

> 617.91–617.96 Surgical techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class comprehensive works in 617.9; except for anesthesiology class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials of surgery of a specific system, organ, region with surgical therapy of the subject, e.g., preoperative care in neck surgery 617.53059

.91 Operative surgery

For anesthesiology, see 617.96

.910 01 Philosophy and theory

.910 02 Miscellany

*Add as instructed under 617

.910 028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures

Class surgical instruments, apparatus, equipment, materials in 617.9178

.910 03–.910 09 Standard subdivisions

.910 1 Asepsis and antisepsis

.917 Operating room

.917 2 Preparation of the operating room

.917 8 Surgical instruments, apparatus, equipment, materials

For surgical dressings, see 617.93

.919 Preoperative and postoperative care

.93 Surgical dressings and their use

.95 Cosmetic and restorative plastic surgery, transplantation of tissue and organs, implantation of artificial organs

Class plastic surgery and transplantation of tissue of specific systems, regions, organs in 617.4–617.5, transplantation of specific organs and implantation of artificial substitutes for specific organs in 617.4, in all cases using subdivision 0592 under 617

See also 362.1783 for tissue and organ banks

.950 01–.950 09 Standard subdivisions

.96 Anesthesiology

Methods and techniques of inducing anesthesia, management of accidents and complications resulting from it

Class acupuncture as an anesthetic in 615.892

.960 4 Special topics

.960 41 Complications and sequelae

.960 42 Emergencies

Class resuscitology in 615.8043

> 617.962–617.966 Types of anesthesia

Class comprehensive works in 617.96, anesthesiology regardless of type for specific kinds of surgery in 617.967

.962 General anesthesia

Examples: inhalation, intravenous, rectal anesthesias

.964 Regional anesthesia

Examples: caudal, epidural (peridural), saddle block, spinal anesthesias

.966 Local anesthesia

.967 Anesthesiology for specific kinds of surgery

General, regional, local anesthesia

Add to base number 617.967 the numbers following 617 in 617.1–617.9, e.g., dental anesthesia 617.9676

For anesthesiology for gynecology and obstetrics, see 617.968

.968 Anesthesiology for gynecology and obstetrics

.968 1 Gynecology

.968 2 Obstetrics

> 617.97–617.99 Special fields of surgery

Class comprehensive works in 617.9; specific surgical techniques regardless of field in 617.91–617.96; surgery of a specific organ, system, disorder regardless of field with the subject, e.g., fractures 617.15

.97 *Geriatric surgery

.98 *Pediatric surgery

.99 *Military surgery

618 Other branches of medicine Gynecology and obstetrics

See Manual at 615.7 vs. 616–618

SUMMARY

618.01–.09 [Standard subdivisions and special topics of gynecology and obstetrics]
.1 Gynecology
.2 Obstetrics
.3 Diseases and complications of pregnancy
.4 Childbirth (Parturition) Labor
.5 Complicated labor
.6 Normal puerperium
.7 Puerperal diseases
.8 Obstetrical surgery
.9 Pediatrics and geriatrics

.01 Philosophy and theory of gynecology and obstetrics

.02 Miscellany of gynecology and obstetrics

[.028 7] Testing and measurement

Relocated to 618.0475

.03 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of gynecology and obstetrics

.04 Special topics of gynecology and obstetrics

Add to base number 618.04 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–09 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., testing and measurement 618.0475 [*formerly* 618.0287], emergencies 618.0425; however, class gynecology and obstetrics as a profession, occupation, hobby in 618.023

*Add as instructed under 617

.05–.07 Standard subdivisions of gynecology and obstetrics

.08 History and description of gynecology and obstetrics with respect to kinds of persons

.083 Young people

Class gynecology for girls up to puberty in 618.92098

.084 Persons in specific stages of adulthood

[.084 6] Late adulthood

Do not use; class 618.978

.09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of gynecology and obstetrics

Class life with a disease in 362.198

> **618.1–618.8 Gynecology and obstetrics**

Medical and surgical

Except where contrary instructions are given, all notes under 616.01–616.08 and in the table under 616.1–616.9 are applicable here

Except for additions, changes, deletions, exceptions shown under specific entries, add to the notation for each term identified by * as follows:

001–008 Standard subdivisions
As modified under 616.1–616.9
009 Historical, geographical, persons treatment
0092 Persons
Class life with a disease in 362.198
01–04 Microbiology, special topics, rehabilitation, special classes of diseases
Add to 0 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–04 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., medical emergencies 025
05 Preventive measures and surgery
052 Preventive measures
By the individual and by medical personnel
Class comprehensive works on prevention in 613, public measures preventing specific diseases in 614.5992
059 Surgery
Including surgical complications and sequelae; surgery utilizing specific instruments or techniques, e.g., catheterization, cryosurgery, laser surgery, microsurgery
06 Therapy
Class here rehabilitative therapy
Class comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and education for living with handicaps and disabilities in 03
For surgery, see 059
061 Drug therapy
062–069 Other therapies
Add to 06 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., X-ray therapy 06422
07 Pathology
Add to 07 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.071–616.079, e.g., physical diagnosis 0754

(continued)

> **618.1–618.8 Gynecology and obstetrics (continued)**

08 Psychosomatic medicine
09 Case histories

Class comprehensive works in 618

.1 *Gynecology

Including endocrine gynecology, endometriosis

Class tumors of genital system in 616.99265

For puerperal diseases, see 618.7; pediatric gynecology, 618.92098

.11 *Diseases of the ovaries

.12 *Diseases of the Fallopian tubes (oviducts)

.13 *Diseases of the perimetrium (Periuterine diseases)

.14 *Diseases of the uterus

Class here diseases of the uterine cervix

For diseases of the perimetrium, see 618.13

[.140 59] Surgery

Do not use; class in 618.145

.142 *Infections

Examples: cervicitis, endometritis, pyometra

For leukorrhea, see 618.173

See also 618.1 for endometriosis

.143 *Erosions

.144 *Malformations

Examples: atrophies, hypertrophies, prolapse of uterus

.145 Surgery

.145 3 Hysterectomies

.145 8 Dilation and curettage

See also 618.88 for surgical abortion

.15 *Diseases of the vagina

For leukorrhea, see 618.173

.16 *Diseases of the vulva

*Add as instructed under 618.1–618.8

.17 *Functional and systemic disorders

.172 *Menstruation disorders

Examples: amenorrhea, dysmenorrhea, menorrhagia, oligomenorrhea, premenstrual syndrome (PMS)

.173 *Leukorrhea

.175 *Menopause disorders

Class here comprehensive works on climacteric disorders

Class male climacteric disorders in 616.693, involutional psychoses in 616.895

.178 *Infertility

Including artificial insemination

Embryo transplant (''test-tube baby'') is classed in 618.178059

Class comprehensive works on male and female infertility in 616.692

.19 *Diseases of the breast

Class here comprehensive works on diseases of the male and female breast

Class tumors of the breast in 616.99249, surgery of the male breast in 617.549

For diseases of the male breast, see 616.49; diseases of lactation, 618.71

.2 *Obstetrics

For diseases, disorders, management of pregnancy, parturition, puerperium, see 618.3–618.8

[.205 2] Preventive measures

Do not use; class 618.24

[.205 9] Surgical therapy

Do not use; class in 618.8

[.207 5] Diagnosis

Do not use; class in 618.22

.22 Diagnosis

Use of this number for symptomatology discontinued; class in 618.2

.24 Prenatal care and preparation for childbirth

Examples: dietetics for pregnant women, exercises to aid childbirth

.25 *Multiple pregnancy and childbirth

*Add as instructed under 618.1–618.8

> **618.3–618.8 Diseases, disorders, management of pregnancy, parturition, puerperium**

Class comprehensive works in 618.2

.3 *Diseases and complications of pregnancy

.31 Extrauterine pregnancy (Ectopic pregnancy)

Examples: abdominal, cervical, ovarian, tubal pregnancies

.32 *Fetal disorders

Examples: fetal degeneration, calcification

Class here perinatal medicine

Amniocentesis to diagnose genetic diseases is classed in 618.32042

Class neonatal medicine in 618.9201

For childbirth, see 618.4

See Manual at 618.92 vs. 616, 618.32

.326 *Diseases of specific systems and organs

.326 1 *Of the cardiovascular system

.326 8 *Of the nervous system

Including drug dependence

[.33] Spontaneous abortion

Relocated to 618.392

.34 *Diseases of the placenta and amniotic fluid

.39 Miscarriage and premature delivery

.392 Spontaneous abortion [*formerly* 618.33] and miscarriage

Before fetus is viable

.397 Premature delivery

After fetus is viable and before full term

.4 Childbirth (Parturition) Labor

Class a specific aspect not provided for here with the aspect, e.g., Caesarean section 618.86

.42 Presentations

Position of fetal body during labor

.45 Natural childbirth

Childbirth without use of analgesics

*Add as instructed under 618.1–618.8

.5 Complicated labor

.51 Maternal complications

Difficult labor due to anomalies of expellant forces and mechanical obstructions

.53 Fetal complications

Difficult labor due to size of fetus

.54 Uterine hemorrhage

.56 Placental complications

.58 Complications from umbilical cord

.6 Normal puerperium

Postpartum management and care

.7 *Puerperal diseases

Example: Sheehan's syndrome

.71 *Diseases of lactation

.73 *Puerperal metritis and peritonitis

.74 *Puerperal septicemia and pyemia

.75 *Puerperal eclampsia

.76 *Puerperal mental disorders

Example: postpartum depression

.77 *Hemic disorders

.79 Maternal death

.8 Obstetrical surgery

Class embryo transplant (''test-tube baby'') in 618.178059

.82 Version and extraction

Class embryo transplant (''test-tube baby'') in 618.178059

.83 Embryotomy and craniotomy

Mutilation of fetus to facilitate delivery when impossible by natural means

.85 Minor surgery

Examples: episiotomy, repair of lacerations of genital tract, symphyseotomy, vaginiperineotomy

.86 Caesarean section

.87 Surgical removal of placenta

.88 Surgical abortion

*Add as instructed under 618.1–618.8

.89 Asepsis and antisepsis

.9 Pediatrics and geriatrics

.92 Pediatrics

Diseases of infants and children up to puberty

Including sudden infant death syndrome (crib death, cot death)

Class medicine for young people who have reached puberty in 616.00835; pediatric aspects of wounds and injuries in 617.1, of results of injuries in 617.2; pediatric orthopedics in 617.3

For pedodontics, see 617.645; pediatric surgery, 617.98

See Manual at 618.92 vs. 616, 618.32

.920 001–.920 008 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 616.1–616.9

.920 009 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

.920 009 2 Persons

Class life with a physical disease in 362.19892, with a psychiatric disorder in 618.92890092

.920 01–.920 09 General topics

Add to base number 618.920 notation 01–09 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., diagnosis 618.920075; however, class pediatric preventive measures in 613.0432, pediatric therapeutics in 615.542

.920 1 Newborn infants (Neonates)

In first month after birth

Class perinatal medicine in 618.32

.920 11 Premature infants

.920 12 Full-term infants

.920 9 Special branches of medicine

Class sports medicine in 617.1027, orthopedics in 617.3, pedodontics in 617.645, surgery in 617.98

See Manual at 618.9209 vs. 617

.920 97 Regional medicine, ophthalmology, otology, audiology

.920 975 Regional medicine

Add to base number 618.920975 the numbers following 617.5 in 617.51–617.58, e.g., disorders of the face 618.9209752

.920 977–.920 978 Ophthalmology, otology, audiology

Add to base number 618.92097 the numbers following 617 in 617.7–617.8, e.g., trachoma in children 618.92097772

.920 98 Gynecology

.920 981 Specific diseases

Add to base number 618.920981 the numbers following 618.1 in 618.11–618.19, e.g., diseases of the uterus 618.9209814

.921–.929 Specific diseases

Add to base number 618.92 the numbers following 616 in 616.1–616.9, e.g., cardiac diseases in children 618.9212

Class orthopedic diseases in 617.3, dental diseases in 617.645, other diseases not provided for here in 618.9209

.97 *Geriatrics

Diseases of persons in late adulthood

[.970 5] Preventive measures

Do not use; class in 613.0438

[.970 6] Therapy

Do not use; class in 615.547

.976–.978 Specific diseases

Add to base number 618.97 the numbers following 61 in 616–618, e.g., geriatric mental illness 618.97689; however, class geriatric aspects of wounds and injuries in 617.1, of results of injuries in 617.2; geriatric orthopedics in 617.3; geriatric surgery in 617.97

See Manual at 618.977 vs. 617

619 Experimental medicine

Class experimental medicine with respect to pharmacology and therapeutics in 615, with respect to specific diseases in 616–618; animal experimentation with respect to anatomy and physiology in 591–599, human experimentation with respect to anatomy and physiology in 611–612

.5 Fowl

.7 Dogs

.8 Cats

.9 Other mammals

.93 Rodents and rabbits

Examples: guinea pigs, hamsters, mice, rats

.98 Primates

Examples: apes, monkeys, humans

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

620 Engineering and allied operations

Class here manufacturing of products of various branches of engineering

Class comprehensive works on manufacturing in 670

For chemical engineering, see 660

SUMMARY

620.001–.009 [Standard subdivisions and general topics]
.1 Engineering mechanics and materials
.2 Sound and related vibrations
.3 Mechanical vibration
.4 Engineering for specific kinds of geographical environments, fine particle and remote control technology
.8 Human-factors and safety engineering

621 Applied physics
.04 [Energy and plasma engineering]
.1 Steam engineering
.2 Hydraulic-power technology
.3 Electric, electronic, magnetic, communications, computer engineering; lighting
.4 Heat engineering and prime movers
.5 Pneumatic, vacuum, low-temperature technologies
.6 Fans, blowers, pumps
.8 Machine engineering
.9 Tools and fabricating equipment

622 Mining and related operations
.1 Prospecting and exploratory operations
.2 Excavation techniques
.3 Mining for specific materials
.4 Mine environment
.5 Mine drainage
.6 Mine transport systems
.7 Ore dressing
.8 Mine health and safety

623 Military and nautical engineering
.04 General topics
.1 Fortifications
.2 Mine laying, mine clearance, demolition
.3 Engineering of defense
.4 Ordnance
.5 Ballistics and gunnery
.6 Military transportation technology
.7 Communications, vehicles, sanitation, related topics
.8 Nautical engineering and seamanship

624 Civil engineering
.1 Structural engineering and underground construction
.2 Bridges
.3 Specific types of bridges
.4 Tubular and box-girder bridges
.5 Suspension bridges
.6 Arch bridges
.7 Compound bridges
.8 Movable bridges

625 Engineering of railroads, roads, highways
.1 Railroads
.2 Railroad rolling stock
.3 Inclined, mountain, ship railroads
.4 Rapid transit systems
.5 Cable and aerial railways
.6 Surface rail and trolley systems
.7 Roads
.8 Artificial road surfaces

627 Hydraulic engineering
.04 [Hydrodynamics and recreational waters]
.1 Inland waterways
.2 Harbors, ports, roadsteads
.3 Port installations
.4 Flood control
.5 Reclamation, irrigation, related topics
.7 Underwater operations
.8 Dams and reservoirs
.9 Other hydraulic structures

628 Sanitary and municipal engineering Environmental protection engineering
.1 Water supply
.2 Sewers and sewage
.3 Sewage treatment and disposal
.4 Waste technology, public toilets, street cleaning
.5 Pollution technology and industrial sanitation engineering
.7 Sanitary engineering for rural and sparsely populated areas
.9 Other branches of sanitary and municipal engineering

629 Other branches of engineering
.04 Transportation engineering
.1 Aerospace engineering
.2 Motor land vehicles, and cycles
.3 Air-cushion vehicles (Ground-effect machines, Hovercraft)
.4 Astronautics
.8 Automatic control engineering

.001 Philosophy and theory

.001 1 Systems

Class interdisciplinary works on systems in 003; works covering systems of agriculture, home economics, or management in addition to engineering in 601.1; design of engineering systems in 620.0042; manufacturing systems in 670.11

.001 13 Computer modeling and simulation

Class computer-aided design in 620.00420285

.001 171 Large-scale systems

Class here analysis of large, complex systems [*formerly* 620.72]

[.001 53] Physical principles in engineering

Do not use; class comprehensive works in 621, engineering mechanics in 620.1, sound engineering in 620.2, electrical and magnetic engineering in 621.3, optical engineering in 621.36, electronic engineering in 621.381, heat engineering in 621.402, nuclear engineering in 621.48

.002 Miscellany

[.002 87] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 620.0044

[.002 88] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 620.0046

[.002 89] Safety engineering

Relocated to 620.86

.003 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

.004 Design, testing, measurement, quality, maintenance, repair

.004 2 Engineering design

Class here design of large, complex systems [*formerly* 620.72]

.004 202 85 Computer-aided design (CAD)

Class comprehensive works on computer-aided design and computer-aided manufacturing (CAD/CAM) in 670.285

[.004 22] Analysis

Number discontinued; class in 620

[.004 25] Design

Number discontinued; class in 620.0042

.004 4 Testing and measurement

Including inspection, simulation

Class interdisciplinary works on measurement in 530.8

.004 5 Quality

Examples: interchangeability, maintainability, precision

Class testing and measurement for quality in 620.0044, maintenance in 620.0046

.004 52 Reliability

.004 54 Durability

.004 6 Maintenance and repair

Class here interdisciplinary works on maintenance and repair

Class maintenance and repair in a specific subject with the subject, using notation 0288 from Table 1, e.g., clock and watch repair 681.110288

.005–.008 Standard subdivisions

.009 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

.009 1 Treatment by areas, regions, places in general

Class engineering to overcome problems of specific kinds of geographical environments in 620.41

.009 2 Persons

Class persons treatment of engineers known primarily as entrepreneurs in 338.76

.1 Engineering mechanics and materials

Use 620.1001–620.1009 for standard subdivisions of engineering mechanics and materials, of engineering mechanics alone

SUMMARY

620.103–.107	**Engineering (Applied) mechanics**
.11	**Engineering materials**
.12	**Wood**
.13	**Masonry materials**
.14	**Ceramic and allied materials**
.16	**Metals**
.17	**Ferrous metals**
.18	**Nonferrous metals**
.19	**Other engineering materials**

> 620.103–620.107 Engineering (Applied) mechanics

Class comprehensive works in 620.1

For fine particle technology, see 620.43

See also 531 for mechanics as a subject in physics

See Manual at 621 vs. 530

.103 Applied statics

Class applied solid statics in 620.1053, applied fluid statics in 620.1063

.104 Applied dynamics

Class applied solid dynamics in 620.1054, applied fluid dynamics in 620.1064

.105 Applied solid mechanics

Class structural theory in 624.17

For mechanical vibration, see 620.3

See also 621.811 for physical principles of machinery

.105 3 Statics

.105 4 Dynamics

.106 Applied fluid mechanics

Class here applied hydromechanics, comprehensive works on fluid-power technology

Class steam engineering in 621.1, hydraulic-power technology in 621.2, hydraulic engineering in 627

For applied gas mechanics, see 620.107

.106 3 Statics

.106 4 Dynamics

Including cavitation, pressure surge, water hammer

Class here flow

See also 621.4022 for convective transport, heat convection

.107 Applied gas mechanics

Class here applied aeromechanics

Class steam engineering in 621.1, pneumatic and vacuum technology in 621.5, aeromechanics of flight in 629.1323, air-conditioning engineering in 697.93

.107 3 Statics

.107 4 Dynamics

.11 Engineering materials

Class comprehensive works on materials, manufacture of materials in 670

For specific kinds of materials, see 620.12–620.19

SUMMARY

620.110 287	**Testing and measurement**
.112	**Resistance and other specific properties of materials, nondestructive testing**
.116	**Porous materials**
.117	**Organic materials**
.118	**Composite materials**

.110 287 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 620.1127

.112 Resistance and other specific properties of materials, nondestructive testing

Class here failure, strength of materials

Class properties and nondestructive testing of porous, organic, composite materials in 620.116–620.118

SUMMARY

620.112 1	**Resistance to thermal forces**
.112 2	**Resistance to decay, decomposition, deterioration**
.112 3	**Resistance to mechanical deformation (Mechanics of materials)**
.112 4	**Resistance to specific mechanical stresses**
.112 5	**Properties affecting permanent deformation**
.112 6	**Resistance to fracture (Fracture mechanics)**
.112 7	**Nondestructive testing**
.112 9	**Other properties**

> 620.112 1–620.112 6 Resistance to specific forces

Class comprehensive works in 620.112

.112 1 Resistance to thermal forces

Class resistance to thermal radiation in 620.11228

See also 620.11296 for thermal properties

.112 15 Changes in temperature

Examples: cyclical and sudden changes

.112 16 Low and cryogenic temperatures

.112 17 High temperatures

.112 2 Resistance to decay, decomposition, deterioration

Physicochemical actions not basically thermal or mechanical

Including action of pests

.112 23 Biodegradation, corrosion, weathering

Examples: rot, rust

.112 28 Resistance to radiations

.112 3 Resistance to mechanical deformation (Mechanics of materials)

Fatigue relocated to 620.1126

For resistance to specific mechanical stresses, see 620.1124; resistance to fracture, 620.1126

.112 302 87 Testing and measurement

Including strain gauges

.112 32 Temporary deformation (Elasticity)

Including elastic limit

.112 33 Permanent deformation (Plasticity)

Including creep, plastic flow

For properties affecting permanent deformation, see 620.1125

.112 4 Resistance to specific mechanical stresses

Class resistance to change of form, regardless of stress, in 620.1125; resistance to fracture, regardless of stress, in 620.1126

.112 41 Tension

.112 42 Compression

.112 43 Torsion (Twisting)

.112 44 Flexure (Bending)

.112 45 Shearing

.112 48 Vibrations

.112 5 Properties affecting permanent deformation

Examples: impact strength, rigidity, shock resistance; ductility, malleability

.112 6 Resistance to fracture (Fracture mechanics)

Including brittleness, hardness

Class here fatigue [*formerly* 620.1123]; fatigue, fracture, rupture strength; crack resistance, resistance to penetration and breaking

.112 7 Nondestructive testing

.112 72 Radiographic (X-ray) testing

.112 73 Tracer testing

.112 74 Ultrasonic testing

.112 78 Magnetic testing

.112 9 Other properties

.112 92 Mechanical properties

Examples: adhesiveness, roughness, texture; friction, wear resistance

See also 620.44 for surface technology

.112 94 Acoustical properties

.112 95 Optical properties

Examples: luminescence, photoelasticity, refractivity

.112 96 Thermal properties

Example: heat conductivity

See also 620.1121 for resistance to thermal forces

.112 97 Electric, electronic, magnetic properties

.112 972 Semiconductivity

.112 973 Superconductivity

.112 99 Microphysical properties

Examples: atomic, molecular, nuclear, crystallographic properties

Including microstructure

For electronic properties, see 620.11297

> 620.116–620.118 Porous, organic, composite materials

Class comprehensive works in 620.11, a specific kind of porous, organic, composite material in 620.12–620.19

.116 *Porous materials

Class porous organic materials in 620.117, porous composite materials in 620.118

.117 *Organic materials

Class organic composite materials in 620.118

.118 *Composite materials

Class specific composite materials with the predominant component in 620.12–620.19, e.g., ferroconcrete 620.137

> 620.12–620.19 Specific kinds of materials

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

0287 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 7

1–9 Specific properties and nondestructive testing

Add the numbers following 620.112 in 620.1121–620.1129, e.g., nondestructive testing 7

Class comprehensive works in 620.11; porous, organic, composite materials in 620.116–620.118; manufacturing and chemical properties of specific kinds of materials with the materials, e.g., wood 674

.12 *Wood

Including laminated wood

Class here physical properties [*formerly also* 674.132]

.13 Masonry materials

For brick, tile, terra-cotta, see 620.142

.130 287 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.130427

*Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19

.130 4 Special topics

.130 42 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.132 *Natural stones

.135 *Cement

Class here masonry adhesives [*formerly* 620.15]

.136 *Concrete

For reinforced and prestressed concrete, see 620.137; concrete blocks, 620.139

.137 *Reinforced and *prestressed concrete

.139 Artificial stones

Examples: cinder and concrete blocks

.139 028 7 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1390427

.139 04 Special topics

.139 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.14 Ceramic and allied materials

Class masonry materials in 620.13

.140 287 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.140427

.140 4 Special topics

.140 42 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.142 Brick, tile, terra-cotta

.143 *Refractory materials

Example: fireclays

Class refractory metals in 620.16

For asbestos, see 620.195

.144 *Glass

Including fiber glass

.146 Porcelain and enamel

[.15] Masonry adhesives

Relocated to 620.135

*Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19

.16 *Metals

Class here alloys

For ferrous metals, see 620.17; nonferrous metals, 620.18

.17 *Ferrous metals

Class here iron, steel

.18 Nonferrous metals

Class here nonferrous alloys

.180 287 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.180427

.180 4 Special topics

.180 42 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.182 *Copper

Class here brass, Muntz metal; bronzes, gunmetal; copper-aluminum alloys; copper-beryllium alloys

.183 *Lead

.184 Zinc and cadmium

.184 2 *Zinc

For brass, Muntz metal, see 620.182

.184 6 *Cadmium

.185 *Tin

For bronzes, gunmetal, see 620.182

.186 *Aluminum

For copper-aluminum alloys, see 620.182

.187 *Magnesium

.188 *Nickel

.189 Other metals

.189 1 *Mercury

.189 2 Precious, rare-earth, actinide-series metals

Add to base number 620.1892 the numbers following 669.2 in 669.22–669.29, e.g., uranium 620.1892931

.189 3 Metals used in ferroalloys

For nickel, see 620.188

*Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19

.189 302 87 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.18930427

.189 304 Special topics

.189 304 2 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.189 32 Titanium, manganese, vanadium

.189 322 *Titanium

.189 33 *Cobalt

.189 34 Chromium, molybdenum, tungsten

.189 35 Zirconium and tantalum

.189 352 *Zirconium

.189 4 *Beryllium

For copper-beryllium alloys, see 620.182

.189 5 Antimony, arsenic, bismuth

.189 6 Alkali and alkaline-earth metals

Examples: barium, calcium, lithium, potassium, sodium, strontium

.189 602 87 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.18960427

.189 604 Special topics

.189 604 2 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.189 9 Miscellaneous rare metals

Limited to gallium, germanium, hafnium, indium, niobium, selenium, tellurium, thallium

.19 Other engineering materials

.191 Soils and related materials

Examples: aggregates, gravel, clay, sand

Class interdisciplinary works on soils in 631.4, foundation soils in 624.151

.191 028 7 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1910427

.191 04 Special topics

.191 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

*Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19

.192 Polymers

For elastomers, see 620.194

.192 028 7 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1920427

.192 04 Special topics

.192 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.192 3 *Plastics

Class here plastic laminating materials

.192 4 *Gums and *resins

.193 Nonmetallic elements

Examples: carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, oxygen, phosphorus, silicon, sulfur; inert gases

Class phosphor bronze in 620.182

.193 028 7 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1930427

.193 04 Special topics

.193 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.194 *Elastomers

Class here rubber

.195 Insulating materials

Examples: asbestos, corkboard, diatomaceous earth, kapok, rock wool

Including dielectric materials

.195 028 7 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1950427

.195 04 Special topics

.195 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.196 Bituminous materials

Examples: synthetic and natural asphalt, tar

.196 028 7 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1960427

.196 04 Special topics

*Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19

.196 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.197 Organic fibrous materials

Examples: paper, paperboard, rope, textiles

.197 028 7 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1970427

.197 04 Special topics

.197 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.198 Other natural and synthetic minerals

Examples: corundum, feldspar, gems, graphite, oil, quartz, water

.199 Adhesives and sealants

Class here comprehensive works on laminating materials

For masonry adhesives, see 620.135; plastic laminating materials, 620.1923

.199 028 7 Testing and measurement

Do not use for nondestructive measurement; class in 620.1990427

.199 04 Special topics

.199 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.2 Sound and related vibrations

See also 534 for physics of sound

See Manual at 621 vs. 530

> 620.21–620.25 Applied acoustics (Acoustical engineering)

Class comprehensive works in 620.2; electroacoustical communications in 621.3828; interdisciplinary works on architectural acoustics in 729.29, engineering works on architectural acoustics in 690.2

.21 General topics of applied acoustics

Examples: analysis and synthesis [*formerly* 534.4], sources of sound

.23 Noise and countermeasures

.25 Acoustics in specific physical environments

Example: underwater acoustics

.28 Applied ultrasonics and subsonics

For ultrasonic testing of materials, see 620.11274

*Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19

.3 Mechanical vibration

Class effects of vibrations on materials in 620.11248

For sound and related vibrations, see 620.2

.302 87 Measurement [*formerly* 620.32] and testing

.31 Generation and transmission

[.32] Measurement

Relocated to 620.30287

.37 Effects and countermeasures

.4 Engineering for specific kinds of geographical environments, fine particle and remote control technology

.41 Engineering for specific kinds of geographical environments

Class a specific technology with the technology, using notation 091 from Table 1 when the environment is not inherent in the subject, e.g., ergonomics for deserts 620.8209154, nautical engineering 623.8

.411–.417 Specific kinds of terrestrial environments

Add to base number 620.41 the numbers following —1 in —11–17 from Table 2, e.g., ocean engineering 620.4162; however, class engineering of estuaries in 627.124

Class hydraulic engineering in 627

.419 Extraterrestrial environments

.43 Fine particle technology

Example: dust

Class here powder technology

Including liquid particle technology

.44 Surface engineering

.46 Remote control and telecontrol

[.7] Engineering of large, complex systems

Number discontinued; class in 620

[.72] Analysis and design of large, complex systems

Analysis relocated to 620.001171, design to 620.0042

.8 Human-factors and safety engineering

Class here work environment engineering

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., engineering of the home kitchen work environment 643.3

See also 628 for environmental protection engineering

.82 Human-factors engineering

Variant names: biotechnology, design anthropometry, ergonomics

[.85] Environmental health engineering

Relocated to 628

.86 Safety engineering [*formerly also* 620.00289]

Class safety engineering of a specific technology with the technology, using notation 0289 from Table 1, e.g., safety in machine engineering 621.80289

621 Applied physics

Mechanical, electrical, electronic, electromagnetic, heat, light, nuclear engineering

Standard subdivisions are added for mechanical engineering

Class applied mechanics in 620.1, applied acoustics in 620.2, a specific application with the application, e.g., military engineering 623

See Manual at 621 vs. 530

SUMMARY

621.04 [Energy and plasma engineering]
.1 Steam engineering
.2 Hydraulic-power technology
.3 Electric, electronic, magnetic, communications, computer engineering; lighting
.4 Heat engineering and prime movers
.5 Pneumatic, vacuum, low-temperature technologies
.6 Fans, blowers, pumps
.8 Machine engineering
.9 Tools and fabricating equipment

.04 Special topics

.042 Energy engineering

Class here engineering of alternative, renewable energy sources

Class interdisciplinary works on energy in 333.79

.044 Plasma engineering

See also 530.44 for plasma as a subject in physics

> **621.1–621.2 Fluid-power technologies**

Class comprehensive works in 620.106

.1 Steam engineering

> 621.15–621.16 Specific kinds of steam engines

Class comprehensive works in 621.1, marine steam engines in 623.8722

For steam locomotives, see 625.261; steam tractors and rollers, 629.2292

.15 Portable engines

Class comprehensive works on specific structural types of steam engines in 621.16

.16 Stationary engines

Class here comprehensive works on specific structural types of steam engines

Class portable engines of specific structural types in 621.15

.164 Reciprocating engines

.165 Turbines

.166 Other stationary engines

Example: rotary engines

.18 Generating and transmitting steam

Class generating steam in specific kinds of steam engines in 621.15–621.16, in central stations in 621.19

> 621.182–621.183 Generation

Class comprehensive works in 621.18

.182 Fuels and fuel consumption

.183 Boilers and boiler furnaces

Including accessories [*formerly* 621.184], mechanical stokers, chimneys

[.184] Thermodynamics, design, construction

Number discontinued; class in 621.18

Accessories relocated to 621.183

.185 Transmitting steam

Including insulation, pressure regulators, safety valves, steam pipes

.19 Central stations

.194 Boiler operations (Boiler-house practices)

Including feed-water treatment

.197 Accessories

Including condensers, cooling towers, superheaters

.199 Cogeneration of electric power and heat

Class interdisciplinary works on cogeneration of electricity and heat in 333.793

.2 Hydraulic-power technology

Class hydraulic control in 629.8042

.204 Special topics

.204 2 Specific liquids

.204 22 Water

.204 24 Hydraulic fluids

Other than water

.21 Water mills

Including waterwheels, water lifting devices

.24 Turbines

.25 Pumps and accumulators

.252 Pumps

Class comprehensive works on pumps in 621.69

.254 Accumulators

.26 Hydraulic transmission

Use of this number for comprehensive works on hydraulic-power machinery and appliances discontinued; class in 621.2

Class specific liquids in hydraulic transmission in 621.2042

For rams, see 621.27

.27 Rams

.3 Electric, electronic, magnetic, communications, computer engineering; lighting

Including superconductivity

Standard subdivisions are added for electromagnetic engineering, for combined electric and electronic engineering, for electrical engineering alone

See also 537 for physics of electricity and electromagnetism

SUMMARY

621.302 8	**Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials**
.31	**Generation, modification, storage, transmission of electric power**
.32	**Lighting**
.33	**Electric power transmission for railroads**
.34	**Magnetic engineering**
.36	**Applied optics and paraphotic engineering**
.37	**Testing and measurement of electrical quantities**
.38	**Electronics and communications engineering**
.39	**Computers**

.302 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Class electrical equipment in 621.31042

.302 87 Testing and measurement

Class electrical testing and measurement in 621.37

.31 Generation, modification, storage, transmission of electric power

Class here alternating current [*formerly also* 537.63]

SUMMARY

621.310 4	**[Electrical machinery and equipment]**
.312	**Generation, modification, storage**
.313	**Generating machinery and converters**
.314	**Transformers**
.315	**Capacitors (Condensers)**
.316	**Details and parts of generators**
.317	**Control devices**
.319	**Transmission**

.310 4 Special topics

.310 42 Electrical machinery and equipment

Including eddy currents, shaft currents

Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., refrigerators 621.57

For electric motors, see 621.46

.312 Generation, modification, storage

For equipment for generation, modification, control, see 621.313–621.317

.312 1 Generation

Class here central and auxiliary power plants, mechanical generation

For direct energy conversion, see 621.3124

.312 13 Specific kinds of mechanical generation

Use of this number for comprehensive works on mechanical generation discontinued; class in 621.3121

.312 132 Steam-powered generation

Class here comprehensive works on generation from fossil fuels

For generation by internal combustion engines, see 621.312133; nuclear steam-powered generation of electricity, 621.483

.312 133 Generation by internal combustion engines

.312 134 Hydroelectric generation

Including tidal generation

Class engineering of dams for hydroelectric power in 627.8

.312 136 Wind-powered generation

.312 4 Direct energy conversion

For direct nuclear generation, see 621.3125

.312 42 Electrochemical energy conversion

Class comprehensive works on electrochemical engineering in 660.297

.312 423 Primary batteries

.312 424 Secondary batteries (Storage batteries)

.312 429 Fuel cells

.312 43 Thermoelectric generation

Including thermionic converters

Class generation of electricity from solar radiation in 621.31244

.312 44 Generation of electricity from solar radiation

Class here photovoltaic generation, use of solar batteries and cells

.312 45 Magnetohydrodynamic generation

.312 5 Direct nuclear generation

Including radioisotope-powered generators

[.312 52] Nuclear steam-powered generation of electricity

Relocated to 621.483

[.312 56] Direct nuclear generation

Number discontinued; class in 621.3125

.312 6 Modification and storage

Examples: operation of transformer, converter substations

Class storage of electrical energy by chemical methods in 621.312424

> 621.313–621.317 Machinery and equipment for generation, modification, control

Class comprehensive works in 621.31042

.313 Generating machinery and converters

Including static generators [*formerly also* 537.23]

Class here comprehensive works on generators and motors

For details and parts of generators, see 621.316; electric motors, 621.46

.313 2 Direct-current machinery

Examples: dynamos, converters to alternating current

.313 3 Alternating-current machinery

Class here synchronous machinery

For synchronous generators, see 621.3134; synchronous converters to direct current, 621.3135; asynchronous machinery, 621.3136

.313 4 Synchronous generators

.313 5 Synchronous converters to direct current

For rectifiers, see 621.3137

.313 6 Asynchronous machinery

For rectifiers, see 621.3137

.313 7 Rectifiers

.314 Transformers

.315 Capacitors (Condensers) [*formerly also* 537.242]

.316 Details and parts of generators

Contains armatures and armature winding, brushes, commutators, contactors, electromagnets (field cores)

Class a specific part not provided for here with the subject, e.g., transformers 621.314

.317 Control devices

Class here protective devices [*formerly also* 621.319], power electronics, switching equipment

Examples: circuit breakers, fuses, grounding devices, lightning arresters, meters, relays, rheostats

Class switches at service end of line in 621.31924

.319 Transmission

Including access to power lines [*formerly also* 634.93], power failure

Class here electrification [*formerly* 621.394]

Protective devices relocated to 621.317

Class interdisciplinary works on electrification, on power failure in 333.7932

For electric power transmission for railroads, see 621.33

[.319 011] Systems

Do not use; class in 621.3191

.319 1 Systems

Class lines and circuitry in 621.3192

.319 12 Direct-current systems

.319 13 Alternating-current systems

Including high-tension systems

.319 15 Composite current systems

Direct and alternating currents combined

.319 16 Polycyclic current systems

.319 2 Circuitry [*formerly also* 537.61, 537.63] and lines (Networks)

.319 21 Physical phenomena in circuits

Examples: heat losses in lines, transients

.319 22 Overhead lines and their components

.319 23 Underground lines and their components

.319 24 Apparatus at service end of line

Examples: extension cords, junctions, outlets, sockets, switches

Class here interior wiring

For exterior service wiring and its components, see 621.31925

.319 25 Exterior service wiring and its components

.319 3 Equipment and components

Class equipment for generation, modification, control in 621.313–621.317, use in lines and circuitry in 621.3192

.319 32 Uninsulated wires

.319 33 Insulated wires

.319 34 Cables

.319 37 Insulators and insulation

.32 Lighting

Class here electric lighting

.321 Principles of lighting

Former heading: Illumination

.321 1 Layouts, calculations, photometry

.321 2 Direct lighting

.321 3 Indirect and semi-indirect lighting

.321 4 Floodlighting

Class here directed lighting

Class exterior floodlighting in 621.3229

[.321 5] Transillumination

Number discontinued; class in 621.321

.322 Lighting in specific situations

Use of this number for comprehensive works on lighting discontinued; class in 621.32

Class specific forms of lighting in 621.323–621.327; lighting of airports, 629.1365

For public lighting, see 628.95

.322 5–.322 8 Interior lighting

Add to base number 621.322 the numbers following 72 in 725–728, e.g., lighting for libraries 621.32278

Class comprehensive works in 621.322

.322 9 Exterior lighting

Examples: advertising and display lighting, garden and patio lighting

---

> 621.323–621.327 Specific forms of lighting

Class comprehensive works in 621.32

.323 Nonelectrical lighting

Examples: candles, oil-burning devices, torches

For gas lighting, see 621.324

.324 Gas lighting

> 621.325–621.327 Electric lighting

Class comprehensive works in 621.32

.325 Arc lighting

Electric-discharge lighting in which light is produced by consumable electrodes or by vapors emanating from consumable electrodes

Class here enclosed arc lighting [*formerly* 621.327]

.326 Incandescent lighting

.327 Vapor (Luminous-tube) lighting

Enclosed arc lighting relocated to 621.325

.327 3 Fluorescent lighting

.327 4 Mercury-vapor lighting

.327 5 Neon lighting

.327 6 Sodium-vapor lighting

.33 Electric power transmission for railroads

.34 Magnetic engineering

Class here artificial magnets and magnetic induction [*formerly also* 538.2], electromagnets

Class electromagnets as parts of generators in 621.316, of electric motors in 621.46

Use 621.3 for comprehensive works on electromagnetic technology

See also 538 for physics of magnetism

.36 Applied optics and paraphotic engineering

Class manufacture of optical instruments in 681.4, interdisciplinary works on photography in 770

For lighting, see 621.32

See also 535 for optics and light as subjects in physics

See Manual at 621.36 vs. 621.381045, 621.3827

.361 Industrial and engineering spectroscopy

.361 2 Infrared spectroscopy

.361 3 Visible (Chromatic) spectroscopy

Including Raman spectroscopy

.361 4 Ultraviolet spectroscopy

Including vacuum ultraviolet spectroscopy

.361 5 Radio-frequency and microwave spectroscopy

.361 6 X-ray and gamma-ray spectroscopy

.361 7 Magnetic resonance spectroscopy

> 621.362–621.364 Paraphotic technology

Class comprehensive works in 621.36, paraphotic spectroscopy in 621.361, paraphotic photography in 621.3672

.362 Infrared technology

.364 Ultraviolet technology

.366 Laser technology [*formerly also* 535.58]

Light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation

For laser communications, see 621.3827

See Manual at 621.36 vs. 621.381045, 621.3827

.366 1 Solid-state lasers

.366 2 Fluid-state lasers

For gaseous-state lasers, see 621.3663

.366 3 Gaseous-state lasers

.366 4 Chemical and dye lasers

.367 Technological photography and photo-optics

Including spectrography, stroboscopic photography

Class here image processing, optical data processing

For photoelectrical and photoelectronic devices, see 621.381542; optical communications, 621.3827

See Manual at 006.37 vs. 006.42, 621.367, 621.391, 621.399; 778.3 vs. 621.367

.367 2 Infrared and ultraviolet photography

.367 3 Radiography (X-ray and gamma-ray photography)

.367 5 Holography

.367 8 Remote sensing technology

For photogrammetry, see 526.982

.369 Other branches of applied optics

.369 2 Fiber optics [*formerly also* 535.89]

See also 621.381045 for optoelectronics

See Manual at 621.36 vs. 621.381045, 621.3827

.369 3 Integrated optics

.37 Testing and measurement of electrical quantities

Instruments and their use

Class testing and measurement of a specific apparatus, part, or function with the subject, using notation 0287 from Table 1, e.g., testing overhead lines 621.319220287

.372 Units and standards of measurement

Including calibration of electrical instruments

.373 Recording meters

Class meters recording specific electrical quantities in 621.374

.374 Instruments for measuring specific electrical quantities

Use of this number for comprehensive works on measuring electric quantities discontinued; class in 621.37

.374 2 For measuring resistance, capacitance, inductance

Examples: bridges, ohmmeters, resistance boxes, shunts

Including comprehensive works on electrical bridges (bridge circuits)

For frequency bridges, see 621.3747

.374 3 For measuring potential

Examples: electrometers, potentiometers, voltage detectors, voltmeters

.374 4 For measuring current

Examples: ammeters, ampere-hour meters, coulometers, galvanometers, milliammeters, voltameters

.374 5 For measuring energy

Examples: demand meters, electric supply meters, watt-hour meters

.374 6 For measuring power

Examples: electrodynamometers, volt-ammeters, wattmeters

.374 7 For measuring frequency

Examples: frequency bridges, oscillographs

Class electric phasemeters in 621.3749

.374 9 For measuring phase

Examples: power-factor meters, synchroscopes

[.379] Electrical instruments for measurement of nonelectrical quantities

Relocated to 681.2

.38 Electronics and communications engineering

SUMMARY

621.381	**Electronics**
.382	**Communications engineering**
.383	**Telegraphy**
.384	**Radio and radar**
.385	**Telephony**
.386	**Telephone terminal equipment**
.387	**Telephone transmission and nonterminal equipment**
.388	**Television**
.389	**Sound recording, security, related systems**

[.380 282] Electroacoustical apparatus and equipment

Relocated to 621.38284

[.380 283] Antennas

Relocated to 621.3824

[.380 4] Special topics

Special topics of communications engineering relocated to 621.382

[.380 44] Audiovisual engineering

Relocated to 621.3897

.381 Electronics

Including x-ray and gamma-ray circuitry [*formerly also* 537.5353] and tubes [*formerly also* 537.5355]

Class here microelectronics, shortwave and long-wave electronics

Class signal processing in 621.3822, electronic noise and interference in 621.38224; a specific application with the subject, e.g., laser technology 621.366, radio engineering 621.384

See also 537.5 for physics aspects

See Manual at 621.381

SUMMARY

621.381 01–.381 09	**Standard subdivisions**
.381 3	**Microwave electronics**
.381 5	**Components and circuits**

.381 011 Systems [*formerly* 621.3811]

.381 028 7 Measurement [*formerly* 621.381043] and testing

.381 04 Special topics

[.381 042] Analysis, synthesis, design

Number discontinued; class in 621.381

[.381 043] Measurement

Relocated to 621.3810287

.381 044 Power and energy in electronic systems

.381 045 Optoelectronics

See also 621.3692 for fiber optics

See Manual at 621.36 vs. 621.381045, 621.3827

.381 046 Packaging

[.381 1] Systems

Relocated to 621.381011

.381 3 Microwave electronics

.381 302 18 Standards [*formerly* 621.38137]

.381 302 87 Testing and measurement [*formerly* 621.38137]

.381 31 Wave propagation and transmission

Including interference

.381 32 Circuits

Analysis, design, constituent parts, functions

Add to base number 621.38132 the numbers following 621.38153 in 621.381532–621.381537, e.g., amplifiers 621.381325

.381 33 Components and devices

Class use of components in specific circuits in 621.38132

.381 331 Wave guides

.381 332 Cavity resonators

.381 333 Klystrons

.381 334 Magnetrons

.381 335 Traveling-wave tubes

.381 336 Masers [*formerly also* 537.5344]

Microwave amplification by stimulated emission of radiation

[.381 336 1–.381 336 2] Specific kinds of masers

Numbers discontinued; class in 621.381336

[.381 37] Standards; testing and measurement

Standards relocated to 621.38130218, testing and measurement to 621.38130287

.381 5 Components and circuits

Analysis, design, functions, manufacture

Class here integrated, microelectronic, thin-film circuits [*all formerly* 621.38173]; analog, digital, semiconductor circuits; circuits and components common to electronics and communications engineering

Use of this number for comprehensive works on shortwave and long-wave electronics discontinued; class in 621.381

Class microwave components and circuits in 621.3813, components and circuits of a specific branch of communications engineering in 621.383–621.389, very large scale integration in 621.395

See Manual at 621.381

.381 502 18 Standards [*formerly* 621.381548]

[.381 502 87] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 621.381548

> 621.381 51–621.381 52 Components

Class comprehensive works in 621.3815, use of components in specific circuits in 621.38153, devices not intrinsic to circuits in 621.38154

.381 51 Electronic tubes

Use of this number for comprehensive works on components discontinued; class in 621.3815

.381 512 Vacuum tubes

[.381 512 2–.381 512 8] Specific kinds of vacuum tubes

Numbers discontinued; class in 621.381512

.381 513 Gas tubes

[.381 513 2–.381 513 8] Specific kinds of gas tubes

Numbers discontinued; class in 621.381513

.381 52 Semiconductors

Class here miniaturization and thin-film production technology [*both formerly* 621.3817], microelements and thin-film components [*both formerly* 621.38171], crystal devices, optoelectronic devices

.381 522 Diodes

Examples: junction, light-emitting, tunnel (Esaki), Zener diodes; varactors

.381 528 Transistors and thyristors

Example: phototransistors

.381 528 2 Junction transistors

.381 528 4 Field-effect transistors

.381 528 7 Thyristors

.381 53 Printed circuits and circuits for specific functions

Use of this number for comprehensive works on circuits discontinued; class in 621.3815

[.381 530 4] Semiconductor circuits

Number and its subdivisions discontinued; class in 621.3815

.381 531 Printed circuits [*formerly* 621.38174]

Including microlithography

> 621.381 532–621.381 537 Circuits for specific functions

Class comprehensive works in 621.3815

.381 532 Converters (Rectifiers and inverters), filters, interference eliminators

.381 532 2 Converters (Rectifiers and inverters)

.381 532 4 Filters

.381 533 Oscillators

Class use of oscillators in pulse circuits in 621.381534

.381 534 Pulse circuits

Examples: pulse generators, counting circuits

Including pulse processes

Class modulation, demodulation, detection of pulses in 621.3815365

.381 535 Amplifiers and feedback circuits

Class operational amplifiers in 621.395

.381 536 Modulators, demodulators, detectors

Class here modulation, demodulation, detection

.381 536 2 Amplitude

Including attenuators

.381 536 3 Frequency

See also 621.3815486 for frequency synthesizers

.381 536 4 Phase

Including phase-locked loops

.381 536 5 Pulse

.381 537 Switching, control, trigger circuits, relays

Logic circuits relocated to 621.395

.381 537 2 Switching theory

Class switching theory in logic circuit design in 621.395

.381 54 Supplementary components

Devices not intrinsic to circuits

Class here electronic instrumentation (applications of electronics)

Class instrumentation in a specific field with the field, e.g., electronic control 629.89

.381 542 Photoelectric and photoelectronic devices

Examples: photoconductive, photoemissive, photovoltaic cells; electric eyes; photomultipliers; cathode-ray, electron-ray tubes; phototubes

.381 548 Testing and measuring components

Examples: bridges (bridge circuits); signal, square-wave, sweep generators; thermisters

Class here testing and measuring electronic circuits and components, instruments for testing and measuring electronic signals

Standards of electronic circuits and components relocated to 621.38150218; electronic gauges, indicators, meters, probes of general utility to 681.2

Class testing and measuring a specific circuit or component with the circuit or component, using notation 0287 from Table 1, e.g., testing amplifiers 621.3815350287

.381 548 3 Oscilloscopes

Including oscillographs

.381 548 6 Frequency synthesizers

[.381 6] X-ray and gamma-ray electronics

Number discontinued; class in 621.381

[.381 7] Microelectronics

Use of this number for microelectronics discontinued; class in 621.381

Miniaturization and thin-film production technology relocated to 621.38152

[.381 71] Microelements and thin-film components

Relocated to 621.38152

[.381 73] Integrated, microelectronic, thin-film circuits

Integrated, microelectronic, thin-film circuits relocated to 621.3815; very large scale integration to 621.395

[.381 74] Printed circuits

Relocated to 621.381531

[.381 792] Electronic eavesdropping devices

Relocated to 621.38928

[.381 9] Special developments

Number discontinued; class in 621.381

[.381 95] Computers

Relocated to 621.39

[.381 952] Turing machines

Relocated to 511.3

[.381 959 4] Turing and infinite-state machines

Relocated to 511.3

.382 Communications engineering

Telegraphy relocated to 621.383. In addition, the following subdivisions are reused: 621.3823, 621.3824, 621.3825, 621.3827, 621.3828

Class here special topics in communications engineering [*formerly* 621.3804]; analog, digital, electronic communications; communications systems; telecommunications

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the one coming last, e.g., signal processing in acoustical communications 621.3828 (*not* 621.3822)

Class components and circuits common to electronics and communications engineering in 621.3815, e.g., amplifiers 621.381535, switching circuits 621.381537; data communications engineering in 621.3981

For specific communications systems, see 621.383–621.389

See Manual at 621.382 vs. 621.3981, 004.6

.382 2 Signal processing

Class here information theory

See Manual at 621.3822 vs. 003.54

.382 23 Signal analysis and theory

.382 24 Noise and interference

Including electromagnetic compatibility and incompatibility

Class here electronic noise and interference

.382 3 Miscellaneous topics

Limited to studios, transmission facilities, and the topics provided for below

.382 32 Power and energy in communications systems

.382 34 Recording devices

Use for works covering recording devices of two or more communications systems, e.g. video recorders and sound recorders

Examples: discs, tapes

Class video recorders in 621.38833, sound recorders in 621.38932

.382 35 Facsimile transmission

By wire or radio wave

Example: radiofacsimile [*formerly* 621.3842]

Class here telefacsimile

.382 38 Space communications

See also 621.3825 for satellite relay

.382 4 Antennas [*formerly* 621.380283] and propagation

.382 5 Relay communication

Class here satellite relay

.382 54 Satellite antennas and propagation

.382 7 Optical communications

Transmission of sound, visual images, other information by light

Including optical disc technology

Class here laser communications [*formerly* 621.3896]

Class opticoacoustic communications in 621.3828

See Manual at 621.36 vs. 621.381045, 621.3827

.382 75 Optical-fiber communication

Class here guided-light communication

.382 8 Acoustical communications

Audio systems covering broadcasting and transmission as well as recording and reproduction of sound

Including acousto-optical communications

Class here electroacoustical communications

Class audio systems limited to recording and reproduction of sound in 621.3893

.382 84 Specific devices

Class here electroacoustical apparatus and equipment [*formerly* 621.380282]

Examples: microphones, speakers

Class antennas in 621.3824

> 621.383–621.389 Specific communications systems

Class comprehensive works in 621.382

.383 Telegraphy [*formerly also* 621.382]

For radiotelegraphy, see 621.3842

.384 Radio and radar

Class here broadcast radio, comprehensive works on radio and television

For television, see 621.388

SUMMARY

621.384 01–.384 09	**Standard subdivisions**
.384 1	**Specific topics in general radio**
.384 2	**Radiotelegraphy**
.384 5	**Radiotelephony**
.384 8	**Radar**

.384 021 8 Standards [*formerly* 621.38417]

.384 028 7 Measurement [*formerly* 621.38417] and testing

.384 028 8 Maintenance and repair

Class maintenance and repair of receiving sets in 621.384187

> 621.384 1–621.384 5 Radio

Class comprehensive works in 621.384

.384 1 Specific topics in general radio

Use of this number for comprehensive works on radio, on radio and television discontinued; class in 621.384

SUMMARY

621.384 11	**Wave propagation and transmission**
.384 12	**Circuits**
.384 13	**Components and devices**
.384 15	**Systems by wave type, satellite and relay systems**
.384 16	**Amateur (Ham) radio**
.384 18	**Radio receiving sets**
.384 19	**Special developments**

.384 11 Wave propagation and transmission

Including interference

See also 384.5452 for allocation of frequencies

.384 12 Circuits

Analysis, design, components, functions

Examples: filters, interference eliminators [*both formerly* 621.384133], amplifiers, modulation circuits, oscillators, rectifiers

Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., receiving set circuits 621.38418

.384 13 Components and devices

.384 131 Transmitters

Design, circuits, components

.384 132 Tubes

Class use of tubes in specific circuits in 621.38412

.384 133 Miscellaneous supplementary devices

Limited to condensers (capacitors), grounding devices, inductors, microphones, resistors, testing equipment

Filters and interference eliminators relocated to 621.38412

.384 134 Semiconductor devices

Class use of semiconductor devices in specific circuits in 621.38412

.384 135 Antennas

[.384 136] Radio receiving sets

Relocated to 621.38418

.384 15 Systems by wave type, satellite and relay systems

> 621.384 151–621.384 153 Systems by wave type

Class comprehensive works in 621.38415, satellite and relay systems of a specific wave type in 621.384156

.384 151 Shortwave systems

Examples: very-high-frequency (VHF), ultrahigh frequency (UHF)

For frequency-modulation systems, see 621.384152

.384 152 Frequency-modulation (FM) systems

Including stereo-multiplex systems

.384 153 Long-wave systems

Examples: amplitude modulation (AM), very-low-frequency (VLF), single-sideband systems

.384 156 Satellite and relay systems

.384 16 Amateur (Ham) radio

Class here comprehensive works on amateur and citizens band radio

Use of this number for comprehensive works on radio stations discontinued; class in 621.384

For citizens band radio, see 621.38454

See Manual at 621.38416 vs. 621.38454

[.384 162–.384 164] Clear-channel, regional, broadcasting stations

Numbers discontinued; class in 621.384

[.384 165] Mobile radio stations

Relocated to 621.3845

[.384 166] Amateur (Ham)

Number discontinued; class in 621.38416

[.384 168] Portable radio stations

Relocated to 621.3845

[.384 17] Standards and measurement

Standards relocated to 621.3840218, standards of receiving sets to 621.384180218, measurement to 621.3840287, measurement of receiving sets to 621.384180287, allocation of frequency to 384.5452

.384 18 Radio receiving sets [*formerly* 621.384136]

.384 180 218 Standards [*formerly* 621.38417]

.384 180 287 Measurement [*formerly* 621.38417] and testing

[.384 180 288] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class on 621.384187

[.384 185–.384 186] Assembling and installation

Numbers discontinued; class in 621.38418

.384 187 Maintenance and repair

.384 19 Special developments

.384 191 Direction and position finding

Including radio beacons, radio compasses, loran

.384 196 Radio control

Variant names: remote control, telecontrol

.384 197 Space communication

.384 2 Radiotelegraphy

Class here specific instruments and apparatus of radiotelegraphy [*formerly* 621.3843]

Radiofacsimile relocated to 621.38235

[.384 3] Specific instruments and apparatus of radiotelegraphy

Relocated to 621.3842

.384 5 Radiotelephony

Including portable radio stations [*formerly* 621.384168], e.g., walkie-talkies

Class here mobile radio stations [*formerly* 621.384165], specific instruments and apparatus of radiotelephony [*formerly* 621.3846], comprehensive works on radio transmission in telephony

For radio relays, see 621.38782

See Manual at 621.3845 vs. 621.38782

.384 54 Citizens band radio

Class comprehensive works on amateur and citizens band radio in 621.38416

See Manual at 621.38416 vs. 621.39454

.384 56 Cellular telephone systems (Cellular radio)

Variant names: cellular radio, portable telephone systems

[.384 6] Specific instruments and apparatus of radiotelephony

Relocated to 621.3845

.384 8 Radar

[.384 81] Fundamentals

Number discontinued; class in 621.3848

.384 83 Specific instruments and devices

Examples: antennas, receivers, transmitters

.384 85 Systems

Examples: continuous, monopulse, pulse-modulated

.384 86 Stations

.384 88 Scanning patterns

.384 89 Special developments

.384 892 Racon

.384 893 Shoran

.385 Telephony

Class here telephone systems based on wires, cables, lasers, optical fibers

Class cellular telephone systems in 621.38456, data communications engineering in 621.3981

For radiotelephony, see 621.3845; telephone equipment and transmission, 621.386–621.387

.385 1 Network analysis

.385 7 Automatic and semiautomatic switching systems

Example: direct distance dialing

> 621.386–621.387 Telephone equipment and transmission

Class comprehensive works in 621.385

.386 Telephone terminal equipment

Dialing, transmitting, receiving equipment

.386 7 Telephone answering and message recording devices

.386 9 Pay telephones

.387 Telephone transmission and nonterminal equipment

Example: switches

.387 8 Transmission

.387 82 Long-distance systems

Including radio relays

See Manual at 621.3845 vs. 621.38782

.387 83 Local systems

.387 84 Transmission lines and cables

Including poles, auxiliary line equipment

.388 Television

.388 001 Philosophy and theory

.388 002 Miscellany

.388 002 18 Standards [*formerly* 621.3887]

.388 002 87 Measurement [*formerly* 621.3887] and testing

.388 002 88 Maintenance and repair

Maintenance and repair covering broadcast and transmission equipment as well as receiving sets

Class maintenance and repair of receiving sets in 621.38887

.388 003–.388 009 Standard subdivisions

.388 02 Black-and-white television

.388 04 Color television

.388 1 Wave propagation and transmission

Including definition, resolution, interference

Use of this number for fundamentals discontinued; class in 621.388

[.388 11] Wave propagation and transmission

Number discontinued; class in 621.3881

[.388 12–.388 13] Circuits and optics

Numbers discontinued; class in 621.388

.388 3 Components and devices

.388 31 Transmitters

.388 32 Tubes, transistors, semiconductor diodes

.388 33 Video recorders and video recordings

Use of this number for comprehensive works on television supplementary devices discontinued; class in 621.3883

[.388 330 288] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 621.388337

.388 332 Video recordings

Examples: cassettes, discs

Use of this number for video recorders discontinued; class in 621.38833

[.388 332 028 8] Maintenance and repair

Maintenance and repair of video recorders and video recordings relocated to 621.388337

.388 337 Maintenance and repair of video recorders and video recordings [*formerly* 621.3883320288]

.388 34 Cameras and components

.388 35 Antennas

[.388 36] Television receiving sets

Relocated to 621.3888

.388 5 Communication systems

.388 53 Satellite television

.388 57 Cable television

.388 6 Stations

Class here studios

.388 62 Broadcasting stations

.388 63 Closed-circuit stations

.388 64 Mobile stations

[.388 7] Standards and measurement

Standards relocated to 621.38800218, measurement to 621.38800287

.388 8 Television receiving sets [*formerly* 621.38836]

[.388 802 88] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class 621.38887

[.388 85–.388 86] Assembly and installation

Numbers discontinued; class in 621.3888

.388 87 Maintenance and repair

[.388 872–.388 874] Of black-and-white and color sets

Numbers discontinued; class in 621.38887

[.388 9] Special developments

Number discontinued; class in 621.388

.389 Sound recording, security, related systems

Example: underwater devices

.389 2 Public address, security, related systems

Examples: announcing, calling, paging systems

.389 28 Security electronics

Including electronic eavesdropping devices [*formerly* 621.381792] and other surveillance systems and countermeasures

Class here alarm systems

.389 3 Sound recording and reproducing systems

Audio systems limited to recording and reproduction of sound

Class comprehensive works on acoustical communications, on audio systems covering transmission as well as recording and reproduction in 621.3828; telephone message recording in 621.3867

.389 32 Recorders and recordings

Examples: compact disc, cylinder, disc, film records and recorders

.389 324 Tape recorders and recordings

Example: cassettes

.389 33 Reproducers

Example: jukeboxes

Class here phonographs

Class combination recorders-reproducers in 621.38932

.389 332 High-fidelity systems (Hi-fi)

For stereophonic systems, see 621.389334

.389 334 Stereophonic systems

Including quadraphonic systems [*formerly* 621.389336]

[.389 336] Quadraphonic systems

Relocated to 621.389334

.389 4 Language translators

.389 5 Sonar

Use of this number for underwater devices discontinued; class in 621.389

[.389 52] Projectors and hydrophones

Number discontinued; class in 621.389

[.389 53] Sonar

Number discontinued; class in 621.3895

[.389 6] Laser communications

Relocated to 621.3827

.389 7 Audiovisual engineering [*formerly* 621.38044]

.39 Computers [*formerly* 621.38195]

This schedule was first published as a separate in 1985

Class here electronic digital computers, central processing units, computer reliability, general computer performance evaluation

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 621.39 in the one coming last, e.g., circuitry of computer internal storage in 621.3973 (*not* 621.395)

Use of this number for other branches of electrical engineering discontinued; class in 621.3

Class selection and use of computer hardware, works treating both hardware and either programming or programs in 004; specific applications with the subject, e.g., use of computers to regulate processes automatically 629.895

See Manual at 004–006 vs. 621.39

[.390 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 621.392

.391 General works on specific types of computers

Including optical computers

Class here specific types of processors, e.g., multiprocessors

Class programmable calculators in 681.14

See Manual at 006.37 vs. 006.42, 621.367, 621.391, 621.399

> 621.391 1–621.391 6 Digital computers

Class comprehensive works in 621.39

See Manual at 004.11–004.16

.391 1 Digital supercomputers

.391 2 Digital mainframe computers

For digital supercomputers, see 621.3911

.391 4 Digital minicomputers

Class comprehensive works on digital minicomputers and microcomputers in 621.3916

.391 6 Digital microcomputers

Class here personal computers, comprehensive works on minicomputers and microcomputers

.391 9 Hybrid and analog computers

.392 Systems analysis and design, computer architecture

Including hardware description languages

See Manual at 004.21 vs. 004.22, 621.392

[.393] Rural electrification

Relocated to 333.7932

[.394] Electrification

Relocated to 621.319

.395 Circuitry

Class here logic circuits [*formerly also* 621.381537], very large scale integration (VLSI) [*formerly also* 621.38173], logic design of circuits

[.396] Electric heating

Relocated to 621.4028

.397 Storage

.397 3 Internal storage (Main memory)

Examples: magnetic-core memory

Class here random-access memory (RAM), read-only memory (ROM)

Class compact disk read-only memory (CD-ROM) in 621.3976

.397 32 Semiconductor memory

Class here bipolar, metal-oxide-semiconductor (MOS), thin-film memory

.397 6 External (Auxiliary) storage

Examples: hard and floppy disks; compact disk read-only memory (CD-ROM); magnetic tapes (cartridges, cassettes, reel-to-reel tapes), tape and disk drives

.397 63 Magnetic bubble memory

.397 67 Optical storage devices

Class storage of pictorial data in optical storage devices in 621.367

.398 Interfacing and communications devices, peripherals

.398 1 Interfacing and communications devices

Class here data communications engineering

See Manual at 004.6; 621.382 vs. 621.3981, 004.6

.398 14 Analog-to-digital and digital-to-analog converters

Example: modems

.398 4 Peripherals

Class peripheral storage in 621.3976

For peripherals combining input and output functions, see 621.3985; input peripherals, 621.3986; output peripherals, 621.3987

.398 5 Peripherals combining input and output functions

Class here computer terminals

Class tape and disk devices in 621.3976

.398 6 Input peripherals

Examples: card readers, keyboards

.398 7 Output peripherals

Examples: monitors (video display screens)

Computer output microform devices relocated to 681.6, computer output printers to 681.62

See also 621.399 for computer graphics

.399 Devices for special computer methods

Examples: devices for computer graphics, pattern recognition

See Manual at 006.37 vs. 006.42, 621.367, 621.391, 621.399

.4 Heat engineering and prime movers

Class here engines, power plants, propulsion systems

Use 621.4001–621.4009 for standard subdivisions

For steam engineering, see 621.1; hydraulic-power technology, 621.2

SUMMARY

621.402–.406	**[Heat engineering and turbines]**
.42	**Stirling engines, air motors and propulsion**
.43	**Internal-combustion engines and propulsion**
.44	**Geothermal engineering**
.45	**Wind engines and propulsion**
.46	**Electric and related propulsion**
.47	**Solar-energy engineering**
.48	**Nuclear engineering**

.402 Heat engineering

Class a kind of heat engineering with the kind, e.g., geothermal engineering in 621.44, heating buildings in 697

For low-temperature technology, see 621.56

See also 536 for physics of heat

.402 011 Thermal systems [*formerly* 621.4028]

.402 1 Thermodynamics

.402 2 Heat transfer

Conduction, convection, radiation, heat exchange

Heat exchangers relocated to 621.4025

.402 3 Fuels and combustion

Class pollution by-products of combustion in 628.532

.402 4 Insulation

.402 5 Equipment

Examples: heat exchangers [*formerly also* 621.4022], furnaces, heat engines, heat pipes, heat pumps

Class solar furnaces in 621.477

.402 8 Specific heat systems

Not provided for elsewhere

Examples: electric heating [*formerly* 621.396]; distribution, storage systems

Comprehensive works on thermal systems relocated to 621.402011

Class a specific aspect of a specific heat system with the aspect, e.g., heat transfer in electric heating 621.4022

.406 Turbines

Class here turbomachines

.42 Stirling engines, air motors and propulsion

Example of air motor: rotary vane positive expansion motors

For wind engines and propulsion, see 621.45

.43 Internal-combustion engines and propulsion

Class generation of electricity by internal combustion engines in 621.312133

> 621.433–621.436 Specific internal-combustion engines

Class comprehensive works in 621.43, parts and accessories of specific engines in 621.437

.433 Gas turbines and free-piston engines

Standard subdivisions are added for gas turbines and free-piston engines and for gas turbines alone

For turbojet engines, see 621.4352

[.433 2] Simple gas turbines

Number discontinued; class in 621.433

.433 5 Free-piston engines

.434 Spark-ignition engines

Nondiesel piston engines

Example: rotary spark-ignition engines

Class here reciprocating spark-ignition engines

.435 Jet and rocket engines

.435 2 Jet engines and propulsion

Including turbojet engines

.435 6 Rocket engines and propulsion (Rocketry)

.436 Diesel and semidiesel engines

Class here compression-ignition engines

[.436 028 8] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 621.4368

.436 1 General topics

Examples: breathing, combustion, compression, cooling, exhaust, injection

.436 2 Design and construction

.436 8 Operation, maintenance, repair

.437 Parts and accessories of internal-combustion engines

Examples: carburetors, connecting rods, cylinders, governors, ignition devices, pistons, valves

.44 Geothermal engineering

Including prospecting for sources of geothermal energy, utilization of differences in ocean temperature

.45 Wind engines and propulsion

Class wind-powered generation of electricity in 621.312136

.453 Windmills

.46 Electric and related propulsion

Class here electric motors

[.462] Electric motors

Number discontinued; class in 621.46

.465 Ion motors

.466 Plasma motors

.47 Solar-energy engineering

Class engineering of secondary sources of solar energy with the secondary source, e.g., wind energy 621.45

For generation of electricity from solar radiation, see 621.31244

.471 General topics

Examples: heat storage, radiation, thermodynamics

.473 Solar engines and propulsion

.477 Solar furnaces

.48 Nuclear engineering

Fission and fusion technology

Class direct nuclear generation of electricity in 621.3125

See also 539.7 for nuclear physics

[.481] Generation of thermal power

Use of this number for radioisotope-powered generators discontinued; class in 621.48

Nuclear generation of thermal power relocated to 621.483

.483 Nuclear reactors, power plants, by-products

Class here nuclear steam-powered generation of electricity [*formerly* 621.31252], nuclear generation of thermal power [*formerly* 621.481], fission reactors

For fusion reactors, power plants, by-products, see 621.484

.483 015 3 Physical principles

Class reactor physics in 621.4831

[.483 028 9] Safety measures

Do not use; class in 621.4835

.483 1 Reactor physics

Including critical size

Class here physics of reactor cores

Class physics of a specific component, material, process with the subject, using notation 0153 from Table 1, e.g., nuclear reactions in fuel elements 621.483350153975

.483 2 Design, construction, shielding, siting

.483 23 Shielding

.483 3 Materials

.483 32 Structural materials

.483 35 Fuel element materials

Fuels and cladding

.483 36 Coolants

.483 37 Moderators

.483 4 Specific types of reactors

Classified by neutron energy, moderator, fuel and fuel conversion, coolant

Examples: breeder reactors

Class a specific aspect of a specific type with the aspect, e.g., shielding of fast reactors 621.48323

.483 5 Operation, control, safety measures

.483 7 Radioactive isotopes

Class here comprehensive technological works on radioisotopes

Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., radioactive isotope therapy 615.8424

.483 8 Waste technology

General aspects: treatment, disposal, utilization of radioactive waste

.484 Fusion (Thermonuclear) reactors, power plants, by-products

Examples: tokamaks

.485 Nuclear propulsion

.5 Pneumatic, vacuum, low-temperature technologies

.51 Pneumatic technology

Class here air compression technology, air compressors

For compressed-air transmission, see 621.53; pneumatic conveying and cleaning, 621.54; fans, blowers, pumps, 621.6; pneumatic control, 629.8045

.53 Compressed-air transmission

.54 Pneumatic conveying and cleaning

Including carriers, cleaners, sandblasters

.55 Vacuum technology [*formerly also* 533.5]

Including vacuum pumps [*formerly* 621.692]

See also 533.5 for vacuum physics

.56 Low-temperature technology

Class here refrigeration

For refrigerators and freezers, see 621.57; ice manufacture, 621.58; cryogenic technology, 621.59

See also 536.56 for physics of low temperatures

.560 11 Systems [*formerly* 621.567]

.563 Heat pumps

.564 Refrigerants and coolants

[.567] Systems

Relocated to 621.56011

.57 Refrigerators and freezers

.58 Ice manufacture

.59 Cryogenic technology

Technology of temperatures below -100°C or -148°F

Including liquefaction and solidification of gases having low boiling points

.6 Fans, blowers, pumps

.61 Fans and blowers

For rotary fans and blowers, see 621.62; centrifugal fans and blowers, 621.63

.62 Rotary fans and blowers

.63 Centrifugal fans and blowers

> 621.64–621.69 Pumps

Class comprehensive works in 621.69, hydraulic pumps in 621.252

.64 Hand pumps

.65 Reciprocating pumps

.66 Rotary pumps

.67 Centrifugal pumps

.69 Pumps Pneumatic pumps

Class hydraulic pumps in 621.252

For hand pumps, see 621.64; reciprocating pumps, 621.65; rotary pumps, 621.66; centrifugal pumps 621.67

.691 Jet pumps

[.692] Vacuum pumps

Relocated to 621.55

.699 Density and direct-fluid-pressure displacement pumps

.8 Machine engineering

Class a specific kind of machinery not provided for here with the kind, e.g., hydraulic machinery 621.2; a specific use of machinery with the use, e.g., gears in clocks 681.112

SUMMARY

621.801–.809	**Standard subdivisions**
.81	**General topics**
.82	**Machine parts**
.83	**Gears, ratchets, cams**
.84	**Valves and pistons**
.85	**Power transmission systems**
.86	**Materials-handling equipment**
.87	**Cranes, derricks, elevators**
.88	**Fasteners**
.89	**Friction and its elimination (Tribology)**

[.801 53] Physical principles

Relocated to 621.811

.802 87 Testing and measuring

Class here strength tests of mechanisms

[.802 88] Maintenance and repair

Relocated to 621.816

.81 General topics

.811 Physical principles [*formerly also* 621.80153]

Examples: kinematics, vibration

Class here principles of simple machines [*formerly also* 531.8]

.812 Speed and power control devices

.815 Machine design

.816 Maintenance and repair [*formerly also* 621.80288]

Including balancing

.82 Machine parts

For gears, ratchets, cams, see 621.83; valves, pistons, 621.84

.821 Journals

.822 Bearings

Examples: ball, roller, sliding bearings

Class journals in 621.821

.823 Shafts and shafting

Example: axles

Class bearings in 621.822

For journals, see 621.821

.824 Springs

.825 Couplings, clutches, universal joints

.827 Connecting rods, cranks, eccentrics

.83 Gears, ratchets, cams

.833 Gears and gearing

.833 1 Spur gears

.833 2 Bevel and skew bevel gears

.833 3 Worm and spiral gears

.837 Ratchets and ratchet wheels

.838 Cams

.84 Valves and pistons

Variant names for valves: cocks, faucets, taps

Standard subdivisions are added for valves and pistons and for valves alone

.85 Power transmission systems

Class power transmission systems for materials-handling equipment in 621.86; a specific machine part of a transmission system with the part, e.g., shafts 621.823

.852 By belt

.853 By rope

.854 By wire

.859 By chain

.86 Materials-handling equipment

For cranes, derricks, elevators, see 621.87

.862 Hoisting equipment

For specific kinds of hoisting equipment, see 621.863–621.865

> 621.863–621.865 Specific kinds of hoisting equipment

Class comprehensive works in 621.862

.863 Chain hoists, fork lifts, tackles

.864 Windlasses, winches, capstans

.865 Power shovels

.867 Conveying equipment

For telpherage, see 621.868

.867 2 Pipes and pipelines

Including pipe laying

Class pipelines for transporting coal in 662.624, petroleum in 665.544, industrial gases in 665.744; manufacturing pipes of a specific material with the material, e.g., metal pipes 671.832

.867 5 Belt conveyors

.867 6 Escalators

.868 Telpherage

Examples: chair lifts, ski tows

Class here comprehensive works on people movers

For escalators, see 621.8676; elevators, 621.877

.87 Cranes, derricks, elevators

.872 Derricks

Class cranes in 621.873

.873 Cranes

.877 Elevators

Including jacks

.88 Fasteners

See also 621.97 for fastening equipment

.882 Screws, nuts, bolts

.883 Cotters and cotter pins

.884 Nails and rivets

.885 Sealing devices

.89 Friction and its elimination (Tribology)

Including lubrication, lubricants, wear

For bearings, see 621.822

.9 Tools and fabricating equipment

Use 621.9001–621.9009 for standard subdivisions

Class a specific use with the use, e.g., lathes in woodworking 684.08

.902 Machine tools

.902 3 Numerical control

.904 Pneumatic tools

.908 Hand tools

.91 Planing and milling tools

See also 671.35 for machining metal

.912 Planers, shapers, slotters

.914 Crushing tools

.92 Grinding and abrading tools

.922 Lapping tools

Examples: buffing, polishing tools

.923 Emery wheels and grindstones

.924 Filing tools

.93 Cutting, sawing, disassembling tools

Examples: axes, crowbars, saws, shears, slicers, trimmers

.932 Knives

.94 Turning tools

Class turning tools used for perforating and tapping in 621.95

.942 Lathes

[.943] Chucks

Relocated to 621.992

.944 Gear-cutting, pipe-threading, screw-cutting tools

For tapping tools, see 621.955

[.945] Boring tools

Relocated to 621.952

.95 Perforating and tapping tools

For punching tools, see 621.96

.952 Drilling tools

Class here boring tools [*formerly* 621.945]

.954 Reaming and broaching tools

.955 Tapping tools

See also 621.84 for taps (valves)

.96 Punching tools

Class die punches in 621.984

.97 Fastening and joining equipment

Class fasteners in 621.88

.972 Screwdrivers and wrenches

.973 Hand hammers

.974 Power hammers

.977 Welding and soldering equipment

.978 Riveting equipment

.98 Pressing, molding, impressing equipment

.982 Bending tools

.983 Straightening tools

.984 Molding and impressing equipment

Examples: molds, dies, stamps

.99 Other tools and equipment

.992 Holding, guiding, safety equipment

Examples: chucks [*formerly* 621.943], clamps, guards, jigs, shields, vises

[.994] Measuring tools

Relocated to 681.2

622 Mining and related operations

SUMMARY

622.1	**Prospecting and exploratory operations**
.2	**Excavation techniques**
.3	**Mining for specific materials**
.4	**Mine environment**
.5	**Mine drainage**
.6	**Mine transport systems**
.7	**Ore dressing**
.8	**Mine health and safety**

[.028 9] Safety measures

Do not use; class safety measures regardless of technique employed or mineral extracted in 622.8

.1 Prospecting and exploratory operations

> 622.12–622.17 General topics

Class comprehensive works in 622.1, general topics applied to specific materials in 622.18, to treasure in 622.19

.12 Surface exploration

Examples: biogeochemical, geobotanical, geological prospecting

.13 Geochemical prospecting

Including mineral surveys (qualitative and quantitative measurement of mineral content)

Class biogeochemical prospecting in 622.12

.14 Mine surveys

Determination of size, depth, shape of mines

.15 Geophysical exploration

.152 Gravitational prospecting

.153 Magnetic prospecting

.154 Electrical prospecting

Examples: galvanic-electromagnetic, resistivity, self-potential prospecting

.159 Other methods of prospecting

Examples: gas-detection, geothermal, radioactivity prospecting

.159 2 Seismic prospecting

Variant name: acoustical, vibration prospecting

.17 Underwater prospecting

.18 Prospecting for specific materials

Add to base number 622.18 the numbers following 553 in 553.2–553.9, e.g., for petroleum 622.1828; however, prospecting for water relocated from 622.187 to 628.114

Standard subdivisions are added to subdivisions for specific materials even if only one type of prospecting is used, e.g., seismic exploration for petroleum in Texas 622.182809764

.19 Prospecting and exploring for treasure

Underground and underwater treasure hunting

Class archaeological methods and equipment in 930.1028

.2 Excavation techniques

Class here subsurface mining

Class extraction techniques for specific materials in 622.3

See also 622.4–622.8 for nonextractive mining technologies

[.202 89] Safety measures

Do not use; class safety measures regardless of technique employed in 622.8

> 622.22–622.28 Underground mining

Class comprehensive works in 622.2

.22 In-situ processing

Class here leach mining wells, solution mining

See Manual at 622.7, 622.22 vs. 669, 662.6

.23 Underground blasting and drilling

.24 Underground boring

.25 Underground shafts and shaft sinking

.26 Underground tunnels and tunneling

.28 Underground supporting structures and their erection

Class here control of roof and wall failure (rock failure) [*formerly* 622.8]

.29 Surface and underwater mining

.292 Surface mining [*formerly* 622.3]

Class here open-pit, strip mining [*formerly* 622.31]

Class reclamation after surface mining in 631.64

.292 7 Alluvial mining [*formerly* 622.32]

Examples: hydraulic, placer mining

.295 Underwater mining

Class here off-shore mining, mineral extraction from ocean floor

.3 Mining for specific materials

Class here extraction techniques of specific materials

Use of this number for comprehensive works on types of mining discontinued; class in 622

Surface mining relocated to 622.292, dressing of specific mineral ores to 622.7

Class prospecting for specific materials in 622.18; nonextractive mining technologies relating to specific materials in 622.4–622.8, e.g., mine safety technology 622.8

[.31] Open-pit and strip mining

Relocated to 622.292

[.32] Alluvial mining

Relocated to 622.2927

.33 Carbonaceous materials

.331–.337 Coal, graphite, solid and semisolid bitumens

Add to base number 622.33 the numbers following 553.2 in 553.21–553.27, e.g., coal 622.334; however, bituminous shale relocated from 622.333 to 622.3383

.338 Oil, oil shales, tar sands, natural gas

Use 622.338 for extraction of petroleum in the broad sense covering oil and gas, 622.3382 for petroleum in the narrow sense limited to oil

Class interdisciplinary works on petroleum in 553.28, comprehensive technical works in 665.5

.338 1 Drilling techniques

Including use of drilling muds (drilling fluids)

.338 19 Offshore drilling

Class here comprehensive works on offshore petroleum extraction

Class a specific aspect of offshore petroleum extraction with the aspect, e.g., offshore enhanced oil recovery 622.3382

.338 2 Oil

Including tertiary recovery, well blowouts

Class here reservoir engineering; enhanced, secondary, tertiary recovery; well flooding

Oil shale relocated to 622.3383

Class techniques of drilling for oil in 622.3381

.338 27 Specific enhanced oil recovery methods

Examples: enhanced recovery by use of bacteria, carbon dioxide, heat, water

.338 3 Oil shale [*formerly* 622.3382] and tar sands

Variant names for oil shale: bituminous shale [*formerly* 622.333], black shale; for tar sands: bituminous sands, oil sands

Class extraction of oils from oil shale and tar sands in 665.4

.338 5 Gas

Class techniques of drilling for gas in 622.3381

.339 Fossil gums and resins

.34 Metals and their ores

.341 Iron and iron ores

> 622.342–622.349 Nonferrous metals and their ores

Class comprehensive works in 622.34

.342 Gold, silver, platinum

.342 2 Gold

.342 3 Silver

.342 4 Platinum

.343–.349 Other nonferrous metals and their ores

Add to base number 622.34 the numbers following 553.4 in 553.43–553.49, e.g., uranium ores 622.34932

.35–.39 Other materials

Add to base number 622.3 the numbers following 553 in 553.5–553.9, e.g., gem diamonds 622.382; however, water extraction relocated from 622.37 to 628.114

> **622.4–622.8 Nonextractive mining technologies**

Class here nonextractive mining technologies relating to specific materials

Class comprehensive works in 622

.4 Mine environment

For mine drainage, see 622.5; mine health and safety, 622.8

.42 Ventilation and air conditioning

For temperature control, see 622.43

.43 Temperature control

.47 Illumination

.473 Portable lamps

.474 Electric lighting systems

.48 Electricity

Class electricity applied to a specific operation with the operation, e.g., temperature control 622.43

.49 Sanitation

.5 Mine drainage

.6 Mine transport systems

Haulage and hoisting

.65 Hand and animal haulage

.66 Mechanical haulage

Example: mine railroads

Class vertical haulage in 622.68

.67 Direct- and gear-driven hoists

.68 Elevators

Including skips

.69 Surface transportation

General aspects: loading, unloading, transshipment

.7 Ore dressing

Class here dressing of specific mineral ores [*formerly* 622.3]

See Manual at 622.7, 622.22 vs. 669, 662.6

.73 Crushing and grinding

.74 Sizing

Example: screening

> 622.75–622.77 Ore concentration

Variant names: beneficiation, ore separation

Class comprehensive works in 622.7

.75 Mechanical separation

.751 Gravity concentration

.752 Flotation

.77 Magnetic and electrostatic (inductive charging) separation

.79 Milling plants

Class specific milling-plant operations in 622.73–622.77

.8 Mine health and safety

Control of roof and wall failure (rock failure) relocated to 622.28

Class interdisciplinary works on mine safety in 363.119622

For sanitation, see 622.49

.82 Control of gas and explosions

Class here comprehensive works on fire control, on respiratory safety

For dust control, see 622.83

.83 Dust control

.89 Rescue operations

623 Military and nautical engineering

See Manual at 355 vs. 623

SUMMARY

623.04	**General topics**
.1	**Fortifications**
.2	**Mine laying, mine clearance, demolition**
.3	**Engineering of defense**
.4	**Ordnance**
.5	**Ballistics and gunnery**
.6	**Military transportation technology**
.7	**Communications, vehicles, sanitation, related topics**
.8	**Nautical engineering and seamanship**

.04 General topics

.042 Optical and paraphotic engineering

.043 Electronic engineering

.044 Nuclear engineering

.045 Mechanical engineering

.047 Construction engineering

> **623.1–623.7 Military engineering**

Class comprehensive works in 623, general topics in 623.04, naval engineering in 623.8

.1 Fortifications

Class here forts and fortresses

Class artistic aspects in 725.18

.109 Historical and persons treatment

Geographical treatment relocated to 623.19

[.12] Permanent fortifications

Number discontinued; class in 623.1

.15 Temporary fortifications

.19 Geographical treatment [*formerly also* 623.109]

Add to base number 623.19 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., forts in France 623.1944

.2 Mine laying, mine clearance, demolition

.26 Mine laying and mine clearance

See also 623.45115 for manufacture of mines

.262 On land

.263 In water

.27 Demolition

.3 Engineering of defense

Class warning systems in 623.737

See also 623.4 for ordnance

.31 Against invasion

Examples: countermining, flooding, mechanical barriers, moats, traps

Class artistic aspects of moats in 725.18

For fortifications, see 623.1; mine laying and demolition, 623.2

[.37] [Warning systems]

Relocated to 623.737

.38 Protective construction

Example: air raid shelters

.4 Ordnance

Class combat ships in 623.82

For combat vehicles, see 623.74

SUMMARY

623.402 88	**Maintenance and repair**
.41	**Artillery**
.42	**Specific pieces of artillery**
.43	**Gun mounts**
.44	**Small arms and other weapons**
.45	**Ammunition and other destructive agents**
.46	**Accessories**

.402 88 Maintenance and repair [*formerly* 623.48]

.41 Artillery

For specific pieces of artillery, see 623.42; artillery projectiles, 623.4513

.412 Field artillery

Including railroad-borne artillery

.417 Coast artillery

.418 Naval artillery

.419 Space artillery

Use of this number for other artillery discontinued; class in 623.41

[.419 4] [Space artillery]

Number discontinued; class in 623.419

.42 Specific pieces of artillery

Examples: cannons, howitzers, mortars, crew-served rocket launchers

Including mortars for launching chemical projectiles [*formerly* 623.445]

.43 Gun mounts

.44 Small arms and other weapons

Class here side arms

Class artistic aspects of arms and armor in 739.7, vehicle-mounted small arms with the specific vehicle, e.g., on armored cars 623.7475

See also 623.455 for small arms ammunition

.441 Weaponry of prefirearm origin

Examples: armor, bayonets, bows and arrows, catapults, knives, maces, shields, spears, swords, tomahawks

.442 Portable firearms

For pistols and revolvers, see 623.443

.442 4 Automatic firearms

Examples: automatic rifles, machine and submachine guns

Class automatic pistols and revolvers in 623.443

.442 5 Rifles, muskets, carbines

.442 6 Portable rocket launchers (Bazookas)

.443 Pistols and revolvers

.445 Chemical weapons

Examples: flame throwers; rifle attachments for launching smoke and gas canisters

Mortars for launching chemical projectiles relocated to 623.42

Class artillery for launching chemical projectiles in 623.41, chemical delivery devices in 623.4516

For chemical agents, see 623.4592

.446 Destructive radiation weapons

Examples: laser weapons, thermal weapons

Class here destructive radiations [*formerly* 623.4595]

.447 Destructive vibration weapons

Example: ultrasonic weapons

Class here destructive vibrations [*formerly* 623.4596]

.45 Ammunition and other destructive agents

SUMMARY

623.451	**Charge-containing devices**
.452	**Explosives**
.454	**Detonators, rockets, demolition charges**
.455	**Small arms ammunition**
.459	**Nonexplosive agents**

.451 Charge-containing devices

Class here bombs, missiles, projectiles

For tactical rockets, see 623.4543

See also 623.455 for small arms ammunition

.451 1 Grenades, mines, nuclear weapons

Class grenades and mines with special types of charges in 623.4516–623.4518

.451 14 Rifle and hand grenades

.451 15 Mines

.451 19 Nuclear weapons

Examples: artillery projectiles, bombs

For nuclear missiles, see 623.4519

.451 3 Artillery projectiles

Class artillery projectiles with special types of charges in 623.4516–623.4518, nuclear artillery projectiles in 623.4519

.451 4 Antipersonnel devices

Example: booby traps

Class here shrapnel devices

Specific antipersonnel devices other than booby traps relocated to the subject, e.g., antipersonnel hand grenades 623.45114

> 623.451 6–623.451 8 Devices with special types of charges

Class comprehensive works in 623.451

For nuclear weapons, see 623.45119

.451 6 Chemical and biological devices

Projectiles and related devices containing gas, incendiary materials, microbes, smoke

Standard subdivisions are added for chemical and biological devices and for chemical devices alone

Class chemical agents in 623.4592, biological agents in 623.4594

.451 7 High-explosive devices

Examples: blockbusters, high-explosive-antitank (HEAT) projectiles, torpedoes

For bangalore torpedoes, see 623.4545

.451 8 Armor-piercing devices

.451 9 Guided missiles

Nuclear and nonnuclear missiles

Class here storage and launching equipment, launch vehicles; strategic missiles, comprehensive works on rockets

.451 91 Air-to-air guided missiles

.451 92 Air-to-surface guided missiles

.451 93 Air-to-underwater guided missiles

.451 94 Surface-to-air guided missiles

Class here antimissile missiles, interceptor missiles

.451 95 Ballistic missiles (Surface-to-surface guided missiles)

.451 952 Short range ballistic missiles

.451 953 Intermediate range ballistic missiles

.451 954 Long range ballistic missiles

Class here intercontinental ballistic missiles

.451 96 Surface-to-underwater guided missiles

.451 97 Underwater guided missiles

Underwater-to-air, underwater-to-surface, underwater-to-underwater

.451 98 Space guided missiles

.452 Explosives

.452 6 Burning and deflagrating explosives

Examples: cordite, guncotton, gunpowder, smokeless powder

Class here propellant explosives

.452 7 High explosives

Examples: dynamite, nitroglycerin, TNT (trinitrotoluene)

.454 Detonators, rockets, demolition charges

.454 2 Detonators

Examples: fuses, percussion caps, primers

.454 3 Tactical rockets

Unguided nuclear and nonnuclear rockets

Class comprehensive works on rocket weapons, on rocket-propelled guided missiles in 623.4519

.454 5 Demolition charges

Examples: bangalore torpedoes, destructors, shaped charges

Class shaped charges in bombs, missiles, projectiles in 623.451

.455 Small arms ammunition

Examples: bazooka rockets, bullets, cartridges

.459 Nonexplosive agents

Class here detection of nonexplosive agents

.459 2 Chemical agents

Example: tear gas

Class here poisons and gases

.459 4 Biological agents

[.459 5] Destructive radiations

Relocated to 623.446

[.459 6] Destructive vibrations

Relocated to 623.447

.46 Accessories

Examples: sighting and range apparatus

[.48] Maintenance and repair

Relocated to 623.40288

.5 Ballistics and gunnery

.51 Ballistics

.513 Motion of projectiles within the bore (Interior ballistics)

.514 Motion of projectiles after leaving gun tube (Exterior ballistics)

.516 Effect of projectiles on targets (Terminal ballistics)

.55 Gunnery

For recoil, see 623.57

.551 Land gunnery

.553 Naval gunnery

.555 Aircraft gunnery

.556 Spacecraft gunnery

.557 Target selection and detection

Class siting and range apparatus in 623.46, application to specific types of gunnery in 623.551–623.556

.558 Firing and fire control

Class application to specific types of gunnery in 623.551–623.556

For target selection and detection, see 623.557

.57 Recoil

.6 Military transportation technology

For vehicles, see 623.74

.61 Land transportation

For roads, see 623.62; railroads and their rolling stock, 623.63; bridges, 623.67; tunnels, 623.68

.62 Roads

.63 Railroads and their rolling stock

.631 The way

Earthwork and track

.633 Rolling stock

.64 Naval facilities

Examples: artificial harbors, docks, naval bases

Class artistic aspects of naval facilities in 725.34

.66 Air facilities

Class here air bases, airports, comprehensive works on military aerospace engineering

Add to base number 623.66 the numbers following 629.136 in 629.1361–629.1368, e.g., airstrips 623.6612

Class artistic aspects of air facilities in 725.39

For military astronautics, see 623.69; aircraft, 623.746

.67 Bridges

.68 Tunnels

.69 Space facilities

Class here comprehensive works on military astronautics

For spacecraft, see 623.749

.7 Communications, vehicles, sanitation, related topics

SUMMARY

623.71	**Intelligence and reconnaissance topography**
.72	**Photography and photogrammetry**
.73	**Communications technology**
.74	**Vehicles**
.75	**Sanitation and safety engineering**
.76	**Electrical engineering**
.77	**Camouflage and concealment**

.71 Intelligence and reconnaissance topography

Standard subdivisions are added for intelligence and reconnaissance topography and for intelligence alone

Including sketching and map making

For photography and photogrammetry, see 623.72

.72 Photography and photogrammetry

.73 Communications technology

Class comprehensive works on military electronics in 623.043

.731 Visual signals

.731 2 Semaphore, heliograph, flag signals

.731 3 Pyrotechnical devices

.731 4 Electrooptical devices

Example: blinkers

.732 Wire telegraphy

.733 Wire telephony

.734 Radio communication and radar

.734 1 Shortwave radio

.734 2 Radiotelegraphy

Class shortwave radiotelegraphy in 623.7341

.734 5 Radiotelephony

Class shortwave radiotelephony in 623.7341

.734 8 Radar

.735 Television

.737 Warning systems [*formerly* 623.37]

Class here air-raid warning systems

.74 Vehicles

Support vehicles, combat vehicles and their ordnance

Class railroad rolling stock in 623.633

For nautical craft, see 623.82

See Manual at 629.046 vs. 385.388

SUMMARY

623.741	**Lighter-than-air aircraft**
.742	**Free balloons**
.743	**Airships (Dirigibles)**
.744	**Barrage balloons**
.746	**Aircraft Heavier-than-air aircraft**
.747	**Motor land vehicles**
.748	**Air-cushion vehicles**
.749	**Spacecraft**

.741 Lighter-than-air aircraft

For specific types of lighter-than-air aircraft, see 623.742–623.744

> 623.742–623.744 Specific types of lighter-than-air aircraft

Class comprehensive works in 623.741

.742 Free balloons

Class here comprehensive works on military balloons

.743 Airships (Dirigibles)

.743 5 Rigid airships

.743 6 Semirigid airships

.743 7 Nonrigid airships

.744 Barrage balloons

.746 Aircraft Heavier-than-air aircraft

Class lighter-than-air aircraft in 623.741

.746 04 Special topics

> 623.746 042–623.746 047 General types of heavier-than-air aircraft

Class here piloting general types of heavier-than-air aircraft

Class comprehensive works in 623.746, comprehensive works on piloting in 623.746048

.746 042 Propeller-driven airplanes

.746 044 Jet planes

.746 045 Rocket planes

.746 047 Vertical-lift (VTOL) aircraft

Example: helicopters

.746 048 Piloting

Class piloting of a specific type of heavier-than-air aircraft with the aircraft, e.g., piloting jet planes 623.746044, piloting fighters 623.7464

.746 049 Components

Examples: engines, escape equipment

Including instrumentation (avionics)

Class components of a specific type of aircraft with the aircraft, e.g., components of jet planes 623.746044, of fighters 623.7464

For aircraft ordnance, see 623.7461

.746 1 Aircraft ordnance

For charge-containing devices, see 623.451

> 623.746 2–623.746 7 Heavier-than-air aircraft for specific uses

Class here piloting heavier-than-air aircraft for specific uses

Class comprehensive works in 623.746, comprehensive works on piloting in 623.746048, aircraft ordnance regardless of type of aircraft in 623.7461, pilotless aircraft regardless of type in 623.7469

.746 2 Trainers

.746 3 Bombers and fighter-bombers

.746 4 Fighters

.746 5 Personnel and cargo transports

.746 6 Rescue aircraft

.746 7 Reconnaissance aircraft

.746 9 Pilotless aircraft (Guided aircraft)

Variant name: drones

Reconnaissance and combat

.747 Motor land vehicles

.747 2 For transporting personnel

Class armored personnel carriers in 623.7475

.747 22 Jeeps and similar vehicles

.747 23 Buses

.747 24 Ambulances

.747 4 For transporting supplies

.747 5 For combat

Examples: armored cars, other armored vehicles

.747 52 Tanks

.748 Air-cushion vehicles

.748 2 Overland air-cushion vehicles

.748 4 Overwater air-cushion vehicles

.748 5 Amphibious air-cushion vehicles

.749 Spacecraft

.75 Sanitation and safety engineering

Class here health engineering

.751 Water supply

.753 Sewage treatment and disposal

.754 Garbage and refuse treatment and disposal

.76 Electrical engineering

.77 Camouflage and concealment

.8 Nautical engineering and seamanship

Nautical engineering: engineering of ships and boats and their component parts

Class here naval engineering, comprehensive works on military water transportation

Class harbors, ports, roadsteads in 627.2

For naval facilities, see 623.64

SUMMARY

623.81	**Naval architecture**
.82	**Nautical craft**
.83	**Shipyards**
.84	**Hulls of nautical craft**
.85	**Engineering systems of nautical craft**
.86	**Equipment and outfit of nautical craft**
.87	**Power plants of nautical craft**
.88	**Seamanship**
.89	**Navigation**

.81 Naval architecture

Variant names: marine architecture, naval design

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., design of steel plates for battleship in 623.81252 (*not* 623.817765 or 623.81821)

Design of craft	623.812
Design in specific materials	623.818
Design tests	623.819
Structural analysis and design	623.817

.810 287 Measurement

Class design testing in 623.819

.812 Design of craft

Class here hydrodynamics of hulls [*formerly* 623.8144]

.812 04 Design of general types of craft

Add to base number 623.81204 the numbers following 623.820 in 623.8202–623.8205, e.g., design of submersible craft 623.812045

.812 1–.812 9 Design of specific kinds of craft

Add to base number 623.812 the numbers following 623.82 in 623.821–623.829, e.g., design of sailboats 623.81223

[.814] Design of specific parts and details

Relocated to 623.84–623.87

[.814 4] Hulls

Hydrodynamics of hulls relocated to 623.812

.817 Structural analysis and design

Add to base number 623.817 the numbers following 624.17 in 624.171–624.177, e.g., structural analysis 623.8171, wreckage studies 623.8176

.818 Design in specific materials

Add to base number 623.818 the numbers following 624.18 in 624.182–624.189, e.g., design in steel 623.81821

.819 Design tests

.82 Nautical craft

Class shipyards in 623.83, overwater hovercraft in 629.324

For naval architecture, see 623.81; parts and details, 623.84–623.87

SUMMARY

623.820 01–.820 09 Standard subdivisions
.820 1–.820 7 [Models and miniatures, general types of craft, craft of specific materials]
.821 Ancient and medieval craft
.822 Modern wind-driven ships
.823 Small and medium power-driven ships
.824 Power-driven merchant and factory ships
.825 Power-driven warships
.826 Support warships and other government ships
.827 Nonmilitary submersible craft
.828 Other power-driven ships
.829 Hand-propelled and towed craft

.820 01 Philosophy and theory

.820 02 Miscellany

.820 022 Illustrations

[.820 022 8] Models and miniatures

Do not use; class models and miniatures of all types of craft in 623.8201

.820 028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

.820 028 8 Maintenance and repair [*formerly* 623.8208]

.820 03–.820 09 Standard subdivisions

.820 1 Models and miniatures

Class ships in bottles in 745.5928

.820 104 Models and miniatures of general types of craft

Add to base number 623.820104 the numbers following 623.820 in 623.8202–623.8205, e.g., models of sailing craft 623.8201043

.820 11–.820 19 Models and miniatures of specific types of craft

Add to base number 623.8201 the numbers following 623.82 in 623.821–623.829, e.g., models of battleships 623.820152

> 623.820 2–623.820 5 General types of craft

Class comprehensive works in 623.82, general types of craft in specific materials in 623.8207, specific types of craft in 623.821–623.829

.820 2 Small craft

Class small sailing craft in 623.8203; small submersible craft in 623.8205; small power-driven craft in 623.823

.820 23 Pleasure craft

Example: yachts

.820 26 Working craft

.820 3 Sailing ships

.820 4 Power-driven ships

Examples: hydrofoils, steamships

Class power-driven submersible craft in 623.8205; small power-driven craft in 623.823

.820 5 Submersible craft

.820 7 Craft of specific materials

Class works limited to hulls of specific materials in 623.84

[.820 8] Maintenance and repair

Relocated to 623.8200288

.821 Ancient and medieval craft

Examples: biremes, caravels, galleys, triremes

> 623.822–623.829 Modern craft

Class comprehensive works in 623.82

.822 Modern wind-driven ships

Including rotor ships

.822 3 Pleasure craft

Example: sailing yachts

.822 4 Merchant ships

Example: clipper ships

.822 5 Warships

.822 6 Work ships

Example: research ships

For merchant ships, see 623.8224

> 623.823–623.828 Power-driven craft

Class comprehensive works in 623.8204

.823 Small and medium power-driven ships

Class small and medium power-driven craft not provided for here in 623.824–623.828

.823 1 Motorboats

Class here speedboats

.823 13 Outboard motorboats

.823 14 Inboard motorboats

Examples: hydroplanes, motor yachts

.823 15 Inboard-outboard motorboats

.823 2 Tugboats and towboats

.823 4 Ferryboats

.824 Power-driven merchant and factory ships

Class trawlers in 623.828

.824 3 Passenger ships

Class ferryboats in 623.8234

.824 32 Ocean liners

.824 36 Inland-waterway ships

Example: river steamers

.824 5 Cargo ships

Examples: bulk carriers, freighters, tankers

.824 8 Factory ships

Examples: whaleboats and ship canneries

.825 Power-driven warships

For support warships, see 623.826

.825 1 Naval ordnance

Armor, weapons

For naval artillery, see 623.418; charge-containing devices, 623.451

> 623.825 2–623.825 8 Specific types of combat warships

Class comprehensive works in 623.825, naval ordnance in 623.8251

.825 2 Battleships

.825 3 Cruisers

.825 4 Destroyers and destroyer escorts

.825 5 Aircraft carriers

.825 6 Landing craft

.825 7 Submarines

.825 72 Diesel-engine and electric-motor powered submarines

.825 74 Nuclear-powered submarines

.825 8 Light combat craft

Example: torpedo boats

.826 Support warships and other government ships

.826 2 Minelayers and minesweepers

.826 3 Police boats, revenue cutters, coast guard craft

.826 4 Hospital ships and military transports

.826 5 Military supply ships

.827 Nonmilitary submersible craft

Examples: bathyscaphes, bathyspheres

.828 Other power-driven ships

Examples: lightships [*formerly* 627.923], dredgers, drilling ships, icebreakers, trawlers

.829 Hand-propelled and towed craft

Examples: barges, canoes, coracles, lifeboats, rafts, rowboats, scows, towed canalboats

.83 Shipyards

Including dry docks, floating dry docks [both *formerly also* 627.35]

> 623.84–623.87 Parts and details of nautical craft

Class here design of specific parts and details [*formerly* 623.814]

Class comprehensive works in 623.82

.84 Hulls of nautical craft

Class hydrodynamics of hulls in 623.812

.842 Lofting

.843 Metalwork

.843 2 Welding and riveting

.843 3 Ship fitting

.844 Carpentry

.845 Construction with masonry, ceramics, allied materials

Add to base number 623.845 the numbers following 624.183 in 624.1832–624.1838, e.g., concrete hulls 623.8454

.848 Resistant construction

Examples: corrosion-, fire-resistant construction

.85 Engineering systems of nautical craft

Use 623.85001–623.85009 for standard subdivisions

For power plants, see 623.87

.850 1 Mechanical systems

.850 3 Electrical systems

.850 4 Electronic systems

.852 Electric lighting

.853 Air conditioning and temperature controls

.853 5 Cooling

Including refrigeration

.853 7 Heating and air conditioning

.854 Water supply and sanitation

.854 2 Potable water

.854 3 Seawater

Used for sanitation and fire fighting

.854 6 Sanitation

Class seawater for sanitation in 623.8543

.856 Communication systems

Add to base number 623.856 the numbers following 623.73 in 623.731–623.737, e.g., flag systems 623.85612

.86 Equipment and outfit of nautical craft

Including flares, other portable lights

Class use of equipment and outfit in 623.88

.862 Gear and rigging

Examples: anchors, cordage, masts, rope, rudders, sails, spars

.863 Nautical instruments

.865 Safety equipment

Examples: fire fighting, lifesaving equipment

Class comprehensive works on marine safety technology in 623.888

.866 Furniture

.867 Cargo-handling equipment

Class cargo handling in 623.8881

See also 627.34 for onshore cargo-handling equipment

.87 Power plants of nautical craft

Class here marine engineering

.872 Specific kinds of engines

Use of this number for comprehensive works on engines discontinued; class in 623.87

.872 2 Steam engines

.872 3 Internal-combustion engines

Inboard and outboard

Add to base number 623.8723 the numbers following 621.43 in 621.433–621.437, e.g., diesel engines 623.87236

.872 6 Electric engines

.872 7 Solar engines

.872 8 Nuclear engines

.873 Engine auxiliaries

Examples: boilers, piping, propellers, pumps, shafting

.874 Fuels

.88 Seamanship

For navigation, see 623.89

[.880 289] Safety measures

Do not use; class in 623.888

.881 Handling general types of craft

Add to base number 623.881 the numbers following 623.820 in 623.8202–623.8205, e.g., handling small craft 623.8812

Class handling specific types of craft in 623.882, safety and related topics in handling general types of craft in 623.888

.882 Handling specific types of craft

Add to base number 623.882 the numbers following 623.82 in 623.821–623.829, e.g., handling power-driven merchant ships 623.8824

Class safety and related topics in handling specific types of craft in 623.888

.888 Specific topics

Class here marine safety technology

For safety equipment, see 623.865

.888 1 Loading and unloading of nautical craft

Class here cargo handling

.888 2 Knotting and splicing ropes and cables

Class here interdisciplinary works on knotting and splicing

Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., knotting in camping 796.545

.888 4 Prevention of collision and grounding

Including rules of the road

.888 5 Wreckage studies

Class wreckage studies in marine architecture in 623.8176

.888 6 Fire fighting technology

See also 623.865 for manufacture of fire fighting equipment

.888 7 Rescue operations

.89 Navigation

Selection and determination of course

Class navigation procedures to prevent collision and grounding in 623.8884

.892 Geonavigation

For electronic aids to geonavigation, see 623.893

.892 021 2 Tables, formulas, specifications

Class tide and current tables in 623.8949

.892 2 Piloting and pilot guides

Positioning craft by visual observation of objects of known position

For piloting in and pilot guides to specific marine harbors and shores, see 623.8929

.892 209 Historical and persons treatment

Class geographical treatment in specific oceans and intercontinental seas in 623.89223–623.89227, in specific inland waters in 623.89229, in specific marine harbors and shores in 623.8929

.892 23–.892 27 Piloting in and pilot guides to specific oceans and intercontinental seas

Add to base number 623.8922 the numbers following —16 in notation 163–167 from Table 2, e.g., pilot guides to North Sea 623.8922336

.892 29 Piloting in and pilot guides to specific inland waters

Add to base number 623.89229 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., pilot guides to Great Lakes 623.8922977

.892 3 Dead reckoning

.892 9 Piloting in and pilot guides to specific marine harbors and shores

Class here approach and harbor piloting and pilot guides

.892 909 Historical and persons treatment

Class geographical treatment in 623.89291–623.89299

.892 91–.892 99 Geographical treatment

Add to base number 623.8929 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., harbor piloting for Scandinavia 623.892948; however, class approach and harbor piloting and pilot guides dealing comprehensively with specific oceans and intercontinental seas in 623.89223–623.89227

.893 Electronic aids to geonavigation

Class here comprehensive works on aids to geonavigation

For nonelectronic aids to geonavigation, see 623.894

> 623.893 2–623.893 3 Direction- and position-finding devices

Class comprehensive works in 623.893

.893 2 Radio aids

Examples: compasses, loran, radio

.893 3 Microwave aids

Examples: racon, radar, shoran

.893 8 Sounding devices

Sonar, other echo and sound-ranging devices

.894 Nonelectronic aids to geonavigation

.894 2 Lighthouses

Class interdisciplinary works on lighthouses in 387.155, construction of lighthouses in 627.922

.894 3 Lightships

Class construction of lightships in 623.828

.894 4 Beacons, buoys, daymarks

Class construction of beacons, buoys, daymarks in 627.924

.894 5 Light lists

.894 9 Tide and current tables

624 Civil engineering

Including engineering of landscape architecture

Class here construction engineering

Class specific branches of civil engineering in 625–629, construction of buildings in 690

For military construction engineering, see 623.047

See Manual at 624.1 vs. 624; 690 vs. 624

SUMMARY

624.01–.09 Standard subdivisions
.1 Structural engineering and underground construction
.2 Bridges
.3 Specific types of bridges
.4 Tubular and box-girder bridges
.5 Suspension bridges
.6 Arch bridges
.7 Compound bridges
.8 Movable bridges

[.029 9] Estimates of labor, time, materials

Do not use; class 624.1042

.068 5 Management of production [*formerly also* 658.5]

.1 Structural engineering and underground construction

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., structural engineering of dams 627.8

See Manual at 624.1 vs. 624

SUMMARY

624.101–.109	**Standard subdivisions**
.15	**Foundation engineering and engineering geology**
.16	**Supporting structures other than foundations**
.17	**Structural analysis and design**
.18	**Design and construction in specific materials**
.19	**Underground construction**

.101 Philosophy and theory

Class structural analysis and design in 624.17

[.102 99] Estimates of labor, time, materials

Do not use; class in 624.1042

.104 Special topics

.104 2 Estimates of labor, time, materials

Class interdisciplinary works on quantity surveying in 692.5

.15 Foundation engineering and engineering geology

.151 Engineering geology

Class here properties of soils that support structures (foundation soils)

.151 09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class soil surveys in 624.1517

.151 3 Rock and soil mechanics

.151 32 Rock mechanics

.151 36 Soil mechanics

Including drainage properties, permeability; permafrost

.151 362 Consolidation

.151 363 Stabilization

.151 4 Soil content analysis

.151 7 Soil surveys

Add to base number 624.1517 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., soil survey of Japan 624.151752

Class general soil surveys not focusing on engineering problems in 631.47

> 624.152–624.158 Foundation engineering

Class comprehensive works in 624.15, engineering geology of foundations in 624.151

.152 Excavation

Including blasting, shoring

Class here earthwork

Class embankment in 624.162

.153 Foundation materials

Add to base number 624.153 the numbers following 620.1 in 620.12–620.19, e.g., iron 624.1537

Class foundation materials for specific types of foundations in 624.154–624.158

> 624.154–624.158 Specific types of foundations

Class comprehensive works in 624.15

.154 Pile foundations

.156 Floating foundations

Examples: cantilever and platform foundations

.157 Underwater foundations

Including caissons, cofferdams

See also 627.702 for underwater construction operations

.158 Pier foundations

.16 Supporting structures other than foundations

Examples: abutments, piers

.162 Embankments

.164 Retaining walls

.17 Structural analysis and design

Class here interdisciplinary works on structural analysis and design, structural theory

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., structural analysis of aircraft 629.1341

.171 Structural analysis

Class analysis of specific structural elements in 624.1772–624.1779

For loads, see 624.172, stresses and strains, 624.176

.171 2 Graphic statics

.171 3 Static determinacy and indeterminacy

Including statically indeterminate structures

.171 4 Deflections

.171 5 Moments and moment distribution

> 624.172–624.176 Loads, stresses, strains

Class comprehensive works in 624.171; loads, stresses, strains of specific structural elements in 624.1772–624.1779

.172 Loads

For wind loads, see 624.175

.175 Wind loads

.176 Stresses and strains (Deformation)

Produced by loads, winds, vibrations, impacts, blasts, temperature changes

Class here wreckage studies

.176 2 Earthquake engineering

.177 Structural design and specific structural elements

Class analysis in 624.171

.177 1 Structural design

For design of specific structural elements, see 624.1772–624.1779; design in specific materials, 624.18

> 624.177 2–624.177 9 Design and construction of specific structural elements

Class here specific structural elements in metal [*formerly* 624.182]

Class comprehensive works in 624.17, design of specific structural elements in specific materials other than metal in 624.18

.177 2 Beams, girders, cylinders, columns, slabs

.177 23 Beams and girders

.177 3 Trusses and frames

.177 4 Cables, wires, bars, rods

.177 5 Arches and domes

.177 6 Shells and plates

.177 62 Shells

.177 65 Plates

.177 9 Sandwich and honeycomb constructions

Class specific sandwich and honeycomb constructions in 624.1772–624.1776

.18 Design and construction in specific materials

.182 Metals

Specific structural elements in metal relocated to 624.1772–624.1779

.182 1 Iron and steel (Ferrous metals)

.182 2–.182 9 Nonferrous metals

Add to base number 624.182 the numbers following 620.18 in 620.182–620.189, e.g., construction in aluminum 624.1826

.183 Masonry, ceramic, allied materials

.183 2 Stone

Including artificial stone, e.g., concrete blocks

.183 3 Cement

.183 4 Concrete

Class concrete and cinder blocks in 624.1832

See also 721.0445 for visual concrete

.183 41 Reinforced concrete (Ferroconcrete)

Class a specific concrete structural element of reinforced concrete in 624.18342–624.18349

.183 412 Prestressed concrete

.183 414 Precast concrete

.183 42–.183 49 Specific concrete structural elements

Add to base number 624.1834 the numbers following 624.177 in 624.1772–624.1779, e.g., concrete shells 624.183462

.183 6 Brick and tile

.183 8 Glass

.184 Wood and laminated wood

.189 Other materials

Add to base number 624.189 the numbers following 620.19 in 620.191–620.199, e.g., design in plastics 624.18923

.19 Underground construction

Class here ventilation

Class subsurface mining in 622.2, construction of underground waste disposal facilities in 628.44566

.192 Mountain tunnels

.193 Tunnels

For mountain tunnels, see 624.192; underwater tunnels, 624.194

Class artistic aspects in 725.98

.194 Underwater tunnels

.2 Bridges

Class artistic aspects in 725.98

For specific types of bridges, see 624.3

[.202 88] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 624.28

.25 Structural analysis and design

.252 Loads, stresses, strains

Class loads, stresses, strains of specific structural elements and materials in 624.257

.253 Floor systems

.254 Foundations

.257 Structural elements and materials

For floor systems, see 624.253; foundations, 624.254

.28 Construction, maintenance, repair

.283 Floor systems

Class here comprehensive works on floor systems of bridges

For structural analysis and design of floor systems, see 624.253

.284 Foundations

Class here comprehensive works on foundations of bridges

For structural analysis and design of foundations, see 624.254

.3 Specific types of bridges

For tubular bridges, see 624.4; arch bridges, 624.6; compound bridges, 624.7; movable bridges, 624.8

> 624.32–624.35 Long-span bridges

Class comprehensive works in 624.3

For suspension bridges, see 624.5

.32 Trestle bridges

.33 Continuous bridges

Bridges consisting of beams, girders, or trusses extending uninterruptedly over more than two supports

For trestle bridges, see 624.32

.35 Cantilever bridges

.37 Girder and beam bridges

Examples: covered-, lattice-, plate-girder bridges; Bailey bridges

Class long-span girder and beam bridges in 624.32–624.35

For box-girder bridges, see 624.4; plate-girder suspension bridges, 624.5

.38 Truss bridges

Class long-span truss bridges in 624.32–624.35

.4 Tubular and box-girder bridges

.5 Suspension bridges

Examples: plate-girder suspension bridges

[.52–.55] Early and modern suspension bridges

Numbers discontinued; class in 624.5

.6 Arch bridges

Class here truss arch bridges

.63 Of masonry

.67 Of metal

.7 Compound bridges

Class a specific type of compound bridge with the type, e.g., plate-girder suspension bridges 624.5

.8 Movable bridges

.82 Bascule bridges

.83 Swing bridges

Variant names: swing drawbridges, swivel bridges

.84 Vertical lift bridges

.86 Transporter bridges

.87 Pontoon bridges

625 Engineering of railroads, roads, highways

General aspects: planning, analysis, design, construction

Class military transportation engineering in 623.6, tunnel engineering in 624.193, bridge engineering in 624.2

SUMMARY

625.1 Railroads
.2 Railroad rolling stock
.3 Inclined, mountain, ship railroads
.4 Rapid transit systems
.5 Cable and aerial railways
.6 Surface rail and trolley systems
.7 Roads
.8 Artificial road surfaces

.1 Railroads

Including comprehensive works on special-purpose railroads

Class here comprehensive works on broad-, narrow-, standard-gage railroads

Class electrification of railroads in 621.33

For railroad rolling stock, see 625.2; special-purpose railroads, 625.3–625.6

.100 1 Philosophy and theory

.100 2 Miscellany

[.100 228] Models and miniatures

Do not use; class in 625.19

[.100 288] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 625.17

.100 3–.100 9 Standard subdivisions

.103 Monorail railroads

Class elevated monorail systems in 625.44

.11 Surveying and design

Examples: final location surveys; determination of grades, switchbacks, right-of-way

---

> 625.12–625.16 Permanent way

Class comprehensive works in 625.1

.12 Earthwork

.122 Engineering geology

Including surveys, tests, analysis of foundation soils; soil and rock mechanics

.123 Roadbed preparation

Example: excavation

.13 Protective structures

Examples: snow fences, permanent snowsheds, retaining walls

.14 Track

For rails and rail fastenings, see 625.15; track accessories, 625.16

.141 Ballast

.143 Ties (Sleepers) and tie plates

.144 Track laying

Class laying of monorail tracks in 625.146, of tracks over ice cover in 625.147

.146 Monorail tracks

.147 Tracks over ice cover

.15 Rails and rail fastenings

.16 Track accessories

.163 Turnouts and crossings

Including frogs, switches, sidings

.165 Control devices

Examples: signals, signs

.17 Maintenance and repair

Example: snow removal operations

.18 Railroad yards (Terminal layouts)

.19 Model and miniature railroads and trains

.2 Railroad rolling stock

Class here comprehensive works on specific types of cars, on rolling stock for roads with two running rails

Class rolling stock for special-purpose railroads in 625.3–625.6

See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388

[.202 28] Models and miniatures

Do not use; class in 625.19

> 625.21–625.26 For roads with two running rails

Class comprehensive works in 625.2

.21 Running gear

Examples: axles, bearings, springs, wheels

Class here running gear for specific types of cars

> 625.22–625.24 Specific types of cars

Class comprehensive works in 625.2, running gear for specific types of cars in 625.21, accessory equipment for specific types of cars in 625.25

.22 Work cars (Nonrevenue rolling stock)

Examples: cabooses, handcars, railroad snowplows

.23 Passenger-train cars

Examples: coaches; baggage, dining, sleeping cars

.24 Freight cars

Examples: boxcars, gondola cars, refrigerator cars, tank cars

.25 Accessory equipment

Examples: brakes, buffers, couplings

Class here accessory equipment for specific types of cars

.26 Locomotives

Class running gear in 625.21, accessory equipment in 625.25

.261 Steam locomotives

.262 Gas-turbine locomotives

.263 Electric locomotives

For diesel electric locomotives, see 625.2662

.265 Air-compression-powered locomotives

.266 Diesel and semidiesel locomotives

.266 2 Diesel-electric locomotives

.266 4 Diesel-hydraulic locomotives

.27 Mechanical operation

.28 Monorail rolling stock

> **625.3–625.6 Special-purpose railroads**

Class here roadbeds, tracks and accessories, rolling stock

Class comprehensive works in 625.1, mine railroads in 622.66

.3 Inclined, mountain, ship railroads

.32 Funicular railroads

.33 Rack railroads

.39 Ship railroads

.4 Rapid transit systems

Including guided-way systems

For surface systems, see 625.6

.42 Underground railways (Subways)

.44 Elevated railroads

Including elevated monorail systems

.5 Cable and aerial railways

For funicular railroads, see 625.32

.6 Surface rail and trolley systems

Light interurban and local

.65 Roadbeds, tracks, accessories

.66 Streetcars and trolleys

Including horse-drawn streetcars

.7 Roads

Class here highways, streets

Class grade crossings (road crossings of railroads) in 625.163

For artificial road surfaces, see 625.8

[.702 88] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 625.76

[.702 89] Safety measures

Do not use; class in 625.7042

.704 Special topics

.704 2 Safety engineering

.72 Surveying and design

.723 Surveying

Example: final location surveys

Class soil surveys in 625.732

.725 Design

Including determination of bankings, grades

.73 Earthwork

.732 Engineering geology

Including surveys, tests, analysis of foundation soils; soil and rock mechanics

.733 Foundation preparation

Including excavation

.734 Drainage

Including conduits, dikes, ditches, gutters, pipes

For culverts, see 625.7342

.734 2 Culverts

.735 Subsurface highway materials

.74 Dirt roads

Stabilized and unstabilized

Including soil stabilization processes

For surfacing dirt roads, see 625.75

.75 Surfacing dirt roads

.76 Maintenance and repair

Class maintenance and repair not provided for here with the subject, using notation 0288 from Table 1, e.g., maintenance of roadside areas 625.770288, maintenance and repair of forestry roads in 634.93

.761 Damages and their repairs

Examples: resurfacing, shoulder maintenance

.763 Snow and ice control measures

Examples: use of snowplows, snow fences

Class here municipal snow and ice removal [*formerly* 628.466]

.77 Roadside areas

Examples: parking turnouts, picnic areas, rest areas

Including planting and cultivation of roadside vegetation

.79 Ice crossings, traffic control equipment, protective roadside barriers

For public lighting for roads, see 628.95

.792 Ice crossings

Class here ice and snow-compacted roads

.794 Traffic control equipment

Examples: markings, signals, signs

.795 Protective roadside barriers

Examples: dividers, fences

Class snow fences in 625.763, curbs in 625.888

.8 Artificial road surfaces

General aspects: design, construction, materials

Class here comprehensive works on paving

Class paving surfaces not provided for here with the surface, e.g., airport runways 629.13634

[.802 88] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 625.76

> 625.81–625.86 Pavements in specific materials

Class comprehensive works in 625.8, sidewalks in specific materials in 625.881–625.886

.81 Flagstones

.82 Brick and stone

Including gravel and crushed stone pavements

For flagstones, see 625.81

.83 Wood

.84 Concretes

For bituminous concrete, see 625.85

.85 Bituminous materials

Examples: asphalts, tar, bituminous concrete

For macadam, see 625.86

.86 Macadam and telford surfaces

.88 Sidewalks and auxiliary pavements

.881–.886 Sidewalks in specific materials

Add to base number 625.88 the numbers following 625.8 in 625.81–625.86, e.g., brick sidewalks 625.882

.888 Curbs

.889 Auxiliary pavements

Examples: driveways, parking aprons

For curbs, see 625.888

[626] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

627 Hydraulic engineering

The branch of engineering dealing with utilization and control of natural waters of the earth

Class here hydraulic structures, water resource engineering

Class comprehensive works on ocean engineering in 620.4162, water supply engineering in 628.1

SUMMARY

627.04	**[Hydrodynamics and recreational waters]**
.1	**Inland waterways**
.2	**Harbors, ports, roadsteads**
.3	**Port installations**
.4	**Flood control**
.5	**Reclamation, irrigation, related topics**
.7	**Underwater operations**
.8	**Dams and reservoirs**
.9	**Other hydraulic structures**

.04 Special topics

.042 Hydrodynamics of waterways and water bodies

.046 Recreational waters

.1 Inland waterways

Class dredging and related operations in 627.7

.12 Rivers and streams

Class canalized rivers in 627.13

.122 Silt and sediment

General aspects: measurement, analysis, preventive measures

.123 Water diversions

Example: construction of barrages

.124 River mouths and estuaries

.125 Applied dynamics of rivers and streams

.13 Canals

Class here canalized rivers, comprehensive works on canals

Class tunnels carrying canals in 624.193, bridges carrying canals in 624.2, irrigation canals in 627.52

[.130 288] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 627.136

.131 Surveying and design

.132 Earthwork

Examples: clearing and grubbing, rock cutting

.133 Bank protection and reinforcement

.134 Water supply for canals

.135 Auxiliary devices

.135 2 Locks, gates, sluices

.135 3 Lifts, inclines, ramps

.136 Maintenance and repair

> 627.137–627.138 Specific types of navigation canals

Class comprehensive works in 627.13, engineering and construction details of specific types of canals in 627.131–627.136

.137 Ship canals

.138 Barge canals

.14 Lakes

[.17] Subsurface water

Relocated to 628.114

.2 Harbors, ports, roadsteads

Class dredging and related operations in 627.7

For port installations, see 627.3

.22 Anchorages and mooring grounds

Including supertanker berthing areas

Class freestanding mooring and berthing structures in 627.32

.23 Channels and fairways

.24 Protective structures

Examples: breakwaters, jetties, seawalls

.3 Port installations

Class artistic aspects in 725.34

For navigation aids, see 627.92

> 627.31–627.34 Specific types of structures and equipment

Class comprehensive works in 627.3, specific types of structures in small craft installations in 627.38

.31 Docks

Class here piers, quays, wharves

[.312–.313] Specific kinds of docks

Numbers discontinued; class in 627.31

.32 Freestanding mooring and berthing structures

.33 Port buildings

.34 Cargo-handling equipment

See also 623.867 for shipboard cargo-handling equipment

[.35] Other terminal facilities

Number discontinued; class in 627.3

Dry docks, floating dry docks relocated to 623.83

.38 Small-craft installations (Marinas)

.4 Flood control

Including flood wreckage studies

Class here use of dams and reservoirs for flood control [*formerly* 627.8]

Class construction of dams and reservoirs for flood control in 627.8; flood control for and wreckage studies of a specific type of structure with the structure, e.g., flood wreckage studies of bridges 624.2

.42 Flood barriers

Examples: dikes, levees, seawalls

.44 Water storage

In ponds, lakes, reservoirs

.45 Water diversion

Through enlargement of natural channels and construction of auxiliary channels

.5 Reclamation, irrigation, related topics

Class here comprehensive works on soil erosion and its control

Class erosion of agricultural soils and its control in 631.45, reclamation of agricultural soils in 631.6, revegetation and surface mine reclamation in 631.64

.52 Irrigation

Class here construction and use of irrigation canals

Use of this number for comprehensive works on land reclamation, on soil erosion and its control discontinued; class in 627.5

Class engineering of dams and reservoirs for irrigation in 627.8

.54 Drainage and reclamation from sea

Including polders

.56 Artificial recharge of groundwater [*formerly also* 628.114]

Former heading: water reclamation

Class comprehensive works on engineering of groundwater in 628.114

.58 Shore protection and reclamation

Examples: dune stabilization, seawall construction

Class here beach erosion and its control

Class inland dune stabilization in 631.64

.7 Underwater operations

.700 1 Philosophy and theory

.700 2 Miscellany

[.700 288] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 627.705

.700 3–.700 9 Standard subdivisions

> 627.702–627.705 General topics

Class comprehensive works in 627.7

.702 Underwater construction

.703 Salvage operations

.704 Research operations

.705 Maintenance and repair operations

.72 Diving

Class here interdisciplinary works on diving

For diving sports, see 797.2

.73 Dredging

.74 Blasting

.75 Drilling

.8 Dams and reservoirs

Class here engineering of dams and reservoirs for specific purposes

Use of dams and reservoirs for flood control relocated to 627.4

Class a specific use of dams and reservoirs with the use, e.g., water storage and conservation 628.132

.802 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Class materials in 627.81

.81 Materials, earthwork, planning, surveying

Class materials, earthwork, planning, surveying for specific kinds of dams in 627.82–627.85; for reservoirs in 627.86; for auxiliary structures in 627.88

> 627.82–627.85 Specific kinds of dams

Class comprehensive works in 627.8, ancillary structures of specific kinds of dams in 627.88

.82 Masonry dams

.83 Earth- and rock-fill dams

.84 Movable dams

Examples: bear-trap, shutter (wicket) dams

.85 Metal dams

.86 Reservoirs

Including silting control

Class ancillary structures of reservoirs in 627.88

.88 Ancillary structures

.882 Sluices, gates, penstocks

.883 Spillways and weirs

.9 Other hydraulic structures

.92 Navigation aids

Class use of navigation aids in 623.894

.922 Lighthouses

[.923] Lightships

Relocated to 623.828

.924 Light beacons, buoys, daymarks

.98 Offshore structures

Example: drilling platforms

Class here artificial islands

Class use of offshore structures with the use, e.g., use of drilling platforms in petroleum extraction 622.33819

For freestanding mooring and berthing structures, see 627.32

628 Sanitary and municipal engineering Environmental protection engineering

Class here environmental health engineering [*formerly also* 620.85], public sanitation technology

Class interdisciplinary works on environmental protection on 363.7, military sanitary engineering in 623.75; a specific aspect of municipal engineering not provided for here with the subject, e.g., road and street engineering in 625.7, laying gas pipelines 665.744

For plumbing, see 696.1

See Manual at 300 vs. 600; 363

SUMMARY

628.1	**Water supply**
.2	**Sewers and sewage**
.3	**Sewage treatment and disposal**
.4	**Waste technology, public toilets, street cleaning**
.5	**Pollution technology and industrial sanitation engineering**
.7	**Sanitary engineering for rural and sparsely populated areas**
.9	**Other branches of sanitary and municipal engineering**

[.091 734] Treatment in rural regions

Do not use; class in 628.7

.1 Water supply

Class here comprehensive works on water supply, sewers, sewage

Class water supply for rural and sparsely populated areas in 628.72

For sewers and sewage, see 628.2

SUMMARY

628.102 87	**Measurement**
.11	**Sources**
.13	**Storage and conservation**
.14	**Collection and distribution systems**
.15	**Mains and service pipes**
.16	**Testing, analysis, treatment, pollution**

.102 87 Measurement

Class testing in 628.161

.11 Sources

Including waste water

Class here protection and engineering evaluation of sources

Class interdisciplinary works on sources, on evaluation of sources in 553.7; economic and social evaluation of adequacy, development requirements, conservation of sources in 333.91; hydraulic engineering in 627

See also 628.132 for reservoirs

.112 Lakes, rivers, springs

Class artesian wells in 628.114

.114 Groundwater (Subsurface water) [*formerly also* 627.17]

Including prospecting for water [*formerly also* 622.187], artesian wells, prevention of seawater intrusion

Class here water extraction [*formerly also* 622.37], wells

Artificial recharge of groundwater relocated to 627.56

.116 Seawater

Class desalinization in 628.167

[.119] Waste water

Number discontinued; class in 628.11

.13 Storage and conservation

Including storage tanks, water towers

.132 Reservoirs

Including evaporation control

Class engineering of reservoirs for water supply, comprehensive works on protection of reservoirs in 627.86

.14 Collection and distribution systems

Class storage in collection and distribution systems in 628.13

For mains and service pipes, see 628.15

.142 Collection systems

.144 Distribution systems

.144 028 7 Testing and measurement

Class here measurement of consumption [*formerly also* 628.17]

.15 Mains and service pipes

Class here aqueducts

.16 Testing, analysis, treatment, pollution

See Manual at 363.61

SUMMARY

628.161	**Testing and analysis**
.162	**Treatment**
.164	**Mechanical treatment**
.165	**Aeration and deaeration**
.166	**Chemical treatment**
.167	**Desalinization**
.168	**Pollution and countermeasures**

.161 Testing and analysis

Class here testing and measurement of pollution [*formerly* 628.1680287]

.162 Treatment

Class here comprehensive works on treatment of water supply and sewage, treatment of sewage effluent for reuse

For mechanical treatment, see 628.164; chemical treatment, 628.166; desalinization, 628.167; sewage treatment, 628.3

.162 2 Coagulation (Flocculation), screening, sedimentation (settling)

.164 Mechanical treatment

Examples: filtration, membrane (osmotic) processes

Class membrane processes for desalinization in 628.1674

For screening, sedimentation, see 628.1622

.165 Aeration and deaeration

See also 628.1662 for ozone treatment

.166 Chemical treatment

For coagulation, see 628.1622; aeration and deaeration, 628.165

.166 2 Disinfection

Examples: chlorination, copper sulfate treatment, ozone treatment, ultraviolet radiation

Including dechlorination

.166 3 Fluoridation

Class interdisciplinary works on fluoridation in 614.5996, defluoridation in 628.1667

.166 6 Demineralization processes

Example: softening

Class desalinization in 628.167

.166 7 Defluoridation

.167 Desalinization

.167 2 By distillation

.167 23 Using nuclear energy

.167 25 Using solar energy

.167 3 By electrolysis

.167 4 By membrane processes

.167 42 Electrodialysis

.167 44 Reverse osmosis

.167 46 Piezodialysis

.167 5 By freezing

.167 6 With gas hydrates

.168 Pollution and countermeasures

Comprehensive works on liquid wastes relocated to 628.43

Class interdisciplinary works on water pollution and countermeasures in 363.7394; prevention of natural pollution of water sources in 628.11; pollution countermeasures that consist of routine water-supply or water-supply and sewage treatment in 628.162, of sewage treatment in 628.3

[.168 028 7] Testing and measurement

Relocated to 628.161

.168 09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here pollution in specific areas [*formerly* 628.1686], technological countermeasures in specific areas [*formerly* 628.1688]

Class pollution surveys in specific areas in 363.73209

.168 2 Pollution from sewage and domestic wastes

.168 23 From detergents

.168 25 From sanitary landfills

.168 3 Pollution from industrial waste

Class countermeasures by originating industry with the industry, e.g., engineering control of acid mine drainage by coal companies 622.5

For pollution from radioactive wastes, see 628.1685

.168 31 Thermal pollution

.168 32 Acid mine drainage

.168 33 Oil spills

Including disposal of cleanup debris

.168 36 Waste from chemical and related industries

.168 37 Waste from manufacturing industries

.168 4 Pollution from agricultural waste

.168 41 Soil improvement wastes

Examples: fertilizers, irrigation return flow

.168 42 Pesticides

.168 46 Animal wastes

Including feedlot runoff

.168 5 Pollution from radioactive wastes

[.168 6] Pollution in specific areas

Relocated to 628.16809

[.168 8] Abatement programs

Abatement programs relocated to 363.73946, technological countermeasures in specific areas to 628.16809

[.17] Water requirements and use

Water requirements relocated to 333.9112, water use to 333.9113, measurement of consumption to 628.1440287

.2 Sewers and sewage

Class road drainage in 625.734

For sewage treatment and disposal, see 628.3

[.202 88] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 628.24

.21 Sewer systems for handling precipitation

Including overflows

Class here urban drainage

Use of this number for comprehensive works on sewerage systems discontinued; class in 628.2

.212 Separate storm sewer systems

.214 Combined sewer systems

.23 Ventilation and deodorization of sewers

.24 Design, construction, maintenance, repair of sewers

.25 Appurtenances of sewers

Examples: catch basins, house connections, manholes, ventilators

.29 Pumping stations

.3 Sewage treatment and disposal

Class creation, treatment, disposal of sewage in a specific technology with the technology, e.g., treatment of food-processing sewage by food processors 664.096

For unsewered sewage disposal, see 628.742

See Manual at 363.61

> 628.32–628.35 Treatment

Class comprehensive works in 628.3

.32 Disinfection

.34 Primary treatment

Examples: centrifugation, primary sedimentation, screening, skimming

Class comprehensive works on a specific process that is used also in both primary and secondary treatment in 628.351–628.354

.35 Secondary and tertiary treatment

Class here aeration, biological treatment

> 628.351–628.354 Secondary treatment

Class comprehensive works in 628.35

.351 Oxidation ponds

Variant names: sewage lagoons, stabilization ponds

Including oxidation ditches

Use of this number for comprehensive works on aeration, on biological treatment discontinued; class in 628.35

.352 Filtration

Examples: sand and trickling filters

.353 Secondary sedimentation

.354 Activated sludge process

.357 Tertiary treatment

Examples: nitrogen removal

Removal of mineral nutrients, of specific minerals relocated to 628.358

Class comprehensive works on a specific process that is used in secondary and tertiary treatment in 628.351–628.354

For demineralization, see 628.358

.358 Demineralization

Class here removal of mineral nutrients, of specific minerals [*both formerly* 628.357]

.36 Disposal

For disposal into water, see 628.39

.362 Sewage effluent disposal

Class artificial recharge of groundwater in 627.56, treatment for reuse as water supply in 628.162

.362 3 Sewage irrigation

.364 Sewage sludge disposal

Example: sanitary landfills

For underground disposal of sludge, see 628.366; incineration of sludge, 628.37; utilization of sludge, 628.38

.366 Underground disposal of sludge

Including storage

.37 Incineration of sludge

Former heading: Disposal by destruction

.38 Utilization of sludge

Class a specific use with the use, e.g., use as fertilizer 631.869

.39 Disposal of sewage, sewage effluent, sewage sludge into water

.4 Waste technology [*formerly also* 604.6], public toilets, street cleaning

Class here industrial waste treatment and disposal by type of industry [*formerly* 628.54]

Use of this number for public sanitation discontinued; class in 628

Class interdisciplinary works on waste in 363.728; pollution from wastes in 628.5; waste technology for rural and sparsely populated areas in 628.74; creation, control, utilization of waste in a specific technology with the technology, e.g., waste control in pulp and paper technology 676.042, use of scrap metal 669.042

For gaseous wastes, see 628.53

.42 Toxic and hazardous wastes

Class toxic and hazardous liquid wastes in 628.43, solid wastes in 628.44, gaseous wastes in 628.53

.43 Liquid wastes [*formerly* 628.168]

Class liquid wastes released into bodies of water in 628.168

For sewers and sewage, see 628.2

.44 Solid wastes (Refuse)

.440 4 Special topics

.440 42 Specific kinds of solid wastes

See Manual at 628.44042 vs. 363.7288, 628.445

.442 Collection

.445 Treatment and disposal

See Manual at 628.44042 vs. 363.7288, 628.445

> 628.445 6–628.445 9 Disposal

Class comprehensive works in 628.445

.445 6 Disposal on land and underground

Use of this number for comprehensive works on reduction discontinued; class in 628.445

.445 62 In open dumps

.445 64 In sanitary landfills

.445 66 Underground disposal

Other than in sanitary landfills

Including construction of facilities, storage

.445 7 Incineration

.445 8 Conversion into useful products

Class here recycling technology

Class specific conversion technology with the technology, e.g., converting household garbage into fertilizer 668.6377

.445 9 Disposal into water

.45 Public toilets

.46 Street cleaning

[.462] Sprinkling and sweeping

Number discontinued; class in 628.46

[.466] Municipal snow and ice removal

Relocated to 625.763

.5 Pollution technology and industrial sanitation engineering

Class here industrial pollution

Standard subdivisions may be used for combined treatment of pollution technology and industrial sanitary engineering, or for pollution technology alone

Class interdisciplinary works on pollution in 363.73; water pollution in 628.168; engineering causes of pollution in a specific technology and reengineering a specific technology to control pollution with the technology, e.g., engineering to control pollution in petroleum refineries 665.53

For noise, see 620.23

.509 173 4 Rural regions

Class here pollution in rural and sparsely populated areas [*formerly* 628.7]

.51 Industrial sanitation engineering

Class here industrial plant sanitation

.52 Specific kinds of pollutants

General aspects: movement through the environment, control measures

Example: pesticides [*formerly also* 628.7462]

Class specific kinds of water pollutants in 628.168, air pollutants in 628.53, soil pollutants in 628.55

.53 Air pollution

Class here gaseous wastes, the immediate dispersal of pollutants from the source

Class air quality surveys in 363.73922

.532 By products of combustion

Class here smog

Use of this number for comprehensive works on fumes, gases discontinued; class in 628.53

.535 By radioactive substances

Example: radon

.536 By microbes

[.54] Industrial waste treatment and disposal by type of industry

Relocated to 628.4

.55 Soil pollution

.7 Sanitary engineering for rural and sparsely populated areas

Pollution in rural and sparsely populated areas relocated to 628.5091734

Class pest control in rural and sparsely populated areas in 628.96091734

See Manual at 628.7

.72 Water supply

.74 Waste technology

.742 Unsewered sewage disposal

Including septic tanks

.744 Solid waste technology

Class agricultural solid waste technology in 628.746

.746 Agricultural waste technology

Class water pollution from agricultural wastes in 628.1684; utilization of agricultural wastes in a specific technology with the technology, e.g., for biogas 665.776

[.746 1] Utilization of animal wastes for soil improvement

Comprehensive works relocated to 631.86, manufacture of fertilizers from animal wastes to 668.636, animal manures not used for soil improvement to 628.7466

[.746 2] Pesticides

Relocated to 628.52

.746 6 Animal wastes

Class here animal manures [*formerly* 628.7461]

.9 Other branches of sanitary and municipal engineering

.92 Fire-safety and fire-fighting technology

Class interdisciplinary works on fire hazards and their control in 363.37, forest fire technology in 634.9618

.922 Fire-safety technology

Including fire escapes

Class here fire prevention

.922 2 Flammability studies and testing

Class development of fire resistance in products in 628.9223

.922 3 Fireproofing and fire retardation

Examples: fire doors, fire retardants

Class here development of fire resistance in products

Class development of fire resistance in a specific product with the product, e.g., textiles 677.689, buildings 693.82

.922 5 Fire detection and alarms

.925 Fire-fighting technology

Class here use of equipment and supplies, comprehensive works on their manufacture

Class fire-fighting technology for airports in 629.1368; manufacture of specific kinds of equipment and supplies with the kind, e.g., fire engines 629.225, fire resistant clothing 687.16, fire stations 690.519

.925 2 Extinction with water

Examples: hydraulic systems, sprinkler systems

.925 4 Extinction with chemicals

.95 Public lighting

Examples: lighting for parks, roads

Class lighting of airports in 629.1365

.96 Pest control

Class here comprehensive works on pest control technology

Class interdisciplinary works on pest control in 363.78, control of agricultural pests in 632.6

For control of plant pests, see 628.97

.963 Aquatic invertebrates

Class aquatic insects in 628.9657

For mollusks and molluscoids, see 628.964

.964 Mollusks and molluscoids

.965 Terrestrial invertebrates

.965 7 Insects

.967 Cold-blooded vertebrates

.968 Birds

.969 Mammals

.969 3 Rodents

.969 7 Land carnivores

Examples: stray cats and dogs

.97 Control of plant pests

629 Other branches of engineering

General aspects: planning, analysis, design, construction, operation

See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388

SUMMARY

629.04	**Transportation engineering**
.1	**Aerospace engineering**
.2	**Motor land vehicles, and cycles**
.3	**Air-cushion vehicles (Ground-effect machines, Hovercraft)**
.4	**Astronautics**
.8	**Automatic control engineering**

.04 Transportation engineering

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number coming last in the schedule, e.g., land vehicles 629.049 (*not* 629.046)

Class military transportation technology in 623.6, operation of transportation equipment for recreational purposes in 796–797, technical problems peculiar to transportation of a specific commodity with the commodity, e.g., slurry transportation of coal 662.624

[.040 289] Safety measures

Do not use; class in 629.042

.042 Health and safety engineering

Including control devices, e.g., markings, signals, signs

.045 Navigation

For celestial navigation, see 527

.046 Transportation equipment

Class here vehicles

See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388

.047 Stationary transportation facilities

Class here trafficways

Class transportation buildings in 690.53

> 629.048–629.049 Engineering of transportation in specific mediums

Class comprehensive works in 629.04

For aerospace engineering, see 629.1

.048 Water transportation engineering

For nautical engineering and seamanship, see 623.8; inland waterways, 627.1; harbors, ports, roadsteads, 627.2; overwater air-cushion vehicles, 629.324

.049 Land transportation engineering

Class pipes and pipelines in 621.8672

For railroads, roads, highways, see 625; motor land vehicles, cycles, 629.2; overland air-cushion vehicles, 629.322; nonmotor land vehicles, 688.6

.1 Aerospace engineering

For astronautics, see 629.4

SUMMARY

629.11	**Mechanics and operation of aerospace flight**
.12	**Aerospace vehicles and stationary facilities**
.13	**Aeronautics**
.14	**Portable flight vehicles**

.11 Mechanics and operation of aerospace flight

Class mechanics and operation of a specific type of aerospace flight with the type, e.g., astromechanics 629.411

.12 Aerospace vehicles and stationary facilities

Class a specific facility with the facility, e.g., air-cushion vehicles 629.3

.13 Aeronautics

Use 629.13001–629.13009 for standard subdivisions

SUMMARY

629.130 1–.130 9	**Standard subdivisions of flight**
.132	**Principles of aerial flight**
.133	**Aircraft types**
.134	**Aircraft components and general techniques**
.135	**Aircraft instrumentation and systems (Avionics)**
.136	**Airports**

.130 1 Philosophy and theory of flight

[.130 153 36] Aeromechanics of flight

Do not use; class in 629.1323

[.130 155 15] Aviation meteorology

Do not use; class in 629.1324

.130 2–.130 8 Standard subdivisions of flight

.130 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of flight [*formerly also* 629.132509]

Record of flying activities in all types of aircraft

Class flight guides in 629.13254

.130 91 Transoceanic flights

Add to base number 629.13091 the numbers following 551.46 in 551.461–551.469, e.g., transpacific flights 629.130915

Do not use for other regional treatment; class in 629.1309

.130 92 Fliers

.132 Principles of aerial flight

SUMMARY

629.132 2	**Aerostatics**
.132 3	**Aerodynamics**
.132 4	**Aviation meteorology**
.132 5	**Flying and related topics**
.132 6	**Automatic control**

.132 2 Aerostatics

.132 3 Aerodynamics

Including aircraft noise

Class here comprehensive works on aeromechanics

Use 629.1323001–629.1323009 for standard subdivisions

For aerostatics, see 629.1322; weather aerodynamics, 629.1324

.132 303 Subsonic aerodynamics

.132 304 Transonic aerodynamics

Including sonic booms

.132 305 Supersonic aerodynamics

.132 306 Hypersonic aerodynamics

.132 31 Gliding and soaring

.132 32 Airflow

Example: turbulence

For boundary layers, see 629.13237

.132 322 Incompressible airflow

.132 323 Compressible airflow

.132 327 Air pockets (Air holes)

.132 33 Lift and thrust

.132 34 Drag (Air resistance)

.132 35 Pressure distribution and aerodynamic load

.132 36 Stability and control

.132 362 Aeroelasticity, flutter, vibration

.132 364 Moments of inertia

Examples: pitch, roll, yaw

Including restoring torques and damping

.132 37 Boundary layers

.132 38 Propulsion principles

.132 4 Aviation meteorology

Weather conditions and aerodynamics

.132 5 Flying and related topics

Class flying kites and model airplanes in 796.15, air sports in 797.5

[.132 509] Historical, geographical, persons treatment of flight

Relocated to 629.1309

.132 51 Navigation

.132 52 Piloting

Class here comprehensive works on flight operations, on piloting airplanes

For navigation, see 629.13251

[.132 520 92] Pilots

Do not use; class in 629.13092

.132 521 General topics

Use of this number for comprehensive works on on piloting airplanes discontinued; class in 629.13252

Class general topics of specific types of aircraft in 629.132522–629.132528

.132 521 2 Takeoff

.132 521 3 Landing

.132 521 4 Piloting under adverse conditions

Examples: nighttime, bad weather, disablement of craft

.132 521 6 Piloting commercial craft [*formerly also* 629.1325240423]

.132 521 7 Piloting private craft [*formerly also* 629.1325240422]

.132 522 Piloting lighter-than-air aircraft

.132 523–.132 528 Piloting specific types of heavier-than-air aircraft

Add to base number 626.13252 the numbers following 629.1333 in 629.13333–629.13338, e.g., piloting of helicopters 629.1325252; however, piloting private craft relocated from 629.1325240422 to 629.1325217, piloting commercial craft from 629.1325240423 to 629.1325216

Class comprehensive works on piloting airplanes in 629.13252, hang gliding in 629.14

.132 54 Flight guides (Pilot guides)

Class here charts, logbooks, maps

Add to base number 629.13254 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., pilot guides to Spain 629.1325446

.132 55 Wreckage studies

.132 6 Automatic control

Former heading: Command systems

Of manned and guided aircraft

See also 629.1352 for automatic pilots

.133 Aircraft types

Class components and general techniques of specific aircraft types in 629.134

.133 021 8 Standards [*formerly also* 629.13457]

[.133 022 8] Models and miniatures

Do not use; class models and miniatures of all types of aircraft in 629.1331

[.133 028 7] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class testing and measurement of all types of aircraft in 629.1345

[.133 028 8] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class maintenance and repair of all types of aircraft in 629.1346

.133 028 9 Safety measures

Class safety equipment in 629.13443

.133 1 Models and miniatures

Add to base number 629.1331 the numbers following 629.133 in 629.1332–629.1333, e.g., models of helicopters 629.1331352

Class flying model aircraft in 796.15

.133 2 Lighter-than-air aircraft

.133 22 Free and captive balloons

Class dirigible balloons in 629.13324

.133 24 Airships (Dirigibles)

For specific types of airships, see 629.13325–629.13327

> 629.133 25–629.133 27 Specific types of airships

Class comprehensive works in 629.13324

.133 25 Rigid airships

.133 26 Semirigid airships

.133 27 Nonrigid airships

.133 3 Heavier-than-air aircraft

.133 32 Kites

.133 33 Gliders

Class hang gliders in 629.14

.133 34 Airplanes

For rocket planes, see 629.13338

.133 340 4 Special topics

.133 340 42 General topics

.133 340 422 Private airplanes

.133 340 423 Commercial airplanes

.133 340 426 Short takeoff and landing (STOL) airplanes

.133 343 Propeller-driven airplanes

Piston and turboprop

Including ultralight airplanes

Class propeller-driven seaplanes in 629.133347, propeller-driven amphibious planes in 629.133348

.133 347 Seaplanes

.133 348 Amphibious planes

.133 349 Jet airplanes

.133 35 Vertical-lift (VTOL) craft

Examples: autogiros, convertiplanes, flying jeeps

.133 352 Helicopters

.133 36 Orthopters (Ornithopters)

.133 38 Rocket planes

.134 Aircraft components and general techniques

For aircraft instrumentation and systems, see 629.135

SUMMARY

629.134 1	**Analysis and design**
.134 2	**Manufacturing and assembling**
.134 3	**Parts**
.134 4	**Interiors and special equipment**
.134 5	**Tests and measurements**
.134 6	**Maintenance and repair**

[.134 028 7] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 629.1345

[.134 028 8] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 629.1346

.134 1 Analysis and design

Class analysis and design of parts in 629.1343, of interiors and special equipment in 629.1344

.134 2 Manufacturing and assembling

Class manufacturing and assembling of parts in 629.1343, of interiors and special equipment in 629.1344

.134 3 Parts

.134 31 Airframes

Class a specific component part with the component, e.g., fuselages 629.13434

.134 32 Airfoils

Including wing accessories

Class here wings

For control surfaces, see 629.13433; propellers, vertical lift rotors, 629.13436

.134 33 Control surfaces

Examples: ailerons, flaps, rudders

.134 34 Fuselages

.134 35 Engines and fuels

Including pollution control

.134 351 Fuels

Class here propellants

Class fuels and propellants for specific engines in 629.134352–629.134355

.134 352 Reciprocating and compound engines

Piston and compound piston-turbine engines

Class comprehensive works on reciprocating, compound, gas-turbine, jet engines in 629.13435

.134 353 Gas-turbine and jet engines

Standard subdivisions are added for gas-turbine and jet engines, for gas-turbine engines alone, for jet engines alone

.134 353 2 Turboprop engines

.134 353 3 Turbojet engines

.134 353 4 Turboramjet engines

.134 353 5 Ramjet engines

.134 353 6 Pulse-jet engines

.134 353 7 Fan-jet engines

.134 354 Rocket engines

.134 355 Nuclear power plants

.134 36 Propellers and vertical lift rotors

.134 37 Rigging and bracing equipment

.134 38 Other equipment

.134 381 Takeoff and landing gear

See also 678.32 for manufacture of tires

.134 386 Escape equipment

Examples: capsule cockpits, parachutes, pilot ejection seats

.134 4 Interiors and special equipment

.134 42 Comfort equipment

Examples: air conditioning, heating, pressurization, soundproofing, ventilating equipment

.134 43 Safety equipment

Examples: fire prevention equipment, life rafts, safety belts

.134 45 Interiors

Including cabins

.134 5 Tests and measurements

Class wreckage studies in 629.13255

.134 52 Ground tests and inspection

Including wind and shock tunnels

.134 53 Flight tests

.134 57 Measurements

Standards relocated to 629.1330218

.134 6 Maintenance and repair

Class maintenance and repair of a specific part with the part, using notation 0288 from Table 1, e.g., maintenance of interiors 629.134450288

.135 Aircraft instrumentation and systems (Avionics)

.135 1 Navigation instrumentation

Examples: air-mileage and air-position indicators, radio compasses (direction finders)

Including landing and navigation lights

.135 2 Flight instrumentation

Examples: automatic pilots; air-speed, vertical-speed, turn and bank indicators; accelerometers, altimeters, Machmeters; directional gyros, gyrohorizons

.135 3 Power-plant monitoring instrumentation

.135 4 Electrical systems

.135 5 Electronic systems

.136 Airports

Class here commercial land airports

.136 1 Specific types other than commercial land airports

Example: floating airports (seadromes)

Class details of specific types of airports in 629.1363–629.1368

.136 12 Airstrips

[.136 13] Commercial land airports

Number discontinued; class in 629.136

.136 16 Heliports

> 629.136 3–629.136 8 Details of airports

Class comprehensive works in 629.136

.136 3 Runways

.136 34 Pavements

.136 35 Drainage systems

.136 37 Snow removal and compaction

[.136 4] Airport terminal buildings

Relocated to 690.539

.136 5 Lighting systems

.136 6 Air traffic control systems

Radar control and radar devices

.136 8 Fire fighting equipment

.14 Portable flight vehicles

Units intended to be carried by a single person

Including hang gliders and gliding

Class hang gliding as a sport in 797.55

.2 Motor land vehicles, and cycles

SUMMARY

629.201–.209	**Standard subdivisions**
.22	**Types of vehicles**
.23	**Design, materials, construction**
.24	**Chassis**
.25	**Engines**
.26	**Bodies**
.27	**Other equipment**
.28	**Tests, driving, maintenance, repair**
.29	**Specialized land vehicles**

.202 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus and equipment

Class materials in 629.232

.202 89 Safety measures

Class safety engineering of motor land vehicles in 629.2042

.204 Special topics

.204 2 Safety engineering of motor land vehicles

Class here comprehensive works on motor land vehicle and highway safety engineering

For highway safety engineering, see 625.7042

.22 Types of vehicles

Class here three-wheel vehicles

Class specific details in 629.23–629.28

[.220 228] Models and miniatures

Do not use; class models and miniatures of all types of vehicles in 629.221

[.220 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class testing and measurement of all types of vehicles in 629.282

[.220 288] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class maintenance and repair of all types of vehicles in 629.287

.220 289 Safety measures

Class safety accessories in 629.276

.220 4 Special topics

.220 42 Off-road vehicles

Examples: all-terrain vehicles, snowmobiles

For dune buggies, see 629.222

.221 Models and miniatures

Add to base number 629.221 the numbers following 629.22 in 629.222–629.229, e.g., models of racing cars 629.2218

> 629.222–629.228 Gasoline-, oil-, man-powered vehicles

Class comprehensive works in 629.22

.222 Passenger automobiles

Including dune buggies, sport cars, station wagons

Class racing cars in 629.228

.222 2 Specific named passenger automobiles

Arrange alphabetically by name or make of car

Use of this number for comprehensive works on passenger automobiles for private transportation discontinued; class in 629.222

.222 3 For public transportation

.222 32 Taxicabs and limousines

.222 33 Buses

.222 34 Ambulances

.223 Light trucks

Examples: pickup trucks

Including customized vans

.224 Trucks (Lorries)

Class here tractor trailers

For light trucks, see 629.223

.225 Work vehicles

Examples: bulldozers, tractors

Class automotive materials-handling equipment in 621.86, steam tractors in 629.2292

For trucks, see 629.224

.226 Motorized homes, campers, trailers (caravans)

Class here comprehensive works on recreational vehicles (RVs)

Class construction of towed mobile homes in 690.879; a specific kind of recreational vehicle not provided for here with the vehicle, e.g., dune buggies 629.222

For tractor trailers, see 629.224

See Manual at 629.226 vs. 643.2, 690.879, 728.79

.227 Cycles

.227 1 Monocycles

.227 2 Bicycles

Mopeds and motor bicycles relocated to 629.2275

Class tandem bicycles in 629.2276

.227 3 Tricycles

.227 5 Motorcycles and motorscooters

Including mopeds and motor bicycles [*both formerly* 629.2272], minibikes

.227 6 Tandem bicycles

.228 Racing cars

Conventional and converted

Including karts, hot rods

.229 Other types of vehicles

.229 2 Steam-powered vehicles

Including steam tractors and steamrollers

.229 3 Electric-powered vehicles

.229 4 Air-compression-powered vehicles

.229 5 Solar energy-powered vehicles

.229 6 Nuclear-powered vehicles

.23 Design, materials, construction

Class materials for, design and construction of parts in 629.24–629.27

.231 Analysis and design

Including anthropometric and safety design

.232 Materials

.234 Manufacturing techniques

Including factory inspection

> 629.24–629.27 Parts

Class comprehensive works in 629.2

.24 Chassis

.242 Supporting frames

.243 Springs and shock absorbers

.244 Transmission devices

.244 6 Automatic transmission devices

.245 Rear axles, differentials, drive shafts

.246 Brakes

Including brake fluids

.247 Front axles and steering gear

.248 Wheels

Including rims, hubcaps, bearings

.248 2 Tires

See also 678.32 for manufacture of tires

.25 Engines

Class here pollution control

Use 629.25001–629.25009 for standard subdivisions

Most works covering automobile engines as a whole focus on spark-ignition engines and are classed in 629.2504

> 629.250 1–629.250 9 Specific types of engines

Class comprehensive works in 629.25

.250 1 Steam engines

.250 2 Electric power plants

.250 3–.250 6 Internal-combustion engines

Add to base number 629.250 the numbers following 621.43 in 621.433–621.436, e.g., diesel engines 629.2506

.250 7 Air-compression engines

.250 8 Solar engines

.250 9 Nuclear power plants

> 629.252–629.258 Parts and auxiliary systems of internal-combustion engines

Class here comprehensive works on specific kinds of parts and auxiliary systems of automotive engines

Class comprehensive works in 629.25, a specific part and auxiliary system of noninternal-combustion engines in 629.259

.252 Motor parts of internal-combustion engines

Including mufflers (silencers)

.252 8 Emission control devices

.253 Fuel systems and fuels of internal-combustion engines

.253 3 Carburetors and carburetion

.253 8 Fuels

.254 Ignition, electrical, electronic systems of internal-combustion engines

Standard subdivisions are added for ignition, electrical, electronic systems, for ignition systems alone, for electrical systems alone

Class specific uses of electrical and electronic systems with the use, e.g., electronic fuel injection 629.253, electric starters 629.257

.254 2 Batteries

.254 8 Auxiliary electrical systems

For lighting equipment, see 629.271

.254 9 Electronic systems

.255 Lubricating systems and lubricants of internal-combustion engines

.256 Cooling systems of internal-combustion engines

Including antifreeze solutions

.257 Starting devices of internal-combustion engines

.258 Throttles and spark control devices of internal-combustion engines

.259 Parts and auxiliary systems of other kinds of power plants

.259 2 Of steam engines

.259 3 Of electric power plants

.259 4 Of air-compression engines

.259 5 Of solar engines

.259 6 Of nuclear power plants

.26 Bodies

Including convertible tops, doors, fenders, interior and exterior decoration, running boards, seats, windows, windshields

.27 Other equipment

.271 Lighting equipment

.273 Panel instrumentation

.275 Hardware

Examples: handles, hinges, locks

.276 Safety accessories

Examples: air bags, bumpers, mirrors, seat belts, windshield wipers and washers

.277 Comfort, convenience, entertainment equipment

Examples: air conditioners, ashtrays, glove compartments, heaters, radios, tape players, telephones, televisions, two-way radios

.28 Tests, driving, maintenance, repair

.282 Tests and related topics

For factory inspection, see 629.234

.282 4 Road tests (Performance tests)

.282 5 Periodic inspection and roadability tests

.282 6 Wreckage studies

Determination of mechanical failure through examination of remains

.283 Driving (Operation)

General aspects: methods of driving, factors in safe driving

Class here driving private passenger automobiles

For driving vehicles other than internal-combustion passenger vehicles, see 629.284

.283 04 Special topics

.283 042 Driving off-road vehicles

Examples: all-terrain vehicles, snowmobiles

[.283 2] Driving private passenger automobiles

Use of this number discontinued; class in 629.283

.283 3 Driving public transportation vehicles

.283 32 Taxicabs and limousines

.283 33 Buses

.283 34 Ambulances

.284 Driving vehicles other than internal-combustion passenger vehicles

Add to base number 629.284 the numbers following 629.22 in 629.223–629.229, e.g., driving trucks 629.2844

.286 Services provided by garages and service stations

See also 690.538 for garage and service station buildings

For maintenance and repair, see 629.287

.287 Maintenance and repair

Add to base number 629.287 the numbers following 629.22 in 629.2204–629.229, e.g., repair of motorcycles 629.28775

Arrange alphabetically by trade name under each type of vehicle

(Option: Arrange all vehicles regardless of type alphabetically by trade name)

Class works on car tune-ups limited to maintenance and repair of the engine in 629.25; maintenance and repair of a specific part with the part, using notation 0288 from Table 1, e.g., maintenance of bodies 629.260288

.29 Specialized land vehicles

Use of this number for other topics discontinued; class in 629.2

For overland air-cushion vehicles, see 629.322

.292 Nonsurface motor land vehicles

Examples: subterranean, ocean-floor vehicles

.295 Vehicles for extraterrestrial surfaces

Example: moon cars

.3 Air-cushion vehicles (Ground-effect machines, Hovercraft)

.31 General topics

Class general topics applied to specific types of vehicles in 629.32

.313 Lift systems

.314 Propulsion systems

.317 Structural analysis and design

.32 Types of vehicles

.322 Overland air-cushion vehicles

Class amphibious air-cushion vehicles in 629.325

.324 Overwater air-cushion vehicles

Class amphibious air-cushion vehicles in 629.325

.325 Amphibious air-cushion vehicles

.4 Astronautics

SUMMARY

629.401–.409	**Standard subdivisions**
.41	**Space flight**
.43	**Unmanned space flight**
.44	**Auxiliary spacecraft**
.45	**Manned space flight**
.46	**Engineering of unmanned spacecraft**
.47	**Astronautical engineering**

[.401 521] Astromechanics

Do not use; class in 629.411

.409 2 Astronautical engineers

Class astronauts in 629.450092

.41 Space flight

Class preparation for flight to a specific celestial body with the flight, e.g., preparation for manned lunar flight 629.454

For unmanned space flight, see 629.43; manned space flight, 629.45

.411 Astromechanics

.411 1 Gravitation

.411 3 Orbits

[.411 4] Perturbations

Use of this number discontinued; class in 629.411

.415 Planetary atmospheres

Including exit and reentry problems

.415 1 Aerodynamics

.415 2 Atmospheric thermodynamics

.416 Space phenomena and environments affecting flight

Examples: meteoroids, radiations

.418 Weightlessness

General aspects: phenomena, effects, countermeasures

.43 Unmanned space flight

.432 Launching

.433 Guidance and homing

.434 Flight of artificial satellites

Class satellite flight for a specific purpose with the purpose, e.g., weather satellites 551.6354

.435 Astronautical exploratory and data-gathering operations

.435 2 Ionospheric and near-space

.435 3 Lunar

.435 4 Planetary

Add to base number 629.4354 the numbers following 523.4 in 523.41–523.48, e.g., Venusian probes 629.43542

.437 Communications and tracking

.44 Auxiliary spacecraft

.441 Space shuttles

.442 Space stations

Class here space colonies

.445 Space laboratories

.45 Manned space flight

Use 629.45001–629.45009 for standard subdivisions

Class auxiliary spacecraft in 629.44

.450 1 Projected accounts

Class projected accounts of flight to a specific celestial body in 629.454–629.455

.450 7 Selection and training of astronauts

.452 Launching and takeoff

.453 Guidance, homing, navigation

.454 Circumterrestrial and lunar flights

.454 2 Preflight activities

Examples: flight planning, preparation, training

.454 3 Takeoff and in-flight activities

.454 4 Approach, orbiting, landing

.454 5 Retakeoff and return flight

.455 Planetary flights

Class here flights to planetary satellites

Add to base number 629.455 the numbers following 523.4 in 523.41–523.48, e.g., flights to Mars 629.4553; then add 0* and to the result add the numbers following 629.454 in 629.4542–629.4545, e.g., landing on Mars 629.455304

.457 Communications and tracking

.458 Piloting and related activities

.458 2 Piloting

.458 3 Rendezvous with other spacecraft

.458 4 Extravehicular activities

Example: space walks

.458 5 Rescue operations

.458 8 Atmospheric entry and landing

.46 Engineering of unmanned spacecraft

Example: artificial satellites

[.460 4] Special topics

Use of this number discontinued; class in 629.4

[.460 44] Environmental control

Relocated to 629.467

.461–.468 Analysis, design, construction, materials, parts, systems, facilities

Add to base number 629.46 the numbers following 629.47 in 629.471–629.478, e.g., environmental control 629.467 [*formerly also* 629.46044]

.47 Astronautical engineering

Class here comprehensive works on spacecraft

For auxiliary spacecraft, see 629.44; engineering of unmanned spacecraft, 629.46

[.470 4] Special topics

Use of this number discontinued; class in 629.47

[.470 44] Environmental control

Relocated to 629.477

.471 Structural analysis and design of spacecraft

.472 Spacecraft materials and components

.473 Spacecraft construction

*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

.474 Spacecraft engineering systems

For propulsion systems, see 629.475; life-support systems, 629.477

.474 2 Flight operations systems

Examples: piloting, guidance, homing, navigation, landing systems

.474 3 Communication and tracking systems

.474 4 Auxiliary power systems

.474 43 Nuclear power systems

.474 45 Electric and magnetohydrodynamic power systems

.475 Propulsion systems

Engines, fuels, auxiliary equipment and instrumentation

.475 2 Chemical propulsion

.475 22 Liquid propellant

.475 24 Solid propellant

.475 3 Nuclear propulsion

.475 4 Photon propulsion

.475 5 Electric and magnetohydrodynamic propulsion

Examples: plasma and ion propulsion

.477 Environmental control [*formerly also* 629.47044] and life-support systems

.477 2 Space suits

.477 3 Food and water supply

.477 4 Sanitation and sterilization

Including control of wastes

.477 5 Control of temperature, humidity, air supply and pressure

.478 Terrestrial facilities

Examples: launch complexes, space ports; spacecraft maintenance, ground testing, repair facilities

.8 Automatic control engineering

Class here automatons that are not computer controlled

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., numerical control of machine tools 621.9023

See Manual at 003.5 vs. 629.8

.801 Philosophy and theory

Class control theory in 629.8312

.804 Special topics

.804 2 Hydraulic control

Including fluidics

.804 3 Electric control

Electronic control relocated to 629.89

Class computer control in 629.89

.804 5 Pneumatic control

.82 Open-loop systems

Mechanisms in which outputs have no effect on input signals

Example: vending machines

Class computer control of open-loop systems in 629.89

.83 Closed-loop (Feedback) systems

Mechanisms which maintain prescribed relationships between the controlled outputs and the inputs

Class computer control of closed-loop systems in 629.89

.830 1 Philosophy and theory

Class control theory in 629.8312

[.830 288] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 629.8318

.831 General principles

Class general principles of specific mechanisms and systems in 629.832–629.836

.831 2 Control theory

Mathematical design, analysis, synthesis

Including optimal control

Class here comprehensive works on control theory

Class interdisciplinary works on control theory in 003.5, control theory for open-loop systems in 629.82

.831 3 Circuitry

.831 4 Feedback characteristics

.831 5 System components

Examples: amplifiers, error correctors, error detectors

.831 7 Construction and assembly

.831 8 Maintenance and repair

> 629.832–629.836 Specific mechanisms and systems

General aspects: components, circuitry, construction

Class comprehensive works in 629.83

.832 Linear mechanisms and systems

.832 3 Servomechanisms

.833 Multiple-loop mechanisms and systems

.836 Nonlinear mechanisms and systems

Example: adaptive control systems

.89 Computer control

Class here electronic control [*formerly* 629.8043], comprehensive works on computer control

Computer control of factory operations for manufacture of products listed in 670–680 is classed in 670.427

[.891] Sequential machines

Relocated to 511.3

.892 Robots

Former heading: Automatons

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 629.892 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 629.892416, but use of digital computers 629.892 (*not* 629.8924)

Use of this number for automatons that are not computer controlled discontinued; class in 629.8

.895 Computerized process control

Use of computers to keep conditions of continuous processes as close as possible to desired values or within a desired range by controlling continuous variables such as temperature or pressure

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 629.855 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 629.895416, but use of digital computers 629.895 (*not* 629.8954)

Use of this number for comprehensive works on computer control discontinued; class in 629.89

630 Agriculture and related technologies

Class here farming, farms, comprehensive works on plant crops

See also 306.349 for agricultural sociology, 307.72 for rural sociology, 333.76 for agricultural land economics, 338.1 for agricultural economics, 900 (with use of notation 009734 from table under 930–990) for rural conditions and civilization

See Manual at 580–590 vs. 630, 641.3

SUMMARY

630.1–.9 Standard subdivisions
631 Specific techniques; apparatus, equipment, materials
632 Plant injuries, diseases, pests
633 Field and plantation crops
634 Orchards, fruits, forestry
635 Garden crops (Horticulture) Vegetables
636 Animal husbandry
637 Processing dairy and related products
638 Insect culture
639 Hunting, fishing, conservation, related technologies

[.15] Scientific principles

Do not use; class in 630.21–630.29

.2 Miscellany and scientific principles

.201 Special treatment

.201 1–.201 2 Tabulated, illustrative, related materials

Add to base number 630.201 the numbers following —02 in notation 021–022 from Table 1, e.g., agricultural pictures 630.20122

.201 7 Humorous treatment

.201 8 Audiovisual treatment

.202 Synopses and outlines

Use of this number for manuals discontinued; class in 630

.203–.207 Other miscellany

Add to base number 630.20 the numbers following —02 in notation 023–028 from Table 1, e.g., directories 630.205

.208 Auxiliary techniques and procedures [*both formerly* 631]

Class here auxiliary techniques and procedures for field crops [*both formerly* 633.0028]

Add to base number 630.208 the numbers following —028 in notation 0285–0289 from Table 1, e.g., safety measures 630.2089

Class apparatus, equipment, materials in 631

.209 Commercial miscellany [*formerly also* 380.141029, 381.41029, 382.41029]

Add to base number 630.209 the numbers following —029 in notation 0294–0299 from Table 1, e.g., product directories 630.2094

.21–.29 Scientific principles

Add to base number 630.2 the numbers following 5 in 510–590, e.g., agricultural meterology 630.2515; however, agricultural genetics relocated from 630.2751 to 631.523

Class miscellany in 630.201–630.209

.71 Schools and courses

.717 Extension work for young people

631 Specific techniques; apparatus, equipment, materials

Topics common to plant and animal husbandry or limited to plant culture

Class here apparatus, equipment, materials for field crops [*all formerly* 633.0028]; cultivation, harvesting, related topics of field and plantation crops [*all formerly* 633.08]

Use of this number for comprehensive works on crops and their production discontinued; class in 630

Auxiliary techniques and procedures relocated to 630.208

Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials of specific plant crops in 633–635; of animal husbandry in 636.01–636.08

For plant injuries, diseases, pests, see 632

SUMMARY

631.2	**Use of agricultural structures**
.3	**Use of agricultural tools, machinery, apparatus, equipment**
.4	**Soil science**
.5	**Cultivation and harvesting**
.6	**Clearing, drainage, revegetation**
.7	**Water conservation**
.8	**Use of fertilizers and soil conditioners**

.2 Use of agricultural structures

Class construction of agricultural structures with the structure, e.g., barns 690.8922

.21 Farmhouses

.22 General-purpose buildings

Class here barns

Class housing for domestic animals in 636.0831

[.23] Granaries, grain elevators, silos

Use of granaries and grain elevators relocated to 633.10468, of silos to 633.20868

.25 Machine and equipment sheds

.27 Fences, hedges, walls

.28 Roads, bridges, dams

.3 Use of tools, machinery, apparatus, equipment

Class comprehensive works on manufacture of tools, machinery, apparatus, equipment in 681.7631; manufacture of a specific article with the article, e.g., tractors 629.225

See also 631.2 for use of agricultural structures

.304 Workshops

[.31] Soil-working tools and machines

Relocated to 631.51

[.33] Use of planting and sowing equipment

Relocated to 631.53

.34 Use of equipment for care and shelter of plants

Use of equipment for a specific purpose relocated to the purpose, e.g., greenhouses 631.583

[.35] Use of harvesting equipment

Comprehensive works relocated to 631.55, use of grain harvesting equipment to 633.1045

[.36] Use of equipment in preparation for storage and transport

Relocated to 631.56

.37 Use of power and power machinery

Class a specific use of power and power machinery with the use, e.g., combines 633.1045

.371 Kinds of power

Examples: human, animal, mechanical, electric power

.372 Tractors

.373 Transport equipment

Examples: trucks, wagons

.4 Soil science

Class here interdisciplinary works on soils [*formerly also* 553.6]

Class soil formation in 551.305, petrology of soils in 552.5, engineering use of soils in 624.151

For clearing and drainage, see 631.6; use of fertilizers and soil conditioners, 631.8

[.401 2] Classification of soils

Do not use; class in 631.44

[.401 5] Scientific principles

Do not use; class in 631.4

[.409] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 631.49

.41 Soil chemistry

Class gas content in 631.433

For soil fertility, acidity, alkalinity, see 631.42

.416 Inorganic chemistry

Example: salinity

See also 631.82 for soil conditioners

.417 Organic chemistry

Including humus

Class here soil biochemistry

.42 Soil fertility, acidity, alkalinity

.422 Fertility

Class use of fertilizers in 631.8

.43 Soil physics

Including soil micromorphology

.432 Moisture and hydromechanics

.433 Gas content and mechanics

.436 Thermal phenomena

.44 Soil classification

.45 Soil erosion and its control

Class here soil conservation, comprehensive works on soil and water conservation

For revegetation, see 631.64; water conservation, 631.7

.451 Conservation tillage

Example: mulch tillage

For tillage for water conservation, see 631.586

.452 Crop rotation and cover crops

Class comprehensive works on crop rotation in 631.582

.455 Contouring and terracing

.456 Strip cropping

.46 Soil biology

For biochemistry, see 631.417

.47 Soil and land use surveys

Soil types, agricultural utilization of land in specific areas

Add to base number 631.47 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., soil survey of Gonzales County, Texas 631.47764257

See Manual at 631.47 vs. 631.49

.49 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 631.49 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., soil science in China 631.4951

For soil and land use surveys, see 631.47

See Manual at 631.47 vs. 631.49

.5 Cultivation and harvesting

.51 Soil working (Tillage)

Before and after planting

Class here use of soil-working tools and machines [*formerly also* 631.31]

Class soil working in special methods of cultivation in 631.58

For conservation tillage, see 631.451

.52 Production of propagational organisms and new varieties

Example of propagational organism: seedlings

Class here nursery practice

.521 Seeds

.523 Development of new varieties

Including plant introductions

Class here agricultural genetics [*formerly also* 630.2751], germ plasm, hybrids

.526 Bulbs and tubers

.53 Plant propagation

Class here use of planting and sowing equipment [*formerly also* 631.33], comprehensive works on plant breeding

For production of propagational organisms and new varieties, see 631.52; grafting, pruning, training, 631.54

.531 Propagation from seeds

.532 Propagation from bulbs and tubers

.533 Propagation from suckers, runners, buds

Class propagation from tubers in 631.532, from cuttings in 631.535

.534 Propagation by layering

.535 Propagation from cuttings and slips

.536 Propagation by transplanting

[.537] Propagation from nursery stock

Number discontinued; class in 631.53

.54 Grafting, pruning, training

Most works on grafting and pruning will be classed in 634.044 and cognate numbers in 634.1–634.8

.541 Grafting

.542 Pruning

[.544] Forcing

Relocated to 631.583

[.545] Retarding

Relocated to 631.583

.546 Training on poles, trellises, walls

.55 Harvesting

Examples: mowing, reaping

Class here use of harvesting equipment [*formerly also* 631.35]

Class operations subsequent to harvesting in 631.56

.558 Yields

See Manual at 631.558 vs. 338.1

.56 Operations subsequent to harvesting

Examples: cleaning, husking, packing

Class here use of equipment in preparation for storage and transport [*formerly also* 631.36]

.567 Grading

.568 Storage

.57 Varieties and kinds of organisms used in agriculture

Use for description of organisms that contain little or no information on how to grow them

Most works on varieties and kinds of plants will be classed in 633–635, usually using 7 from table under 633–635, e.g., varieties of grain crops 633.1047

Class physiology and anatomy of agricultural plants in 581, development of new varieties in 631.523

.58 Special cultivation methods

See also 333.76 for special methods of cultivation as topics in land economics, 338.162 for them as topics in agricultural economics

.581 Reduced cultivation methods

Class here minimum tillage, surface tillage

.581 2 Fallowing

.581 4 No-tillage

.581 8 Shifting cultivation (Slash-and-burn agriculture)

.582 Crop rotation

Class crop rotation to control erosion in 631.452

.583 Controlled-environment agriculture

Including forcing [*formerly* 631.544], retarding [*formerly* 631.545]

Class here use of greenhouses [*formerly also* 631.34]

Most works on use of greenhouses are classed in 635.0483 (greenhouse gardening) and cognate numbers in 635.1–635.9

.584 Organic farming

Class a specific aspect with the aspect, e.g., compost 631.875

.585 Soilless culture (Hydroponics)

.586 Dry farming

Class here tillage for water conservation

.587 Irrigation [*formerly also* 631.7]

Use only for works describing what is done on the farm, e.g., installation of center-pivot sprinkler systems

Class comprehensive works on irrigation, works on obtaining irrigation water from off-farm sources in 627.52; digging wells in 628.114

For sewage irrigation, see 628.3623

.6 Clearing, drainage, revegetation

.61 Clearing

.62 Drainage

Class comprehensive works on drainage, on off-farm drainage projects in 627.54

.64 Revegetation

Including inland dune stabilization, surface mine reclamation

Class comprehensive works on reclamation in 627.5, reforestation in 634.956

.7 Water conservation

Irrigation relocated to 631.587

For tillage for water conservation, see 631.586

.8 Use of fertilizers and soil conditioners

Including growth regulators

Class here comprehensive works on agricultural chemicals

Class comprehensive works on soil fertility in 631.422

For pesticides, see 632.95

See also 668.62 for manufacture of fertilizers

.809 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of use of fertilizers [*formerly* 631.819] and soil conditioners

.81 Nutritive principles, complete fertilizers, methods of application

Use of this number for comprehensive works on fertilizers discontinued; class in 631.8

Class nutritive principles and methods of application of specific fertilizers in 631.83–631.87

.811 Nutritive principles

.813 Complete fertilizers

.816 Methods of application

[.819] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Relocated to 631.809

.82 Soil conditioners

Example: for control of salinity

.821 For control of acidity

Example: lime

.825 For control of alkalinity

.826 For texture

Example: peat

> 631.83–631.87 Specific kinds of fertilizers

Class comprehensive works in 631.8

.83 Potassium fertilizers

.84 Nitrogen fertilizers

.841 Ammonium, urea, cyanamide fertilizers

For ammonium nitrate, see 631.842

.842 Nitrate fertilizers

Example: ammonium nitrate

.843 Slaughterhouse (Abattoir) residues

For bone meal, see 631.85

.847 Biological methods of soil nitrification

Use of nitrifying bacteria, nitrifying crops

.85 Phosphorus fertilizers

Including bone meal

.86 Organic fertilizers

Including other organic fertilizers [*formerly* 631.87]

Class here utilization of animal wastes for soil improvement [*formerly also* 628.7461], animal manures

For slaughterhouse residues, see 631.843; vegetable manures and converted household garbage, 631.87

.861 Farm manure

.866 Guano

.869 Sewage sludge

.87 Vegetable manures and converted household garbage

Other organic fertilizers relocated to 631.86

.874 Green manures

.875 Compost

.877 Converted household garbage

632 Plant injuries, diseases, pests

Class here injuries, diseases, pests of field and plantation crops [*formerly* 633.089], pathology of agricultural plants, comprehensive works on plant and animal injuries, diseases, pests

Class comprehensive works on physiology and pathology of agricultural plants in 581.1; use of agricultural plants in studies of basic pathological processes in 581.2; injuries, diseases, pests of specific crops and groups of crops in 633–635

For veterinary medicine, see 636.089

.1 Injuries and damages caused by environmental forces

.11 Low temperatures injury

.12 High temperatures and drought injury

.14 Hail damage

.15 Lightning injury

.16 Wind and rain damage

.17 Flood damage

.18 Fire injury

.19 Air pollution and radiation injury

.2 Galls and pathological development

.3 Diseases

Class protozoan diseases in 632.631

For fungus diseases, see 632.4; viral and rickettsial diseases, 632.8

.32 Bacterial diseases

.4 Fungus diseases

Add to base number 632.4 the numbers following 589.2 in 589.22–589.25, e.g., rusts 632.425, smuts 632.427

.5 Harmful plants

Class here plant pests

.52 Parasites

.58 Weeds

.6 Pests Animal pests

Add to base number 632.6 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., snails 632.643; however, class insect pests in 632.7

Class pest control service and interdisciplinary works on pests in 363.78, comprehensive works on pest control technology, on specific topics of pest control and of animal pest control in 632.95

For plant pests, see 632.5; pest control materials, 632.9

.7 Insect pests

Add to base number 632.7 the numbers following 595.7 in 595.71–595.79, e.g., locusts 632.726

.8 Viral and rickettsial diseases

.9 General topics of pest, harmful-plant, disease control

Class control of specific pests, of specific animal pests, of harmful plants, of diseases in 632.2–632.7

.93 Plant quarantine

.94 Spraying, dusting, fumigating

Use of this number for comprehensive works on control methods and apparatus discontinued; class in 632.9

.95 Pest control materials (Pesticides)

.950 4 Special topics

.950 42 Undesired effects and their control

.951 Insecticides, rodenticides, vermicides

.952 Fungicides and algicides

.953 Bactericides

.954 Herbicides

.96 Biological control

> 633–635 Specific plant crops

Add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:

1–6 Cultivation and harvesting

Add the numbers following 631.5 in 631.51–631.56, e.g., harvesting 5

For special cultivation methods, see 8

7 Varieties and kinds

Special topics of specific varieties and kinds relocated to the topic, e.g., irrigation of a variety 87

8 Special cultivation methods, fertilizers, soil conditioners

81–87 Special cultivation methods

Add to 8 the numbers following 631.58 in 631.581–631.587, e.g., irrigation 87

89 Fertilizers and soil conditioners

Add to 89 the numbers following 631.8 in 631.81–631.87, e.g., compost 8975

9 Injuries, diseases, pests

Add to 9 the numbers following 632 in 632.1–632.9, e.g., injuries from low temperatures 911

Class comprehensive works in 630

See Manual at 633–635

633 Field and plantation crops

Large-scale production of crops intended for agricultural purposes and industrial processing other than preservation

Class truck farming in 635; a specific plantation or field crop not provided for here with the crop, e.g., bananas 634.772

SUMMARY

633.001–.009 [Standard subdivisions]
.1 Cereal grains (Cereals)
.2 Forage crops
.3 Legumes, other forage crops
.5 Fiber crops
.6 Sugar, syrup, starch crops
.7 Alkaloidal crops
.8 Other crops grown for industrial processing

.001 Philosophy and theory

.002 Miscellany

[.002 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Auxiliary techniques and procedures for field crops relocated to 630.208; apparatus, equipment, materials for field crops to 631

.003–.009 Standard subdivisions

[.08] Cultivation, harvesting, related topics of field and plantation crops

Relocated to 631

[.089] Injuries, diseases, pests of field and plantation crops

Relocated to 632

.1 Cereal grains (Cereals)

Class cereal crops grown for forage in 633.25

.104 *Cultivation, harvesting, related topics

.104 5 Harvesting

Class here use of grain harvesting equipment [*formerly also* 631.35]

.104 68 Storage

Including use of granaries and grain elevators [*formerly also* 631.23]

.11 *Wheat

.12 *Buckwheat

.13 *Oats

.14 *Rye

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.15 *Corn

Variant names: Indian corn, maize

.16 *Barley

.17 Millets, grain sorghums, upland and wild rice

.171 *Millets (Panicum and related genera)

.171 7 Varieties and kinds

Examples: broomcorn millet, panic grass, proso

.174 *Grain sorghums

Class sweet sorghums in 633.62

.174 7 Varieties and kinds

Examples: broomcorn, durra (Jerusalem corn), kafir corn, shallu

.178 Wild rice

.179 Upland rice [*formerly* 633.18]

.18 *Rice

Class here paddy rice

Upland rice relocated to 633.179

See also 633.178 for wild rice

.2 Forage crops

Class here forage grasses, Pooideae grasses

Use 633.2001–633.2009 for standard subdivisions

Class forage legumes and other forage crops in 633.3

.202 Pasture and its grasses

Class comprehensive works on ranches and farms devoted to livestock in 636.01, pasture use of forests in 634.99, specific pasture grasses in 633.21–633.28

.208 *Cultivation, harvesting, related topics of forage crops

.208 68 Storage

Including comprehensive works on use of silos [*formerly also* 631.23]

Class use of silos for grain storage in 633.10468

.21 *Bluegrasses (Poa)

.22 *Orchard grass

Variant name: cocksfoot

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.23 *Bent grasses

.237 Varieties and kinds

Example: redtop

.24 *Timothy

.25 Cereal grasses

Add to base number 633.25 the numbers following 633.1 in 633.11–633.18, e.g., rye grasses 633.254

.26 Sedges

Former heading: other Cyperaceae

.27 Panicoideae grasses

For corn, see 633.255; millets, 633.2571; sorghums, 633.2574

.28 Other Pooideae grasses

.3 Legumes, other forage crops

Class here grain legumes, forage legumes

Class comprehensive works on legumes in 635.65

.304 *Cultivation, harvesting, related topics

.31 *Alfalfa

Variant name: lucerne

.32 *Trifolium clovers

.327 Varieties and kinds

Examples: alsike, crimson, red, white clover

.33 *Cowpeas

Variant name: black-eyed peas

.34 *Soybeans

Variant name: soja

.35 *Vetches

.36 Lespedeza and related legumes

.364 *Lespedeza

Variant name: bush clover

.366 *Sweet clovers

.367 *Lupines

.368 *Peanuts

Variant name: groundnuts

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.369 *Field peas (Pisum arvense)

Variant name: Austrian winter peas

.37 Other legumes

.372 *Kidney beans

Variant names: navy, pea beans

.374 *Trefoils (Lotus)

.39 Other forage crops

[.4] Edible roots and tubers

Edible roots relocated to 635.1

[.49] Edible tubers

Relocated to 635.2

.5 Fiber crops

> 633.51–633.56 Soft fibers

Class comprehensive works in 633.5

.51 *Cotton

.52 *Flax

.53 *Hemp (Cannabis sativa)

See also 633.79 for marijuana

.54 *Jute

.55 *Ramie

.56 Other soft fibers

Examples: chingma (China jute), kenaf (ambari hemp), sunn

.57 Hard fibers

For other hard fibers, see 633.58

.571 *Manila hemp

Variant name: abaca

.576 *Pineapple fibers

.577 *Sisal (Agave fibers)

.58 Other hard fibers

Examples: coconut (coir), esparto, jipijapa, raffia, reed, rush fibers

Including bamboo, willow (osier), other basketwork and wickerwork plants

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.6 Sugar, syrup, starch crops

Standard subdivisions are added for sugar, syrup, starch crops; for sugar crops alone; and for syrup crops alone

.61 *Sugar cane

.62 *Sorgo

Variant name: sweet sorghums

.63 *Sugar beets

.64 *Sugar maples

.68 Starch crops

Examples: arrowroot, sago palm, taro

.682 *Cassava (Manioc)

.7 Alkaloidal crops

.71 *Tobacco

.72 *Tea

.73 *Coffee

.74 *Cacao

Representative products: cocoa, chocolate

.75 *Poppies (Papaver somniferum)

.76 *Kola nuts (Cola nuts)

.77 *Maté

Variant name: Paraguay tea

.78 *Chicory

.79 *Marijuana

Class here hashish

See also 633.53 for hemp

.8 Other crops grown for industrial processing

.81 Perfume-producing plants

.82 Flavoring-producing plants

Examples: hops, mints, sassafras, vanilla, wintergreen

For spices, see 633.83; alliaceous plants, 635.26; aromatic and sweet herbs, 635.7

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.83 Spices

Examples: allspice, cinnamon, clove, ginger, nutmeg

Class here sweet spices

For hot spices, see 633.84

.84 Hot spices

Examples: black pepper, chili, horseradish, mustard, paprika

.85 For nonvolatile oils

Class here oilseed plants

Class coconuts in 634.61, olives in 634.63

.851 *Oil palm

.853 *Rapeseed

.86 For dyes

.87 For tannin

Example: canaigre

.88 For medicines

Add to base number 633.88 the numbers following 58 in 583–589, e.g., digitalis 633.88381; however, class poppies in 633.75

.89 For other purposes

.895 For rubber and resins

.895 2 *Rubber trees (Hevea brasiliensis)

.895 9 Turpentine

Use of this number for other resin-producing plants discontinued; class in 633.895

.898 For insecticides

634 Orchards, fruits, forestry

Class here comprehensive works on tree crops

Standard subdivisions are added for orchards, fruits, forestry; for orchards alone; and for fruits alone

Class trees grown for plantation crops in 633, ornamental trees in 635.977

For pepos, see 635.61; tomatoes, 635.642

*Add as instructed under 633–635

SUMMARY

634.04	**Cultivation, harvesting, related topics of orchards, of fruit**
.1	**Pomaceous fruits**
.2	**Drupaceous fruits**
.3	**Citrus and moraceous fruits**
.4	**Other fruits**
.5	**Nuts**
.6	**Tropical and subtropical fruits**
.7	**Berries and herbaceous tropical and subtropical fruits**
.8	**Grapes**
.9	**Forestry**

.04 *Cultivation, harvesting, related topics of orchards, of fruit

---

> **634.1–634.6 Orchards and their fruits**

Class comprehensive works in 634

.1 Pomaceous fruits

.11 *Apples

.13 *Pears

.14 *Quinces

.15 *Medlars (Mespilus germanica)

.16 *Loquats

Variant name: Japanese medlars

.2 Drupaceous fruits

.21 *Apricots

.22 *Plums

.227 Varieties and kinds

Example: damson

.23 *Cherries

.25 *Peaches

.257 Varieties and kinds

Example: nectarines

.3 Citrus and moraceous fruits

.304 *Citrus fruits [*formerly* 634.35]

Class specific citrus fruits in 634.31–634.34

.31 *Oranges

.32 *Grapefruit

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.33 Citron group

.331 *Citrons

.334 *Lemons

.337 *Limes

.34 *Kumquats

[.35] Citrus fruits

Relocated to 634.304

.36 *Moraceous fruits

For figs, see 634.37; mulberries, 634.38; breadfruit, 634.39

.37 *Figs

.38 *Mulberries

.39 *Breadfruit

.4 Other fruits

Class tropical and subtropical fruits not provided for here in 634.6

.41 Annonaceous fruits

Examples: cherimoya, custard apples, papaws

.42 Myrtaceous and passifloraceous fruits

.421 *Guavas

.425 *Passion fruit

.43 Sapotaceous fruits

Examples: sapodilla plums (chicozapote), star apples

.44 Anacardiaceous fruits

Examples: mangoes, Spanish plums

Class cashew nuts in 634.573

.45 *Persimmons

.46 Leguminous fruits

Examples: carob (locusts, Saint-John's-bread), tamarinds

Class garden legumes in 635.65

.5 Nuts

.51 *Walnuts

.52 *Pecans

Use of this number for hickory nuts discontinued; class in 634.5

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.53 *Chestnuts

.54 *Filberts

.55 *Almonds

.57 Cashew nuts, pistachios, Brazil nuts

Use of this number for other nuts discontinued; class in 634.5

.573 *Cashew nuts

.574 *Pistachios

.575 *Brazil nuts

.6 Tropical and subtropical fruits

Not provided for elsewhere

For herbaceous tropical and subtropical fruits, see 634.77

.61 *Coconuts

.62 *Dates

.63 *Olives

.64 *Pomegranates

.65 Papayas, avocados, mangosteens

Use of this number for other tropical and subtropical tree fruit discontinued; class in 634.6

.651 *Papayas

.653 *Avocados

Variant name: alligator pears

.655 *Mangosteens

.7 Berries and herbaceous tropical and subtropical fruits

Class here comprehensive works on small fruits

Class a specific small fruit not provided for here with the fruit, e.g., mulberries 634.38, grapes, 634.8

.71 Cane fruits (Rubus)

.711 *Raspberries

.713 *Blackberries

.714 *Loganberries

.717 *Dewberries

.718 *Boysenberries

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.72 Ribes

.721 *Currants

.725 *Gooseberries

.73 Huckleberries and blueberries

.732 *Huckleberries

.737 *Blueberries (Vaccinium)

.74 Other bush fruits

Examples: barberries, buffalo berries, elderberries, juneberries

.75 *Strawberries

.76 *Cranberries

.77 Herbaceous tropical and subtropical fruits

Class comprehensive works on tropical and subtropical fruit in 634.6

.772 *Bananas

.773 *Plantains

.774 *Pineapples

.775 Cactus fruits

.8 Grapes

Class here viticulture

.81 Soil working (Tillage)

.82 Injuries, diseases, pests

Add to base number 634.82 the numbers following 632 in 632.1–632.9, e.g., fungus diseases 634.824

.83 Varieties and kinds

Specific aspects of specific varieties and kinds relocated to the aspect, e.g., fungus diseases of muscadines 634.824

.88 Cultivation and harvesting

Add to base number 634.88 the numbers following 631.5 in 631.52–631.58, e.g., harvesting grapes 634.885; however, class varieties in 634.83

For tillage, see 634.81

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.9 Forestry

SUMMARY

634.901–.909	**Standard subdivisions**	
.92	**Forest management**	
.93	**Access and safety features**	
.95	**Silviculture**	
.96	**Injuries, diseases, pests**	
.97	**Kinds of trees**	
.98	**Forest exploitation and products**	**Logging and lumber**
.99	**Agroforestry**	

[.906 85] Management of production

Do not use; class 634.92

.906 88 Management of distribution (Marketing)

Class here marketing methods [*formerly* 634.954]

> 634.92–634.96 General topics

Class comprehensive works in 634.9, general topics applied to specific kinds of trees in 634.97

For exploitation and products, see 634.98

.92 Forest management

Class here production management in forestry

Use of this number for forest economy discontinued; class in 634.9

Class comprehensive works on management in forestry in 634.9068, production management of a specific aspect of forestry with the aspect, e.g., of logging 634.98

.928 Production planning and mensuration

Use of this number for comprehensive works on forest management discontinued; class in 634.92

.928 3 Production planning

Former heading: Regulation

.928 5 Mensuration and estimation

.93 Access and safety features

Examples: bridges, lookout towers, roads, trails

Access to power lines relocated to 621.319

.95 Silviculture

[.952] Harvesting methods

Relocated to 634.98

.953 Maintenance cuttings

Examples: improvement cuttings, thinnings, prunings

[.954] Marketing methods

Relocated to 634.90688

.955 Brush disposal methods

.956 Forestation

Class here afforestation, reforestation, breeding

.956 2 Seeds and seeding

.956 4 Nursery practice

.956 5 Cultivation at permanent site

.96 Injuries, diseases, pests

Add to base number 634.96 the numbers following 632 in 632.1–632.9, e.g., forest fire technology 634.9618

.97 Kinds of trees

Class here general topics of forestry applied to specific kinds of trees

Add to notation for each subdivision identified by † as follows:

2–6 General topics

Add the numbers following 634.9 in 634.92–634.96, e.g., reforestation 56

For exploitation and products, see 8

7 Varieties and kinds

General topics of a specific variety or kind relocated to the topic, e.g., reforestation of a variety 56

8 Exploitation and products Logging and lumber

[82] Logging

Number discontinued; class in 8

83 Pulpwood

Use of this number for logs discontinued; class in 8

[85–87] Minor products

Relocated to 634.985–634.987

.972 Dicotyledons

Class here hardwoods

Use of this number for comprehensive works on angiosperms, on deciduous trees discontinued; class in 634.97

Class deciduous gymnosperms in 634.975

For other dicotyledons, see 634.973

.972 1 †Oak

.972 2 †Maple

.972 3 †Poplar

.972 4 †Chestnut

.972 5 †Beech

.972 6 †Birch

†Add as instructed under 634.97

.972 7 †Linden

.972 77 Varieties and kinds

Examples: basswood (American linden), lime (European linden)

.972 8 †Elm

.973 Other dicotyledons

Add to base number 634.973 the numbers following 583 in 583.1–583.9, e.g., locust trees 634.973322

.974 Monocotyledons

Add to base number 634.974 the numbers following 584 in 584.1–584.9, e.g., palm trees 634.9745

.975 Gymnosperms

> 634.975 1–634.975 8 Coniferous trees

Class comprehensive works in 634.975, specific conifers not provided for here in 634.97592

.975 1 †Pine

.975 2 †Spruce

.975 3 †Hemlock

.975 4 †Fir

.975 5 †Cypress

.975 6 †Cedar

.975 7 †Larch

.975 8 †Sequoia

.975 9 Other gymnosperms

Add to base number 634.9759 the numbers following 585 in 585.1–585.9, e.g., tamaracks 634.97592

.98 Forest exploitation and products Logging and lumber

Class here harvesting methods [*formerly also* 634.952], comprehensive works on lumbering

Class exploitation and utilization of specific kinds of trees in 634.97; trees cultivated for products other than lumber or pulp with the product, e.g., turpentine trees 633.8959, pecan trees 634.52

For sawmill operations, see 674.2

[.982] Logging

Number discontinued; class in 634.98

†Add as instructed under 634.97

.983 Pulpwood

Use of this number for comprehensive works on logs discontinued; class in 634.98

> 634.985–634.987 Exploitation of minor forest products

Use only for products that have not been cultivated

Class here minor products of specific kinds of trees [*formerly* 634.97, with use of 85–87 from table under 634.97]

Class comprehensive works in 634.987

.985 Barks

.986 Saps

.987 Minor forest products

Examples: fruits, seeds, nuts

For barks, see 634.985; saps 634.986

.99 Agroforestry

Forestry in combination with other farming

Including flood control, grazing, range management

Use of this number for other aspects of forestry discontinued; class in 634.9

Class a specific aspect of agroforestry with the aspect, e.g. logging 634.98

[.999] Farm forestry

Number discontinued; class in 634.99

635 Garden crops (Horticulture) Vegetables

Vegetables: crops grown primarily for human consumption without intermediate processing other than preservation

Class here home gardening, truck farming

Class orchards in 634

SUMMARY

635.04	**Cultivation, harvesting, related topics**
.1	**Edible roots**
.2	**Edible tubers and bulbs**
.3	**Edible leaves, flowers, stems**
.4	**Cooking greens and rhubarb**
.5	**Salad greens**
.6	**Edible garden fruits and seeds**
.7	**Aromatic and sweet herbs**
.8	**Mushrooms and truffles**
.9	**Flowers and ornamental plants**

.04 *Cultivation, harvesting, related topics

*Add as instructed under 633–635

> **635.1–635.8 Edible crops**

Class comprehensive works in 635

.1 Edible roots [*formerly also* 633.4]

Class cassava in 633.682

.11 *Beets

.12 Turnips and related crops

.125 *Turnips

.126 *Rutabagas

Variant names: Russian turnips, swedes, Swedish turnips

.128 *Celeriac

Variant names: celery root; knob, root, turnip celery

.13 *Carrots

.14 *Parsnips

.15 *Radishes

.16 *Salsify

.2 Edible tubers [*formerly also* 633.49] and bulbs

Class taro in 633.68

.21 *Potatoes

.22 *Sweet potatoes

.23 *Yams (Dioscorea)

.24 *Jerusalem artichokes

.25 *Onions

.26 Alliaceous plants

Examples: chives, garlic, leeks, shallots

For onions, see 635.25

.3 Edible leaves, flowers, stems

For cooking greens and rhubarb, see 635.4; salad greens, 635.5

See Manual at 635.3 vs. 635.4, 635.5

.31 *Asparagus

.32 *Artichokes

See also 635.24 for Jerusalem artichokes

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.34 *Cabbages

Class here comprehensive works on cultivation of Brassica oleracea

For cauliflower and broccoli, see see 635.35; Brussels sprouts, 636.36

.347 Varieties and kinds

Examples: kale (collards), kohlrabi

.35 *Cauliflower and *broccoli

.36 *Brussels sprouts

.4 Cooking greens and rhubarb

See Manual at 635.3 vs. 635.4, 635.5

.41 *Spinach

.42 *Chard

.48 *Rhubarb

.5 Salad greens

See Manual at 635.3 vs. 635.4, 635.5

.51 *Dandelions

.52 *Lettuce

.53 *Celery

See also 635.128 for celeriac

.54 *Chicory

.55 *Endives

.56 Sorrel and cresses

.6 Edible garden fruits and seeds

.61 Pepos

Class here melons

For squashes and pumpkins, see 635.62; cucumbers, 635.63

.611 *Muskmelons

.611 7 Varieties and kinds

Examples: casaba, honeydew melons; cantaloupes

.615 *Watermelons

.62 *Squashes and *pumpkins

.63 *Cucumbers

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.64 Other fruits

.642 *Tomatoes

.643 *Sweet peppers

Variant name: bell, green peppers

.646 *Eggplants

.648 *Okra

.65 Garden legumes

Class here comprehensive works on legumes in agriculture

Class legumes as field crops in 633.3, leguminous fruit in 634.46

.651 *Broad beans

.652 *Kidney beans

Variant names: snap, string, wax beans

.653 *Lima beans

.655 *Soybeans

Variant name: soja

.656 *Peas (Pisum sativum)

Variant name: English peas, garden peas

.657 *Chick-peas

Variant names: chestnut beans, chich, dwarf peas, garavance, garbanzo

.658 *Lentils

.659 Other garden legumes

.659 2 *Black-eyed peas

Variant name: cowpeas

.659 6 *Peanuts

Variant name: groundnuts

.67 Corn

Variant names: Indian corn, maize

.672 *Sweet corn

.677 *Popcorn

.7 Aromatic and sweet herbs

Class here herb gardens

.8 Mushrooms and truffles

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.9 Flowers and ornamental plants

Class here floriculture

See Manual at 582.1 vs. 635.9

SUMMARY

635.902 8	**Auxiliary techniques and procedures**
.91	**Specific techniques; apparatus, equipment, materials**
.92	**Injuries, diseases, pests**
.93	**General and taxonomic groupings**
.94	**Groupings by means of propagation**
.95	**Groupings by environmental factors**
.96	**Groupings by purpose**
.97	**Other groupings**
.98	**Special methods of cultivation**

.902 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures [*formerly* 635.91]

.91 Specific techniques; apparatus, equipment, materials

Add to base number 635.91 the numbers following 631 in 631.2–631.8, e.g., pruning 635.91542; however, class special methods of cultivation in 635.98

Auxiliary techniques and procedures relocated to 635.9028

Class cultivation, harvesting, fertilizers, soil conditioners of specific groupings of ornamental plants in 635.93–635.97

.92 Injuries, diseases, pests

Add to base number 635.92 the numbers following 632 in 632.1–632.9, e.g., fungus diseases 635.924

Class injuries, diseases, pests of specific groupings of plants in 635.93–635.97

> 635.93–635.97 Groupings of plants

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number coming first in the schedule, e.g., succulent houseplants 635.955 (*not* 635.965)

Class comprehensive works in 635.9

.93 General and taxonomic groupings

.931 By life duration

Class specific families, genera, species regardless of life duration in 635.933–635.939

For perennials, see 635.932

.931 2 *Annuals

.931 4 *Biennials

.932 *Perennials

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.933–.939 Taxonomic groupings

Add to base number 635.93 the numbers following 58 in 583–589, e.g., cactus 635.93347; however, class comprehensive works on dicotyledons in 635.9, taxonomic groupings of trees in 635.9773–635.9775

.94 Groupings by means of propagation

.942 *From seeds

.944 From *bulbs and *tubers

.946 *From runners and *by layering

.948 From *cuttings and *slips

.95 Groupings by environmental factors

.951 Native habitats

Add to base number 635.951 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., ornamentals native to Scotland 635.951411

.952 By climatic factors

Other than temperate zone

Examples: alpine, arctic, tropical plants

Use of this number for temperate-zone plants discontinued; class in 635.9

Class alpine (rock) gardens in 635.9672

.953 By seasonal and diurnal factors

Examples: winter-flowering plants, morning- and night-blooming plants

.954 By light factors

Examples: plants favoring shade, sunshine

.955 By soil factors

Examples: plants favoring dry, rich, sandy soils

Including succulent plants

Works on succulent plants emphasizing cactus are classed in 635.93347

.96 Groupings by purpose

.962 *For flower beds

.963 For *borders and *edgings

.964 For ground cover

Class here grass

.964 2 *Turf

Class lawns in 635.9647

.964 7 *Lawns

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.965 *For houseplants

Including window-box gardening

Class comprehensive works on container gardening in 635.986, bonsai in 635.9772

.966 *For cutting

Class flower arrangement in 745.92

.967 For special kinds of gardens

For window-box gardening, see 635.965

.967 1 Roof, balcony, patio gardening

Class comprehensive works on container gardening in 635.986

.967 2 *Rock gardens (Alpine gardens)

Class alpine plants in 635.952

.967 4 *Water gardens

.967 6 *Wild flower gardens

Class wild flowers of a specific native habitat in 635.951

.968 For fragrance and color

.969 *For nurseries

Class here nursery practice

.97 Other groupings

.973 *Everlastings

.974 *Vines

Class here climbing plants

.975 *Foliage plants

.976 *Shrubs and *hedges

.977 Trees

Class here potted trees

Class comprehensive works on container gardening in 635.986

.977 2 *Bonsai

Class bonsai of specific families, genera, species in 635.9773–635.9775

.977 3–.977 5 Taxonomic groupings

Add to base number 635.977 the numbers following 58 in 583–585, e.g., elms 635.9773962; however, use 635.977 for comprehensive works on dicotyledonous trees

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.98 Special methods of cultivation

Class special methods of cultivation of specific groupings of plants in 635.93–635.97

.982 Controlled-environment gardening

For bell-jar gardening, see 635.985

.982 3 *Greenhouse gardening

.982 4 *Terrariums

.985 *Bell-jar gardening

.986 *Container gardening

Class here pot gardening

.987 Organic gardening

Class a specific aspect with the aspect, e.g., compost 635.91875

636 Animal husbandry

Class culture of nondomesticated animals in 639

See Manual at 800 vs. 591, 636, 398.245

SUMMARY

636.001–.009 Standard subdivisions
.01–.08 [Ranches and farms, young of animals, production and maintenance, animals for specific purposes, veterinary sciences]
.1 Equines Horses
.2 Ruminants and Tylopoda Bovines Cattle
.3 Smaller ruminants Sheep
.4 Swine
.5 Poultry Chickens
.6 Birds other than poultry
.7 Dogs
.8 Cats
.9 Other mammals

.001 Philosophy and theory

[.001 575 1] Genetics

Relocated to 636.0821

.002 Miscellany

[.002 77] Ownership marks

Do not use; class in 636.0812

.003–.009 Standard subdivisions

*Add as instructed under 633–635

.01 Ranches and farms

Class here soil and water management on ranches and farms devoted to animal husbandry

Class production of forage crops in 633.2, development of pasturage in 633.202, pasture use of forests in 634.99, housing for animals in 636.0831, grazing in 636.084

.07 Young of animals

Class production and maintenance, rearing for specific purposes, veterinary medicine of young animals in 636.08

.08 Production and maintenance, animals for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

SUMMARY

636.081	**Selection, judging, ownership marks**
.082	**Breeding**
.083	**Care and maintenance**
.084	**Feeding**
.085	**Feeds and applied nutrition**
.086	**Specific field crop feeds**
.087	**Other specific feeds**
.088	**Animals for specific purposes**
.089	**Veterinary sciences Veterinary medicine**

> 636.081–636.087 Production and maintenance

Class comprehensive works in 636, production and maintenance of animals for specific purposes in 636.088

.081 Selection, judging, ownership marks

.081 1 Judging

.081 2 Ownership marks

Class here branding

.082 Breeding

.082 1 Genetics [*formerly also* 636.0015751]

Including germ plasm, source species

.082 2 Breeding records

Examples: herdbooks, pedigrees, studbooks

.082 4 Breeding and reproduction methods

.082 41 Inbreeding and line breeding

.082 42 Outbreeding

For crossbreeding, see 636.08243

.082 43 Crossbreeding

Class here hybrids

.082 45 Artificial insemination

.083 Care and maintenance

Including predator control, transporting animals

For feeding, see 636.084; veterinary sciences, 636.089

See also 179.3 for ethical aspects of animal care

.083 1 Housing

Example: cages

Including stockyards

.083 2 Animal hospitals and auxiliary care of sick and injured animals

.083 3 Individual tending

Examples: dipping, grooming, shearing

.083 7 Harnesses and accessories

.084 Feeding

Example: grazing

Class pasture use of forests in 634.99

For feeds and applied nutrition, see 636.085

.085 Feeds and applied nutrition

.085 2 Applied nutrition

.085 5 Feeds

For specific feeds, see 636.086–636.087

.085 51 Green fodder

.085 52 Silage

.085 54 Dry fodder

.085 57 Formula feed

> 636.086–636.087 Specific feeds

Class comprehensive works in 636.0855

.086 Specific field crop feeds

.087 Other specific feeds

.087 4 Fruits

.087 5 Garden crops

.087 6 Meat, fish, eggs

.087 7 Mineral additives

.088 Animals for specific purposes

Class here production, maintenance, training

Class veterinary sciences of animals for specific purposes in 636.089

See Manual at 636.088

.088 1 Breeding stock

.088 2 Draft animals (Beasts of burden)

Class comprehensive works on work animals in 636.0886

.088 3 Food animals

Class animals raised for eggs and milk in 636.08842

.088 4 Animals raised for special products

For food animals, see 636.0883

.088 42 For eggs and milk

.088 44 For hide and fur

For hair, see 636.08845

.088 45 Hair and feathers

Examples: bristles, wool

.088 5 Laboratory animals

.088 6 Work animals

Examples: guarding, herding, hunting

For draft animals, see 636.0882; sport, stunt, exhibition animals, 636.0888

.088 7 Pets

Class here obedience training

Class reminiscences about and true accounts of a person's pets or favorite animals in 808.883; reminiscences and accounts in a specific literature with the literature using notation 803 from Table 3–B or cognate numbers under the appropriate language; other accounts and stories of pets not intended to illustrate agricultural techniques with the appropriate literary form in 800

See Manual at 800 vs. 591, 636, 398.245

.088 8 Sport, stunt, exhibition animals

Examples: circus, fighting, racing, show animals

Class comprehensive works on work animals in 636.0886

.088 9 Zoo animals

Use of this number for animals raised for other purposes discontinued; class in 636.088

[.088 92] For multiple purposes

Number discontinued; class in 636

[.088 99] Zoo animals

Number discontinued; class in 636.0889

.089 Veterinary sciences Veterinary medicine

Add to base number 636.089 the numbers following 61 in 610–619, e.g., veterinary viral diseases 636.0896925

Class animal hospitals and auxiliary care of sick and injured animals in 636.0832

.1 Equines Horses

Use 636.1001–636.1009 for standard subdivisions

.101–.108 Ranches and farms, young horses, production and maintenance, horses for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

Add to base number 636.10 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., training horses for sports and exhibition 636.10888; however, class draft horses in 636.15; training of riders and drivers, comprehensive works on training horses and their riders and drivers in 798

> 636.11–636.17 Specific breeds and kinds of horses

Class comprehensive works in 636.1

.11 Oriental horses

Examples: Barb, Persian, Tartar, Turkish

.112 Arabian horses

.12 Racehorses and trotters

Class a specific breed with the breed, e.g., Thoroughbred 636.132

.13 Saddle (Riding) horses

Examples: American saddle horse, Palomino, Tennessee Walking Horse

For Oriental horses, see 636.11

.132 Thoroughbred

.133 Quarter horse

.14 Carriage horses (Heavy harness horses)

Examples: Cleveland bay, Hackney, Yorkshire coach horse

Class here comprehensive works on harness horses

For draft horses, see 636.15; light harness horses, 636.17

.15 Draft horses

Examples: Belgian, Clydesdale, Percheron, Shire, Suffolk (Suffolk punch)

.16 Ponies

Examples: Hackney, Shetland, Welsh ponies

.161 Ranches and farms, young ponies, production and maintenance, ponies for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

Add to base number 636.161 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., housing 636.161831

.17 Light harness horses

Examples: Morgan, Standardbred

.18 Other equines

Examples: asses, mules; zebras

.2 Ruminants and Tylopoda Bovines Cattle

Use 636.2001–636.2009 for standard subdivisions

For smaller ruminants, see 636.3

.201–.208 Ranches and farms, young of animals, production and maintenance, animals for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

Add to base number 636.20 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., heifers 636.207; however, class cattle for specific purposes in 636.21

.21 Cattle for specific purposes

Class here production, maintenance, training

Add to base number 636.21 the numbers following 636.088 in 636.0881–636.0889, e.g., raising cattle for beef 636.213, for milk 636.2142; however, class milking and milk processing in 637.1

Class specific breeds of cattle for specific purposes in 636.22–636.28

> 636.22–636.28 Specific breeds of cattle

Class comprehensive works in 636.2

.22 British breeds of cattle

.222 English beef breeds

Examples: Hereford, Shorthorn, Sussex

.223 Scottish, Welsh, Irish beef breeds

Examples: Aberdeen Angus, black Welsh, Galloway, Kyloe

.224 Channel Island dairy breeds

Contains Alderney, Guernsey, Jersey

.225 Scottish and Irish dairy breeds

Examples: Ayrshire, Dexter shorthorn, Kerry

.226 Dual-purpose breeds

Examples: Devon, English longhorn, Polled Durham

.23 German, Dutch, Danish, Swiss breeds of cattle

.232 Beef breeds

.234 Dairy breeds

Examples: Brown Swiss, East Friesian, Holstein-Friesian, Oldenburg

.236 Dual-purpose breeds

.24 French and Belgian breeds of cattle

.242 Beef breeds

.244 Dairy breeds

.246 Dual-purpose breeds

.27 Other European breeds of cattle

.28 Non-European breeds of cattle

.29 Other larger ruminants and Tylopoda

.291 Zebus

.292 Bison

Variant names: American buffalo, buffalo

See also 636.293 for water buffalo

.293 Other Bovoidea

Example: water buffalo

.294 Cervoidea and Giraffoidea

Examples: deer, reindeer

.295 Camels

.296 Tylopoda

Contains alpacas, llamas, vicuñas

For camels, see 636.295

.3 Smaller ruminants Sheep

Use 636.3001–636.3009 for standard subdivisions

Class Traguloidea in 636.97355

.301–.308 Ranches and farms, young of animals, production and maintenance, animals for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

Add to base number 636.30 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., sheep ranches 636.301; however, class sheep for specific purposes in 636.31

.31 Sheep for specific purposes

Class here production, maintenance, training

Add to base number 636.31 the numbers following 636.088 in 636.0881–636.0889, e.g., raising sheep for mutton 636.313, for wool 636.3145

Class specific breeds of sheep for specific purposes in 636.32–636.38

> 636.32–636.38 Specific breeds of sheep

Class comprehensive works in 636.3

.32 British breeds of sheep

.33 German, Dutch, Swiss breeds of sheep

.34 French and Belgian breeds of sheep

.35 Italian breeds of sheep

.36 Merino breeds

Class here Spanish breeds of sheep

.366 Spanish Merino breeds

.367 Other European Merino breeds

.368 Non-European Merino breeds

.37 Other European breeds of sheep

.38 Non-European breeds of sheep

For non-European Merino breeds, see 636.368

.381 American breeds

.385 Asian breeds

.386 African breeds

.39 Goats

Use 636.39001–636.39009 for standard subdivisions

.390 1–.390 8 Ranches and farms, young of goats, production and maintenance, goats for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

Add to base number 636.390 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., breeding 636.39082; however, class goats for specific purposes in 636.391

.391 Goats for specific purposes

Class here production, maintenance, training

Add to base number 636.391 the numbers following 636.088 in 636.0881–636.0889, e.g., raising goats for hair 636.39145

Class specific breeds of goats for specific purposes in 636.392–636.398

.392–.398 Specific breeds of goats

Add to base number 636.39 the numbers following 636.3 in 636.32–636.38, e.g., Angora goats 636.3985

.4 Swine

Use 636.4001–636.4009 for standard subdivisions

.401–.408 Farms, young pigs, production and maintenance, swine for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

Add to base number 636.40 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., housing 636.40831; however, class swine for food in 636.4, for other specific purposes in 636.41

.41 Swine for specific purposes other than food

Class here production, maintenance, training

Add to base number 636.41 the numbers following 636.088 in 636.0881–636.0889, e.g., swine production for bristles 636.4145; however, swine production for food discontinued from 636.413 to 636.4

Class specific breeds of swine for specific purposes in 636.42–636.48

> 636.42–636.48 Specific breeds of swine

Class comprehensive works in 636.4

.42–.47 European breeds of swine

Add to base number 636.4 the numbers following 636.3 in 636.32–636.37, e.g., British breeds 636.42

.48 Non-European breeds of swine

.482 Poland China

.483 Duroc

Variant name: Duroc-Jersey

.484 American breeds

Examples: Cheshire, Chester White, Hampshire, mule-foot, razorback, Victoria

For Poland China, see 636.482; Duroc, see 636.483

.485 Asian breeds

.486 African breeds

.489 Oceanic breeds

.5 Poultry Chickens

Class here comprehensive works on raising birds

Use 636.5001–636.5009 for standard subdivisions

For birds other than poultry, see 636.6

.501–.508 Farms, young poultry, production and maintenance, poultry for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

Add to base number 636.50 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., chicken breeding 636.5082; however, class poultry for specific purposes in 636.51

.51 Poultry for specific purposes

Class here production, maintenance, training

Add to base number 636.51 the numbers following 636.088 in 636.0881–636.0889, e.g., raising chickens for meat 636.513, for eggs 636.5142

Class specific breeds of chickens for specific purposes in 636.52–636.58, poultry other than chickens for specific purposes in 636.59

> 636.52–636.58 Specific breeds of chickens

Class comprehensive works in 636.5

.52–.57 European breeds of chickens

Add to base number 636.5 the numbers following 636.3 in 636.32–636.37, e.g., Leghorn chickens 636.55

Class diminutive varieties in 636.587

.58 Non-European breeds and special varieties of chickens

> 636.581–636.584 American breeds

Class comprehensive works in 636.58, diminutive varieties in 636.587

.581 Bucks County, Dominique, Java, Jersey Blue, Winnebago

.582 Plymouth Rock

.583 Wyandotte

.584 Rhode Island Red

.585 Asian breeds

Class diminutive varieties in 636.587

.587 Diminutive varieties

.587 1 Bantam

.587 2 Cornish

.59 Other poultry

.592 Turkeys

Use 636.592001–636.592009 for standard subdivisions

.592 01–.592 08 Farms, young turkeys, production and maintenance, turkeys for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

Add to base number 636.5920 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., raising turkeys for meat 636.5920883

.593 Guinea fowl

.594 Pheasants

.595 Peafowl

.596 Pigeons

.597 Ducks

.598 Geese

.6 Birds other than poultry

Class comprehensive works on birds in 636.5

.61 Birds raised for feathers

.63 Game birds

.68 Song and ornamental birds

Examples: mynas, toucans

For peafowl, see 636.595

.681 Swans

.686 Finches, parrots, hawks

Use of this number for comprehensive works on cage and aviary birds discontinued; class in 636.68

.686 2 Finches

Example: canaries

.686 4 Budgerigars

Variant names: lovebirds; grass, shell parrakeets

Class comprehensive works on parrakeets in 636.6865

.686 5 Parrots

Examples: cockatoos, lories, macaws

Class here comprehensive works on parrakeets

For budgerigars, see 636.6864

.686 9 Hawks

Use of this number for other cage and aviary birds discontinued; class in 636.68

.7 Dogs

.700 1 Philosophy and theory

.700 2 Miscellany

.700 22 Illustrations, models, miniatures [*all formerly* 636.77]

.700 3–.700 9 Standard subdivisions

.701–.708 Puppies, production and maintenance, dogs for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

Add to base number 636.70 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., housing 636.70831

.71 Breeds

For specific breeds, see 636.72–636.76

> 636.72–636.76 Specific breeds and groups of dogs

Class comprehensive works in 636.71, the toy of any breed in 636.76

See Manual at 636.72–636.76

.72 Nonsporting dogs

Variant name: utility group

Contains Bichon Frise, Boston terrier, bulldog, Chinese Shar-Pei, chow chow, Dalmatian, French bulldog, Keeshond, Lhasa apso, poodle (miniature and standard), Schipperke, Tibetan spaniel, Tibetan terrier

Class comprehensive works on terriers in 636.755

.73 Working and herding dogs

Contains Akita, Alaskan malamute, Bernese mountain dog, boxer, bull mastiff, Doberman pinscher, Great Dane, Great Pyrenees, Komondor, Kuvasz, mastiff, Newfoundland, Portuguese water dog, Rottweiler, Saint Bernard, Samoyed, schnauzer (standard and giant), Siberian husky

Class miniature schnauzer in 636.755; miniature pinscher in 636.76

.737 Herding dogs

Contains Australian cattle dog, bearded collie, Belgian malinois, Belgian tervuren, bouvier des Flandres, briard, collie, German shepherd (German police dog), puli, Welsh corgi; named breeds of sheepdogs

.75 Sporting dogs, hounds, terriers

.752 Sporting dogs

Contains Brittany vizsla, Weimaraner, wirehaired pointing griffon; named breeds of pointers, retrievers, setters, spaniels

.753 Hounds

Contains Basenji, beagle, Borzoi, dachshund, harrier, Rhodesian ridgeback, saluki, whippet; named breeds of hounds

.755 Terriers

Including miniature Schnauzer

Class Boston and Tibetan terriers in 636.72, toy terriers in 636.76

.76 Toy dogs

Contains Affenpinscher, Brussels griffon, Chihuahua, English toy spaniel, Italian greyhound, Japanese chin, Maltese, Mexican Hairless (Xoloizuintli), miniature pinscher, Papillon, Pekingese, Pomeranian, pug, Shih Tzu, silky terrier, toy Manchester terrier, toy poodle, Yorkshire terrier

Class miniature poodle in 636.72; miniature schnauzer in 636.755

[.77] Illustrations, models, miniatures

Relocated to 636.70022

.8 Cats

.800 1 Philosophy and theory

.800 2 Miscellany

.800 22 Illustrations, models, miniatures [*all formerly* 636.87]

.800 3–.800 9 Standard subdivisions

.801–.808 Kittens, production and maintenance, cats for specific purposes, veterinary sciences

Add to base number 636.80 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., breeding cats 636.8082; however, use 636.8 for pet cats

---

> 636.82–636.83 Domestic cats

Class comprehensive works in 636.8

.82 Short-haired domestic cats

.822 Common short-haired cats

.823 Manx cat

.825 Asian short-haired cats

Examples: Burmese, Siamese

.826 Other short-haired cats

Examples: Abyssinian, Russian blue

.83 Long-haired domestic cats

Examples: Angora (coon cat), chinchilla, Himalayan, Persian

[.87] Illustrations, models, miniatures

Relocated to 636.80022

.89 Nondomestic cats

Examples: cheetahs, ocelots

.9 Other mammals

.91 Monotremes and marsupials

.93–.98 Placental mammals

Add to base number 636.9 the numbers following 599 in 599.3–599.8, e.g., elephants 636.961; however, class Equidae in 636.1, Ruminantia (except Traguloidea) in 636.2, Tylopoda in 636.296, Felidae in 636.8

637 Processing dairy and related products

Class comprehensive works on dairy farming in 636.2142

SUMMARY

637.1 Milking and milk processing
.2 Butter processing
.3 Cheese processing
.4 Manufacture of frozen desserts
.5 Egg processing

.1 Milking and milk processing

> 637.12–637.14 Cows' milk

Class comprehensive works in 637.1

.12 Milking and inspection of cows' milk

.124 Milking

.124 028 Auxiliary techniques, procedures; materials

Class milking machinery and equipment in 637.125

.125 Milking machinery and equipment

.127 Testing [*formerly also* 637.1410287] and inspection

Former heading: Quality and purity determinations

.127 6 Butterfat tests

.127 7 Bacterial counts

[.13] Processing of cows' milk

Relocated to 637.14

.14 Processing [*formerly* 637.13] and forms of cows' milk

> 637.141–637.146 Whole milk

Class comprehensive works in 637.14

.141 Fresh whole milk

Including comprehensive works on pasteurization, homogenization, vitamin D treatment

Class pasteurization, homogenization, vitamin D treatment of products other than fresh whole milk with the product, e.g., of cream 637.148

.141 028 7 Measurement

Testing relocated to 637.127

.142 Concentrated liquid forms of whole milk

.142 2 Evaporated milk

[.142 3] Plain condensed milk

Number discontinued; class in 637.142

.142 4 Sweetened condensed milk

.143 Dried whole milk

.146 Cultured whole milk

.147 Skim milk

[.147 1–.147 2] Fresh and concentrated skim milk

Numbers discontinued; class in 637.147

.147 3 Dried skim milk

.147 6 Cultured skim milk

Class here yogurt

.148 Cream

.17 Milk other than cows' milk

.2 Butter processing

.22 Quality determinations

[.23] Processing

Number discontinued; class in 637.2

.24 By-products

Class here buttermilk

.3 Cheese processing

Including by-products

.32 Quality determinations

[.33] Processing

Number discontinued; class in 637.3

.35 Varieties

.352 Cream cheese

.353 Ripened soft cheeses

Examples: Brie, Camembert, Gorgonzola, Limburger, Neufchâtel

.354 Hard cheeses

Examples: cheddar, Parmesan, Swiss

.356 Sour milk cheeses

Example: cottage cheese

.358 Cheese foods

.4 Manufacture of frozen desserts

Examples: ice cream, frozen custards, sherbets

.5 Egg processing

Class raising hens for eggs in 636.5142, other poultry for eggs in 636.59

.54 Chicken eggs

.541 Fresh eggs

.543 Dried whole eggs

.547 Dried egg whites

.548 Dried egg yolks

.59 Other kinds of eggs

Add to base number 637.59 the numbers following 636.59 in 636.592–636.598, e.g., duck eggs 637.597

638 Insect culture

.1 Bee keeping (Apiculture)

.11 Apiary establishment

.12 Varieties of bees

Class a specific aspect of a specific variety of bee with the aspect, e.g., apiary establishment 638.11

.13 Pasturage for bees

.14 Hive management

.140 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures

Class apparatus, equipment, materials in 638.142

.142 Equipment and supplies

Examples: hive sections, hives, protective equipment, smokers

.144 Supplementary feeding of bees

.145 Queen rearing

.146 Swarming control

.15 Injuries, diseases, pests

.16 Honey processing

Class here comprehensive works on hive products

For wax, see 638.17

.17 Wax

.2 Silkworms

.3 Resin- and dye-producing insects

.5 Other insects

.57 Specific insects

Add to base number 638.57 the numbers following 595.7 in 595.71–595.79, e.g., praying mantises 638.5725

639 Hunting, fishing, conservation, related technologies

Class sport hunting and fishing in 799

SUMMARY

639.01–.09	**Standard subdivisions**	
.1	**Hunting and trapping**	
.2	**Commercial fishing, whaling, sealing**	
.3	**Culture of cold-blooded vertebrates**	**Of fish**
.4	**Culture and harvest of mollusks**	
.5	**Culture and harvest of crustaceans**	
.7	**Culture and harvest of other invertebrates**	
.8	**Aquiculture**	
.9	**Conservation of biological resources**	

.029 Commercial miscellany [*formerly also* 380.143029, 380.1431029, 381.43029, 381.431.029, 382.43029, 382.431029]

.091 6 Treatment in air and water

Aquiculture relocated to 639.8

.091 62 Treatment in oceans and seas

Mariculture relocated to 639.8

.1 Hunting and trapping

.11 Fur-bearing and other mammals

Add to base number 639.11 the numbers following 599 in 599.1–599.8, e.g., deer hunting and trapping 639.117357

For whaling, see 639.28; sealing, 639.29

See also 636.08844 for fur farming

.12 Birds

> 639.122–639.124 Of specific habitats

Class comprehensive works in 639.12, specific kinds of birds regardless of habitat in 639.128

.122 Land birds

.123 Shore birds

.124 Waterfowl

.128 Specific kinds

Add to base number 639.128 the numbers following 598 in 598.3–598.9, e.g., pheasants 639.128617

.13 Amphibians

.14 Reptiles

Add to base number 639.14 the numbers following 597.9 in 597.92–597.98, e.g., hunting alligators 639.148

.2 Commercial fishing, whaling, sealing

Class here works on fisheries encompassing culture as well as capture, on fisheries encompassing invertebrates as well as fish

Class culture of fish in 639.3, fisheries for invertebrates in 639.4

See also 639.8 for aquiculture, 799.1 for sport fishing

[.200 1–.200 9] Standard subdivisions of commercial fishing, whaling, sealing

Relocated to 639.201–639.209

.201–.209 Standard subdivisions of commercial fishing, whaling, sealing [*formerly* 639.2001–639.2009]; of commercial fishing

---

> 639.21–639.22 Fishing in specific types of water

Class comprehensive works in 639.2, fishing for specific kinds of fish regardless of kind of water in 639.27

.21 Fishing in fresh water

.22 Fishing in salt and brackish waters

.27 Fishing for specific kinds of fish

Add to base number 639.27 the numbers following 597 in 597.2–597.5, e.g., salmon fishing 639.2755

.28 Whaling

.29 Sealing

.3 Culture of cold-blooded vertebrates Of fish

[.300 1–.300 9] Standard subdivisions of culture of cold-blooded vertebrates

Relocated to 639.01–639.09

.301–.309 Standard subdivisions of culture of cold-blooded vertebrates [*formerly* 639.3001–639.3009], of fish

---

> 639.31–639.34 Fish culture

Class comprehensive works in 639.3

For culture of specific kinds of fish, see 639.372–639.375

.31 Fish culture in fresh water

Class culture in freshwater aquariums in 639.344

.311 In natural and artificial ponds

Including fish hatcheries

.312 In lakes

.313 In rivers and other streams

.32 Fish culture in salt and brackish waters

Class culture in marine aquariums in 639.342

.34 Fish culture in aquariums

.342 Marine aquariums

.344 Freshwater aquariums

.37 Culture of amphibians and specific kinds of fish

.372–.375 Culture of specific kinds of fish

Add to base number 639.37 the numbers following 597 in 597.2–597.5, e.g., trout hatcheries 639.3755

.376–.378 Amphibians

Add to base number 639.37 the numbers following 597 in 597.6–597.8, e.g., frog farming 639.3789

Class comprehensive works in 639.376

.39 Reptiles

Add to base number 639.39 the numbers following 597.9 in 597.92–597.98, e.g., snake farming 639.396

.4 Culture and harvest of mollusks

Class here comprehensive works on culture and harvest of invertebrates

For culture and harvest of crustaceans, see 639.5; of other invertebrates, 639.7

.41 Oysters

[.411] Edible oysters

Number discontinued; class in 639.41

.412 Pearl oysters

.42 Mussels

.44 Clams

.48 Other mollusks

Add to base number 639.48 the numbers following 594 in 594.1–594.5, e.g., squid 639.4858

.5 Culture and harvest of crustaceans

.54 Specific crustaceans

Add to base number 639.54 the numbers following 595.384 in 595.3841–595.3844, e.g., lobsters 639.541

Use of this number for comprehensive works on edible crustaceans discontinued; class in 639.5

.7 Culture and harvest of other invertebrates

For insect culture, see 638

.73 Protozoa, Parazoa, Coelenterata, Echinodermata and related phyla

Add to base number 639.73 the numbers following 593 in 593.1–593.9, e.g., sponges 639.734

.75 Worms

Add to base number 639.75 the numbers following 595.1 in 595.12–595.18, e.g., earthworms 639.7546

.8 Aquiculture [*formerly* 639.0916]

Class here mariculture [*formerly* 639.09162]

Class aquiculture of specific animal with the animal, e.g., of oysters 639.41

.89 Of plants

.9 Conservation of biological resources

Class here game keeping, wildlife conservation

Class interdisciplinary works on conservation of biological resources in 333.9516

> 639.92–639.96 Conservation of animals

Class comprehensive works in 639.9, conservation of specific kinds of animals in 639.97

.92 Habitat improvement for animals

.93 Animal species population control

.95 Reserves and refuge areas for animals

.96 Control of injuries, diseases, predators of animals

.97 Specific kinds of animals

Add to base number 639.97 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., protective measures for birds 639.978

.99 Plant conservation

640 Home economics and family living

Class here management of home and personal life, domestic arts and sciences

Class personal health in 613

SUMMARY

640.1–.9 [Standard subdivisions and specific aspects of household management]
641 Food and drink
642 Meals and table service
643 Housing and household equipment
644 Household utilities
645 Household furnishings
646 Sewing, clothing, management of personal and family living
647 Management of public households (Institutional housekeeping)
648 Housekeeping
649 Child rearing and home care of sick and infirm

.202 Synopses and outlines

Use of this number for manuals discontinued; class in 640

Helpful hints and miscellaneous recipes relocated to 640.41

[.288] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 643.7

[.297] Evaluation and purchasing manuals

Do not use; class in 640.73

.4 Specific aspects of household management [*formerly also* 640.68]

Class comprehensive works on household management in 640

.41 Helpful hints and miscellaneous recipes [*formerly* 640.202]

.42 Management of money

Including records of household expenditures

Class here accounting, budgeting, expenditure control

Class evaluation and purchasing guides in 640.73

See Manual at 332.024 vs. 640.42

.43 Management of time and energy

.46 Household employees

Duties, hours, selection, training

Class management of institutional household employees in 647.2

.49 Survival housekeeping

Housekeeping in presence of unfavorable circumstances and provisioning in anticipation of disaster, e.g., threat of nuclear attack

Class personal survival after accidents, disasters, other unfavorable circumstances in 613.69

[.68] Household management

Use of this number for comprehensive works on household management discontinued; class in 640

Specific aspects of household management relocated to 640.4

.71 Schools and courses

[.714] Adult education

Relocated to 640.715

.715 Adult education [*formerly* 640.714]

.73 Evaluation and purchasing guides

Class here consumer education for home and personal needs

Class interdisciplinary evaluation and purchasing guides and works on consumer education in 381.33; comprehensive works on managing household money in 640.42; evaluation and purchasing guides for specific products and services with the subject, using notation 0297 from Table 1, e.g., manual on evaluating automobiles 629.2220297

641 Food and drink

For meals and table service, see 642

SUMMARY

641.01	**Philosophy and theory**
.1	**Applied nutrition**
.2	**Beverages (Drinks)**
.3	**Food**
.4	**Food preservation and storage**
.5	**Cooking**
.6	**Cooking specific materials**
.7	**Specific cooking processes and techniques**
.8	**Cooking specific kinds of composite dishes**

.01 Philosophy and theory

.013 Gastronomy and pleasures of eating

.1 Applied nutrition

Class nutrition in the promotion of health in 613.2; nutritive values of beverages 641.2, of specific foods in 641.33–641.39

.104 Special topics

.104 2 Calories

Including calorie counters

.12 Proteins

.13 Carbohydrates

.14 Fats and oils

.16 Water

.17 Minerals

.18 Vitamins

.2 Beverages (Drinks)

Class here interdisciplinary works on production, manufacture, preservation, preparation, use

Class a specific aspect with the subject, e.g., manufacture (commercial preparation) 663

.21 Alcoholic beverages

For wine, see 641.22; brewed and malted beverages, 641.23; distilled liquor, 641.25

.22 Wine

Class here grape wine

See also 641.23 for sake (rice wine)

.222 Specific kinds of grape wine

Add to base number 641.222 the numbers following 663.22 in 663.222–663.224, e.g., champagne 641.2224

Use of this number for comprehensive works on grape wine discontinued; class in 641.22

.229 Nongrape wine

Example: cider

.23 Brewed and malted beverages

Examples: pulque, sake

Class here ale, beer

Class malt whiskey in 641.252

.25 Distilled liquor

Examples: mescal, tequila, potato whiskey, vodka

.252 Whiskey

Use 641.25 for potato whiskey

.253 Brandy

.255 Compound liquors

Examples: absinthe, cordials, gin, liqueurs

.259 Rum

Use of this number for other distilled liquor discontinued; class in 641.25

.26 Nonalcoholic beverages

Class specific nonalcoholic beverages and kinds of beverages in 641.3

.3 Food

Class here interdisciplinary works on food

Use of this number for comprehensive works on food and beverages discontinued; class in 641

Class interdisciplinary works on composite dishes in 641.8; a specific aspect with the subject, e.g., manufacture (commercial preparation) 664

See Manual at 580–590 vs. 630, 641.3; 613.2 vs. 641.3, 363.8

.300 1 Philosophy and theory

.300 2 Miscellany

[.300 297] Evaluation and purchasing manuals

Do not use; class in 641.31

.300 3–.300 9 Standard subdivisions

.302 Health foods

Including organically grown foods

> 641.303–641.309 Classes of food by origin

Class comprehensive works in 641.3

.303 Food from vegetables

.306 Food from animals

.309 Mineral food

.31 Evaluation and purchasing manuals

Class applied nutrition in 641.1, evaluation and purchasing manuals of specific food in 641.33–641.39

.33–.37 Food derived from plant crops and domesticated animals

Add to base number 641.3 the numbers following 63 in 633–637, e.g., flavorings 641.3382, legumes 641.3565, meat 641.36, chicken meat 641.365

Do not use 641.333 for legumes

For honey, see 641.38

.38 Honey

.39 Game and seafood

Add to base number 641.39 the numbers following 641.69 in 641.691–641.696, e.g., oysters 641.394

Use of this number for other foods discontinued; class in 641.3

> **641.4–641.8 Food preservation, storage, cooking**

Class comprehensive works in 641.3

.4 Food preservation and storage

Class comprehensive works on food preservation in 664.028

> 641.41–641.47 Preservation techniques for fruit and vegetables, for food as a whole

Class comprehensive works in 641.4, preservation techniques for meat and allied foods in 641.49

.41 Preliminary treatment

.42 Canning

.44 Drying and dehydrating

Including freeze-drying

.45 Low-temperature techniques

.452 Cold storage

.453 Deep freezing

For freeze-drying, see 641.44

.46 Brining, pickling, smoking

.47 Use of additives

.48 Storage

.49 Meat and allied food

Class storage of meat and allied food in 641.48

.492 Red meat

Add to base number 641.492 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.41–641.47, e.g., canning red meat 641.4922

.493 Poultry

Add to base number 641.493 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.41–641.47, e.g., freezing poultry 641.49353

.494 Seafood

Add to base number 641.494 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.42–641.47, e.g., brining seafood 641.4946

.495 Other animal flesh

Examples: frogs, turtles, snails, insects

.5 Cooking

Preparation of food with and without use of heat

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., outdoor cooking for children 641.5622 (*not* 641.578)

For special situations, reasons, ages	641.56
Quantity, institutional, travel, outdoor cooking	641.57
Money-saving and timesaving cooking	641.55
With specific appliances, utensils, fuels	641.58
For specific meals	641.52–.54
By specific types of persons	641.51
Characteristic of specific geographical environments, ethnic cooking	641.59

Class menus and meal planning in 642

For cooking specific materials, see 641.6; specific cooking processes and techniques, 641.7; cooking of composite dishes, 641.8

SUMMARY

641.501–.509	**Standard subdivisions**
.51	**Cooking by specific types of persons**
.52	**Breakfast**
.53	**Cooking luncheon, brunch, elevenses, tea, supper, snacks**
.54	**Dinner**
.55	**Money-saving and timesaving cooking**
.56	**Cooking for special situations, reasons, ages**
.57	**Quantity, institutional, travel, outdoor cooking**
.58	**Cooking with specific fuels, appliances, utensils**
.59	**Cooking characteristic of specific geographical environments, ethnic cooking**

[.502 4] Works for specific types of users

Do not use; class in 641.51

.508 3–.508 4 Persons of specific ages

Class cooking for persons of specific ages in 641.562

.508 7 Handicapped and gifted persons

Class cooking for sick persons in 641.5631

[.508 82] Cooking with respect to religious groups

Relocated to 641.567

.509 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here collections of recipes from specific restaurants

Class cooking characteristic of specific geographical environments in 641.59

.51 Cooking by specific types of persons

.512 Beginner cooking

Easy dishes

.512 3 Children's cooking

Class cooking of food for consumption by children in 641.5622

.514 Gourmet cooking

> 641.52–641.54 Cooking specific meals

Class comprehensive works in 641.5

.52 Breakfast

.53 Cooking luncheon, brunch, elevenses, tea, supper, snacks

.54 Dinner

.55 Money-saving and timesaving cooking

.552 Money-saving cooking

Including leftovers

.555 Timesaving cooking

Class here make-ahead meals

.56 Cooking for special situations, reasons, ages

.561 For one or two persons

.562 For persons of specific ages

.562 2 For infants and children

Class cooking to be performed by children in 641.5123

.562 7 For persons in late adulthood

.563 For health, appearance, personal reasons

Including cooking for pregnant women

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number coming first in the schedule, e.g., low-carbohydrate, low-calorie cooking for persons with diabetes 641.56314 (*not* 641.5635 or 641.5638)

.563 1 For sick persons

Class cooking for overweight persons in 641.5635

.563 11 For persons with heart disease

.563 14 For persons with diabetes

.563 2 Cooking with specified vitamin and mineral content

Example: salt-free cooking

.563 4 High-calorie cooking

.563 5 Low-calorie cooking

Class here cooking for overweight persons

.563 6 Vegetarian cooking

See also 641.65 for cooking vegetables

.563 7 Health-food cooking

Use 641.563 for comprehensive works on health cooking

.563 8 Carbohydrate, fat, protein cooking

Including low-carbohydrate, low-fat

.564 For various specific times of year

Class here seasonal cooking

Class cooking for special occasions in 641.568

.566 For Christian church limitations and observances

Examples: Christmas, Lent

Class here cooking for Christian groups

.567 For religious limitations and observances

Class here cooking with respect to religious groups [*formerly* 641.50882], cooking for days of feast and fast

Add to base number 641.567 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g., Jewish cooking 641.5676

For cooking for Christian church limitations and observances, see 641.566

.568 For special occasions

Examples: holidays, birthdays, parties, celebrations

Class cooking for special religious occasions in 641.567

.57 Quantity, institutional, travel, outdoor cooking

Example: cooking for armed services

Class here short-order cooking

.571 For schools

.572 For hotels and restaurants

[.573] For armed services

Number discontinued; class in 641.57

.575 For travel

Including airline, bus, camper (caravan) cooking

For cooking for railroad dining cars, see 641.576

[.575 2] For motor buses

Number discontinued; class in 641.575

.575 3 For ships

[.575 4] For airlines

Number discontinued; class in 641.575

.576 For railroad dining cars

.577 For canteens

Temporary or mobile facilities for serving food

.578 Outdoor cooking

Class here cookouts

Class cooking in campers (caravans) in 641.575

.578 2 Camp cooking

.578 4 Cooking at an outdoor grill

Class here cooking at outdoor barbecues

Class comprehensive works on techniques of barbecuing in 641.76

.579 For hospitals and other medical facilities

.58 Cooking with specific fuels, appliances, utensils

Examples: convection-oven cooking, wood-stove cooking

Class outdoor cooking in 641.578

.583 With oil

.584 With gas

.585 With alcohol-based fuels

.586 With electricity

Cooking with electric ranges and appliances, e.g., skillets, frying pans, roasters, grills, toasters, waffle irons

Class convection-oven cooking in 641.58, microwave cooking in 641.5882, electric slow cooking in 641.5884

.587 With steam and pressure

.588 Slow and fireless cooking

.588 2 Microwave cooking

.588 4 Electric slow cooking

.589 With specific utensils

Examples: foils, specially coated utensils, blenders

Class cooking with specific utensils using specific fuels in 641.583–641.588

.59 Cooking characteristic of specific geographical environments, ethnic cooking

Including international cooking

Class historical and geographical treatment of general cooking in 641.509

See also 641.509 for collections of recipes from specific restaurants

.591 Cooking characteristic of areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 641.591 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., arctic and cold-weather cooking 641.5911, tropical and hot-weather cooking 641.5913

.592 Ethnic cooking

Add to base number 641.592 notation 03–9 from Table 5, e.g., Afro-American cooking 641.59296073; however, class Jewish cooking in 641.5676; cooking of ethnic groups dominant in their areas in 641.593–641.599

.593–.599 Cooking characteristic of specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 641.59 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Southern cooking 641.5975

Class ethnic cooking of nondominant aggregates in 641.592

.6 Cooking specific materials

Class specific kinds of composite dishes featuring specific materials in 641.8

.61 Cooking preserved foods

Add to base number 641.61 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.42–641.46, e.g., cooking using frozen foods 641.6153

Class home preservation in 641.4, cooking using specific preserved foods in 641.63–641.69

.62 Cooking with beverages

Class home preparation of beverages in 641.87; cooking with a specific nonalcoholic beverage with the product from which it is derived, e.g., with chocolate 641.6374, with apple juice 641.6411

.622 Wine

.623 Beer and ale

.625 Spirits

> 641.63–641.69 Specific food

Class comprehensive works in 641.6

.63–.67 Cooking food derived from plant crops and domesticated animals

Add to base number 641.6 the numbers following 63 in 633–637, e.g., flavorings 641.6382, legumes 641.6565, meat 641.66, chicken meat 641.665; however, class ices and sherbets in 641.863

Do not use 641.633 for legumes

Class comprehensive works on cooking with beverages in 641.62, vegetarian cooking in 641.5636

For cooking with honey, see 641.68

.68 Cooking with honey

.69 Cooking game and seafood

Use of this number for cooking other foods discontinued; class in 641.6

.691 Game

.692 Fish

Class here seafood

For mollusks, see 641.694; crustaceans, 641.695

.694 Mollusks

Examples: clams, mussels, octopuses, oysters, snails, squid

Class here shellfish

For crustaceans, see 641.695

.695 Crustaceans

Examples: crabs, lobsters, shrimp

.696 Reptiles, amphibians, insects

Examples: frogs, snakes, turtles

.7 Specific cooking processes and techniques

Class specific processes applied to specific materials in 641.6, to specific kinds of composite dishes in 641.8

.71 Baking and roasting

.73 Boiling, simmering, stewing, steaming

.76 Broiling, grilling, barbecuing

Class here comprehensive works on techniques of barbecuing

Class cooking at outdoor grills in 641.5784

.77 Frying, sautéing, braising

.79 Preparation of cold dishes

Including chilled dishes

.8 Cooking specific kinds of composite dishes

Class here interdisciplinary works on composite dishes

.81 Side dishes and sauces

Other than those listed in 641.83–641.86

Including fondues, garnishes

.812 Appetizers, hors d'oeuvres, pâtés, relishes, savories

.813 Soups

.814 Sauces and salad dressings

.815 Breads and bread-like foods

Examples: biscuits (United States), crackers, crepes, hot cakes, pancakes, rolls, waffles

Class main dishes based on breads and bread-like foods in 641.82, sandwiches in 641.84, pastries in 641.865

.82 Main dishes

Examples: quiche, soufflé

.821 Casserole dishes

.822 Pasta dishes

.823 Stews

.824 Meat and cheese pies

Including pizza, meat loaf

Class cooking sausage in 641.66

.83 Salads

.84 Sandwiches

Example: submarine sandwiches

.85 Preserves and candy

.852 Jam, jelly, marmalade

.853 Candy

Variant name: sweets (United Kingdom)

.86 Desserts

Class here comprehensive works on sweets (United States)

For preserves and candy, see 641.85

.862 Ice cream and ice milk

.863 Ices and sherbet

Variant name: water ices

.864 Puddings and gelatins

.865 Pastries

.865 2 Pies and tarts

.865 3 Cakes

Including cake decoration

See also 641.8659 for coffee cakes

.865 4 Cookies

Variant name: biscuits (United Kingdom)

.865 9 Danish, French, related pastries

Examples: coffee cakes, cream puffs, eclairs

.87 Beverages

Class interdisciplinary works on beverages in 641.2

.872 Wine

.873 Alcoholic brewed beverages

Class here beer and ale

.874 Alcoholic beverages

Including bartenders' manuals

Class here comprehensive works on mixed drinks

Class bottled and canned mixed drinks in 663.1

For wine, see 641.872; alcoholic brewed beverages, 641.873

.875 Nonalcoholic beverages

Examples: carbonated and malted drinks, juices, punches

For nonalcoholic brewed beverages, see 641.877

.877 Nonalcoholic brewed beverages

Examples: cocoa, coffee, teas

Including concentrates and substitutes

642 Meals and table service

> **642.1–642.5 Meals in specific situations**

Class here comprehensive works on meals and table services in specific situations

Class comprehensive works in 642, table service in 642.6

.1 Meals for home and family

Including TV dinners

.3 Meals for camp, picnic, travel

.4 Meals for social and public occasions

Including banquets, box lunches, catered meals

Class here meals and catering for social and public occasions

Class picnics in 642.3, catering which includes restaurant operation in 647.95

.5 Meals in public and institutional eating places

Examples: in cafeterias, hospitals, schools

Class here meals in restaurants and hotels

Class meals for social and public occasions in 642.4, operation of public eating places in 647.95

> **642.6–642.8 Table service**

Class here table service in specific situations

Class comprehensive works in 642.6, comprehensive works on meals and table services in specific situations in 641.1–642.5

.6 Serving at table

Examples: place setting, seating guests, carving

Class here comprehensive works on table service

For table furnishings, see 642.7, for table decorations, see 642.8

.7 Table furnishings

Examples: dinnerware, glassware, silverware, table linens

For table decorations, see 642.8

.8 Table decorations

643 Housing and household equipment

Works for owner-occupants or renters covering activities of members of household

[.028 8] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 643.7

.1 Housing

For special kinds of housing, see 643.2

See also 728 for comprehensive works on design and construction of houses, 690.8 for construction of houses

See Manual at 643.1 vs. 363.5

[.102 88] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 643.7

[.102 97] Evaluation and purchasing manuals

Do not use; class in 643.12

.12 Selecting, renting, buying homes

Including site selection, supervision of construction

Class here evaluation and purchasing guides

Class moving in 648.9

See also 333.338 for economics of home acquisition, 346.043 for law of real property

.16 Household security

Example: burglarproofing

.2 Special kinds of housing

Examples: apartments, condominiums, mobile homes, modular and prefabricated houses, vacation homes

Class single-family houses in 643.1; a specific aspect of a special kind of housing with the subject, e.g., renovating vacation homes 643.7

See Manual at 629.226 vs. 643.2, 690.879, 728.79

> **643.3–643.5 Specific areas and their equipment**

Class comprehensive works in 643.1; household utilities in 644, household furnishings in 645; home construction of household articles made of fabric in 646.21; home workshops in 684.08; manufacture of household appliances in 683.8, of household furnishings in 684

.3 Kitchens and their equipment

Including kitchen linen

Class use of food storage and preparation equipment in 641.4–641.8, dishwashing equipment in 648.56

.4 Eating and drinking areas and their equipment

Examples: dining rooms, breakfast rooms, bars

Class table furnishings in 642.7

.5 Other areas and their equipment

Examples: attics, basements, other storage areas

.52 Bathrooms

.53 Bedrooms

Including bedclothing, e.g., blankets

.54 Living rooms

.55 Recreation areas

Indoor and outdoor

Examples: patios, porches, swimming pools

.58 Study and work areas

Example: dens

.6 Appliances and laborsaving installations

Class here maintenance and repair by members of household

Class appliances and installations for specific areas in 643.3–643.5, for a specific purpose with the purpose, e.g., sewing machines 646.2044

[.604] Special topics

Number discontinued; class in 643.6

Appliances and laborsaving installations for handicapped persons relocated to 643.6087

.608 7 Handicapped [*formerly* 643.604], ill, gifted persons

.7 Renovation, improvement, remodeling

Class here comprehensive works on maintenance and repair in home economics, on maintenance and repair by members of household

Class renovation, improvement, remodeling of specific areas and their equipment in 643.3–643.5; maintenance and repair of a specific topic in home economics with the topic using notation 0288 from Table 1, e.g., of appliances 643.60288

See Manual at 643.7 vs. 690

644 Household utilities

Works for owner-occupants or renters covering activities by members of household

See Manual at 647.96–647.99 vs. 658.2, T1—0682

.1 Heating

.3 Lighting

Class lighting fixtures as furnishings in 645.5

.5 Ventilation and air conditioning

.6 Water supply

645 Household furnishings

Works for owner-occupants or renters covering activities by members of household

Class here comprehensive works on household furnishings and interior decoration of residential buildings

Interior decoration of residential buildings relocated to 747

Class home construction of fabric furnishings in 646.21, construction in wood and metal in 684

[.029 7] Evaluation and purchasing manuals

Do not use; class in 645.042

.04 Special topics

.042 Evaluation and purchasing manuals

Class selection and purchase of fabrics for furnishings in 645.046, evaluation and purchasing manuals for specific kinds of furnishings with the kind, using notation 0297 from Table 1, e.g., for lighting fixtures 645.50297

.046 Fabrics

Description, selection, purchase, care, use

> **645.1–645.6 Interior furnishings**

Class comprehensive works in 645

> **645.1–645.5 Specific kinds of interior furnishings**

Class comprehensive works in 645

.1 Floor covering

Examples: carpeting, rugs, linoleum

.2 Covering for walls and ceilings

Examples: hangings, paint, paneling, wallpaper

.3 Curtains and related furnishings

Examples: draperies, shades, blinds, their accessories

Class wall hangings in 645.2

.4 Furniture and accessories

Including upholstery, slipcovers; arrangement for convenience and efficiency

Class artistic aspects of furniture and accessories in 749

.5 Lighting fixtures

.6 Furnishings for specific rooms

Class interior furnishings of specific kinds regardless of room in 645.1–645.5

.8 Outdoor furnishings

Examples: furnishings for gardens, patios, courts, balconies, roofs

646 Sewing, clothing, management of personal and family living

SUMMARY

646.1	**Sewing materials and equipment**	
.2	**Sewing and related operations**	
.3	**Clothing and accessories**	
.4	**Clothing and accessories construction**	
.5	**Construction of headgear**	
.6	**Care of clothing and accessories**	
.7	**Management of personal and family living**	**Grooming**

.1 Sewing materials and equipment

General aspects: description, selection, purchase, care

Including leathers and furs

Materials, equipment used for clothing relocated to 646.3028

.11 Fabrics

Class here comprehensive works on fabrics in the home

Class fabrics for a specific use with the use, e.g., use in furnishings 645.046

.19 Sewing equipment, fasteners

Examples: needles, pins, scissors and shears, thimbles, thread

Class here notions

Class sewing machines in 646.2044

.2 Sewing and related operations

Class here mending, sewing of specific articles for the home

Class clothing construction in 646.4, mending of clothing in 646.6

For knitting, crocheting, tatting, see 746.43; embroidery, 746.44

.202 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures

Class sewing apparatus, equipment, materials in 646.1, sewing machines in 646.2044

.204 Basic sewing operations

Class here darning

.204 2 Sewing by hand

.204 4 Sewing by machine

.21 Construction of home furnishings

Examples: making hangings, curtains, slipcovers, table linen, towels, bedclothes

Class basic sewing operations in 646.204, artistic and decorative aspects of construction of interior furnishings in 746.9

.25 Reweaving

.3 Clothing and accessories

Description, selection, purchase of clothing and accessories for utility, quality, economy, appearance, style

Class interdisciplinary works on clothing and accessories in 391

For clothing and accessories construction, see 646.4; care of clothing and accessories, 646.6

See Manual at 391 vs. 646.3, 746.92

.302 8 Materials, equipment [*both formerly* 646.1], apparatus; auxiliary techniques and procedures

[.302 88] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 646.6

[.308 1–.308 2] Clothing for men, and women

Do not use; class in 646.32–646.34

.308 3 Young adult clothing

Class clothing for young adult men aged twenty-one and over in 646.32, for young adult women aged twenty-one and over in 646.34, for children in 646.36

.308 4 Clothing for persons in specific stages of adulthood

Class clothing of adult men regardless of age in 646.32, of adult women regardless of age in 646.34

[.308 7] Clothing for handicapped and ill persons

Do not use; class in 646.31

.309 11 Clothing for cold weather and frigid zones

.309 13 Clothing for hot weather and tropics

.31–.36 Clothing for handicapped and ill persons, men, women, children

Add to base number 646.3 the numbers following 646.40 in 646.401–646.406, e.g., clothing for handicapped persons 646.31

Class clothing for young adult men in 646.308351, for young adult women in 646.308352

.4 Clothing and accessories construction

Class here casual clothes, sports clothes

Class commercial manufacture of clothing in 687

For construction of headgear, see 646.5

.400 1–.400 7 Standard subdivisions

.400 8 Clothing with respect to specific kinds of persons

[.400 81–.400 82] Clothing for men, and women

Do not use; class in 646.402–646.404

.400 83 Young adult clothing

Class clothing for young adult men aged twenty-one and over in 646.402, for young adult women aged twenty-one and over in 646.404, for children in 646.406

.400 84 Clothing of persons in specific stages of adulthood

Class clothing of adult men regardless of age in 646.402, of adult women regardless of age in 646.404

[.400 87] Clothing for handicapped and ill persons

Do not use; class in 646.401

.401 Clothing for handicapped and ill persons

> 646.402–646.406 Clothing for men, women, children

Class comprehensive works in 646.4, construction of clothing for handicapped persons regardless of age or sex in 646.401, patterns regardless of kind of persons in 646.407, fitting and alterations regardless of kind of persons in 646.408

.402 Men's clothing

Class clothing for young adult men in 646.4008351

.404 Women's clothing

Class clothing for young adult women in 646.4008352

.406 Children's clothing

Class clothing of young men in 646.402, of young women in 646.404

.407 Patterns

General aspects: selection, purchase, use

Use of this number for construction of clothing without patterns discontinued; class in 646.4

.407 2 Patternmaking and pattern design

.408 Fitting and alterations

> 646.42–646.48 Specific kinds of clothing

Add to notation for each term identified by * the numbers following 646.4 in 646.4001–646.406, e.g., construction of the kind of clothing for handicapped persons 01

Class comprehensive works in 646.4

.42 *Underwear and hosiery

.43 *Specific kinds of garments

Not provided for elsewhere

Use of this number for comprehensive works on outer house garments discontinued; class in 646.4

.432 *Dresses

.433 *Suits, *trousers, *jackets

For outdoor jackets, e.g., windbreakers, see 646.45

*Add as instructed under 646.42–646.48

.435 *Shirts, *blouses, *tops

.437 *Skirts

.45 *Outer coats, sweaters, wraps

Class here comprehensive works on coats

Class suit coats in 646.433; outdoor athletic wear in 646.47, e.g., ski clothing

See also 646.47 for evening wear

.452 *Overcoats

Example: topcoats

.453 *Raincoats

.454 *Sweaters

.457 *Stoles, *cloaks, *jackets

Class suit jackets in 641.433

.47 *Garments for special purposes

Examples: athletic garments, evening and formal dress, maternity garments, wedding clothes

Class accessories for special purposes in 646.48

See also 646.4 for casual and sports clothes

.475 *Nightclothes

.478 *Costumes

Examples: party, period costumes

Class here theatrical costumes

.48 Accessories

Examples: aprons, belts, gloves and mittens, handkerchiefs, neckwear, scarves

Class hosiery in 646.42, headgear in 646.5, boots and shoes in 685.31, handcrafted costume jewelry in 745.5942

.5 Construction of headgear

.500 1–.500 7 Standard subdivisions

.500 8 History and description with respect to kinds of persons

[.500 81–.500 83] Men, women, children

Do not use; class in 646.502–646.506

.500 84 Persons in specific stages of adulthood

Class construction of headgear for men regardless of age in 646.502, for women regardless of age in 646.504

*Add as instructed under 646.42–646.48

.500 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

.502 For men

.504 For women (Millinery)

.506 For children

.6 Care of clothing and accessories

Examples: mending, reweaving, storage, packing

Dyeing, bleaching, spot removal relocated to 648.1

For laundering and related operations, see 648.1

.7 Management of personal and family living Grooming

Class here interdisciplinary works on success, successful living

Class interdisciplinary works on success in business and other public situations in 650.1

For parapsychological and occult means for achievement of well-being, happiness, success, see 131; psychological means for achievement of personal well-being, happiness, success, 158; etiquette (manners), 395

See also 362.82 for social services to families

.700 1–.700 7 Standard subdivisions of management of personal and family living

.700 8 Management of personal and family living with respect to kinds of persons

[.700 846] Management of personal and family living for persons in late adulthood

Do not use; class in 646.79

.700 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of personal and family living

.701–.703 Standard subdivisions of grooming

.704 Grooming for women, men, children

.704 2 For women

.704 4 For men

.704 6 For children

.705–.707 Standard subdivisions of grooming

.708 Grooming for specific kinds of persons

[.708 1–.708 3] Grooming for men, women, children

Do not use; class in 646.704

.708 4 Grooming for persons in specific stages of adulthood

Class grooming for women regardless of age in 646.7042, for men regardless of age in 646.7044

.709 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of grooming

> 646.71–646.75 Grooming

Class comprehensive works in 646.7, clothing selection and dressing with style in 646.3, training children in grooming 649.63

See also 646.76 for charm

.71 Cleanliness

Examples: bathing, showering

.72 Care of hair, face, skin

Class here cosmetology

Use of this number for personal appearance discontinued; class in 646.7

.724 Care of hair

Example: shaving

Including care of beards

Class here barbering

.724 2 Hairdressing

Including dyeing

Class hairstyling in 646.7245

.724 5 Hairstyling

.724 8 Wigs

General aspects: cleaning, dyeing, selection, styling

.726 Care of face, skin

Including care of eyes, lips

Use of this number for comprehensive works on hair, skin, nails, on cosmetology discontinued; class in 646.72

Class manicuring and pedicuring in 646.727

.727 Manicuring and pedicuring

.75 Physique and form

Reducing, slenderizing, bodybuilding

Including massage, sauna, Turkish baths

See also 613.2 for dieting, 613.7 for physical fitness

See Manual at 613.71 vs. 646.75, 796

.76 Charm

.77 Dating and choice of mate

.78 Family living

Class here guides to harmonious family relations

For child rearing, see 649.1

.79 Guides for persons in late adulthood

Class here guides to retirement

Class family living in 646.78

See also 362.6 for social services to persons in late adulthood, 646.7008 for guides to management of personal and family living for other age brackets

647 Management of public households (Institutional housekeeping)

.068 Management

See Manual at 647.068

[.068 3] Personnel management

Do not use; class in 647.2

> **647.2–647.6 Employees**

Class comprehensive works on household employees in 640.46, comprehensive works on public household employees in 647.2

.2 Indoor employees

Class here personnel management, comprehensive works on public household employees

For outdoor employees, see 647.3; hours and duties, 647.6

.3 Outdoor employees

For hours and duties, see 647.6

.6 Employee hours and duties

.9 Specific kinds of public households and institutions

Class a specific aspect of public households and institutions with the aspect, e.g., laundering 648.1

.92 Multiple dwellings for long-term residents

Examples: apartments, apartment hotels, flats, tenements

Class boarding and rooming houses in 647.94

.94 Multiple dwellings for transients

See Manual at 913–919: Guidebooks

.940 25 Directories

Class directories of specific continents, countries, localities in 647.943–647.949

.940 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class treatment by specific continents, countries, localities in 647.943–647.949 (*not* 647.94093–647.94099)

.943–.949 Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities

Class here directories

Add to base number 647.94 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., multiple dwellings for transients in Canada 647.9471; then add further as follows:

01 Hotels and inns
02 Motels
03 Bed and breakfast establishments
Class here boarding and rooming houses
05 Clubs
06 Hostels
For youth hostels, see 07
07 Youth hostels
08 Trailer camps
09 Campsites

.95 Eating and drinking places

See Manual at 913–919: Guidebooks

.950 25 Directories

Class directories of specific continents, countries, localities in 647.953–647.959

.950 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class treatment by specific continents, countries, localities in 647.953–647.959 (*not* 647.95093–647.95099)

.953–.959 Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities

Class here directories, operation of catering establishments

Add to base number 647.95 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., restaurants of Hawaii 647.95969

> 647.96–647.99 Institutional households not primarily used for residence, eating, drinking

Class comprehensive works in 647

See Manual at 647.96–647.99 vs. 658.2, T1—0682

.96 Miscellaneous institutional households

Not provided for elsewhere

Add to base number 647.96 the numbers following 725 in 725.1–725.9, e.g., office buildings 647.9623

.98 Religious institutions

Add to base number 647.98 the numbers following 726 in 726.1–726.9, e.g., Franciscan monasteries 647.98773

.99 Educational and research institutions

Add to base number 647.99 the numbers following 727 in 727.1–727.9, e.g., public libraries 647.99824

648 Housekeeping

Class here household sanitation

See Manual at 647.96–647.99 vs. 658.2, T1—0682

.1 Laundering and related operations

Examples: dyeing, bleaching, spot removal [*all formerly* 646.6], drying, pressing

Class dry cleaning in 667.12

.5 Housecleaning

Class here cleaning floors, furnishings

.56 Dishwashing

.7 Control and eradication of pests

.8 Storage and preparation for storage

.9 Moving

649 Child rearing and home care of sick and infirm

SUMMARY

649.1	**Child rearing**
.3	**Feeding**
.4	**Clothing and health**
.5	**Activities and recreation**
.6	**Training**
.7	**Moral and character training**
.8	**Home care of sick and infirm**

.1 Child rearing

Class here training, supervision

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., infant boys 649.122 (*not* 649.132)

Exceptional children	649.15
Children of specific classes, types, relationships	649.14
Children of specific age groups	649.12
Children of specific sexes	649.13

Class specific elements of home care of children regardless of age, sex, or other characteristics in 649.3–649.7

.102 4 Works for specific types of users

Do not add as instructed in Table 1

.102 42 Works for expectant parents

.102 43 Works for single parents

.102 45 Works for older children in family

.102 48 Works for baby sitters

.108 Child care with respect to kinds of persons

Class care of specific kinds of children in 649.12–649.15

.12 Children of specific age groups

.122 Infants

From birth to age two

.123 Children three to five

Class here preschool children

.124 Children six to eleven

Class here comprehensive works on school-age children to age fourteen

Class school-age children twelve to fourteen in 649.125

.125 Young adults

Ages twelve to twenty

.13 Children of specific sexes

.132 Boys

.133 Girls

.14 Children of specific classes, types, relationships

Add to base number 649.14 the numbers following 155.44 in 155.442–155.446, e.g., the only child 649.142

.15 Exceptional children

Add to base number 649.15 the numbers following 371.9 in 371.91–371.97, e.g., the gifted child 649.155

> **649.3–649.7 Specific elements of home care of children**

Class comprehensive works in 649.1

.3 Feeding

.33 Breast feeding

Class nutritional aspects of breast feeding in 613.26

.4 Clothing and health

Class feeding in 649.3, home care for sick children in 649.8

.5 Activities and recreation

.51 Creative activities

Examples: paper work, painting, modeling, music

.55 Play with toys

Examples: dolls, games

Class sports games in 649.57

[.552–.554] With specific toys

Numbers discontinued; class in 649.55

.57 Exercise, gymnastics, sports

.58 Reading and related activities

Examples: storytelling, reading aloud to children, supervision of children's reading, listening

Including home teaching of reading

.6 Training

Class religious training in 291.44, Christian religious training in 248.845

For moral and character training, see 649.7

.62 Toilet training

.63 Training in grooming and self-reliance

Examples: bathing, dressing, feeding self

.64 Behavior modification, discipline, obedience

Use of this number for comprehensive works on behavior training discontinued; class in 649.6

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., behavior modification in dressing habits 649.63

.65 Sex education

.68 Home-based education

Contains developing learning ability, developing readiness for school, teaching of school subjects

Including techniques of study for parents [*formerly* 371.302813], works for parents on specific elementary school subjects [*formerly* in 372.3–372.8 with use of notation 0442 from table at 372.3–372.8]

For home teaching of reading, see 649.58

.7 Moral and character training

Religious training of children in the home relocated to 291.44, Christian religious training of children in the home to 248.845

.8 Home care of sick and infirm

650 Management and auxiliary services

This division is concerned with the art and science of conducting organized enterprises and with auxiliary skills and operations. The auxiliary skills and operations consist chiefly of communication and record keeping fundamental to management

Class here business

See Manual at 158.7 vs. 650; 650 vs. 330

SUMMARY

650.01–.09 Standard subdivisions
.1 Personal success in business
651 Office services
652 Processes of written communication
653 Shorthand
657 Accounting
658 General management
659 Advertising and public relations

.01 Philosophy and theory

.015 13 Business arithmetic [*formerly* 513.93]

.02–.09 Standard subdivisions

.1 Personal success in business

Including personal efficiency (management of own time and work)

Class here interdisciplinary works on success in business and other public situations

Class interdisciplinary works on success in general, on management of personal and family living in 646.7, success as an executive in 658.409

.12 Financial success

.13 Personal improvement and success in business relationships

.14 Success in obtaining jobs and promotions

> 651–657 Auxiliary services

Class comprehensive works in 650, advertising and public relations in 659

651 Office services

Class here problems of security and confidentiality

For processes of written communication, see 652; accounting, 657

SUMMARY

651.028	**Auxiliary techniques and procedures; materials**
.2	**Equipment and supplies**
.3	**Office management**
.5	**Records management**
.7	**Communication Creation and transmission of records**
.8	**Data processing Computer applications**
.9	**Office services in specific kinds of enterprises**

.028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; materials

Class apparatus and equipment in 651.2

[.028 5] Data processing Computer applications

Do not use; class in 651.8

.2 Equipment and supplies

Description, use, maintenance

Use 651.2001–651.2009 for standard subdivisions

Class procurement of office equipment and supplies in 658.72

.202 Maintenance of equipment

.23 Furniture

.26 Processing equipment

Class a specific type of equipment with its use, e.g., typewriters 652.3

.29 Supplies and forms

.3 Office management

General aspects: planning, organizing, directing, controlling office services

Including role and function of administrative personnel

.306 83 Management of office personnel [*formerly* 658.3044]

.37 Clerical activities

Class written communication in 652, accounting in 657

.374 Secretarial and related activities

.374 1 Secretarial activities

Activities of secretaries, stenographers, typists

.374 3 Related activities

Examples: work of filers, messengers, receptionists, switchboard operators

Class work of stenographers, typists in 651.3741

.5 Records management

Class creation and transmission of records in 651.7

.504 Special topics

.504 2 Records management in specific types of enterprises

.504 26 In technical enterprises

.504 261 Medical

.51 Retention, maintenance, final disposition of records

.53 Filing systems and procedures

For storage, see 651.54–651.59

> 651.54–651.59 Storage

General aspects: space, equipment, control, protection, preservation

Class comprehensive works in 651.53

.54 Storage of original documents

Examples: storage in filing cabinets, visible and rotary files

For storage of inactive files, see 651.56

.56 Storage of inactive files

Original documents in permanent (dead) storage

.58 Microreproduction of files

Active and inactive

.59 Computerization of files

.7 Communication Creation and transmission of records

Class interdisciplinary works on communication in 302.2, managerial communication in 658.45

See Manual at 651.7 vs. 808.06665, 658.45

.73 Oral communication

Including use of telephone

.74 Written communication

Including dictating and use of dictating equipment

Use 651.74001–651.74009 for standard subdivisions

For specific types of written communication, see 651.75–651.78; processes of written communication, 652

[.740 2] Style manuals

Relocated to 808.06665

> 651.75–651.78 Specific types of written communication

Class comprehensive works in 651.74

.75 Correspondence

Including layout of letters

Style of business letters relocated to 808.066651

.752 Form letters and their use

.755 Memorandums

.759 Mail handling

Including equipment, e.g., mail openers and sealers, postage meters, addressing machines

.77 Minutes

.78 Reports

.79 Internal communication

Examples: electronic mail, intercom systems, messenger services, paging systems, pneumatic and mechanical conveyor systems

Class oral internal communication in 651.73, internal written communication in 651.74

.8 Data processing Computer applications

Use in carrying out office functions

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 651.8 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 651.8416, but use of digital computers 651.8 (*not* 651.84)

Class interdisciplinary works on data processing in 004; computer applications for a specific office activity with the activity, e.g., computerization of files 651.59, word processing 652.5

.9 Office services in specific kinds of enterprises

Add to base number 651.9 notation 001–999, e.g., office services in libraries 651.902

Class specific elements of office services in specific kinds of enterprises in 651.2–651.8

652 Processes of written communication

For shorthand, see 653

.1 Penmanship

See also 745.61 for calligraphy

.3 Typing

Including description and maintenance of typewriters

Use 652.3001–652.3009 for standard subdivisions

.302 Specific levels of skill

Class speed and accuracy tests and drills in 652.307

.302 4 Basic (Beginning) level

.302 5 Intermediate level

.302 6 Advanced level

.307 Speed and accuracy

Class here tests, drills

.32 Typing for specific purposes

Other than general commercial and professional typing

.325 For personal use

.326 For specific kinds of enterprises

Examples: legal, medical, technical typing

.4 Duplication of records and duplicating methods

Office use of stencil, xerography, other methods

Class interdisciplinary works on photoduplication in 686.4

.5 Word processing

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 652.5 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., the use of digital microcomputers 652.5416, but the use of digital computers 652.5 (*not* 652.54)

.8 Cryptography

Class here interdisciplinary works on cryptography [*formerly* 001.5436]

Class cryptographic techniques used for security in computer systems in 005.82

653 Shorthand

.1 Basic shorthand practice

Class basic practice in a specific system with the system, e.g., Gregg shorthand transcription 653.4270424

[.13] General principles

Number discontinued; class in 653.1

.14 Taking dictation, and transcription

.15 Speed and accuracy

Class speed and accuracy in transcription in 653.14

.18 Specific uses

Examples: court reporting, medical, personal

> **653.2–653.4 Systems**

Class comprehensive works in 653

.2 Abbreviated longhand systems

Systems using conventional letters

.3 Machine systems

Add to base number 653.3 the numbers following 653.1 in 653.14–653.18, e.g., specific uses 653.38

.4 Handwritten systems

For abbreviated longhand systems, see 653.2

.41 Multilingual

.42 English-language

.421 Early forms

Systems devised before 1837

.422 Essentially nonphonetic systems

Class early nonphonetic systems in 653.421

> 653.423–653.428 Essentially phonetic systems

Class comprehensive works in 653.42, early phonetic systems in 653.421

.423 Geometric disjoined vowel systems

For Pitman systems, see 653.424

.424 Pitman systems

.424 04 Special topics

.424 042 Basic shorthand practice

Add to base number 653.424042 the numbers following 653.1 in 653.14–653.18, e.g., speed and accuracy 653.4240425

.424 2 Isaac Pitman

.424 3 Benn Pitman

.424 4 Graham

.424 5 Munson

.425 Geometric joined vowel systems

Examples: Dewey (1922), Lindsley, Pernin, Sloan

.426 Semigeometric, script-geometric, semiscript systems

Example: Malone

For Gregg systems, see 653.427

.427 Gregg systems

.427 04 Special topics

.427 042 Basic shorthand practice

Add to base number 653.427042 the numbers following 653.1 in 653.14–653.18, e.g., transcription 653.4270424

.427 2 Conventional systems

.427 3 Simplified systems

.428 Script systems

Example: Dewey (1936)

.43–.49 Systems used in other languages

Add to base number 653.4 notation 3–9 from Table 6, e.g., French-language systems 653.441

[654] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

[655] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 17

[656] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

657 Accounting

See Manual at 657 vs. 658.1511, 658.1512

SUMMARY

657.04	**Levels of accounting**
.1	**Constructive accounting**
.2	**Recording (Bookkeeping)**
.3	**Financial reporting (Financial statements)**
.4	**Specific fields of accounting**
.6	**Specific kinds of accounting**
.7	**Accounting for specific phases of business activity**
.8	**Accounting for enterprises engaged in specific kinds of activities**
.9	**Accounting for specific kinds of organizations**

.04 Levels of accounting

.042 Elementary level

.044 Intermediate level

Including college-level accounting

.046 Advanced level

> **657.1–657.9 Elements of accounting**

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., accounting for cost of inventory in a corporation engaged in manufacturing 657.867072 (*not* 657.42, 657.72, 657.95)

Accounting for enterprises engaged in specific kinds of activities	657.8
Financial reporting (Financial statements)	657.3
Accounting for specific phases of business activity	657.7
Constructive accounting	657.1
Recording (Bookkeeping)	657.2
Specific fields of accounting	657.4
Accounting for specific kinds of organizations	657.9
Specific kinds of accounting	657.6

Class comprehensive works in 657

.1 Constructive accounting

Development of accounting systems to fit the needs of individual organizations

.2 Recording (Bookkeeping)

Including secretarial bookkeeping and accounting

Class elementary accounting in 657.042

.3 Financial reporting (Financial statements)

Class here consolidated statements

.32 Preparing financial statements

[.33] Understanding and analyzing financial statements

Number discontinued; class in 657.3

.4 Specific fields of accounting

For constructive accounting, see 657.1; bookkeeping, 657.2

.42 Cost accounting

.45 Auditing

.450 285 Data processing Computer applications

Use in auditing

Class auditing of computer-processed accounts in 657.453

.452 Audit reports and reporting

.453 Auditing of computer-processed accounts

Including program auditing

.458 Internal (Management) auditing

.46 Tax accounting

Example: accounting for social security taxes

.47 Fiduciary accounting

Accounting for receiverships, estates, trusts

.48 Analytical (Financial) accounting

Examples: measurement of flow of funds, of profitability, of financial strength, of income, of liquidity; accounting for inflation

.6 Specific kinds of accounting

.61 Public accounting

.63 Private accounting

.7 Accounting for specific phases of business activity

.72 Current assets

Examples: accounts receivable, cash, inventory

.73 Fixed assets

Including depreciation, retirement, valuation and revaluation of land, buildings, equipment; insurance

.74 Current liabilities

Examples: accounts payable, notes payable, payroll

For tax accounting, see 657.46

.75 Fixed liabilities

Examples: bonds payable, leases, mortgages, pension plans, purchase contracts

.76 Capital accounting

Accounting for ownership equity

Including accounting for stock and dividends

For measurement of profitability, of income, see 657.48

.8 Accounting for enterprises engaged in specific kinds of activities

Aside from additions, changes, deletions, exceptions shown under specific entries, add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

01–07 Specific aspects of accounting

Add to 0 the numbers following 657 in 657.1–657.7, e.g., cost accounting 042

.83 Service and professional activities

.832 Social services

Including churches, prisons

.832 2 *Hospitals

*Add as instructed under 657.8

.832 7 *Educational institutions

.833 Finance and real estate

.833 3 *Finance

For insurance, see 657.836

.833 5 *Real estate

.834 Professions

.835 *Government

Central and local governments and authorities

Class accounting for government corporations (except municipalities) in 657.95, accounting for specific government services other than military in 657.832–657.834, 657.836–657.839

.835 045 Government auditing

Class here manuals of government audit procedure [*formerly also* 351.72320202]

.836 *Insurance

.837 *Hotels and restaurants

.838 *Public utilities

.839 *Wholesale and retail trade

.84 Communications and entertainment media

Examples: newspapers, periodicals, publishing houses, television and radio networks and stations, theaters, motion-picture producers and theaters, sports

.86 Other activities

.861 *Labor unions

.862 *Mining

.863 *Agriculture

.867 *Manufacturing

Including printing

.869 *Construction

.9 Accounting for specific kinds of organizations

.904 Special topics

.904 2 Small business

.91 Individual proprietorships

.92 Partnerships

*Add as instructed under 657.8

.95 Corporations

.96 Combinations and mergers

Class here accounting for multinational organizations

.97 Cooperatives

.98 Nonprofit organizations

.99 Branches

Including agencies

658 General management

The science and art of conducting organized enterprises, projects, activities

Class here management of technology [*formerly also* 606.8]; management of services rendered by nonpublic organizations, whether or not for profit; management of public corporations; management of public agencies that themselves provide direct services (in contrast to public agencies that regulate, support, or control services provided by other organizations)

Class sociology of management in 302.35, management of enterprises engaged in specific fields of activity with the subject, using notation 068 from Table 1, e.g., management of commercial banks 332.12068

For public administration, see 350

See also 306.36 for industrial sociology, 330 for economics

See Manual at 350–354 vs. 658, T1—068; 658 and T1—068; 658, T1—068 vs. 302.35

Specific principles of management are classed in 658.401–658.403

SUMMARY

658.001–.009	**Standard subdivisions**
.02–.05	**[Management of enterprises of specific sizes, scopes, forms; data processing]**
.1	**Organization and finance**
.2	**Plant management**
.3	**Personnel management**
.4	**Executive management**
.5	**Management of production**
.7	**Management of materials**
.8	**Management of distribution (Marketing)**

.001 Philosophy and theory

Including theory of organizations, principles derived from economics and other social and behavioral sciences

[.001 1] Systems

Do not use; class systems theory and analysis in 658.4032, operations research in 658.4034, models and simulation in 658.40352

.002 Miscellany

[.002 85] Data processing Computer applications

Do not use; class in 658.05

.003–.009 Standard subdivisions

.02 Management of enterprises of specific sizes and scopes

Class management of enterprises of specific forms regardless of size or scope in 658.04

See Manual at 658 and T1—068

.022 Small enterprises

.022 08 History and description with respect to kinds of persons

Class here minority enterprises

.023 Big enterprises

.04 Management of enterprises of specific forms

Class initiation of specific forms of ownership organization in 658.114

See Manual at 658 and T1—068; 658.402 vs. 658.04, 658.114

> 658.041–658.046 Profit organizations

Class comprehensive works in 658, international profit organizations in 658.049

.041 Individual proprietorships

Including home-based, part-time, retirement enterprises

Class management by entrepreneurs in 658.421

.042 Partnerships

General and limited

.044 Unincorporated enterprises

Examples: joint stock companies, joint ventures

For partnerships, see 658.042; individual proprietorships, 658.041

.045 Corporations

Conversion of closely held corporations to corporations whose stocks are publicly traded (''going public'') relocated to 658.15224

Class combinations in 658.046

.046 Combinations

Examples: conglomerates, holding companies, interlocking directorates, subsidiaries, trusts

Class mergers in 658.16

.047 Cooperative organizations

.048 Nonprofit organizations

Class international nonprofit organizations in 658.049

See also 658.047 for cooperative organizations

.049 International enterprises

Class organization of international enterprises and activities in 658.18

.05 Data processing Computer applications

Class here use of data processing in managerial operations

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 658.05 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 658.05416, but use of digital computers 658.05 (*not* 658.054); however, class data security in 658.478

Class use of data processing in clerical operations in 651.8

See also 658.4032 for systems analysis in decision making

.1 Organization and finance

For internal organization, see 658.402

SUMMARY

658.11	**Initiation of business enterprises**
.12	**Legal administration**
.15	**Financial management**
.16	**Reorganization**
.18	**Organization of international enterprises and activities**

.11 Initiation of business enterprises

Including location

Class capitalization in 658.152; mergers, consolidations, acquisitions, take-overs, reorganization of ownership structure in 658.16

See Manual at 338.09 vs. 338.6042, 332.67309, 346.07, 658.11, 658.21, T1—068

.114 Forms of ownership organization

Class management of specific forms of ownership organization in 658.04

Add to base number 658.114 the numbers following 658.04 in 658.041–658.049, e.g., initiation of international enterprises 658.1149

See Manual at 658.402 vs. 658.04, 658.114

.12 Legal administration

Management of business to insure compliance with law

Including use of legal counsel

.15 Financial management

Procurement and use of funds to establish and operate enterprises

Class here financial decision making, financial planning

See Manual at 332 vs. 338, 658.15; 658.15 and T1—0681

SUMMARY

658.151	**Financial control**
.152	**Management of financial operations**
.153	**Taxes, insurance, charitable donations**
.154	**Budgeting**
.155	**Management of income and expense**
.159	**Financial administration in enterprises of specific scopes and types**

.151 Financial control

Procurement and use of financial information to evaluate performance of organizations and their specific activities and to suggest remedial measures

For budgeting, see 658.154; management of income and expense, 658.155

.151 1 Management accounting

Design and use of accounting procedures to provide internal reports needed for day-to-day management

Class accounting in 657, management audits in 658.4

See Manual at 657 vs. 658.1511, 658.1512

.151 2 Use of reports

Examples: balance sheets, income and expense statements, manufacturing cost statements, profit and loss statements

Class here financial reports made to directors, stockholders, top management

See Manual at 657 vs. 658.1511, 658.1512

.152 Management of financial operations

Class here management of investment, comprehensive works on capital and its management

Class wage and salary administration in 658.32, customer credit management in 658.88

For budgeting, see 658.154; management of income and expense, 658.155

> 658.152 2–658.152 4 Capital and its management

Class comprehensive works in 658.152, capital budgets in 658.154

.152 2 Procurement of capital

Class here costs and valuation of capital

Class procurement of specific kinds of capital in 658.1524

.152 24 External sources

Examples: issue and sale of stocks and bonds; loans; gifts, grants

Including conversion of closely held corporations to corporations whose stocks are publicly traded (''going public'') [*formerly* 658.045]

Class debt management in 658.1526

.152 26 Internal sources

Examples: reserves, savings, proceeds of current operations

.152 4 Procurement and management of specific kinds of capital

.152 42 Long-term (Fixed) capital

Examples: land, buildings, heavy equipment; stocks and bonds of other companies, long-term loans receivable

Including leasing

See also 658.72 for procurement of office equipment

.152 44 Short-term (Working) capital

Examples: accounts receivable, cash, inventory, 30–90 day loans receivable

.152 6 Debt management

Examples: accounts payable, bonds outstanding, notes payable

.153 Taxes, insurance, charitable donations

Class here ways that management can deal with taxes, what insurance is needed for the organization

Class interdisciplinary works on and economic aspects of business taxes in 336.207, on charitable donations in 361.765, on insurance in 368; legal aspects of business taxes in 343.068

.154 Budgeting

Including capital budgets, budgeting for specific objectives

.155 Management of income and expense

Including distribution of profit, dividend policy

Class here management of profit and loss, comprehensive works on risk management

Class use of income and expense statements in 658.1512, health and safety programs in 658.382, business security in 658.47, determination of prices in 658.816

For taxes, insurance, charitable donations, see 658.153

.155 2 Cost analysis and control

Class cost accounting in 657.42, managerial accounting in 658.1511, analysis and control of specific kinds of costs in 658.1553, cost-benefit analysis, cost-volume-profit analysis in 658.1554

.155 3 Kinds of costs

Examples: fixed and overhead costs; variable costs; labor, material costs

For costs of capital, see 658.1522

.155 4 Income (Revenue)

Return on investment, income from operations

Including break-even analysis, cost-benefit analysis, cost-volume-profit analysis, profit and its promotion

.159 Financial administration in enterprises of specific types and scopes

Class specific aspects of financial administration in enterprises of specific types and scopes in 658.151–658.155, e.g., budgeting management in small business 658.154

.159 2 Small business

.159 208 History and description with respect to kinds of persons

Class here minority enterprises

.159 9 Foreign (International) enterprises

.16 Reorganization

Examples: acquisitions, consolidations, divestment, mergers, sale, take-overs

.18 Organization of international enterprises and activities

Including foreign licensing

Class initiation of international enterprises and activities in 658.1149

.2 Plant management

Management of buildings, equipment, facilities, grounds

Class here comprehensive works on energy management

Use 658.2001–658.2009 for standard subdivisions

Class procurement of plants (land, buildings, equipment) in 658.15242; specific aspects of energy management with the aspect, e.g., energy management to promote efficiency in production 658.515

See Manual at 647.96–647.99 vs. 658.2, T1—0682; 658.2 and T1—0682

.202 Maintenance

.21 Location

Including warehouse location

Class location of businesses in 658.11

See Manual at 338.09 vs. 338.6042, 332.67309, 346.07, 658.11, 658.21, T1—068

.23 Layout

.24 Lighting

.25 Heating, ventilating, air conditioning

.26 Utilities

Examples: electricity, gas, power and power distribution, water

Class lighting in 658.24; heating, ventilating, air conditioning in 658.25

.27 Equipment

Class office equipment in 651.2

For utilities, see 658.26; equipment for safety and comfort, 658.28

.28 Equipment for safety and comfort

Example: equipment for sanitation

Including equipment for noise control

.3 Personnel management

Procedures for hiring, developing, utilizing the capacities of employees

Use 658.3001–658.3009 for standard subdivisions

Class industrial relations in 331

For management of executive personnel, see 658.407

See Manual at 658.3 and T1—0683; 658.3 vs. 331

SUMMARY

658.301–.306	**[General topics]**
.31	**Elements of personnel management**
.32	**Wage and salary administration**
.38	**Personnel health, safety, welfare**

.301 Personnel planning and policy

Including information and decision making

Class here manpower planning

.302 Supervision

By immediate supervisors

Class employee development in 658.3124, development of supervisors in 658.407124

.303 Personnel management in enterprises of specific sizes

.304 Management of specific kinds of personnel

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., handicapped Black women professional personnel 658.3044 (*not* 658.3045, 658.3041, or 658.3042)

Occupying specific types of positions	658.3044
Exhibiting specific personal characteristics	658.3045
Belonging to nondominant racial, ethnic, national groups	658.3041
Of specific ages and sexes	658.3042

.304 1 Belonging to nondominant racial, ethnic, national groups

Class selection and hiring of minority employees in 658.3112

.304 2 Of specific ages and sexes

.304 4 Occupying specific types of positions

Examples: blue-collar and professional employees

Management of office personnel relocated to 651.30683

.304 5 Exhibiting specific personal characteristics

Examples: handicapped personnel, high-talent personnel, problem employees

.306 Job analysis and description

Including position classification; specifications of personal, educational, physical, mental qualifications required of personnel in each position; restrictions on what qualifications can be required of personnel

.31 Elements of personnel management

SUMMARY

658.311	**Recruitment and selection of personnel**
.312	**Conditions of work and utilization of personnel**
.313	**Separation from service**
.314	**Motivation, morale, discipline**
.315	**Employer-employee relationships**

.311 Recruitment and selection of personnel

.311 1 Recruitment

.311 2 Selection

Including checklists and inventories, computerized matching, handwriting analysis, security clearance, personal and background investigations, use of polygraph (lie detector)

Class here comprehensive works on selection and placement

Use of this number for comprehensive works on selection and recruitment discontinued; class in 658.311

See also 658.3128 for placement, 658.383 for payment of moving expenses

.311 24 Interviewing

.311 25 Testing

Including aptitude testing

[.311 29] In enterprises engaged in specific types of activity and for specific jobs

Selection of personnel in enterprises engaged in specific types of activity and for specific jobs relocated to the activity or job with use of notation 0683 from Table 1, e.g., selection of personnel in mining enterprises 622.0683

.312 Conditions of work and utilization of personnel

> 658.312 1–658.312 4 Conditions of work

Class comprehensive works in 658.312

For wage and salary administration, see 658.32; personnel health, safety, welfare, 658.38

.312 1 Days and hours of work

Including lunch periods and breaks

.312 2 Leaves of absence

Examples: paid vacations, sick leave

Class absenteeism in 658.314

.312 4 Education and training

Class here employee development

.312 404 Development and administration of training programs

Including programmed instruction, teaching methods, training devices, evaluation of training programs, selection and training of training personnel

.312 42 Induction and orientation

.312 43 In-house work training

For specific tasks

Including retraining, adjustment to automation

.312 44 Other kinds of training

Examples: attitude training, rehabilitation training, safety training, training in human relations

.312 45 Training of specific classes of employees

Examples: blue-collar employees, professional employees

Class induction and orientation of specific classes of employees in 658.31242, training of specific classes of employees for specific tasks in 658.31243, other kinds of training regardless of class of employee in 658.31244, training of supervisors in 658.4071245

.312 5 Performance rating (Evaluation)

Class promotion in 658.3126, demotion in 658.3127

.312 6 Promotion

Class promotion as an incentive in 658.3142

.312 7 Demotion

Class demotion as a penalty in 658.3144

.312 8 Utilization of personnel

Examples: allocation of staff to specific responsibilities, staffing patterns, work teams

Including placement, transfer of employees from one position to another

For training, see 658.3124; motivation, 658.314

.313 Separation from service

Example: dismissal for cause

.313 2 Retirement

.313 4 Layoff for retrenchment (Reduction in force)

.314 Motivation, morale, discipline

Including absenteeism, performance surveys, prevention of misconduct, bonding of employees, turnover and its prevention

Class here promotion of creativity, efficiency, productivity

.314 2 Incentives

Examples: promotion, recognition, status

For incentive payments, see 658.3225

.314 22 Job satisfaction

Class job enrichment in 658.31423

.314 23 Job enrichment

.314 4 Penalties

Examples: demotion, fines, reprimands

For dismissal for cause, see 658.313

See also 658.3127 for demotion when not a penalty

.314 5 Interpersonal relations

Promotion of effective working relationships between individuals and groups

Including informal, day-to-day relations between superiors and subordinates

.315 Employer-employee relationships

Class informal relations in 658.3145

.315 1 Industrial relations counseling

See also 658.385 for counseling of employees

.315 2 Employee representation in management (Participatory management)

Including worker self-management

Class industrial democracy in 331.0112

See also 338.6 for worker control of industry

.315 3 Labor unions and other employee organizations

Class role of employee organizations in grievances and appeals in 658.3155

For collective bargaining, see 658.3154

.315 4 Collective bargaining

Including arbitration, mediation, negotiation of contracts, strikes

.315 5 Grievances and appeals

.32 Wage and salary administration

Class management of labor costs in 658.1553

.321 Payroll administration

Class clerical techniques involved in maintaining payroll records in 651.37, payroll accounting procedures in 657.74

.322 Compensation plans

.322 2 Wage and salary scales

Hourly or other periodic

Including longevity, overtime, severance pay

.322 5 Incentive payments

Examples: bonuses, piecework rates, profit sharing, stock ownership plans

Class comprehensive works on incentives in 658.3142

For merit awards, see 658.3226

.322 6 Merit awards

.325 Employee benefits

.325 3 Pensions

.325 4 Insurance, workers' (workmens') compensation

Class here other benefits not provided for elsewhere

.38 Personnel health, safety, welfare

.382 Health and safety programs

Programs by management to enhance the well-being and safety of employees, to provide emergency and other forms of medical care

Example: mental health programs

Class here employee assistance programs

Class interdisciplinary works on industrial safety in 363.11, comprehensive works on safety management in 658.408, safety of plant and equipment in 658.200289, safety training in 658.31244, provision of health and accident insurance in 658.3254

.382 2 Programs for drug abuse and alcoholism

.383 Economic services

Examples: discounts, food services, housing, moving expenses, transportation

.385 Counseling services

Class mental health programs and services in 658.382

.4 Executive management

Limited to those activities named below

Class here role, function, powers, position of top and middle management; comprehensive works on the activities named below

Class a specific executive managerial activity not provided for here with the activity in management, e.g., personnel management 658.3; application of a specific activity named below in another branch of management with the branch, e.g., production planning 658.503

See Manual at 658.42 and 658.43

SUMMARY

658.400 1–.400 9	**Standard subdivisions**
.401–.409	**Specific executive management activities**
.42	**Top management**
.43	**Middle management**
.45	**Communication**
.46	**Use of consultants**
.47	**Business intelligence and security**

.400 1–.400 9 Standard subdivisions

SUMMARY

658.401	**Planning, policy making, control**
.402	**Internal organization**
.403	**Decision making and information management**
.404	**Project management**
.406	**Managing change**
.407	**Management of executive personnel**
.408	**Social responsibility of executive management**
.409	**Personal aspects of executive management**

> 658.401–658.409 Specific executive management activities

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., planning for change 658.406 (*not* 658.4012)

Personal aspects of executive management	658.409
Management of executive personnel	658.407
Internal organization	658.402
Managing change	658.406
Planning, policy making, control	658.401
Decision making and information management	658.403
Social responsibility of executive management	658.408
Project management	658.404

Class comprehensive works in 658.4, communication in 658.45, use of consultants in 658.46, business intelligence and security in 658.47

.401 Planning, policy making, control

.401 2 Planning and policy making

Formulation of objectives, goals, courses of action

Class here management by objectives, strategic management

Class decision making in 658.403, forecasting in 658.40355

.401 3 Control

Formulation of standards, evaluation of conformity of performance to standards, formulation of remedial measures

.402 Internal organization

Examples: line, line and staff, functional; by departments

Including decentralization, distribution and delegation of authority and responsibility

Class sociology of executive institutions in 306.3, allocation of personnel to specific responsibilities in 658.3128

See also 302.3 for social interaction within groups

See Manual at 658.402 vs. 658.04, 658.114

.403 Decision making and information management

Class here problem solving

Use 658.403001–658.403009 for standard subdivisions

.403 01 Philosophy and theory of decision making

[.403 011] Systems in decision making

Do not use; class in 658.4032

[.403 015 1] Mathematical techniques of decision making

Do not use; class in 658.4033

.403 02–.403 09 Standard subdivisions of decision making

.403 2 Systems theory and analysis

Including critical path method (CPM), network analysis, program evaluation review technique (PERT)

Class decision theory in 658.40301, operations research in 658.4034, models (simulation) in 658.40352, decision analysis in 658.40354, forecasting and forecasts in 658.40355

.403 3 Mathematical techniques of decision making

Example: mathematical programming

Class here econometrics as an aid in decision making

Class simulation in 658.40352

.403 4 Operations research

Including probability theory, queuing theory

Models relocated to 658.40352

Class mathematical methods in 658.4033, simulation in 658.40352, games in 658.40353

.403 5 Other techniques of decision making

.403 52 Simulation

Class here models [*formerly* 658.4034]

.403 53 Games

.403 54 Decision analysis

.403 55 Forecasting

.403 6 Group decision making

Class specific techniques of group decision making in 658.4032–658.4035

.403 8 Information management

Collection, processing, storage, retrieval of information

Class communication in 658.45

See Manual at 658.455 vs. 658.4038

.403 801 1 Information systems [*formerly* 658.40388]

[.403 88] Information systems

Relocated to 658.4038011

.404 Project management

.406 Managing change

Class here expansion, modernization, simplification, systemization

Class internal reorganization in 658.402; acquisition, merger, consolidation, take-over, divestment, sale of business organizations in 658.16; changes in a specific branch of management with the branch, e.g., changes in production 658.5

.406 2 Externally induced (Responsive) change

Examples: changes induced by social factors, technological changes

Including conversion to metric system

.406 3 Innovation by management

.407 Management of executive personnel

Add to base number 658.407 the numbers following 658.3 in 658.31–658.38, e.g., training of supervisors 658.4071245

.408 Social responsibility of executive management

Including protection and preservation of environment

Class here comprehensive works on safety management

Class interdisciplinary works on safety in 363.1; social measures for prevention of pollution in 363.73, technology of pollution prevention in 628.5; managing welfare services for employees in 658.38, for other persons in 361.7; specific aspects of safety with the aspect, e.g., product safety 658.56

See Manual at 363.1

.409 Personal aspects of executive management

Class here success as an executive

Class general success in business in 650.1

.409 2 Executive leadership

.409 3 Personal efficiency

Management by executives of their own time and work

.409 4 Personal characteristics of executives

Examples: attitudes, life-styles, values

.409 5 The management environment

Examples: social pressures, work pressures, relations between executives in and out of the organization

.42 Top management

Use of this number for comprehensive works on top and middle management discontinued; class in 658.4

Class initiation of business enterprises in 658.11, specific activities of top management with the subject, e.g., decision making by top management 658.403.

See Manual at 658.42 and 658.43

.421 Entrepreneurial management

Class management of small business in 658.022

.422 Boards of directors and trustees

.43 Middle management

See Manual at 658.42 and 658.43

.45 Communication

As a technique of management

Including credibility

Class mechanics of communication in 651.7

See Manual at 651.7 vs. 808.06665, 658.45

.452 Oral communication

See also 808.51 for techniques of public speaking

.453 Written communication

.455 Informational programs

Examples: bulletin boards, house organs

See Manual at 658.455 vs. 658.4038

.456 Conduct of meetings

Class rules of order in 060.42

[.456 2] Congresses and conferences

Relocated to 060.68

[.456 3] Meetings

Number discontinued; class in 658.456

.46 Use of consultants

Class here techniques of doing management consulting

Class use of consultants in a specific branch of management with the branch, e.g., use of consultants in marketing research 658.83

.47 Business intelligence and security

Class insurance in 658.153

.472 Security of information and ideas

Including industrial espionage, security of trade secrets

Class security of information stored in computers in 658.478

.473 Physical security

Protection from theft by employees and others, from fraud, from terrorism, from other forms of crime

Class physical security of computers in 658.478

For protection against fires and other disasters, see 658.477

.477 Protection against fires and other disasters

.478 Computer security

.5 Management of production

Planning, organizing, directing, controlling the specific functional activities of the organization

Class here production management in manufacturing enterprises, comprehensive works on logistics

Use 658.5001–658.5009 for standard subdivisions

Management of production in construction enterprises relocated to 624.0685

Class comprehensive works on energy management in 658.2, internal transportation (materials handling) in 658.781, physical distribution in 658.788, marketing in 658.8, factory operations engineering in 670.42; production management in enterprises engaged in a specific kind of activity other than manufacturing with the activity, using notation 0685 from Table 1, e.g., management of agricultural production 630.685

See Manual at 658.5 and T1—0685

SUMMARY

658.503	**General production planning**
.51	**Organization of production**
.53	**Sequencing**
.54	**Work, fatigue, monotony studies**
.56	**Product control and packaging**
.57	**Research and development (R and D)**

.503 General production planning

.503 6 Decision making and use of information

.503 8 Product planning

Determination of line of products or services, quantity to be produced

Including diversification

Class development of new products in 658.575, marketing in 658.8

.51 Organization of production

For sequencing, see 658.53; work, fatigue, monotony studies, 658.54

.514 Use of technology

Including automation, man-machine ratios, modernization

Class development of technology in 658.577

.515 Promotion of efficiency

For use of technology, see 658.514

.53 Sequencing

Including dispatching, routing, scheduling

.533 Kinds of sequences

Examples: assembly-line, continuous, mixed, single-piece sequences

.54 Work, fatigue, monotony studies

Including work load

.542 Work studies

For fatigue and monotony studies, see 658.544

.542 1 Time studies

.542 3 Motion studies

.544 Fatigue and monotony studies

.56 Product control and packaging

Including product liability, recall, safety

Class comprehensive works on safety management in 658.408, product planning in 658.5038, design of products in 658.575

.562 Quality control

Control of products to ensure conformity to standards and specifications

For inspection, see 658.568

.562 015 195 Statistical methods [*formerly also* 658.568]

.564 Packaging

Including labeling

Class here interdisciplinary works on packaging

Class storage containers in 658.785, packing for shipment in 658.7884, use of packaging in sales promotion in 658.823; packaging technology in 688.8

.566 Product analysis

Determination of materials, parts, subassemblies needed; how much of each to make or buy

.567 Waste control and utilization

.568 Inspection

Comprehensive works on statistical methods of quality control relocated to 658.562015195

.57 Research and development (R and D)

.571 Fundamental research

.575 New product development

Class here comprehensive works on product development

Class decisions to develop new products in 658.5038, market research on new products in 658.83

For product improvement research, see 658.576

.575 2 Product design

Including generation of product ideas

.576 Product improvement research

.577 Equipment and process research

.7 Management of materials

Class here management of supplies

Class management of office supplies in 651.29; comprehensive works on energy management in 658.2, on logistics in 658.5

See Manual at 658.7 and T1—0687

.72 Procurement

Acquisition of equipment, materials, parts, subassemblies, supplies, tools

Class here procurement of office equipment and supplies, comprehensive works on procurement

Comprehensive works on evaluation of commodities to be purchased relocated to 381.33

Class procurement of land, buildings, heavy equipment in 658.15242, management of costs of materials in 658.1553

.722 Vendor selection

.723 Contracts and their negotiation

.728 Receiving

Documenting, handling, inspecting incoming items

Including expediting, tracing

.78 Internal control of materials and physical distribution

.781 Internal transportation (Materials handling)

Transportation of materials and parts within plant from one work station to another

.785 Storage (Warehouse management)

Including storage containers

Class location of warehouses in 658.21

.787 Inventory control (Stock control)

Class financial control of inventories in 658.15244

For receiving, see 658.728; storage, 658.785

.788 Physical distribution

Class here shipment

Class internal movement of materials in 658.781

.788 2 Traffic management

Selection of carrier and routing

.788 4 Packing for shipment

Class interdisciplinary works on packaging in 658.564

.788 5 Loading and unloading

.788 6 Expediting and tracing

.8 Management of distribution (Marketing)

Goods and services

Class financial aspects of marketing management in 658.15, comprehensive works on logistics in 658.5

For physical distribution, see 658.788; advertising, 659.1

See Manual at 380.1 vs. 658.8; 658.8 and T1—0688; 658.8, T1—0688 vs. 659

SUMMARY

658.800 1–.800 9 Standard subdivisions
.802–.804 [General topics of marketing management; marketing to specific kinds of buyers]
.81 Sales management
.82 Sales promotion
.83 Market research and analysis
.84 Channels of distribution
.85 Personal selling (Salesmanship)
.86 Marketing through wholesale channels
.87 Marketing through retail channels
.88 Credit management

.800 1 Philosophy and theory

[.800 11] Systems

Do not use; class in 658.802

.800 2–.800 9 Standard subdivisions

.802 General topics of marketing management

Examples: control, decision making, information, organizing, planning, systems analysis

Class application of elements of marketing management to marketing to specific kinds of buyers in 658.804

.804 Marketing to specific kinds of buyers

Examples: to governments and their agencies, to hospitals

Class consumer research in 658.834

For marketing to foreign buyers, see 658.848

[.805] Marketing to foreign buyers

Relocated to 658.848

[.809] Marketing specific kinds of goods and services

Relocated to specific subject with use of notation 0688 from Table 1, e.g., marketing automobiles 629.2220688

.81 Sales management

Class management of sales personnel in 658.3044

For sales promotion, see 658.82

.810 01 Philosophy and theory

.810 011 2 Forecasting and forecasts

Class sales forecasting in 658.818

.810 02–.810 09 Standard subdivisions

.810 1 Sales planning

Including use of sales records and sales analysis

Class here formulation of goals, objectives, standards for evaluation of sales performance

For market research, see 658.83

.810 2 Organization of sales force

For organization by area, see 658.8103; by product, 658.8104; by class and type of customer, 658.8105

.810 3 Organization of sales force by area

.810 4 Organization of sales force by product

.810 5 Organization of sales force by class and type of customer

.810 6 Organization and conduct of sales meetings

.812 Customer relations

Including claims, complaints, handling of orders, inquiries, returns, servicing of products

.816 Price determination

.818 Sales forecasting

.82 Sales promotion

Auxiliary operations designed to reinforce and supplement advertising, direct sales efforts

Including distribution of instruction and other booklets to consumers; gifts, prizes, samples, trading stamps

Class use of credit to promote sales in 658.88

For servicing of products, see 658.812

.823 Use of packaging

Class here packaging as a sales promotion device

Class interdisciplinary works on packaging in 658.564

.827 Use of brands and trademarks

Including producer and distributor brands

.83 Market research and analysis

Class here interviewing, use of consultants and research agencies, techniques of consulting in market research and analysis

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number coming first in the schedule, e.g., research in Germany on consumer preferences 658.8343 (*not* 658.83943)

Do not use for the results of market research and analysis; class in 380–382

For sales forecasting, see 658.818

.830 2 Miscellany

.830 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Use of this number for interviewing discontinued; class in 658.83

[.830 9] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 658.839

.834 Consumer research

[.834 019] Consumer psychology

Do not use; class in 658.8342

[.834 08] Consumer research with respect to kinds of persons

Do not use; class in 658.8348

.834 2 Consumer behavior (Consumer psychology)

Including motivation research

For consumer attitudes, preferences, reactions, see 658.8343

.834 3 Consumer attitudes, preferences, reactions

Including brand preferences

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all of the topics named in the heading

.834 8 Specific types of consumers

Examples: Blacks, children, low-income groups, occupational groups, women

.835 Market study

Determination of extent of demand; location, nature, identification of market; extent and nature of competition; types of sales effort needed

[.838] Market research on specific products

Relocated to specific subject with use of notation 0688 from Table 1, e.g., market research on clothing 687.0688

.839 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 658.839 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., market research in Germany 658.83943

.84 Channels of distribution

Including auctions, direct-mail marketing, direct marketing, direct selling, fairs, markets, multilevel marketing, pyramid marketing, telemarketing, telephone selling, television selling

Class personal selling through specific channels in 658.85, e.g. personal selling by telephone; marketing through wholesale channels in 658.86, through retail channels in 658.87; mail-order, telephone-order houses, television selling organizations in 658.872; direct-mail advertising in 659.133

.848 Export marketing (International trade)

Including marketing to foreign buyers [*formerly also* 658.805]

.85 Personal selling (Salesmanship)

Techniques for the individual, regardless of channel

Including retail salesmanship

Class comprehensive works on management of telephone selling in 658.84

.86 Marketing through wholesale channels

Including jobbers, manufacturers' outlets

Class personal selling through wholesale channels in 658.85

See also 658.8705 for manufacturers' outlets as retail channels

.87 Marketing through retail channels

Including apartment, garage, yard sales; shopping centers

Use 658.87001–658.87009 for standard subdivisions

Class personal selling through retail channels in 658.85

> 658.870 1–658.870 8 Retail channels by type of ownership and control

Class comprehensive works in 658.87

.870 1 Independent retail units

Class independent consumer cooperatives in 658.8707

.870 2 Corporate retail chains

Class here comprehensive works on retail chain stores

Class chain store consumer cooperatives in 658.8707

For voluntary retail chains, see 658.8703

.870 3 Voluntary retail chains

.870 4 Sideline stores and markets

.870 5 Manufacturers' outlets

See also 658.86 for manufacturers' outlets as wholesale channels

.870 6 Branch stores

.870 7 Consumer cooperatives [*formerly also* 334.5068]

.870 8 Franchise businesses

> 658.871–658.879 Retail channels by merchandising pattern

Class comprehensive works in 658.87

.871 Department stores

.872 Mail-order houses and telephone-order houses

Including television selling organizations

Standard subdivisions are added for mail-order and telephone-order houses, for mail-order houses alone

See also 659.143 for television advertising

.873 Variety stores

.874 General stores

.875 Specialty shops

.876 Single-line outlets

.878 Supermarkets

.879 Discount stores

.88 Credit management

Including account security, collections, credit investigations

.882 Mercantile credit

.883 Consumer (Retail) credit

[.89] Personal selling and retail marketing of specific goods and services

Relocated to specific subject with use of notation 0688 from Table 1, e.g., personal selling of insurance 368.00688

(.9) Management of enterprises engaged in specific fields of activity

(Optional number; prefer specific subject with use of notation 068 from Table 1)

(.91) Enterprises other than those engaged in extraction, manufacturing, construction

(Optional number; prefer specific subject with use of notation 068 from Table 1)

Add to base number 658.91 notation 001–999, e.g., management of banks 658.913321; however, class management of political campaigns in 324.7

(.92–.99) Enterprises engaged in extraction, manufacturing, construction

(Optional number; prefer specific subject with use of notation 068 from Table 1)

Add to base number 658.9 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., management of mines 658.922

659 Advertising and public relations

Class here publicity

See Manual at 658.8, T1—0688 vs. 659

SUMMARY

659.1 Advertising
.2 Public relations

.1 Advertising

Nonpersonal presentation and promotion of ideas, goods, services, paid for by an identified sponsor

SUMMARY

659.104 Special topics
.11 General topics
.13 Kinds
.14 Advertising by broadcast media
.15 Display advertising
.17 Advertising by contests and lotteries
.19 Advertising specific kinds of organizations, products, services

.104 Special topics

.104 2 Social aspects of advertising

.11 General topics

Class application of general topics to specific kinds of advertising in 659.13–659.17, to advertising specific kinds of organizations, products, services in 659.19

.111 Planning and control

Including decision making, goals, information

.112 Organization

Managerial organization only

See also 338.7616591 for economics and history of advertising organizations

.112 2 Advertising departments

.112 5 Advertising agencies

.113 Advertising campaigns

.13 Kinds

Including specialty and entertainment advertising

.131 General kinds

Class general kinds of advertising in specific media in 659.132–659.136

.131 2 National (General) advertising

.131 4 Retail advertising

.131 5 Advertising directed to vocational uses

Examples: farm, industrial, professional, trade

See also 659.19 for advertising specific kinds of organizations, products, services

---

> 659.132–659.136 Advertising in specific media

Class comprehensive works in 659.13

For broadcast media, see 659.14; display advertising, 659.15; contests and lotteries, 659.17

.132 Advertising in printed media

Including directory advertising

For direct advertising, see 659.133

[.132 2–.132 4] Copywriting, art, layout, typography

Numbers discontinued; class in 659.132

.133 Direct advertising

Printed advertising delivered or handed directly to consumer

Examples: broadsides, circulars, letters, mail-order catalogs

Including direct-mail advertising

Class direct-mail marketing in 658.84

.134 Advertising by location of media

For point-of-sale advertising, see 659.157

.134 2 Outdoor advertising

Examples: billboards, on-premise signs, painted displays, roadside signs

Class outdoor transportation advertising in 659.1344

For advertising by electric signs, see 659.136

.134 4 Transportation advertising

Examples: airplane banners, car cards, traveling displays on exteriors of vehicles, station posters

.136 Advertising by electric signs

Use of this number for nonelectric spectacular signs discontinued; class in 659.13

.14 Advertising by broadcast media

.142 Radio

.143 Television

Class television selling as a channel of distribution in 658.84, television selling organizations in 658.872

.15 Display advertising

Including demonstrations

.152 Exhibitions and shows

Examples: fashion modeling, films

.157 Point-of-sale advertising

Examples: counter, showcase, wall, window displays

.17 Advertising by contests and lotteries

Class audience participation in contests in 790.134, in lotteries in 795

.19 Advertising specific kinds of organizations, products, services

Add to base number 659.19 notation 001–999, e.g., library advertising 659.1902

Class specific kinds of advertising regardless of kind of organization, product, service in 659.13–659.17

.2 Public relations

Planned and sustained effort to establish and maintain mutual understanding between an organization and its public

Use of this number for publicity discontinued; class in 659

.28 In specific kinds of organizations

Add to base number 659.28 the numbers following 658.04 in 658.041–658.049, e.g., corporations 659.285

Class public relations in organizations producing specific kinds of products and services regardless of kind of organization in 659.29

.29 In organizations producing specific kinds of products and services

Add to base number 659.29 notation 001–999, e.g., public welfare agencies 659.293616; however, class public relations in libraries in 021.7, in local Christian parish in 254.4

660 Chemical engineering and related technologies

Class military applications in 623

For pharmaceutical chemistry, see 615.19; pulp and paper technology, 676; elastomers and elastomer products, 678

SUMMARY

660.01–.09 Standard subdivisions
.2–.7 [General topics in chemical engineering, biotechnology, industrial stoichiometry]
661 Technology of industrial chemicals
662 Technology of explosives, fuels, related products
663 Beverage technology
664 Food technology
665 Technology of industrial oils, fats, waxes, gases
666 Ceramic and allied technologies
667 Cleaning, color, related technologies
668 Technology of other organic products
669 Metallurgy

.01 Philosophy and theory

.011 5 Theory of communication and control

Class process control in 660.2815

.02 Miscellany

.028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures

Class materials in 660.282, apparatus and equipment in 660.283

[.028 9] Safety measures

Do not use; class in 660.2804

.03 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

.04 Chemical technologies of specific states of matter

Add to base number 660.04 the numbers following 530.4 in 530.41–530.44, e.g., plasma technology 660.044

Class industrial gases in 665.7

.05–.09 Standard subdivisions

.2 General topics in chemical engineering

Use of this number for comprehensive works on chemical engineering discontinued; class in 660

For biochemical engineering, see 660.63; industrial stoichiometry, 660.7

.28 Specific types of chemical plant and specific activities in chemical plants

Use of this number for comprehensive works on the chemical plant and its work discontinued; class in 660

.280 4 Safety measures

See Manual at 660.2804 vs. 604.7

.280 7 Specific types of chemical plant

.280 71 Bench-scale plants

.280 72 Pilot plants

.280 73 Full-scale plants

> 660.281–660.283 Process and materials

Class comprehensive works in 660.28; specific applications in unit operations in 660.2842, in unit processes in 660.2844

.281 Process design, assembly, control

.281 2 Process design

.281 5 Process control Computerized process control

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 660.2815 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 660.2815416, but use of digital computers 660.2815 (*not* 660.28154)

Class interdisciplinary works on computerized process control in 629.895

.282 Materials

.283 Process equipment

Examples: instruments, reactors

Including corrosion of equipment and its control

.284 Unit operations and unit processes

.284 2 Unit operations Transport phenomena engineering

Unit operations: operations basically physical

Class here separation processes

.284 22 Crushing, grinding, screening

.284 23 Mass transfer

Including absorption, adsorption, gas chromatography

For precipitation, filtration, solvent extraction, see 660.28424; fractional distillation, 660.28425

.284 24 Precipitation, filtration, solvent extraction

.284 245 Filtration

.284 248 Solvent extraction

.284 25 Fractional distillation

.284 26 Evaporative and drying processes

For dehumidification of air and gas, see 660.28429

.284 27 Heat transfer

Class a specific heat transfer process with the process, e.g., melting 660.284296

.284 29 Other unit operations

Example: dehumidification of air and gas

.284 292 Momentum transfer and fluidization

Including mixing

.284 293 Humidification

.284 296 Melting

.284 298 Crystallization

.284 4 Unit processes

Operations basically chemical

Add to base number 660.2844 the numbers following 547.2 in 547.21–547.29, e.g., fermentation 660.28449

.29 Applied physical chemistry

Add to base number 660.29 the numbers following 541.3 in 541.33–541.39, e.g., catalytic reactions 660.2995; however, class absorption and adsorption in 660.28423; synthesis (e.g., addition, condensation, hydrolysis, oxidation, polymerization, reduction) and name reactions in 660.2844

.6 Biotechnology

Application of living organisms or their biological systems or processes to the manufacture of useful products

Former heading: Industrial biology

See also 620.82 for human-factors engineering

.62 Industrial microbiology

Use of microorganisms in genetic engineering relocated to 660.65

Class a specific aspect of industrial microbiology with the aspect, e.g., fermentation 660.28449, use of microorganisms in biochemical engineering 660.63

.63 Biochemical engineering

Former heading: Industrial biochemistry

.634 Enzyme technology

.65 Genetic engineering

Including use of microorganisms in genetic engineering [*formerly* 660.62]

.7 Industrial stoichiometry

661 Technology of industrial chemicals

Production of chemicals used as raw materials or reagents in manufacture of other products

Use 661.001–661.009 for standard subdivisions

Class industrial gases in 665.7

SUMMARY

661.03–.08	**Compounds**
.1	**Nonmetallic elements**
.2	**Acids**
.3	**Bases**
.4	**Salts**
.5	**Ammonium salts**
.6	**Sulfur and nitrogen salts**
.8	**Organic chemicals**

> 661.03–661.08 Compounds

Class comprehensive works in 661; acids, bases, salts in 661.2–661.6; organic compounds in 661.8

.03 Metallic compounds

Class metallic compounds other than those of alkali and alkaline-earth metals in 661.04–661.07

.038–.039 Alkali and alkaline-earth compounds

Add to base number 661.03 the numbers following 546.3 in 546.38–546.39, e.g., sodium compounds 661.0382

.04–.07 Other compounds

Add to base number 661.0 the numbers following 546 in 546.4–546.7, e.g., sulfur compounds 661.0723

For hydrogen compounds, see 661.08

.08 Hydrogen compounds

Examples: heavy water (deuterium oxide), hydrides

.1 Nonmetallic elements

Class gaseous elements in 665.8, carbon in 662.9

> **661.2–661.6 Acids, bases, salts**

Class comprehensive works in 661; organic acids, bases, salts in 661.8

.2 Acids

.22 Sulfuric acid

.23 Hydrochloric acid

.24 Nitric acid

.25 Phosphoric acid

.3 Bases

Class here alkalis

.32 Sodas

.322 Caustic soda (Sodium hydroxide)

.323 Sodium bicarbonate

.324 Sodium carbonate

.33 Potash and other potassium alkalis

.332 Caustic potash (Potassium hydroxide)

.333 Potassium bicarbonate

.334 Potassium carbonate

.34 Ammonia and ammonium hydroxide

.35 Other alkalis

Examples: hydroxides and carbonates of cesium, francium, lithium, rubidium, alkaline-earth metals

.4 Salts

For ammonium salts, see 661.5; sulfur and nitrogen salts, 661.6

.42 Halogen salts

Contains chlorides, chlorites, chlorates, corresponding salts of other halogens

.43 Phosphorus and silicon salts

Contains phosphides, phosphites, phosphates, corresponding salts of silicon

.5 Ammonium salts

.6 Sulfur and nitrogen salts

For ammonium salts, see 661.5

.63 Sulfur salts

Contains sulfides, sulfites, sulfates

For plaster of paris, see 666.92

.65 Nitrogen salts

Contains nitrides, nitrites, nitrates

.8 Organic chemicals

Use 661.8001–661.8009 for standard subdivisions

> 661.802–661.804 Derived chemicals

Class comprehensive works in 661.8

.802 Cellulose derivatives

.803 Coal tar chemicals

.804 Petrochemicals

Industrial chemicals produced from petroleum or natural gas, excluding fuels, lubricants, refinery residues (bottoms)

Class petrochemicals in the sense of all refinery products and by-products of petroleum in 665.538

.805 Synthetic chemicals

> 661.806–661.808 Special-purpose chemicals

Class comprehensive works in 661.8

.806 Essential oils

Class essential oils used for manufacture of perfumes in 668.54

.807 Solvents, diluents, extenders

.808 Photographic chemicals and photosensitive surfaces

Including sensitometry

Class here comprehensive works on organic and inorganic photographic chemicals

Class inorganic photographic chemicals in 661.1–661.6

.81 Hydrocarbons

.814 Aliphatic hydrocarbons

.815 Alicyclic hydrocarbons

Heterocyclic hydrocarbons discontinued because without meaning

.816 Aromatic hydrocarbons

> 661.82–661.89 Compounds based on specific elements other than carbon

Add to each subdivision identified by * the numbers following 661.81 in 661.814–661.816, e.g., aliphatic esters 661.834

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., phosphoric acids 661.87 (*not* 661.86)

Sulfur compounds	661.896
Phosphorus compounds	661.87
Silicon compounds	661.88
Organometallic compounds	661.895
Nitrogen compounds	661.894
Oxy and hydroxy compounds	661.82–.86
Halogenated compounds	661.891

Class comprehensive works in 661.8

> 661.82–661.86 Oxy and hydroxy compounds

Class comprehensive works in 661.8

.82 *Alcohols and phenols

For glycerin, see 668.2

.83 *Esters

.84 *Ethers

.85 *Aldehydes and ketones

.86 *Acids

.87 *Phosphorus compounds

.88 *Silicon compounds

.89 Other compounds

.891 *Halogenated compounds

.894 *Nitrogen compounds

.895 *Organometallic compounds

.896 *Sulfur compounds

662 Technology of explosives, fuels, related products

.1 Fireworks (Pyrotechnics)

*Add as instructed under 661.82–661.89

.2 Explosives

Class nuclear explosives in 621.48

For fireworks, see 662.1

.26 Propellants

Examples: black powder (gunpowder), cordite, flashless and coated powders, nitrocellulose (guncotton), smokeless powder

Class here low (deflagrating) explosives

For rocket propellants, see 662.666

.27 High explosives

Examples: ammonium picrate and chlorate, dynamite, HMTD (hexamethylenetriperoxidediamine), nitroglycerin, nitroguanidine, PETN (pentaerythrite tetranitrate), RDX (cyclonite), tetryl, TNT (trinitrotoluene)

Including primary explosives, e.g., diazonitrophenol, lead azide and picrate, mercury fulminate

.4 Detonators

Examples: boosters, firing mechanisms, fuses, percussion caps, primers

Class explosives used in detonators in 662.27

.5 Matches

.6 Fuels

Class industrial oils, fats, waxes, gases as fuels in 665; other fuels not provided for here in 662.8

See also 621.4023 for combustion of fuels

See Manual at 622.7, 622.22 vs. 669, 662.6

.62 Coal

For coke, see 662.72

[.620 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 662.622

.622 Properties, tests, analysis

.622 09 Historical and persons treatment

Class properties, tests, analysis of coal from specific places in 662.6229

.622 1–.622 5 Properties, tests, analysis of specific types of coal

Add to base number 662.622 the numbers following 553.2 in 553.21–553.25, e.g., analysis of bituminous coal 662.6224

.622 9 Properties, tests, analysis of coal from specific places

Add to base number 662.6229 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., properties of Virginia coal 662.6229755

Class specific types of coal regardless of place in 662.6221–662.6225

.623 Treatment

Examples: desulfuration, sizing, washing; conversion to slurry, slurry dewatering

.624 Storage, transportation, distribution

.625 Uses

Examples: as a fuel, as a raw material

Class a specific use with the use, e.g., metallurgical use 669.81

.65 Wood and wood derivatives

Examples: sawdust, wood briquettes, wood scraps

Use of this number for nonwood briquettes discontinued; class in 662.6

Bagasse relocated to 662.88

For charcoal, see 662.74

.66 Synthetic fuels

Class synthetic fuel gases in 665.77

.662 Synthetic petroleum

.662 2 Production through hydrogenation and liquefaction of coal

Including Bergius process

Class production from coal gas in 662.6623

.662 3 Production through hydrogenation of carbonaceous gases

Example: Fischer-Tropsch processes

.666 Rocket fuels (Rocket propellants)

Liquid and solid

.669 Other liquid fuels

Examples: benzene from waste products, gasohol, other fuel alcohols

.7 Coke and charcoal

.72 Coke

.74 Charcoal

.8 Other fuels

.82 Colloidal and mud fuels

.86 High-energy boron fuels

.87 Wastes as fuels

Class here comprehensive works on the chemical technology of energy from waste materials

Class interdisciplinary works on energy from waste materials in 333.7938; waste biomass as fuel in 662.88; a specific form of energy from waste materials with the form, e.g., benzene made from waste products 662.669

.88 Biomass as fuel

Example: bagasse [*formerly* 662.65]

Class here plant biomass as fuel, comprehensive works on the chemical technology of biomass as fuel

Class interdisciplinary works on biomass as fuel in 333.9539

For wood and wood derivatives, see 662.65

See also 665.776 for industrial gases manufactured from biological wastes

.9 Nonfuel carbons

.92 Graphite and graphite products

.93 Adsorbent carbons

Examples: activated carbons, adsorbent charcoals, animal black, bone char, carbon black, decolorizing carbons, lampblack

663 Beverage technology

Commercial preparation, preservation, packaging

Class interdisciplinary works on beverages in 641.2, household preparation of beverages in 641.87

SUMMARY

663.1	**Alcoholic beverages**
.2	**Wine and wine making**
.3	**Brewed and malted beverages**
.4	**Specific kinds of brewed and malted beverages**
.5	**Distilled liquors**
.6	**Nonalcoholic beverages**
.9	**Nonalcoholic brewed beverages**

.1 Alcoholic beverages

For wine and wine making, see 663.2; brewed and malted beverages, 663.3; distilled liquors, 663.5

.102 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Class materials in 663.11

.11 Materials

.12 Preliminary preparations

.13 Fermentation

.14 Packing

.15 Refrigeration and pasteurization

.16 Distillation

.17 Aging

.19 Bottling

.2 Wine and wine making

Including fermented cider

Class here grape wine

Class mead (honey wine) in 663.4, sake (rice wine) in 663.49

.200 1 Philosophy and theory

.200 2 Miscellany

.200 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Class materials in 663.201

.200 3–.200 9 Standard subdivisions

.201–.209 Materials, processes, operations

Class here materials, processes, operations for grape wine [*formerly* 663.2204]

Add to base number 663.20 the numbers following 663.1 in 663.11–663.19, e.g., fermentation 663.203

.22 Specific kinds of grape wine

Use of this number for comprehensive works on grape wine discontinued; class in 663.2

[.220 4] Materials, processes, operations for grape wine

Relocated to 663.201–663.209

.222 White wine

Class sparkling white wine in 663.224

.223 Red wine

Including rosé

Class sparkling red wine in 663.224

.224 Sparkling wine

White and red

.3 Brewed and malted beverages

For specific kinds of brewed and malted beverages, see 663.4

.302 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Class materials in 663.31

.31–.39 Materials, processes, operations

Add to base number 663.3 the numbers following 663.1 in 663.11–663.19, e.g., fermentation 663.33

.4 Specific kinds of brewed and malted beverages

Class malt whiskey in 663.52

.42 Beer and ale

.49 Sake and pulque

.5 Distilled liquors

Examples: mescal, tequila, potato whiskey, vodka

.500 1 Philosophy and theory

.500 2 Miscellany

.500 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Class materials in 663.501

.500 3–.500 9 Standard subdivisions

.501–.509 Materials, processes, operations

Add to base number 663.50 the numbers following 663.1 in 663.11–663.19, e.g., distillation 663.506

.52 Grain whiskey

Example: bourbon

.53 Brandy

.55 Compound liquors

Distilled spirits flavored with various seeds, roots, leaves, flowers, fruits

Examples: cordials (liqueurs), gin

.59 Rum

Use of this number for other distilled liquors discontinued; class in 663.5

.6 Nonalcoholic beverages

For nonalcoholic brewed beverages, see 663.9; milk, 637.1

.61 Bottled drinking water

Including carbonated water

Class here potable mineral water

.62 Mineralized and carbonated beverages

Class mineralized and carbonated water in 663.61

.63 Fruit and vegetable juices

Class fermented cider in 663.2, carbonated juices in 663.62

.64 Milk substitutes

Examples: coconut milk, nondairy coffee whiteners, soybean milk

.9 Nonalcoholic brewed beverages

Aside from additions, changes, deletions, exceptions shown under specific entries, add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:

028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment
Class materials in 1
1 Materials
2 Preliminary preparations
3 Fermentation and oxidation
4 Firing, roasting, curing
5 Blending
7 Specific varieties
8 Concentrates
9 Packaging

.92 *Cocoa and *chocolate

.93 *Coffee

.94 *Tea

.96 Herb teas

Examples: catnip, maté, sassafras, other aromatic and medicinal teas

.97 Coffee substitutes

Examples: acorns, cereal preparations, chicory

664 Food technology

Commercial preparation, preservation, packaging

Class here comprehensive works on commercial food and beverage technology

Class interdisciplinary works on food in 641.3; household preservation, storage, cooking in 641.4–641.8

For processing dairy and related products, see 637; beverage technology, 663

SUMMARY

664.001–.009 Standard subdivisions
.01–.09 [Materials, processes, operations, by-products]
.1 Sugars, syrups, their derived products
.2 Starches and jellying agents
.3 Fats and oils
.4 Food salts
.5 Flavoring aids
.6 Special-purpose food and aids
.7 Grains, other seeds, their derived products
.8 Fruits and vegetables
.9 Meats and allied foods

*Add as instructed under 663.9

.001 Philosophy and theory

.001 15 Theory of communication and control

Class process control in 664.02

.002 Miscellany

.002 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Class materials in 664.01

[.002 87] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 664.07

.003–.009 Standard subdivisions

.01 Materials

For additives, see 664.06

.02 Processes

Class here process design, control, equipment

.022 Extraction

.023 Refining

.024 Manufacturing processes

Not provided for elsewhere

Including fermentation

Class here food biotechnology, food processing with microorganisms

.028 Preservation techniques

Class here interdisciplinary works on food preservation

Class home preservation of foods in 641.4

.028 1 Preliminary treatment

Example: peeling

.028 2 Canning

.028 4 Drying and dehydrating

.028 42 By slow, thermal processes

.028 43 Through pulverizing and flaking

.028 45 By freeze-drying

.028 5 Low-temperature techniques

For freeze-drying, see 664.02845

.028 52 Cold storage

.028 53 Deep freezing

.028 6 Chemical preservation

Examples: brining, pickling, smoking

For chemical preservation by use of additives, see 664.0287

.028 7 Chemical preservation by use of additives

.028 8 Irradiation

.06 Additives

Production, properties, use

Example: food colors

Class flavoring aids in 664.5

For chemical preservation by use of additives, see 664.0287

.07 Tests, analyses, quality controls

For color, contaminants, flavor, odor, texture

Example: grading

Class tests, analyses, quality controls of additives in 664.06

.08 By-products

.09 Packaging and waste control

.092 Packaging

.096 Waste control

Class here pollution control

.1 Sugars, syrups, their derived products

See also 664.5 for sugar substitutes

[.102 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Do not use; class in 664.11

> 664.11–664.13 Sugars and syrups

Class comprehensive works in 664.1

.11 Materials, techniques, processes, operations, equipment, by-products of sugars and syrups

Class materials, techniques, processes, operations, equipment, by-products of specific sugars and syrups in 664.12–664.13

.111 Materials

.112 Preliminary preparations

.113 Extraction and purification

.114 Concentration

Production of syrup

.115 Crystallization

Production of sugar

.116 Additives

.117 Tests, analyses, quality controls

For color, contaminants, flavor, texture

Class tests, analyses, quality controls of additives in 664.116

.118 By-products

Example: molasses

Class utilization in 664.19

.119 Packaging and waste control

Class here pollution control

> 664.12–664.13 Specific sugars and syrups

Class comprehensive works in 664.1

.12 Cane and beet sugar and syrup

.122 Cane sugar and syrup

.122 028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Class materials in 664.1221

[.122 028 7] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 664.1227

.122 1–.122 9 Materials, processes, operations, by-products

Add to base number 664.122 the numbers following 664.11 in 664.111–664.119, e.g., cane molasses 664.1228; however, class auxiliary techniques and procedures, apparatus, equipment in 664.122028

.123 Beet sugar and syrup

.13 Other sugars and syrups

For honey, see 638.16

.132 Maple sugar and syrup

.133 Corn and sorghum sugars and syrups

.139 Jerusalem artichoke sugar and syrup

.15 Sugar products

.152 Jam, jelly, marmalade

.153 Candy

Variant name: sweets

See also 664.6 for chewing gum

.19 By-product utilization

Class a specific use with the use, e.g., molasses for rum 663.59

.2 Starches and jellying agents

> 664.22–664.23 Starches

Class comprehensive works in 664.2

.22 Cornstarch and potato starch

.23 Cassava and arrowroot starches

.25 Jellying agents

Class here pectin

For gelatin, see 664.26

.26 Gelatin

.3 Fats and oils

Class interdisciplinary works on animal fats and oils in 665.2, on vegetable fats and oils in 665.3

.32 Margarine

.34 Lard

.36 Salad and cooking oils

.362 Olive oil

.363 Cottonseed oil

.369 Other fats and oils

Examples: corn, peanut, safflower, sesame, soybean oils

Class peanut butter in 664.8056596

.37 Salad dressings

Examples: French dressing, mayonnaise

.4 Food salts

Examples: monosodium glutamate, table salt, tenderizers, sodium-free and other dietetic salts

Class comprehensive works on food flavoring aids in 664.5

.5 Flavoring aids

Examples: chocolate, sugar substitutes

Class here condiments

Class a specific flavoring aid not provided for here with the aid, e.g., sugar 664.1; flavoring aids in a specific kind of food with the kind of food, e.g., chocolate candies 664.153

For food salts, see 664.4

.52–.54 Essences and spices

Add to base number 664.5 the numbers following 633.8 in 633.82–633.84, e.g., vanilla extract 664.52

.55 Vinegar

.58 Composites

Examples: catsup, chutney, sauces

Class salad dressings in 664.37

.6 Special-purpose food and aids

Examples: chewing gum, snack food

Class food salts in 664.4, other special-purpose flavoring aids in 664.5

> 664.62–664.66 Special-purpose food

Class comprehensive works in 664.6; a specific food with the food, e.g., vegetables 664.8

.62 Baby food

.63 Low-calorie food

.64 Meatless high-protein food

Including synthetic meat

.65 Composites

Examples: complete meals, packaged ingredients for complete recipes

Class packaged ingredients for recipes based on a specific kind of food with the kind, e.g., mixes and prepared doughs for bakery goods 664.753

.66 Food for animals

Class here pet food

Class animal feed made from grains and other seeds in 664.76

.68 Leavening agents and baking aids

Examples: baking powder, baking soda, cream of tartar, yeast

.7 Grains, other seeds, their derived products

Class sugars and syrups from grain and other seeds in 664.1, starches and jellying agents from grain and other seeds in 664.2, fats and oils from grains and other seeds in 664.3

.72 Milling and milling products

For animal feeds, see 664.76

.720 01 Philosophy and theory

.720 02 Miscellany

[.720 028 7] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 664.7204

.720 03–.720 09 Standard subdivisions

.720 1 Preliminary treatment

.720 3 Grinding and deflaking

.720 4 Sifting, grading, quality controls

.720 7 Products

Examples: flour, meal, refined grain

See also 664.7208 for by-products

.720 8 By-products

Examples: bran, siftings

.720 9 Packaging and waste control

Class here pollution control

.722 Wheat

.722 7 Products

See also 664.7228 for by-products

.722 72 Flour

.722 73 Meal

.722 8 By-products

Examples: bran, siftings

.725 Other cereal grains and their flours, meals, by-products

Examples: buckwheat, corn, millet, oats, rice, rye

.726 Other seeds and their flours and meals

Examples: cottonseeds, sunflowers; flours and meals of nuts, peanuts, soybeans

Class comprehensive works on commercial processing of nuts in 664.8045, of legumes in 664.80565

.75 Secondary products

.752 Bakery goods

Examples: biscuits (United States), crackers

Class mixes and prepared doughs for bakery goods in 664.753

.752 3 Breads

.752 5 Pastries

Examples: cakes, cookies (biscuits [United Kingdom]), pies

.753 Mixes and prepared doughs

Examples: biscuit, cake, pancake mixes

.755 Pastas

Examples: macaroni, noodles, spaghetti, vermicelli

.756 Ready-to-eat cereals

.76 Animal feeds

Class comprehensive works on foods for animals in 664.66

.762 Cereal grains

Individual grains and mixtures

Class formula feeds in 664.768

.763 Other seeds

Individual seeds and mixtures

Class formula feeds in 664.768

.764 Cereal grain and seed mixtures

.768 Formula feeds

Cakes, flakes, granules, pellets, powders basically of cereal grains and other seeds and fortified with vitamins and minerals

.8 Fruits and vegetables

Class a specific product derived from fruits and vegetables with the product, e.g., jams 664.152, fats and oils 664.3

.800 1 Philosophy and theory

.800 2 Miscellany

[.800 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 664.807

.800 3–.800 9 Standard subdivisions

.804 Specific fruits and groups of fruits

Add to base number 664.804 the numbers following 634 in 634.1–634.8, e.g., citrus fruit 664.804304, nuts 664.8045

.805 Specific vegetables and groups of vegetables

Add to base number 664.805 the numbers following 635 in 635.1–635.8, e.g., salad greens 664.8055

.806–.809 Additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging, waste control

Add to base number 664.80 the numbers following 664.0 in 664.06–664.09, e.g., packaging vegetables 664.8092

Class additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging, waste control applied to specific fruits and groups of fruits in 664.804, to specific vegetables and groups of vegetables in 664.805

See also 664.81–664.88 for preservation techniques

.81–.88 Preservation techniques

Add to base number 664.8 the numbers following 664.028 in 664.0281–664.0288, e.g., deep freezing fruits 664.853

Class preservation techniques applied to specific fruits and groups of fruits in 664.804, to specific vegetables and groups of vegetables in 664.805

.9 Meats and allied foods

.900 1 Philosophy and theory

.900 2 Miscellany

[.900 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 664.907

.900 3–.900 9 Standard subdivisions

.902 Preservation techniques, slaughtering, meat cutting

.902 8 Preservation techniques

Add to base number 664.9028 the numbers following 664.028 in 664.0281–664.0288, e.g., canning 664.90282

.902 9 Slaughtering and meat cutting

Standard subdivisions are used for either or both of the topics named in the heading

.906–.909 Additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging, waste control

Add to base number 664.90 the numbers following 664.0 in 664.06–664.09, e.g., packaging meats and allied foods 664.9092

Class additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging, waste control applied to specific meats or allied foods with the meat or food, e.g., packaging red meats 664.92992

See also 664.9028 for preservation techniques

.92 Red meat

[.920 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 664.9297

.921–.928 Preservation techniques

Add to base number 664.92 the numbers following 664.028 in 664.0281–664.0288, e.g., canning red meat 664.922

Subdivisions are added for specific red meats, e.g., canning beef 664.922

.929 Additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging, waste control

Add to base number 664.929 the numbers following 664.0 in 664.06–664.09, e.g., packaging red meat 664.92992

Subdivisions are added for specific red meats, e.g., packaging beef 664.92992

See also 664.921–664.928 for preservation techniques

.93 Poultry

[.930 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 664.9397

.931–.938 Preservation techniques

Add to base number 664.93 the numbers following 664.028 in 664.0281–664.0288, e.g., deep freezing 664.9353

Subdivisions are added for specific kinds of poultry, e.g., deep freezing turkeys 664.9353

.939 Additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging, waste control

Add to base number 664.939 the numbers following 664.0 in 664.06–664.09, e.g., poultry by-products 664.9398

Subdivisions are added for specific kinds of poultry, e.g., turkey by-products 664.9398

See also 664.931–664.938 for preservation techniques

.94 Fish and shellfish

Class here seafood

[.940 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 664.9497

.941–.948 Preservation techniques

Add to base number 664.94 the numbers following 664.028 in 664.0281–664.0288, e.g., canning seafood 664.942

Subdivisions are not added for specific kinds of fish and shellfish, e.g., canning oysters 664.94 (*not* 664.942)

.949 Additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging, waste control

Add to base number 664.949 the numbers following 664.0 in 664.06–664.09, e.g., quality controls for seafood 664.9497

Subdivisions are not added for specific kinds of fish and shellfish, e.g., quality controls for catfish 664.94 (*not* 664.9497)

See also 664.941–664.948 for preservation techniques

.95 Other meats and allied foods

Examples: frogs, turtles, snails, insects

665 Technology of industrial oils, fats, waxes, gases

Class here nonvolatile, lubricating, saponifying oils, fats, waxes

SUMMARY

665.028	**Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials**
.1	**Waxes**
.2	**Animal fats and oils**
.3	**Vegetable fats and oils**
.4	**Mineral oils and waxes**
.5	**Petroleum**
.7	**Natural gas and manufactured industrial gases**
.8	**Other industrial gases**

.028 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

.028 2 Extraction

Examples: pressurizing, rendering, steam distilling

.028 3 Refining

Examples: bleaching, blending, coloring, fractionating, purifying

.028 7 Maintenance and repair

Do not use for testing and measurement; class in 665.0288

.028 8 Tests, analyses, quality controls

Do not use for maintenance and repair; class in 665.0287

.1 Waxes

Class polishing waxes in 667.72

For mineral waxes, see 665.4

.12 Vegetable waxes

Examples: bayberry, candleberry, carnauba, laurel, myrtle waxes

.13 Animal waxes

Examples: lanolin (wool wax), spermaceti

For beeswax, see 638.17

.19 Blended waxes

.2 Animal fats and oils

Examples: fish, neat's-foot, whale oils; tallow

Class here interdisciplinary works on animal fats and oils

Class animal fats and oils used in food or food preparation in 664.3

See also 665.13 for spermaceti

.3 Vegetable fats and oils

Class here comprehensive works on vegetable fats and oils

Class vegetable fats and oils used in food and food preparation in 664.3

.33 Wood oil

.332 Crude turpentine

Class turpentine oils in 661.806

.333 Tung oil (Chinese wood oil)

.35 Seed oils

For tung oil, see 665.333

.352 Linseed oil (Flaxseed oil)

.353 Castor oil

.354 Cocoa butter (Cacao butter)

.355 Coconut oil

.4 Mineral oils and waxes

Examples: natural asphalt, shale oil, tar sand

For petroleum, see 665.5

.5 Petroleum

Class here comprehensive works on petroleum and natural gas

Class synthetic petroleum in 662.662

For natural gas, see 665.7

.502 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Class refinery techniques in 665.53

.53 Refinery treatment and products

Class preliminary refining of oil sands and oil shale to obtain distillable fluids in 665.4

.532 Fractional distillation

.533 Cracking processes

Examples: thermal and catalytic cracking, hydrogenation of residual petroleum distillates

.534 Purification and blending of distillates

.538 Refinery products and by-products

Including waste products

For petrochemicals, see 661.804

.538 2 Highly volatile products

.538 24 Low-boiling naphthas

.538 25 Aviation fuel

Examples: high-octane-rating gasoline, jet and turbojet fuel

Class comprehensive works on gasoline in 665.53827

.538 27 Gasoline

For high-octane-rating gasoline, see 665.53825

.538 3 Kerosene

For jet and turbojet fuel, see 665.53825

.538 4 Heavy fuel oil

Examples: absorber oil, diesel fuel, gas oil, heating oil

.538 5 Lubricating oil and grease

Examples: paraffin wax and petrolatum

.538 8 Residues (Bottoms)

Examples: asphalt, bunker and road oils, petroleum coke, pitch

Class asphalt concrete in 666.893

Unusable residues (wastes) are classed in 665.538

.538 9 Waste control

Class here pollution control

.54 Storage, transportation, distribution

.542 Storage

.543 Transportation

Example: by tankers

For pipeline transportation, see 665.544

.544 Pipeline transportation

.55 Uses

Class a specific use with the use, e.g., automobile engine lubricants 629.255

.7 Natural gas and manufactured industrial gases

Class here comprehensive works on industrial gases

Class industrial gases not provided for here in 665.8

.73 Processing natural gas

Including extraction of helium

.74 Storage, transportation, distribution

.742 Storage

.743 Transportation

For pipeline transportation, see 665.744

.744 Pipeline transportation

.75 Uses

Class a specific use with the use, e.g., heating buildings 697.043

.77 Production of manufactured gases

.772 From coal and coke

Examples: blast-furnace, carbureted-blue, city, coal, coke-oven, producer, water gases

.773 From petroleum and natural gas

Examples: oil, refinery, reformed natural, reformed refinery, liquefied-hydrocarbon gases, e.g., butane, butene, pentane, propane, and their mixtures

.776 From biological wastes

.779 By mixing fuel gases from several sources

.78 Waste control

Class here pollution control

.8 Other industrial gases

For ammonia, see 661.34

.81 Hydrogen

.82 Gases derived from liquefaction and fractionation of air

.822 Noble gases

Variant names: inert gases, rare gases

Contains argon, helium, krypton, neon, radon, xenon

Class extraction of helium from natural gases in 665.73

.823 Oxygen

.824 Nitrogen

.83 Halogen gases

.84 Sulfur dioxide

.85 Acetylene

.89 Carbon dioxide, ozone, hydrogen sulfide

Use of this number for other gases discontinued; class in 665.8

666 Ceramic and allied technologies

Class here ceramic-to-metal bonding

SUMMARY

666.1 Glass
.2 Enamels
.3 Pottery
.4 Pottery processes and equipment
.5 Porcelain (China)
.6 Earthenware and stoneware
.7 Refractories and structural clay products
.8 Synthetic and artificial minerals and building materials
.9 Masonry adhesives

.1 Glass

[.102 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class apparatus, equipment, materials in 666.12, auxiliary techniques and procedures in 666.13

.104 Special topics

.104 2 Physicochemical phenomena occurring during glassmaking processes

Examples: phase and structural transformations

> 666.12–666.14 General topics

Class comprehensive works in 666.1, general topics of specific types of glass in 666.15, general topics of products in 666.19

.12 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 666.13

.121 Materials

> 666.122–666.129 Specific operations in glassmaking

Class comprehensive works in 666.12; tests, analyses, quality controls in 666.137

.122 Blowing

.123 Pressing

.124 Drawing

.125 Molding and casting

.126 Multiform processes

Cold-molding glass powder under pressure, and firing at high temperatures

.129 Annealing and tempering

.13 Auxiliary techniques and procedures

Add to base number 666.13 the numbers following —028 in —0285–0289 from Table 1, e.g., quality control in glassmaking 666.137

.14 Waste control

Class here pollution control

.15 Specific types of glass

See also 669.94 for metallic glass

.152 Window glass

Sheet glass that differs from plate glass primarily in being annealed more quickly and in not being ground and polished

.153 Plate glass

Class laminated plate glass in 666.154

.154 Laminated glass

.155 Heat-resistant glass

.156 Optical glass

.157 Fiber glass and foam glass

.19 Products

.192 Bottles

.2 Enamels

.3 Pottery

Class here comprehensive works on clay technology

Pottery in the narrow sense of earthenware is classed in 666.6

For specific types of pottery, see 666.5–666.6; structural clay products, 666.73

[.301–.309] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 666.31–666.39

.31–.39 Standard subdivisions

Add to base number 666.3 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 1, e.g., pottery dictionaries 666.33; however, class auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials in 666.4

.4 Pottery processes and equipment

Add to base number 666.4 the numbers following 738.1 in 738.12–738.15, e.g., kilns 666.43

> **666.5–666.6 Specific types of pottery**

Class comprehensive works in 666.3

.5 Porcelain

.58 Specific products

Examples: figurines, tableware, vases

.6 Earthenware and stoneware

.68 Specific products

Examples: containers, figurines, industrial products, tableware

.7 Refractories and structural clay products

.72 Refractory materials

Examples: alumina, asbestos, chrome, fireclays, mica, talc, zirconia

.73 Structural clay products

.732 Roofing tiles

.733 Tile drains and piping

.737 Bricks

For hollow and perforated bricks, see 666.738

.738 Hollow and perforated bricks

.8 Synthetic and artificial minerals and building materials

.86 Synthetic and artificial minerals

Examples: cryolite, feldspar, graphite, mica

For synthetic and artificial gems and gem minerals, see 666.88

.88 Synthetic and artificial gems and gem minerals

Examples: diamonds, garnets, rubies, sapphires

.89 Synthetic building materials

For structural clay products, see 666.73

.893 Concrete

Examples: asphalt concrete, ready-mix concrete

Class concrete blocks in 666.894

.894 Hollow concrete and cinder blocks

Class here comprehensive works on concrete blocks

For solid concrete blocks, see 666.895

.895 Solid concrete blocks

.9 Masonry adhesives

Class concrete in 666.893

.92 Gypsum plasters

Examples: Keene's cement, plaster of paris

.93 Lime mortars

.94 Portland cement

.95 Other cements

Examples: high-alumina cement, magnesia

667 Cleaning, color, related technologies

.1 Cleaning and bleaching

Of textiles, leathers, furs, feathers

.12 Dry cleaning

Including manufacture of dry-cleaning materials

.13 Laundering and finishing operations

See also 668.12 for soaps, 668.14 for detergents

.14 Bleaching

Including manufacture of bleaching materials

.2 Dyes and pigments

> 667.25–667.26 Dyes

Class comprehensive works in 667.2

.25 Synthetic dyes

.252 Nitro and nitroso dyes

.253 Azo-oxy and azo-tetrazo dyes

.254 Di- and triphenylmethane dyes

.256 Hydroxyketone dyes

Examples: alizarines, quinoidals

.257 Indigoid dyes

See also 667.26 for indigo

.26 Natural dyes

Example: indigo

.29 Pigments

.3 Dyeing and printing

For dyes, see 667.25–667.26

.31–.35 Dyeing specific textiles

Add to base number 667.3 the numbers following 677 in 677.1–677.5, e.g., dyeing nylon 667.3473

.36 Control of waste from dyeing processes

Class here pollution control

.38 Textile printing

.4 Inks

For printing ink, see 667.5

.5 Printing ink

.6 Paints

Class here paint removers

.62 Oil-soluble paint

.622 Oils, driers, plasticizers

.623 Pigments and extenders

For carbon black, see 662.93

.624 Diluents (Thinners)

.63 Water-soluble paint

Examples: latex paint, whitewash

.69 Special-purpose paints

Examples: fire-resistant, luminous, rust-resistant paints

.7 Polishes, lacquers, varnishes

.72 Polishes

.75 Lacquers

.79 Varnishes

Examples: shellac, spar varnish

Class here spirit varnishes

For japans, see 667.8

.8 Japans

.9 Coating and coatings

Methods and materials for producing protective and decorative coatings

Examples: dipping, metallizing, painting, spraying, varnishing

Including sign painting

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both of the topics named in the heading

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., painting automobiles 629.26, buildings 698.1; a specific coating with the coating, e.g., varnishes 667.79

668 Technology of other organic products

SUMMARY

668.1	**Surface-active materials (Surfactants)**
.2	**Glycerin**
.3	**Adhesives and related products**
.4	**Plastics**
.5	**Perfumes and cosmetics**
.6	**Agricultural chemicals and related products**
.9	**Polymers**

.1 Surface-active materials (Surfactants)

.12 Soaps

.124 Soluble soaps

Examples: liquid concentrates, powders

.125 Insoluble soaps (Metallic soaps)

Examples: oleates and stearates of aluminum

.127 Scouring compounds

.14 Detergents and wetting agents

Nonsoap materials that manifest surface activity

Examples: fatty-alcohol sulfates, sulfated oils and hydrocarbons

.2 Glycerin

.3 Adhesives and related products

For masonry adhesives, see 666.9

> 668.31–668.37 Specific kinds of adhesives

Class comprehensive works in 668.3, products made from specific kinds of adhesives in 668.38

.31 Synthetic glue

.32 Animal glue

Example: casein glue

.33 Vegetable glue

Example: mucilage

See also 668.37 for gum

.34 Crude gelatin

.37 Gum and resin

.372 Natural gum and resin

See also 668.33 for mucilage

.374 Synthetic gum and resin

Example: epoxy resin

.38 Products made from adhesives

Example: tape

Class here sealants

.4 Plastics [*formerly also* 547.8432]

SUMMARY

668.404	**Special topics**
.41	**Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials**
.42	**Polymerization plastics**
.43	**Protein plastics**
.44	**Cellulosics**
.45	**Plastics from natural resins**
.49	**Forms and products**

[.402 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 668.41

.404 Special topics

.404 2 Physicochemical phenomena of plastics manufacture

.41 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class application to specific kinds of plastics in 668.42–668.45, application to forms and products in 668.49

.411 Materials

Examples: fillers, plasticizers

> 668.412–668.419 Specific operations

Class comprehensive works in 668.41

.412 Molding and casting

.413 Extrusion

.414 Laminating

.415 Welding

.416 Reinforcing

.419 Auxiliary techniques and procedures

.419 2 Waste control

Class here pollution control

.419 5–.419 9 Miscellaneous auxiliary techniques and procedures

Add to base number 668.419 the numbers following —028 in —0285–0289 from Table 1, e.g., quality control in plastics manufacture 668.4197

> 668.42–668.45 Specific kinds of plastics

Class comprehensive works in 668.4, forms and products of specific kinds of plastics in 668.49

.42 Polymerization plastics

.422 Thermosetting plastics

.422 2 Phenolics

.422 3 Ureas

.422 4 Melamines

.422 5 Polyesters

Example: polyurethanes

Class comprehensive works on polyurethanes in 668.4239

.422 6 Epoxies

.422 7 Silicones

.423 Thermoplastic plastics

Examples: acetals, acetates, butyrates, polycarbonates, polyethers

.423 2 Acrylics (Polyacrylics)

.423 3 Styrenes (Polystyrenes)

.423 4 Polyolefins

Examples: polyethylenes, polyisobutylenes, polypropylenes

.423 5 Polyamides (Nylons)

.423 6 Vinyls (Polyvinyls)

.423 7 Vinylidene chlorides

.423 8 Polyfluoro hydrocarbons

.423 9 Polyurethanes

Class here comprehensive works on polyurethanes

Class polyurethane rubber in 678.72

For thermosetting polyurethanes, see 668.4225

.43 Protein plastics

Example: plastics derived from casein

.44 Cellulosics

Example: celluloid

.45 Plastics from natural resins

Example: lignin-derived plastics

For protein plastics, see 668.43

.49 Forms and products

Class plastic fibers and fabrics in 677.46–677.47

> 668.492–668.495 Specific forms

Class comprehensive works in 668.49

.492 Laminated plastic

.493 Foamed plastics

Example: structural foam

.494 Reinforced plastic

.495 Plastic films

.497 Containers

.5 Perfumes and cosmetics

.54 Perfumes

.542 Natural perfumes

Examples: floral oils and waters

.544 Synthetic perfumes

.55 Cosmetics

.6 Agricultural chemicals and related products

.62 Fertilizers

Add to base number 668.62 the numbers following 631.8 in 631.83–631.85, e.g., superphosphates 668.625

For organic fertilizers, see 668.63

.63 Organic fertilizers

Add to base number 668.63 the numbers following 631.8 in 631.86–631.87, e.g., manufacture of fertilizers from animal wastes 668.636 [*formerly* 628.7461], converting household garbage 668.6377

.64 Soil conditioners

Manufactured and organic

.65 Pesticides

.651 Insecticides, rodenticides, vermicides

.652 Fungicides and algicides

.653 Bactericides

.654 Herbicides (Weed killers)

.9 Polymers

Class here synthetic polymers [*formerly also* 547.8427]

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., manufacture of nylon hosiery 687.3; a specific polymer with the polymer, e.g., plastics 668.4

669 Metallurgy

Class here alloys, extractive metallurgy, process metallurgy, interdisciplinary works on metals

Class a specific aspect of metals with the aspect, e.g., chemistry 546.3, metalworking and primary metal products 671

See Manual at 622.7, 622.22 vs. 669, 662.6; 669

SUMMARY

669.01–.09	**Standard subdivisions**
.1	**Ferrous metals**
.2	**Precious, rare-earth, actinide-series metals**
.3	**Copper**
.4	**Lead**
.5	**Zinc and cadmium**
.6	**Tin**
.7	**Other nonferrous metals**
.8	**Metallurgical furnace technology**
.9	**Physical and chemical metallurgy**

[.001] Philosophy and theory of metallurgy

Relocated to 669.01

[.002] Miscellany of metallurgy

Relocated to 669.02

[.003] Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of metallurgy

Relocated to 669.03

[.005–.009] Standard subdivisions of metallurgy

Relocated to 669.05–669.09

.01 Philosophy and theory of metallurgy [*formerly* 669.001], of extractive metallurgy

.02 Miscellany of metallurgy [*formerly* 669.002], of extractive metallurgy

.028 Specific kinds of techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Class materials in 669.042

.028 2 Pyrometallurgy

Extraction by smelting, roasting, other furnace methods

Class electrical zone melting in 669.0284

.028 3 Hydrometallurgy

Extraction by leaching methods

.028 4 Electrometallurgy

Including electrical zone melting, vacuum metallurgy

Class here electrorefining, electrowinning

.03 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of metallurgy [*formerly* 669.003], of extractive metallurgy

.04 Special topics of metallurgy, of extractive metallurgy

.042 Materials

Class here prepared ores and scrap metals

Class furnace materials in 669.8

.05–.09 Standard subdivisions of metallurgy [*formerly* 669.005–669.009], of extractive metallurgy

---

> **669.1–669.7 Metallurgy of specific metals and their alloys**

Class comprehensive works in 669

For physical and chemical metallurgy of specific metals and their alloys, see 669.96

.1 Ferrous metals

.14 Reduction and refining of ferrous ores

Do not use standard subdivisions

Comprehensive works on production of iron and steel are classed in 669.1

.141 Production of iron

For production of ingot iron, see 669.1423

.141 3 Blast-furnace practice

Class here casting as a part of the refining process, production of pig iron and crude cast iron

Class iron casting as a metalworking process in 672.25, cast iron products in 672.8

.141 4 Puddling furnace practice

Class here production of wrought iron

.141 9 Other iron alloy practices

Including production of iron powder and sponge iron

.142 Production of steel

.142 2 Open-hearth furnace practice (Siemens process)

.142 3 Bessemer converter practice

Including production of duplex-process steel, ingot iron

.142 4 Electric furnace practice

Example: arc furnace practice

.142 9 Production of crucible steel

> **669.2–669.7 Nonferrous metals**

Class comprehensive works in 669

.2 Precious, rare-earth, actinide-series metals

> 669.22–669.24 Precious metals

Class comprehensive works in 669.2

.22 Gold

.23 Silver

.24 Platinum

.29 Rare-earth and actinide-series metals

.290 01–.290 09 Standard subdivisions

.290 1–.294 9 Specific metals and groups of metals

Add to base number 669.29 the numbers following 546.4 in 546.401–546.44, e.g., uranium 669.2931

.3 Copper

Class here brass, Muntz metal; bronze, gunmetal; copper-aluminum alloys; copper-beryllium alloys

.4 Lead

.5 Zinc and cadmium

.52 Zinc

For brass, Muntz metal, see 669.3

.56 Cadmium

.6 Tin

For bronze, gunmetal, see 669.3

.7 Other nonferrous metals

Examples: iridium, osmium, palladium, rhodium, ruthenium; rhenium

See also 669.24 for platinum

.71 Mercury

.72 Light, alkali, alkaline-earth metals

Standard subdivisions are added for light, alkali, alkaline-earth metals; for light metals alone

For titanium, see 669.7322; for zirconium, 669.735

.722 Aluminum

For copper-aluminum alloys, see 669.3

.723 Magnesium

.724 Beryllium

For copper-beryllium alloys, see 669.3

.725 Alkali and alkaline-earth metals

Contains barium, calcium, cesium, francium, lithium, potassium, radium, rubidium, sodium, strontium

For magnesium, see 669.723; beryllium, 669.724

.73 Metals used in ferroalloys

.732 Titanium, vanadium, manganese

.732 2 Titanium

.733 Nickel and cobalt

.733 2 Nickel

.734 Chromium, molybdenum, tungsten

.735 Zirconium and tantalum

.75 Antimony, arsenic, bismuth

.79 Miscellaneous rare metals and metalloids

Limited to gallium, hafnium, indium, niobium, polonium, thallium; germanium, selenium, tellurium

.8 Metallurgical furnace technology

Class metallurgical furnace technology used for a specific metal with the metal, e.g., nickel 669.7332

.802 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Class refractory material in 669.82

.81 Fuel

.82 Refractory material

Class comprehensive works on refractory materials in 666.72

.83 Firing and heat control

.84 Fluxes and slag

.85 Physical processes

Example: heat exchange

.9 Physical and chemical metallurgy

Physical and chemical phenomena occurring during metallurgical processes; physical and chemical analyses of metals; formation of alloys

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both of the topics named in the heading

Class metalworking and manufacture of primary metal products in 671–673

.92 Chemical analysis

Including assaying

Class chemical analysis of specific metals and their alloys in 669.96

.94 Physicochemical metallurgical phenomena

Examples: alloy binary systems, intermetallic compounds, metallic glass, solid solutions, solidification

Including phase diagrams

Class physicochemical metallurgical phenomena of specific metals and their alloys in 669.96

.95 Metallography

.950 28 Specific kinds of techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

.950 282 Microscopical metallography

Optical and electron metallography

.950 283 X-ray metallography

.951–.957 Of specific metals and their alloys

Add to base number 669.95 the numbers following 669 in 669.1–669.7, e.g., aluminum 669.95722

.96 Physical and chemical metallurgy of specific metals and their alloys

Add to base number 669.96 the numbers following 669 in 669.1–669.7, e.g., titanium 669.967322

For metallography of specific metals and their alloys, see 669.951–669.957

670 Manufacturing

General aspects: planning, design, fabrication

Class here manufactured products

Class manufacture of products based on specific branches of engineering in 620, on chemical technologies in 660; military applications in 623; the arts in 700; manufacture of final products for specific uses not provided for elsewhere, in 680

Unless separate provision is made, class comprehensive works on products made by a specific process with the process, e.g., seasoned wood 674.38; but coated papers 676.283 (*not* 676.235)

SUMMARY

670.1–.9 Standard subdivisions
671 Metalworking processes and primary metal products
672 Iron, steel, other iron alloys
673 Nonferrous metals
674 Lumber processing, wood products, cork
675 Leather and fur processing
676 Pulp and paper technology
677 Textiles
678 Elastomers and elastomer products
679 Other products of specific kinds of materials

.285 Data processing Computer applications

Class here computer-aided design/computer-aided manufacture (CAD/CAM), comprehensive works on computer use in the management of manufacturing and computer-aided design or computer-aided manufacture

Class computer-aided design (CAD) in 620.00420285, computer use in the management of manufacturing in 658.05, computer-aided manufacture (CAM) in 670.427

See Manual at 670.285 vs. 670.427

.4 Special topics

.42 Factory operations engineering

Class here shop and assembly-line technology

For tools and fabricating equipment, see 621.9; packaging technology, 688.8

[.420 685] Management of factory operations

Do not use; class in 658.5

.423 Machine-shop practice

.425 Inspection technology

.427 Mechanization and automation of factory operations

Class here assembling machines, computer-aided manufacture (CAM), computer control of factory operations

Class computer-aided design (CAD) in 620.00420285; comprehensive works on computer control in 629.89; computer-aided design/computer-aided manufacture (CAD/CAM), computer integrated manufacturing systems (CIM) in 670.285; automated machine-shop practice in 670.423; automated inspection technology in 670.425

See Manual at 670.285 vs. 670.427

.427 2 Robots

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 670.4272 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 670.4272416, but use of digital computers 670.4272 (*not* 670.42724)

.427 5 Computerized process control

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 670.4275 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 670.4275416, but use of digital computers 670.4275 (*not* 670.42754)

Class comprehensive works on computerized process control in 629.895

[.685] Management of production

Do not use; class in 658.5

> 671–679 Manufacture of products from specific materials

Class here manufacture of primary products

Class comprehensive works in 670; manufacture of ceramic products in 666, of plastic products in 668.49

See Manual at 671–679 vs. 680

671 Metalworking processes and primary metal products

Class metallurgy and interdisciplinary works on metals in 669

For iron, steel, other iron alloys, see 672; nonferrous metals, 673

SUMMARY

671.2 **Foundry practice (Casting)**
.3 **Mechanical working and related processes**
.4 **Electroforming of metals**
.5 **Joining and cutting of metals**
.7 **Finishing and surface treatment of metals**
.8 **Primary products**

> **671.2–671.7 Specific metalworking processes**

Class comprehensive works in 671, specific processes applied to specific primary products in 671.8

.2 **Foundry practice (Casting)**

See also 671.32–671.34 for hot-working operations

.202 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; materials

Class apparatus and equipment in 671.22

.22 Foundry equipment

.23 Patternmaking and moldmaking

.24 Melting

.25 Specific methods of casting

.252 Sand casting

.253 Permanent-mold casting

Example: die casting

.254 Centrifugal casting

.255 Investment casting

Variant names: cire perdue, lost-wax, precision casting

.256 Continuous casting

.3 **Mechanical working and related processes**

> 671.32–671.34 Mechanical working

Class here hot-working operations, cold-working operations, high-energy forming

Class comprehensive works in 671.3

For shot peening, see 671.36

.32 Rolling

.33 Pressing, stamping, forging

.332 Forging

.34 Extruding and drawing

.35 Machining

Including grinding

Class here cutting as a machining process, milling

Class comprehensive works on cutting metal in 671.53

.36 Heat treatment and hardening

Age-hardening, annealing, shot peening, tempering

.37 Powder metallurgical processes (Powder metallurgy)

.373 Sintering

.4 Electroforming of metals

.5 Joining and cutting of metals

.52 Welding

[.520 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 671.520423

.520 4 Special topics

.520 42 Welds (Welded joints)

.520 422 Weldability, weld stability, weld defects

.520 423 Inspection and testing

.521 Electric welding

.521 2 Arc welding

.521 3 Resistance welding

Examples: flash, projection, seam, spot welding

.521 5 Induction welding

.522 Gas welding

.529 Forge, thermit, flow welding

.53 Cutting

Class cutting as a machining process in 671.35

.56 Soldering and brazing

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both of the topics named in the heading

.58 Bonding

.59 Riveting

.7 Finishing and surface treatment of metals

Examples: cleaning, deburring

.72 Buffing and polishing

.73 Coating

Example: cladding

Class enameling in 666.2

.732 Electroplating

.733 Hot-metal dipping

.734 Metal spraying

.735 Vapor plating (Vacuum deposition)

Examples: vacuum metalizing, vapor-phase deposition

.736 Diffusion coating

.8 Primary products

Class here comprehensive works on metal products

Class a specific metal product not provided for here with the product, e.g., metal furniture 684.105

.82 Rolled products

.821 Patternmaking

.823 Strips and sheets

.83 Forged, pressed, stamped products

.832 Pipes

.84 Extruded and drawn products

Example: cables

.842 Wires

.87 Powder metal products

672 Iron, steel, other iron alloys

Metalworking processes and primary products

Add to base number 672 the numbers following 671 in 671.2–671.8, e.g., heat treatment 672.36, galvanizing 672.732

Subdivisions are used for any or all of the topics named in the heading

For small forge work, see 682

673 Nonferrous metals

Metalworking processes and primary products

Class here alloys of nonferrous metals

Add to each subdivision identified by * the numbers following the numbers following 671 in 671.2–671.8, e.g., welding aluminum 673.72252

.2 Precious, rare-earth, actinide-series metals

.22 *Gold

.23 *Silver

.24 *Platinum

.29 Rare-earth and actinide-series metals

.290 01–.290 09 Standard subdivisions

.290 1–.294 9 Specific metals and groups of metals

Add to base number 673.29 the numbers following 546.4 in 546.401–546.44, e.g., uranium 673.2931

.3 *Copper

Class here brass, Muntz metal; bronze, gunmetal; copper-aluminum alloys; copper-beryllium alloys

.4 *Lead

.5 Zinc and cadmium

.52 *Zinc

For brass, Muntz metal, see 673.3

.56 *Cadmium

.6 *Tin

For bronze, gunmetal, see 673.3

.7 Other nonferrous metals

Examples: iridium, palladium, rhodium

See also 673.24 for platinum

.71 *Mercury

.72 Light, alkali, alkaline-earth metals

Standard subdivisions are added for light, alkali, alkaline-earth metals; for light metals alone

For titanium, see 673.7322; for zirconium, 673.735

.722 *Aluminum

For copper-aluminum alloys, see 673.3

*Add as instructed under 673

.723 *Magnesium

.724 *Beryllium

For copper-beryllium alloys, see 673.3

.725 Alkali and alkaline-earth metals

Contains barium, calcium, cesium, francium, lithium, potassium, radium, rubidium, sodium, strontium

For magnesium, see 673.723; beryllium, 673.724

.73 Metals used in ferroalloys

.732 Titanium, vanadium, manganese

.732 2 *Titanium

.733 Nickel and cobalt

.733 2 *Nickel

.734 Chromium, molybdenum, tungsten

.735 Zirconium and tantalum

.75 Antimony, arsenic, bismuth

.79 Miscellaneous rare metals and metalloids

Limited to gallium, hafnium, indium, niobium, polonium, thallium; germanium, selenium, tellurium

674 Lumber processing, wood products, cork

Use 674.001–674.009 for standard subdivisions

SUMMARY

674.01–.09	**Standard subdivisions of lumber technology**
.1	**Structure, chemical properties, types of lumber**
.2	**Sawmill operations**
.3	**Storage and seasoning of lumber**
.4	**Production of finished lumber**
.5	**Grading lumber**
.8	**Wood products**
.9	**Cork**

.01 Philosophy and theory of lumber technology

.02 Miscellany of lumber technology

.021 2 Tables and formulas

Class specifications in 674.5

.028 7 Testing and measurement

Class grading lumber in 674.5

.03–.09 Standard subdivisions of lumber technology

*Add as instructed under 673

> **674.1–674.5 Lumber technology**

Class comprehensive works in 674

.1 Structure, chemical properties, types of lumber

.12 Structure

Gross and microscopic

.13 Chemical properties

Including chemical properties of wood extracts

[.132] Physical properties

Relocated to 620.12

[.134] Chemical properties

Number discontinued; class in 674.13

.14 Specific types

Class structure of specific types in 674.12, chemical properties of specific types in 674.13

.142 Hardwoods

Examples: basswood, beech, cherry, chestnut, elm, maple, oak, poplar

.144 Softwoods

Examples: cedar, cypress, fir, hemlock, larch, pine, redwood, spruce

.2 Sawmill operations

Class wood waste and residues in 674.84

.202 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials [*formerly* 674.22]

[.22] Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Use of this number for basic techniques and procedures discontinued; class in 674.2

Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials relocated to 674.2028

.28 Rough lumber

Class here dimension stock (cut stock)

Use of this number for comprehensive works on rough lumber, wood waste and residues discontinued; class in 674.2

.3 Storage and seasoning of lumber

.32 Storage in lumberyards

.38 Seasoning and drying

.382 By air

.384 In kiln

.386 By chemical treatment

.4 Production of finished lumber

.42 Production of surfaced lumber

By planing mills

.43 Production of pattern lumber

Examples: shiplap, sidings, tongue-and-groove products

.5 Grading lumber

Including inspection and specifications

.8 Wood products

Class here comprehensive works on wood-using technologies

Class a specific product or wood-using technology not provided for here with the product or technology, e.g., wood as a fuel 662.65, finished lumber 674.4, pulp and paper technology 676, wooden furniture 684.104, carpentry 694

.82 Containers and pallets

Examples: barrels, boxes, casks, crates

.83 Veneers and composite woods

.833 Veneers

> 674.834–674.836 Composites

Class comprehensive works in 674.83

.834 Plywood

See also 674.835 for specialty plywoods

.835 Laminated wood (Specialty plywoods, Sandwich panels)

.836 Particle board

.84 Wood waste and residues

Examples: excelsior, sawdust, wood flour and shavings

Class here pollution control

Class utilization of wood waste and residues in making a specific product with the product, e.g., particle board 674.836

.88 Other products

Examples: picture frames, signs, spools, toothpicks, wood-cased pencils, woodenware

.9 Cork

675 Leather and fur processing

For leather and fur goods, see 685

.2 Processing of natural leather

[.202 87] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 675.29

.22 Preliminary operations

Examples: fleshing, unhairing (liming), bating hides and skins

.23 Tanning

.24 Dressing

.25 Finishing

Examples: dyeing, embossing, glazing, production of patent leather

.29 Properties, tests, quality controls

.3 Fur processing

Including manufacture of imitation furs

.4 Manufacture of imitation leathers

676 Pulp and paper technology

Class here comprehensive works on paper and paper products

See Manual at 676 vs. 676.1, 676.2

SUMMARY

676.04 Special topics
.1 Pulp
.2 Conversion of pulp into paper, and specific types of paper and paper products
.3 Paper and paperboard containers
.4 Purified pulp
.5 Pulp by-products
.7 Paper from man-made and noncellulosic fibers

.04 Special topics

.042 Waste control

Class here comprehensive works on waste control for paper and paper products [*formerly* 676.26], pollution control

.1 Pulp

Class by-products in 676.5

See Manual at 676 vs. 676.1, 676.2

[.102 87] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 676.17

> 676.12–676.14 Specific pulps

Class comprehensive works in 676.1

For purified pulp, see 676.4

.12 Wood pulp

[.120 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 676.121

.121 Properties, tests, quality controls

> 676.122–676.127 Specific processes

Class comprehensive works in 676.12

See Manual at 676 vs. 676.1, 676.2

.122 Mechanical (Ground wood) process

.124 Soda process

.125 Sulfite process

.126 Sulfate (Kraft) process

.127 Semichemical process

.13 Rag pulp

.14 Other pulps

Examples: bagasse, bamboo, cornstalks, hemp, jute, straw

.142 Wastepaper

Class here paper recycling

.17 Properties, tests, quality controls

Class properties, tests, quality controls of specific pulps in 676.12–676.14

.18 Molded products and pulpboards

.182 Molded products

.183 Pulpboards

Examples: chip boards, fiberboards, wallboards

> **676.2–676.5 Pulp products**

Class comprehensive works in 676

For molded products and pulpboards, see 676.18

.2 Conversion of pulp into paper, and specific types of paper and paper products

Use of this number for comprehensive works on paper and paper products discontinued; class in 676

Class paper recycling in 676.142

See Manual at 676 vs. 676.1, 676.2

[.202 87] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 676.27

> 676.22–676.27 General topics

Class comprehensive works in 676.2, general topics of specific types of paper and paper products in 676.28

.22 Production by hand

.23 Specific processes of machine production

Materials and processes

Use of this number for comprehensive works on manufacture with machines discontinued; class in 676.2

See Manual at 676 vs. 676.1, 676.2

.232 Basic processes

.234 Finishing

Examples: calendering, coloring, creping, sizing

For coating, see 676.235

.235 Coating

[.26] Waste control

Use of this number for waste control in conversion of pulp to paper discontinued; class in 676.2

Comprehensive works on waste control for paper and paper products relocated to 676.042

.27 Properties, tests, quality controls

.28 Specific types of paper and paper products

.280 27 Patents and identification marks

Example: watermarks

.282 Graphic arts paper

.282 3 Stationery

Including onionskin paper

.282 4 Book paper

Class coated book paper in 676.283

.282 5 Drawing and art paper

.282 6 Currency paper

Papers for printing money, bonds, securities

.283 Coated paper

.284 Specialty paper

.284 2 Tissue paper

Examples: cleansing tissues, toilet paper

Class onionskin paper in 676.2823

.284 4 Blotting and saturating paper

.284 5 Vulcanized and parchment papers

See also 685 for parchment prepared from the skin of an animal

.284 8 Wallpaper

.286 Unsized paper

Example: newsprint

.287 Wrapping and bag papers

Examples: bogus wrapping, butcher paper, kraft wrapping, Manila paper

.288 Paperboard

Examples: bristol board, cardboard, food board, pasteboard

.289 Roofing and building papers

.3 Paper and paperboard containers

.32 Boxes and cartons

Examples: corrugated and solid paperboard boxes, folding boxes

For food board containers, see 676.34

.33 Bags

.34 Food board containers

Examples: food cartons, paper plates and cups

.4 Purified pulp

Production of alpha cellulose from wood pulp and cotton linters

.5 Pulp by-products

Examples: fatty acids, lignin, resins, tall oil, turpentine

.7 Paper from man-made and noncellulosic fibers

677 Textiles

Production of fibers, fabrics, cordage

Class here comprehensive works on manufacture of textiles and clothing

Class manufacture of clothing in 687

SUMMARY

677.001–.009 Standard subdivisions
.02 General topics
.1 Textiles of bast fibers
.2 Textiles of seed-hair fibers
.3 Textiles of animal fibers
.4 Textiles of man-made fibers
.5 Other textiles of specific fibers
.6 Special-process fabrics regardless of composition
.7 Cordage, trimmings and allied products
.8 Surgical gauze and cotton

.001 Philosophy and theory

.002 Miscellany

[.002 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Do not use; class in 677.028

.003–.009 Standard subdivisions

.02 General topics

.022 Designs (Working patterns)

.028 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, products

.028 2 Operations

.028 21 Preliminary operations

Examples: carding, combing

.028 22 Spinning, twisting, reeling

.028 24 Weaving, knitting, felting

.028 242 Weaving

.028 245 Knitting

.028 25 Basic finishing

Physical and chemical processes

Examples: beetling, calendering, creping, mercerizing, pressing, shearing, singeing, tentering

For dyeing and printing, see 667.3

.028 3 Materials

.028 32 Fibers

.028 35 Textile chemicals

.028 5 Power equipment

.028 52 Spinning machines

.028 54 Looms and loom equipment

.028 55 Basic finishing machines

.028 6 Products

For tests and quality controls of products, see 677.0287

.028 62 Yarns and threads

.028 64 Fabrics

.028 7 Testing and measurement

Including tests and quality controls of products

.029 Waste control

Class here pollution control

> **677.1–677.5 Textiles of specific composition**

Class here specific kinds of textile fibers

Class comprehensive works in 677, special-process fabrics regardless of composition in 677.6

.1 Textiles of bast fibers

.11 Flax

[.110 28] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Do not use; class in 677.112–677.117

.112–.117 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, products

Add to base number 677.11 the numbers following 677.028 in 677.0282–677.0287, e.g., linen fabrics 677.1164

.12 Hemp

.13 Jute

.15 Ramie

.18 Coir

.2 Textiles of seed-hair fibers

.21 Cotton

[.210 28] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Do not use; class in 677.212–677.217

.212–.217 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, products

Add to base number 677.21 the numbers following 677.028 in 677.0282–677.0287, e.g., cotton ginning, carding, combing 677.2121

.23 Kapok

.3 Textiles of animal fibers

.31 Sheep wool

Class here comprehensive works on wool

For llama, alpaca, vicuña, guanaco wools, see 677.32

[.310 28] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Do not use; class in 677.312–677.317

.312–.317 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, products

Add to base number 677.31 the numbers following 677.028 in 677.0282–677.0287, e.g., sheep wool fibers 677.3132

.32 Llama, alpaca, vicuña, guanaco wools

.33 Goat hair

.34 Camel's hair

.35 Rabbit hair

.36 Waste and reused wool and hair

.39 Silk

.391 Cultivated silk

[.391 028] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Do not use; class in 677.3912–677.3917

.391 2–.391 7 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, products

Add to base number 677.391 the numbers following 677.028 in 677.0282–677.0287, e.g., beetling cultivated silk 677.39125

.392 Wild silk (Tussah silk)

.394 Waste and reused silk

.4 Textiles of man-made fibers

Class here chemistry of man-made fibers [*formerly also* 547.85]

.46 Cellulosics (Rayon and acetates)

Use 677.46001–677.46009 for standard subdivisions

For textiles of paper fibers, see 677.5

.460 1–.460 9 Standard subdivisions of rayon

> 677.461–677.463 Rayon

Class comprehensive works in 677.46

.461 Nitrocellulose

.462 Cuprammonium rayon

.463 Viscose rayon

.464 Cellulose acetate

.47 Noncellulosics

For fiber glass, see 677.52

.472 Azlon

.473 Polyamides (Nylons)

.474 Other polymerization textiles

.474 2 Acrylics

Class here polyacrylics

.474 3 Polyesters

.474 4 Vinyls

Examples: nytrils, sarans, vinyons

Class here polyvinyls

.474 5 Olefins

Examples: polyethylene, polypropylene

.474 8 Polyfluoro hydrocarbons

.5 Other textiles of specific fibers

.51 Of asbestos fibers

.52 Of fiber glass

.53 Of metal fibers

.54 Of unaltered vegetable fibers

Examples: bamboo, cane, raffia, rattan, rush

.55 Of elastic fibers

[.57] Of paper fibers

Number discontinued; class in 677.5

.6 Special-process fabrics regardless of composition

Class here nonwoven fabrics

.61 Fancy-weave fabrics

For tapestries, carpets, rugs, see 677.64; openwork fabrics, 677.65

.615 In dobby weave

Examples: bird's-eye, figured madras, huckaback, sharkskin

.616 In Jacquard weave

Examples: brocade, brocatelle, damask, lamé, upholstery fabrics

.617 In pile weave

Examples: chenille, corduroy, frieze, plush, terry cloth, velour, velvet, velveteen

.62 Woven felt

Class comprehensive works on felt in 677.63

.624 Flannel and swanskin yard goods

.626 Blankets, lap robes, coverlets

.63 Nonwoven felt

Class here comprehensive works on felt

For woven felt, see 677.62

.632 Yard goods and carpets

.64 Tapestries, carpets, rugs

.642 Tapestry yard goods

.643 Carpets and rugs

For nonwoven felt carpets, see 677.632

.65 Openwork fabrics

For chain-stitch and knotted fabrics, see 677.66

.652 In leno weave

Examples: marquisettes and grenadines

.653 Laces

Contains bobbin, needle, machine laces

.654 Tulles

.66 Chain-stitch and knotted fabrics

.661 Knitted fabrics

.662 Crocheted fabrics

.663 Tatted fabrics

.664 Netted fabrics

.68 Fabrics with functional finishes

Examples: drip-dry, durable press fabrics

Class specific types of special-process fabrics regardless of finish in 677.61–677.66

.681 Crease- and wrinkle-resistant fabrics

.682 Waterproof and water-repellent fabrics

.688 Shrinkage-controlled fabrics

.689 Flameproof and flame-resistant fabrics

.69 Bonded and laminated fabrics

.7 Cordage, trimmings and allied products

.71 Ropes, twines, strings

For passementerie, see 677.76

.76 Passementerie

Examples: decorative bias bindings, braids, cords, gimps, lacings, ribbons, tapes, tinsel; upholstery trimmings

.77 Machine embroidery

Examples: clip spot, lappet, Schiffli, swivel (dotted swiss) embroidery

Class laces in 677.653

.8 Surgical gauze and cotton

Examples: bandages, sanitary napkins

678 Elastomers and elastomer products

SUMMARY

678.2	**Rubber**
.3	**Rubber products**
.4	**Properties of rubber**
.5	**Latexes**
.6	**Natural elastomers**
.7	**Synthetic elastomers**

.2 Rubber

For rubber products, see 678.3; properties of rubber, 678.4; natural rubber, 678.62; synthetic rubber, 678.72

.202 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Class materials in 678.21

.21 Materials

For reclaimed rubber, see 678.29

.22 Mastication

.23 Compounding

Examples: use of accelerators, antioxidants, pigments, solvents

.24 Vulcanization

.27 Molding, extruding, calendering

.29 Reclaimed rubber and waste control

Including devulcanizing

Class here pollution control

.3 Rubber products

Class elastic fiber textiles in 677.55

For natural rubber products, see 678.63; synthetic rubber products, 678.723

.32 Tires

.33 Overshoes

.34 Articles molded and vulcanized in presses

Examples: doorstops, hollow ware, hot-water bottles, tiles

.35 Extruded articles

Examples: inner tubes, rubber bands, weather stripping, windshield wipers

.36 Articles made by dipping, spreading, electrodeposition

Examples: conveyor and driving belts, hose, sheeting

.4 Properties of rubber

.5 Latexes

For natural latexes, see 678.61; synthetic latexes, 678.71

.502 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Class materials in 678.521

.52 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

.521 Materials

.522 Preliminary treatment

Examples: preservation, concentration, creaming, centrifuging, preparation of latex biscuits

.524 Vulcanization

.527 Other operations

Examples: casting, coating, dipping, electrodepositing, molding, spreading

.53 Products

.532 Foam articles

.533 Articles made by dipping and casting

Example: feeding-bottle nipples

Surgeons' gloves relocated to 685.43

.538 Articles made by extruding, spreading, spraying, electrodeposition

Use of this number for other products discontinued; class in 678.53

.54 Properties

.6 Natural elastomers

.61 Natural latexes

.62 Natural rubber

For natural rubber products, see 678.63; properties of natural rubber, 678.64

.63 Natural rubber products

.64 Properties of natural rubber

.68 Chemical derivatives of natural rubber

Examples: cyclo and halogenated rubber, rubber hydrochloride

.7 Synthetic elastomers

.71 Synthetic latexes [*formerly also* 547.8425]

.72 Synthetic rubber and derivatives

Examples: acrylonitrile rubber (GR-A), butadiene-styrene rubber (GR-S), chloroprene rubber (GR-M), isobutylene rubber (GR-I), polybutadiene rubber, polyurethane rubber

Standard subdivisions are added for synthetic rubber and derivatives, for synthetic rubber

Class comprehensive works on polyurethanes in 668.4239

.720 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Class auxiliary techniques and procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials for synthetic rubber in 678.722

.722 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials for synthetic rubber

.723 Synthetic rubber products

.724 Properties of synthetic rubber

.728 Chemical derivatives of synthetic rubber

.73 High-styrene resins (Elastoplastics)

679 Other products of specific kinds of materials

.4 Products of keratinous and dentinal materials

.43 Ivory products

.47 Feather products

.6 Products of fibers and bristles

Examples: brooms, brushes, mops

.7 Products of tobacco

See also 688.4 for tobacco substitutes

.72 Cigars

.73 Cigarettes

680 Manufacture of products for specific uses

Not provided for elsewhere

General aspects: planning, design, fabrication

Class here interdisciplinary works on handicrafts

Class repairs of household equipment by members of household in 643.7; artistic handicraft work in 745.5; manufacture of products based on specific branches of engineering with engineering in 620, e.g., military engineering 623, automobile manufacture 629.2; and, except as provided for below, class manufacture of products of specific materials for specific uses in 671–679, e.g., manufacture of steel products 672, but manufacture of steel furniture 684.105

See Manual at 671–679 vs. 680; 680; 745.5 vs. 680

SUMMARY

681 Precision instruments and other devices
682 Small forge work (Blacksmithing)
683 Hardware and household appliances
684 Furnishings and home workshops
685 Leather and fur goods, and related products
686 Printing and related activities
687 Clothing and accessories
688 Other final products, and packaging technology

681 Precision instruments and other devices

SUMMARY

681.1 Instruments for measuring time, counting and calculating machines and instruments
.2 Testing and measuring instruments
.4 Optical instruments
.6 Printing, writing, duplicating machines and equipment
.7 Other scientific and technological instruments, machinery, equipment
.8 Musical instruments

.1 Instruments for measuring time, counting and calculating machines and instruments

For testing and measuring instruments, see 681.2

.11 Instruments for measuring time [*formerly also* 529.78]

.111 Ancient and primitive instruments

Examples: hourglasses, sundials, water clocks

.112 Constituent parts (Clockwork)

Examples: gears, escapements, bearings, regulating devices

.113 Clocks

Class here interdisciplinary works on clocks

Class clocks considered as works of art in 739.3

For constituent parts, see 681.112; pneumatic clocks, 681.115; electric clocks, 681.116; chronographs, chronoscopes, chronometers, 681.118

.114 Watches

Class here interdisciplinary works on watches

Class watches considered as works of art in 739.3

For constituent parts, see 681.112; chronographs, chronoscopes, chronometers, 681.118

.115 Pneumatic clocks

.116 Electric clocks

.118 Chronographs, chronoscopes, chronometers

Examples: metronomes, stopwatches, tachometers, time clocks, time and date recorders, timers

.14 Counting and calculating machines and instruments

Examples: calculators, cash registers, slide rules, sorting machines, voting machines

For computers, see 621.39

.2 Testing and measuring instruments

Examples: calorimeters [*formerly also* 536.62]; electrical instruments for measuring nonelectrical quantities [*formerly also* 621.379]; electronic gauges, indicators, meters, probes of general utility [*all formerly also* 621.381548]; measuring tools [*formerly* 621.994]; flowmeters

Class here testing and measuring instruments of general application in science or technology, testing and measuring instruments for nontechnological application, instruments for measuring physical quantities

Class testing and measuring instruments for a specific branch of science (other than instruments for measuring physical quantities) in 681.75; for a specific technological application with the manufacturing number, e.g., aircraft instrumentation 629.135, medical diagnostic equipment 681.761

For instruments for measuring electrical quantities, see 621.37; for testing and measuring electronic signals, 621.381548; for measuring time, 681.11

.4 Optical instruments [*formerly also* 535.33]

.41 Specific instruments

Class component parts of specific instruments in 681.42–681.43

.411 Eyeglasses

.412 Telescopes, opera and field glasses

.413 Microscopes

.414 Spectroscopes

.414 2–.414 6 Optical and paraphotic spectroscopes

Add to base number 681.414 the numbers following 535.84 in 535.842–535.846, e.g., infrared spectroscopes 681.4142

.414 8 Other spectroscopes

Examples: magnetic resonance, microwave, radiofrequency, X- and gamma-ray spectroscopes

.415 Photometers

.416 Polarimeters

.418 Photographic equipment

Examples: cameras, projectors, accessories

Class film and other chemical photographic supplies in 661.808

For photometers, see 681.415; photocopying equipment, 681.65

> 681.42–681.43 Component parts

Class comprehensive works in 681.4

.42 Lenses, prisms, mirrors

.423 Lenses

.428 Mirrors

.43 Frames and other housings

.6 Printing, writing, duplicating machines and equipment

Examples: computer output microform (COM) devices [*formerly* 621.3987], pens, mechanical pencils, rubber stamps

Class facsimile recorders in 621.38235, wood-cased pencils in 674.88

.61 Stenographic and composing machines, typewriters

.62 Printers and printing presses

Class here computer output printers [*formerly* 621.3987]

.65 Photocopying equipment

.7 Other scientific and technological instruments, machinery, equipment

Not provided for elsewhere

.75 Scientific instruments and equipment

Class here testing and measuring equipment for specific branches of science

Class comprehensive works on scientific testing and measuring instruments in 681.2

.753 Physical instruments and equipment

Including instruments with multiple applications based on physical principles, e.g., gyroscopes

Class instruments for measuring physical quantities in 681.2

.754 Chemical instruments and equipment

.755 Geological instruments and equipment

.757 Biological instruments and equipment

.76 Technological instruments, machinery, equipment

Examples: construction, pollution-control, mining, surveying equipment

Class here testing and measuring instruments in specific branches of technology not provided for elsewhere

Class comprehensive works on technological testing and measuring instruments in 681.2

.760 4 Special topics

.760 41 Pressure vessels

.761 Medical instruments, machinery, equipment

Examples: condoms, diagnostic equipment, prosthetic devices

For artificial legs, see 685.38

.763 Agricultural instruments, machinery, equipment

.763 1 For plant culture

.763 6 For animal culture

.766 For chemical and related technologies

.766 4 For food and beverage technology

.766 5 For petroleum and industrial gas technologies

.766 6 For ceramic technology

.766 8 For plastic and elastomer technologies

.766 9 For metallurgy

.767 For nonchemical manufactures

.767 1 For metal manufactures

.767 6 For wood and paper technologies

.767 7 For textile and clothing technologies

.8 Musical instruments

Class hand construction in 784.1923

[.81–.83] Specific types of instruments

Relocated to 681.86–681.88

.86–.88 Specific types of instruments [*formerly* 681.81–681.83]

Add to base number 681.8 the numbers following 78 in 786–788, e.g., manufacture of pianos 681.862

Class hand construction in 786–788

682 Small forge work (Blacksmithing)

.1 Horseshoeing

.4 Hand-forged tools and ironwork

683 Hardware and household appliances

Class here comprehensive works on manufacture of hardware and building supplies

Class a specific hardware or building supply product not provided for here with the product, e.g., tools 621.9, paints 667.6

.3 Locksmithing

.31 Bolts and latches

.32 Locks and keys

.34 Safes and strongboxes

.4 Small firearms

Class here interdisciplinary works on small firearms, on gunsmithing

Class military small arms in 623.44

.400 1 Philosophy and theory

.400 2 Miscellany

[.400 288] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 683.403

.400 3–.400 9 Standard subdivisions

> 683.401–683.406 General topics

Class comprehensive works in 683.4

.401 Design

[.402] Manufacture

Number discontinued; class in 683.4

.403 Maintenance and repair

.406 Ammunition

.42 Rifles and shotguns

.422 Rifles

.426 Shotguns

.43 Handguns

.432 Pistols (Single-shot and automatic)

.436 Revolvers

.8 Household utensils and appliances

Class nonmetallic household utensils and appliances with the material, e.g., woodenware 674.88

.802 88 Maintenance and repair

Class maintenance and repair by members of household in 643.6

.82 Kitchen utensils

Examples: cutlery, pots, pans, pails

.83 Electrical appliances

Class comprehensive works on electrical equipment in 621.31042

For electrical equipment requiring special installation, see 683.88

.88 Heavy equipment

Electrical, gas, other equipment requiring special installation

Examples: dishwashers, dryers, garbage disposal units, ranges, stoves, washing machines, water heaters

Class heating, ventilating, air-conditioning equipment in 697

For refrigerators and freezers, see 621.57

684 Furnishings and home workshops

Use 684.001–684.009 for standard subdivisions for furnishings and home workshops, for furnishing alone

.08 Woodworking

Class here comprehensive works on home (amateur) workshops

For metalworking, see 684.09

.082 With hand tools

.083 With power tools

.084 Surface finishing

.09 Metalworking

.1 Furniture

Use 684.1001–684.1009 for standard subdivisions

> 684.104–684.106 General topics

Class comprehensive works in 684.1

.104 Wooden furniture

[.104 028 8] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 684.1044

.104 2 Basic construction

.104 3 Surface finishing

.104 4 Maintenance and repair

.104 42 Body restoration

.104 43 Surface refinishing

.105 Metal furniture

.106 Furniture in other materials

Examples: composite materials, plastics, rattan, tiles

> 684.12–684.16 Specific kinds of furniture

Class comprehensive works in 684.1, outdoor furniture in 684.18

.12 Upholstered furniture

Examples: couches, sofas, upholstered chairs

.13 Chairs and tables

For upholstered chairs, see 684.12

.14 Desks

.15 Beds

Including frames, springs, mattresses

.16 Cabinets and built-in furniture

Examples: bookcases, chests, china and linen cabinets, dressers, file cabinets, shelving

Class built-in wooden shelves in 694.6

.18 Outdoor furniture

Examples: garden, patio, porch furniture

Class camping furniture in 685.53

.3 Fabric furnishings

Examples: curtains, draperies, hangings, slipcovers

For carpets and rugs, see 677.643

685 Leather and fur goods, and related products

Including parchment prepared from the skin of an animal

See also 676.2845 for parchment paper made from pulp

.1 Saddlery and harness making

.2 Leather and fur clothing and accessories

Class leather and fur footwear in 685.3, leather and fur gloves and mittens in 685.4

.22 Leather

Examples: aprons, belts, jackets, skirts, trousers

.24 Fur

Examples: coats, hats, jackets, muffs, neckpieces, stoles

.3 Footwear and related products

For overshoes, see 678.33; hosiery, 687.3

.31 Boots and shoes

Class wooden shoes and clogs in 685.32, shoes for specific activities in 685.36, for the disabled in 685.38

.310 01 Philosophy and theory

.310 02 Miscellany

[.310 028 8] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 685.3104

.310 03–.310 09 Standard subdivisions

.310 2 Design

.310 3 Construction

.310 4 Maintenance and repair

.32 Wooden shoes and clogs

.36 Footwear and related products for specific activities

.361 Ice skates

.362 Roller skates and skateboards

.363 Snowshoes

.364 Skis

Class manufacture of equipment connected with snow skiing in 688.7693

.367 Stilts

.38 Footwear and related products for the disabled

Examples: artificial legs, crutches, special shoes

.4 Gloves and mittens

Regardless of material

.41 Conventional gloves

.43 Specialized gloves and mittens, gauntlets

Examples: surgeons' gloves [*formerly also* 678.533], athletic gloves and mitts, protective gloves for industry

.47 Conventional mittens

.5 Luggage, handbags, camping equipment

.51 Luggage and handbags

Including briefcases, attaché cases

.53 Camping equipment

Examples: camp beds, campstools, sleeping bags, tents

686 Printing and related activities

Class here design and manufacture of publications, book arts

Class interdisciplinary works on the book in 002, book illustration in 741.64

See also 681.6 for manufacture of printing equipment

SUMMARY

686.1 Invention of printing
.2 Printing
.3 Bookbinding
.4 Photocopying (Photoduplication)

.1 Invention of printing

.2 Printing

Including printing by museums [*formerly* 069.7]

Class here printing in the Latin alphabet

Class interdisciplinary works on print media in 302.232, comprehensive works on printing and publishing in 070.5

Works on "desktop publishing" that emphasize typography are classed in 686.22, e.g., microcomputer software for typesetting 686.2254436

See also 070.593 for self publishing

.209 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class invention of printing in 686.1

.21 Printing in specific non-Latin alphabets and characters

Class here typefounding, typecasting, typefaces for specific non-Latin alphabets and characters

Class other specific aspects of printing in non-Latin alphabets and characters with the aspect, e.g., letterpress printing 686.2312

[.212] Braille and other raised characters

Relocated to 686.282

[.217] Latin alphabet

Use of this number for comprehensive works on printing in the Latin alphabet discontinued; class in 686.2

Typefaces for the Latin alphabet relocated to 686.224

.218 Greek alphabet

.219 Other alphabets and characters

Add to base number 686.21 notation 91–99 from Table 6, e.g., Cyrillic alphabet 686.21918

.22 Typography

.221 Typefounding and typecasting

.224 Typefaces

Design, style, specimens of letters, ornaments, other characters and devices

Class here typefaces for the Latin alphabet [*formerly* 686.217]

Class typefaces for specific non-Latin alphabets and characters in 686.21, for braille and other raised characters in 686.282

.224 7 Specific typefaces and kinds of typefaces for the Latin alphabet

Examples: Gothic, italic, roman type; Bodoni, Garamond, Times Roman type

.225 Composition (Typesetting)

[.225 028 5] Data processing Computer applications

Do not use; class in 686.22544

.225 2 Page design

Including layout, paste-up

.225 3 Hand composition

.225 4 Machine composition

.225 42 By use of linotype and other human-operated equipment

.225 44 By use of computer-operated and other automatic equipment

Example: phototypesetting (photocomposition)

Class here computerized typesetting

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 686.22544 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., microcomputer programs for typesetting 686.22544536, the use of digital microcomputers 686.22544416, but the use of digital computers 686.22544 (*not* 686.225444)

.225 5 Proofreading

.225 6 Imposition and lockup

.23 Presswork (Impression)

Class interdisciplinary works on use of computer printers as low-volume output devices in 004.77; a specific use with the use, e.g., use in typesetting 686.22544477

For printing special graphic materials, see 686.28

See also 621.38235 for facsimile transmission, 681.6 for manufacture of printing equipment

.230 4 Special topics

.230 42 Color printing

.231 Mechanical techniques

Class photomechanical techniques in 686.232

.231 2 Printing from type

Class here comprehensive works on letterpress techniques

Class printing from plates in 686.2314

.231 4 Printing from plates

Printing from stereotypes, electrotypes, autotypes, engraved plates, paper mats

See also 686.2315 for printing from planographic plates

.231 5 Planographic (Flat-surface)

Class here lithography and offset (offset lithography)

For photolithography, photo-offset, collotype, see 686.2325

.231 6 Stencil techniques

Example: silk-screen

.232 Photomechanical techniques

.232 5 Photolithography, photo-offset, collotype (gelatin process)

See also 621.381531 for photolithography in manufacture of printed circuits (microlithography)

[.232 6] Photometallography

Number discontinued; class in 686.232

.232 7 Photoengraving (Photointaglio)

Examples: photogravure, photoetching, line and halftone cuts

.233 Nonimpact techniques

Examples: electrographic, electrophotographic, ink jet, laser processes

See also 686.44 for electrophotographic processes in photocopying

.28 Printing special graphic materials

.282 Braille and other raised characters [*formerly also* 686.212]

Class comprehensive works on braille and other raised character alphabets in 411

.283 Maps

.284 Music

.288 Materials of direct monetary value

Examples: bank notes, postage stamps, securities

.3 Bookbinding

Processes and materials

Use 686.3001–686.3009 for standard subdivisions

.302 Hand and fine binding

.303 Specific kinds of commercial binding

Use of this number for comprehensive works on commercial binding discontinued; class in 686.3

.303 2 Individual-copy (Library) binding

.303 4 Edition binding

.34 Types of covers

.342 Leather

.343 Cloth and imitation leather

.344 Paper

.35 Methods of fastening

Examples: hand sewing, oversewing, side-sewing, wire-stitching; perfect binding and other kinds of gluing

.36 Ornamentation

Examples: gilding, lettering, marbling, tooling

.4 Photocopying (Photoduplication)

Class here interdisciplinary works on photocopying

Class telefax in 621.38235

See also 681.65 for manufacture of photocopying equipment

.42 Blueprinting

.43 Microphotography

Production of microfilm and other microreproductions

.44 Electrostatic and electrophotographic processes

Including xerography

.45 Production of photostats

687 Clothing and accessories

Class here casual clothes, sports clothes

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the one coming last, e.g., military headgear 687.4 (*not* 687.15)

Class interdisciplinary works on clothing in 391; interdisciplinary works on clothing construction in 646.4

For leather and fur clothing, see 685.2

SUMMARY

687.01–.09	**Standard subdivisions**
.1	**Specific kinds of garments**
.2	**Underwear**
.3	**Hosiery**
.4	**Headgear**
.8	**Items auxiliary to clothing construction (Notions)**

.04 General topics

.042 Patternmaking and grading

.043 Cutting

.044 Tailoring

[.045] Dressmaking

Relocated to 687.112

.081 Men's clothing

Class here men's house garments [*formerly* 687.11042]

.082 Women's clothing

Class here women's house garments [*formerly* 687.12]

.083 Young people's clothing

Class here children's house garments [*formerly* 687.13]

.1 Specific kinds of garments

Use of this number for outer garments discontinued; class in 687

For footwear, see 685.3; gloves and mittens, 685.4; underwear, 687.2; hosiery, 687.3; headgear, 687.4

.11 Miscellaneous kinds of garments

Limited to those provided for below

Use of this number for comprehensive works on house garments discontinued; class in 687

[.110 4] Special topics

Use of this number discontinued; class in 687.11

[.110 42] Men's house garments

Relocated to 687.081

.112 Dresses

Class here dressmaking [*formerly* 687.045]

.113 Suits, trousers, jackets

.115 Shirts, blouses, tops

.117 Skirts

[.12] Women's house garments

Relocated to 687.082

[.13] Children's house garments

Relocated to 687.083

.14 Outer coats and related garments

Class here comprehensive works on coats

Class suit coats, suit jackets in 687.113

[.140 81–.140 82] For men and women

Do not use; class in 687.141–687.142

.140 83 For young adults

Class outer coats and related garments for children in 687.143, for young adult men aged twenty-one and over in 687.141, for young adult women twenty-one and over in 687.142

.140 84 For persons in specific stages of adulthood

Class outer coats and related garments for adult men regardless of age in 687.141, for adult women regardless of age in 687.142

.141 For men

Class outer coats and related garments for young adult men in 687.1408351

.142 For women

Class outer coats and related garments for young adult women in 687.1408352

.143 For children

> 687.144–687.147 Sweaters, wraps, specific types of outer coats

Class comprehensive works in 687.14

.144 Overcoats

Example: topcoats

.145 Raincoats

.146 Sweaters

Examples: pullovers and cardigans

.147 Stoles, cloaks, jackets

.15 Uniforms and symbolic garments

Examples: civil and military uniforms, ceremonial and academic robes, ecclesiastical vestments

.16 Garments for special purposes

Examples: athletic garments, costumes, evening and formal dress, fire-resistant and other protective clothing, maternity garments, wedding clothes

Use 687 for casual and sports clothes

For uniforms and symbolic garments, see 687.15

.165 Nightclothes

.19 Accessories

Examples: aprons, belts, cuffs, handkerchiefs, muffs, neckwear, scarves

Class interdisciplinary works on accessories in 391.44, on making jewelry in 739.27, on making costume jewelry in 688.2

For gloves and mittens, see 685.4; headgear 687.4

.2 Underwear

For hosiery, see 687.3

[.208 1–.208 3] Underwear for men, women, children

Do not use; class in 687.21–687.23

.208 4 Underwear for persons in specific stages of adulthood

Class underwear for adult men regardless of age in 687.21, for adult women regardless of age in 687.22

.208 7 Underwear for handicapped and ill persons

Class supporting undergarments worn for medical or health reasons in 687.25

.21 Men's underwear

.22 Women's underwear

Class here comprehensive works on lingerie

Class women's nightclothes in 687.165082

.23 Children's underwear

Class young men's underwear in 687.21, young women's underwear in 687.22

.25 Supporting undergarments worn for medical or health reasons

Examples: surgical corsets and belts

Use of this number for supporting undergarments not worn for medical or health reasons discontinued; class in 687.2

.3 Hosiery

.4 Headgear

Class here nonwoven felt hats

Class headscarves in 687.19

[.408 1–.408 3] Men's, women's, children's headgear

Do not use; class in 687.41–687.43

.408 4 Headgear for persons in specific stages of adulthood

Class headgear for adult men regardless of age in 687.41, for adult women regardless of age in 687.42

.41 Men's headgear

.42 Women's headgear

.43 Children's headgear

Class headgear for young men in 687.41, for young women in 687.42

.8 Items auxiliary to clothing construction (Notions)

Examples: buttons, hooks and eyes, needles, padding, pins, shields, slide fasteners, snaps, thread and yarn

688 Other final products, and packaging technology

.1 Models and miniatures

Class here interdisciplinary works on models and miniatures

Class interdisciplinary works on handcrafted models and miniatures in 745.5928; models and miniatures of a specific object with the object, using notation 0228 from Table 1, e.g., scale models of space stations 629.4420228

See Manual at 745.5928

.2 Costume jewelry

Class here interdisciplinary works on making costume jewelry

Class interdisciplinary works on costume jewelry in 391.7, on making jewelry in 739.27; handcrafted costume jewelry in 745.5942

.4 Smokers' supplies

Examples: ash trays, cigarette holders and cases, hookahs, lighters, tobacco pouches, tobacco substitutes

.42 Pipes

.5 Accessories for personal grooming

Examples: combs, electric shavers, nail-care tools, razors, razor blades, tweezers

For cosmetics, see 668.55; brushes, 679.6

.6 Nonmotor land vehicles

Examples: carriages, carts, wagons, wheelbarrows

For cycles, see 629.227

See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388

.7 Recreational equipment

.72 Toys

Class here interdisciplinary works on mass-produced and handcrafted toys

Class handcrafted toys in 745.592

.722 Dolls, puppets, marionettes

.722 1 Dolls

.722 4 Puppets and marionettes

.723 Doll houses and furniture

.724 Soft toys

Example: stuffed animals

Class stuffed dolls in 688.7221

.725 Educational toys

Examples: construction toys, science sets

.726 Novelties, ornaments, puzzles, tricks

Not provided for elsewhere

.728 Action toys

Mechanical, electrical, electronic, others

Class scale-model action toys in 688.1

> 688.74–688.79 Equipment for sports and games

Not provided for elsewhere

Class comprehensive works in 688.7

.74 Equipment for indoor games of skill

Add to base number 688.74 the numbers following 794 in 794.1–794.8, e.g., chessmen 688.741

.75 Equipment for games of chance

Add to base number 688.75 the numbers following 795 in 795.1–795.4, e.g., playing cards 688.754

.76 Equipment for outdoor sports and games

Add to base number 688.76 the numbers following 796 in 796.1–796.9, e.g., tennis rackets 688.76342; however, class skates, skateboards, skis in 685.36; camping equipment in 685.53

For equipment for equestrian sports and animal racing, see 688.78; equipment for fishing, hunting, shooting, 688.79

.78 Equipment for equestrian sports and animal racing

Example: hurdles

.79 Equipment for fishing, hunting, shooting

Add to base number 688.79 the numbers following 799 in 799.1–799.3, e.g., artificial flies 688.7912

For small firearms, see 683.4

.8 Packaging technology

Materials, equipment, techniques

Class interdisciplinary works on packaging in 658.564; artistic aspects of containers in 700, e.g., vases 738.38; manufacture and use of containers made of a specific material with the material, e.g., paper containers 676.3

[689] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

690 Buildings

General aspects: planning, analysis, engineering design, construction, destruction of habitable structures and their utilities

Class interdisciplinary works on design and construction of buildings in 721

See Manual at 643.7 vs. 690; 690 vs. 624; 721 vs. 690

SUMMARY

690.01–.09 Standard subdivisions
.1–.8 [Specific structural elements, general activities, specific types of buildings]
691 Building materials
692 Auxiliary construction practices
693 Construction in specific types of materials and for specific purposes
694 Wood construction Carpentry
695 Roof covering
696 Utilities
697 Heating, ventilation, air-conditioning engineering
698 Detail finishing

.01 Philosophy and theory

.02 Miscellany

.021 2 Tables and formulas

Class specifications in 692.3

[.022 3] Maps and related forms, plans, diagrams

Do not use; class in 692.1

.028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Class materials in 691

[.028 8] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 690.24

[.028 9] Safety measures

Do not use; class in 690.22

[.029 9] Estimates of labor, time, materials

Do not use; class in 692.5

.03–.09 Standard subdivisions

.1 Specific structural elements

Add to base number 690.1 the numbers following 721 in 721.1–721.8, e.g., auxiliary roof structures 690.15; however, class chimneys in 697.8, fireplaces in 697.1

Class structural elements of specific types of buildings in 690.5–690.8, construction of structural elements in wood in 694

.2 General activities

Including architectural acoustics

Class application to specific structural elements in 690.1, to specific types of buildings in 690.5–690.8, interdisciplinary works on architectural acoustics in 729.29

.21 Structural analysis

Statics, dynamics, stability, strength of buildings

.22 Provision for safety

Engineering for safe buildings, safety during construction

.24 Maintenance and repair

Class home repairs by members of household in 643.7

.26 Wrecking and razing

.5–.8 Specific types of buildings

Add to base number 690 the numbers following 72 in 725–728, e.g., airport terminal buildings 690.539 [*formerly also* 629.1364]; however, class construction of buildings for defense against military action in 623.1, naval facilities in 623.64, military air facilities in 623.66, docks and port buildings in 627.3

See Manual at 629.226 vs. 643.2, 690.879, 728.79

691 Building materials

General aspects: selection, preservation, construction properties

Class construction in a specific type of material in 693

.1 Timber

.12 Prevention of decay

Examples: spraying, painting, impregnating with fungicides

.14 Prevention of termite damage

.15 Treatment for fire resistance

Impregnation with monomagnesium, monoammonium, diammonium phosphates

.2 Natural stones

Examples: granite, limestone, marble, sandstone, serpentine, slate, soapstone

.3 Concretes and artificial stones

Examples: concrete blocks, cinder blocks

.4 Ceramic and clay materials

Examples: brick, tile, terra cotta, sun-dried blocks

.5 Masonry adhesives

.6 Glass

.7 Iron and steel (Ferrous metals)

.8 Metals

Add to base number 691.8 the numbers following 669 in 669.2–669.7, e.g., aluminum 691.8722

For iron and steel, see 691.7

.9 Other building materials

.92 Plastics and their laminates

.95 Insulating materials

Examples: asbestos, corkboard, diatomaceous earth, kapok, rock wool

.96 Bituminous materials

Examples: asphalts, tar

.97 Prefabricated materials

.99 Adhesives and sealants

For masonry adhesives, see 691.5; plastics and their laminates, 691.92

692 Auxiliary construction practices

Class application of a specific auxiliary practice to a specific subject with the subject, e.g., construction specifications for air conditioning 697.93

.1 Plans and drawings

Interpretation and use of rough sketches, working drawings, blueprints

For detail drawings, see 692.2

.2 Detail drawings

Interpretation and use of large-scale drawings of trims, moldings, other details

.3 Construction specifications

.5 Estimates of labor, time, materials

Class here interdisciplinary works on quantity surveying

Class estimates for a specific subject in building with the subject, using notation 0299 from Table 1, e.g., estimates for air conditioning 697.930299

.8 Contracting

Provision of construction materials and services in accordance with specifications

693 Construction in specific types of materials and for specific purposes

Comprehensive works on construction in all types of materials is classed in 690

For selection, preservation, construction properties of building materials, see 691; wood construction, 694; roofing materials, 695

SUMMARY

693.1	**Masonry**
.2	**Stabilized earth materials**
.3	**Tiles and terra cotta**
.4	**Artificial stones and hollow bricks**
.5	**Concrete**
.6	**Plaster-, stucco-, lathwork**
.7	**Metals**
.8	**Construction for specific purposes**
.9	**Construction in other materials**

> **693.1–693.7 Construction in specific materials**

Class comprehensive works in 690, construction in specific materials for specific purposes in 693.8

For construction in other materials, see 693.9

.1 Masonry

Including construction in natural stone

For masonry using materials other than natural stone, see 693.2–693.5

> **693.2–693.5 Masonry using materials other than natural stone**

Class comprehensive works in 693.1

.2 Stabilized earth materials

.21 Bricks

For hollow bricks, see 693.4

.22 Sun-dried blocks

Examples: adobe, cob, pisé, tabby, tapia

.3 Tiles and terra cotta

For hollow tiles, see 693.4

.4 Artificial stones and hollow bricks

Examples: concrete blocks, cinder blocks, hollow tiles

.5 Concrete

For concrete blocks, see 693.4

.52 Without reinforcement

.521 Poured concrete

.522 Precast concrete

.54 With reinforcement (Ferroconcrete)

.541 Poured concrete

.542 Prestressed concrete

.544 Precast concrete

.6 Plaster-, stucco-, lathwork

.7 Metals

.71 Iron and steel (Ferrous metals)

.72–.77 Nonferrous metals

Add to base number 693.7 the numbers following 669 in 669.2–669.7, e.g., tin 693.76

.8 Construction for specific purposes

.82 Fireproof construction

.83 Insulated construction

.832 Thermal insulation

.834 Acoustical insulation (Soundproofing)

.84 Pest-resistant construction

.842 Termite-resistant construction

.844 Rodent-resistant construction

.85 Shock-resistant construction

.852 Earthquake-resistant construction

.854 Blast-resistant construction

.89 Waterproof, moistureproof, lightning-resistant construction

Use of this number for construction for other specific purposes discontinued; class in 693.8

.892 Waterproof construction

Class moistureproof construction in 693.893

.893 Moistureproof construction

.898 Lightning-resistant construction

.9 Construction in other materials

.91 Ice and snow

.92 Sandwich panels

Class sandwich panels in a specific substance with the substance, e.g., wood 694

.96 Glass

.97 Prefabricated materials

Class materials prefabricated in a specific substance with the substance, e.g., precast concrete 693.522

.98 Nonrigid materials

Example: pneumatic construction

.99 Miscellaneous materials

Add to base number 693.99 the numbers following 620.19 in 620.191–620.199, e.g., plastics 693.9923; however, class nonrigid materials in 693.98

694 Wood construction Carpentry

.1 Planning, analysis, engineering design

> **694.2–694.6 Carpentry**

Class comprehensive works in 694

.2 Rough carpentry (Framing)

Construction of ceilings, floors, foundations, frames, openings, partition frames, posts, roofs, sidings, walls

.6 Finish carpentry (Joinery)

On-site construction of doors, doorways; blinds, shutters, windows; balconies, porches, verandas; balustrades, rails, ramps, stairs; trims, e.g., inlays, moldings, paneling; built-in cases and shelves

Class off-site manufacture of finishing items in 680

695 Roof covering

Class comprehensive works on roofs as structural elements in 690.15, wooden roofs in 694.2

696 Utilities

Class here comprehensive works on energy and environmental engineering of buildings

Class interior electric wiring in 621.31924; a specific aspect of energy and environmental engineering with the aspect, e.g., thermal insulation in 693.832

For heating, ventilating, air-conditioning engineering, see 697

.1 Plumbing

Design and installation of water fixtures and pipes

.12 Water supply

Including intake pipes, water receiving fixtures, water-softening equipment

For water supply in specific parts of buildings, see 696.18; hot-water supply, 696.6

.13 Water drainage

For water drainage in specific parts of buildings, see 696.18

.18 Water supply and drainage in specific parts of buildings

.182 Lavatories and bathrooms

.183 Laundries

.184 Kitchens

Including installation of garbage disposal units and dishwashers

.2 Pipe fitting

General aspects: design, installation

Example: gas pipes (gas fitting)

For water pipes, see 696.1; steam fitting, 696.3

.3 Steam pipes (Steam fitting)

General aspects: design, installation

.6 Hot-water supply

Design and installation of pipes, water heaters, water-softening equipment

697 Heating, ventilating, air-conditioning engineering

General aspects: design, manufacture, installation of systems and components

Use 697.0001–697.0009 for standard subdivisions

SUMMARY

697.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of heating
.02–.07 [Local and central heating, heating with specific sources of energy, heating equipment]
.1 Heating with open fires (Radiative heating)
.2 Heating with space heaters (Convective heating)
.3 Hot-air heating
.4 Hot-water heating
.5 Steam heating
.7 Other heating methods
.8 Chimneys and flues
.9 Ventilation and air conditioning

.001 Philosophy and theory of heating

.002 Miscellany of heating

.002 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, materials of heating

Class heating equipment in 697.07

.003–.009 Standard subdivisions of heating

.02 Local heating

Class local heating by source of heat in 697.1–697.2

.03 Central heating

Class here comprehensive works on district heating

Class a specific type of central heating in 697.3–697.7, e.g., solar heating 697.78; district heating by hot water in 697.4, by steam in 697.54

.04 Heating with specific sources of energy

Class here specific fuels

Class a specific fuel used in local heating in 697.02, in central heating in 697.03

For solar heating, see 697.78; nuclear heating, 697.79

.042 Coal and coke heating

.043 Gas heating

.044 Oil heating

.045 Electric heating

.07 Heating equipment

Examples: boilers, furnaces, radiators, thermostats

> **697.1–697.8 Heating**

Class comprehensive works in 697

> **697.1–697.2 Local heating**

Class comprehensive works in 697.02, chimneys and flues for local heating in 697.8

.1 Heating with open fires (Radiative heating)

Including braziers, fireplaces

Class fireplace-like stoves that have visible fires but which are convective heaters in 697.2

.2 Heating with space heaters (Convective heating)

.22 Stationary stoves

Class cooking stoves in 683.88

.24 Portable heaters

> **697.3–697.7 Central heating**

Class comprehensive works in 697.03, chimneys and flues for central heating in 697.8

.3 Hot-air heating

Class radiant panel hot-air heating in 697.72

.4 Hot-water heating

Class hot-water supply in 696.6, radiant panel hot-water heating in 697.72, comprehensive works on district heating in 697.03

.5 Steam heating

Class steam fitting in 696.3, radiant panel steam heating in 697.72

.500 1 Philosophy and theory

.500 2 Miscellany

.500 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, materials

Class equipment in 697.507

.500 3–.500 9 Standard subdivisions

.507 Equipment

Examples: boilers, furnaces, radiators

[.52] Heating single buildings

Number discontinued; class in 697.5

.54 District heating

Heating a group of buildings from a central station

Class comprehensive works on steam and hot-water district heating in 697.03

See also 697.4 for hot-water district heating

.7 Other heating methods

.72 Radiant panel heating

.78 Solar heating

Class building of solar houses in 690.8370472

.79 Nuclear heating

.8 Chimneys and flues

.9 Ventilation and air conditioning

.92 Ventilation

.93 Air conditioning

Class heating in 697.1–697.8

.931 General topics

Class general topics applied to specific components in 697.932, to specific systems in 697.933–697.934, to specific types of buildings in 697.935–697.938

.931 2 Design principles

.931 5 Psychrometrics

Determination and control of enclosed atmospheric environments for optimum comfort

.931 6 Industrial and commercial applications

Determination and control of enclosed atmospheric environment for effective operations

.932 Components

Class here manufacturing

.932 2 Heating and cooling components

Examples: cooling and heating coils, thermostats

.932 3 Humidifying and dehumidifying components

Example: humidistats

.932 4 Air quality components

Devices for removing dust, pollen, other particulates

Class here filters

.932 5 Air circulation components

Example: blowers

.933 Air-conditioning systems

Class systems in specific types of buildings in 697.935–697.938, system components in 697.932

For unitary and combination systems, see 697.934

.933 2 Winter systems

.933 3 Summer systems

.933 4 Year-round systems

.934 Unitary and combination systems

.934 2 Unitary systems

.934 4 Combination systems

.935–.938 In specific types of buildings

Add to base number 697.93 the numbers following 72 in 725–728, e.g., air conditioning in hotels 697.9385

Class components for specific types of buildings in 697.932

698 Detail finishing

Examples: cladding, siding, suspended ceilings

Class plaster-, stucco-, lathwork in 693.6; wooden moldings, paneling, inlays in 694.6; roof covering in 695

.1 Painting

.102 Miscellany

.102 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

.102 82 Equipment

Examples: brushes, rollers, paints, diluents

.102 83 Paint mixing

.102 88 Application methods

Do not use for maintenance and repair; class in 698.1028

.12 Exteriors

.14 Interiors

Class painting woodwork in 698.35

.142 Walls

.146 Floors

.147 Ceilings

.2 Calcimining and whitewashing

.3 Finishing woodwork

.32 By staining

Including graining and marbling

.33 By polishing with wax and oil

.34 By varnishing and lacquering

.35 By painting

.5 Glazing and leading windows

.6 Paperhanging

.9 Floor coverings

General aspects: measuring, cutting, laying

Examples: carpets, rugs; linoleum, tiles

Class comprehensive works on floors in 690.16

[699] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

700

700 The arts Fine and decorative arts

Description, critical appraisal, techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials of the fine, decorative, literary, performing, recreational arts

Class here conceptual art

Use 700 and standard subdivisions 700.1–700.9 for artists' books, performance and video art covering the arts in general; use 702.81 and 709 for artists' books, performance and video art limited to fine and decorative arts

For book arts, see 686; literature, 800

See Manual at 700

> **700.1–700.9 Standard subdivisions of the arts**

Use this standard subdivision span for material that includes two or more of the fine and decorative arts and one or more of the other arts, e.g., a work about a painter who is also a sculptor and a poet 700.92. If only one fine or decorative art and one of the other arts is involved, class in the number coming first in the schedule, e.g., a United States painter and poet 759.13

Class comprehensive works in 700

See Manual at 700

.1 Philosophy and theory of the arts

.103 Effects of social conditions and factors on the arts

.104 Effects of humanities on the arts

.105 Effects of science and technology on the arts

.108 Effects of other concepts on the arts

Examples: humor, mythology, nature, parapsychology

.2–.6 Standard subdivisions of the arts

.7 Education, research, related topics of the arts

.74 Museums, collections, exhibits

Notation 074 from Table 1 is never added to the work of an individual artist whether the work falls in notation 092 from Table 1 (e.g., an exhibition of the work of a French sculptor 730.92) or in the number for the individual artist's country (e.g., an exhibition of the work of a Canadian painter 759.11)

See Manual at 700.74

.75 Museum activities and services Collecting objects

Notation 075 from Table 1 is never added to the work of an individual artist whether the work falls in notation 092 from Table 1 (e.g., collecting the work of a French sculptor 730.92) or in the number for the individual artist's country (e.g., collecting the work of a Canadian painter 759.11)

.8 The arts with respect to kinds of persons

.9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

.92 Persons

Class here the works themselves and critical appraisal and description of works of an artist or artists

See Manual at 700.92

701 Philosophy and theory of fine and decorative arts

.03–.08 Special topics

Add to base number 701.0 the numbers following 700.10 in 700.103–700.108, e.g., effects of social conditions and factors on fine and decorative arts 701.03

.1 Appreciative aspects

Including use of audiovisual aids

Class here works on art appreciation, including theory, history, and techniques

Do not use for systems; class in 701

See also 709 for history of the fine arts

.15 Psychological principles

Fine arts as products of creative imagination

.17 Aesthetics

Class interdisciplinary works in 111.85

.18 Criticism and appreciation

Class here theory, technique, history

Class works of critical appraisal in 709

.8 Inherent features

Examples: composition, form, style, decorative values, light, vision, space, time, movement, symmetry

.82 Perspective

See also 742 for the drawing aspects of perspective

.85 Color

See also 752 for the painting aspects of color

.9 Methodology

Do not use for psychological principles; class in 701.15

702 Miscellany of fine and decorative arts

.8 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Including testing and measurement, use of artists' models

.81 Mixed-media and composites

Including artists' books; performance, video art

Class finished works of mixed-media and composite art in 709, two-dimensional mixed-media art or composites in 760

See Manual at 700

.812 Collage

Class decoupage in 745.546

.813 Montage

.814 Assemblage

.87 Techniques of reproduction, execution, identification

Do not use for testing and measurement; class in 702.8

.872 Reproductions and copies

.874 Forgeries and alterations

.88 Conservation, preservation, restoration

Including expertizing

Do not use for routine maintenance and repair; class in 702.89

Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 702.87

.89 Safety measures and routine maintenance and repair

.9 Commercial miscellany

Class auction and sales catalogs in which an exhibition is involved in 707.4

703 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of fine and decorative arts

704 Special topics in fine and decorative arts History and description with respect to kinds of persons

.03 History and description with respect to racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 704.03 notation 01–99 from Table 5, e.g., art of North American native races 704.0397

Class the fine and decorative arts of nonliterate peoples in 709.011; history and description with respect to racial, ethnic, national groups in places where they predominate in 709.1, 709.3–709.9; history and description with respect to groups of specific kinds of persons of a specific racial, ethnic, national group in 704.04–704.87

.04–.87 History and description with respect to kinds of persons

Add to base number 704 notation 04–87 from Table 7, e.g., lawyers as artists 704.344; however, class art dealers in 380.1457; description, critical appraisal, works, biography of individual artists in 709.2

Class history and description with respect to racial, ethnic, national groups in 704.03, the fine and decorative arts of nonliterate peoples in 709.011

See Manual at 709.2 vs. 380.1457092

.9 Iconography

See Manual at 704.9

.94 Subjects

Development, description, critical appraisal, works

Do not use standard subdivisions

SUMMARY

704.942	**Human figures and their parts**
.943	**Nature and still life**
.944	**Architectural subjects and cityscapes**
.946	**Symbolism and allegory**
.947	**Mythology and legend**
.948	**Religion and religious symbolism**
.949	**Other specific subjects**

.942 Human figures and their parts

Not provided for in 704.946–704.948

Class here portraits

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., groups of children 704.9425 (*not* 704.9426)

Erotica	704.9428
Specific kinds of persons	704.9423–.9425
Groups of figures	704.9426
According to attire	704.9421–.9422

Class works in which the human figure is not the center of interest with the subject, e.g., cityscapes 704.944

.942 092 Persons

Artists and critics

Works about the person portrayed are classed in 704.942

> 704.942 1–704.942 2 According to attire

Class comprehensive works in 704.942

.942 1 Nudes

.942 2 Draped figures

> 704.942 3–704.942 5 Specific kinds of persons

Class comprehensive works in 704.942

.942 3 Men

.942 4 Women

.942 5 Children

.942 6 Groups of figures

.942 8 Erotica

Including pornography

.943 Nature and still life

Not provided for in 704.946–704.948

Standard subdivisions are added for nature and still life or for nature alone

.943 2 Animals

Including hunting scenes

Class symbolism of animals in 704.946; hunting scenes in which animals are not the center of interest with the subject, e.g., hunters 704.9426

See Manual at 704.9

.943 4 Plants

Class symbolism of plants in 704.946

See Manual at 704.9

.943 5 Still life

.943 6 Landscapes

Add to base number 704.9436 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., landscapes of Utah 704.9436792

.943 7 Marine scenes and seascapes

.944 Architectural subjects and cityscapes

Add to base number 704.944 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., cityscapes of England 704.94442

[.945] Abstractionism

Relocated to 709.04052

.946 Symbolism and allegory

For religious symbolism, see 704.948

.947 Mythology and legend

Class religious mythology in 704.948

.948 Religion and religious symbolism

Class here religious mythology

Class significance and purpose of art in religion in 291.37, in Christianity in 246, in other religions in 292–299

(.948 1) (Permanently unassigned)

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to iconography of a specific religion, class it in this number)

.948 2 Christianity

Including icons, santos, votive offerings

For specific Christian subjects, see 704.9484–704.9487

> 704.948 4–704.948 7 Specific Christian subjects

Class here icons, santos, votive offerings

Class comprehensive works in 704.9482

.948 4 Biblical characters and events

For Trinity and Holy Family and its members, see 704.9485; apostles, saints, angels, 704.9486; devils, 704.9487

.948 5 Trinity and Holy Family and its members

.948 52 Trinity

.948 53 Jesus Christ

.948 55 Madonna and Child

Including Mary without Child

.948 56 Holy Family

Presented as a group

Class Jesus Christ in 704.94853, Mary with or without Child in 704.94855, Saint Joseph in 704.94863

.948 6 Apostles, saints, angels

.948 62 Apostles

.948 63 Saints

For Apostles, see 704.94862

.948 64 Angels

.948 7 Devils

.948 9 Other religions

Add to base number 704.9489 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g., Buddhism in art 704.948943

Class Old Testament characters and events in 704.9484

.949 Other specific subjects

Add to base number 704.949 notation 001–999, e.g., industrial subjects 704.9496

705 Serial publications of fine and decorative arts

706 Organizations and management of fine and decorative arts

707 Education, research, related topics of fine and decorative arts

.4 Temporary and traveling collections and exhibits

Class here permanent collections on tour, temporary exhibits of a private collection, auction and sales catalogs in which an exhibition is involved

Do not use for museums and permanent collections and exhibits; class in 708

Class a temporary in-house exhibit selected from a museum's or gallery's permanent collection with the museum or gallery in 708

708 Galleries, museums, private collections of fine and decorative arts

General art collections

Class here annual reports dealing with acquisitions, activities, programs, projects

Do not use for history and description of fine and decorative arts with respect to kinds of persons; class in 704.03–704.87

For temporary and traveling collections and exhibits, see 707.4

.001–.008 Standard subdivisions

.009 Historical and persons treatment

Class geographical treatment in 708.1–708.9

> **708.1–708.9 Geographical treatment**

Class here guidebooks and catalogs of specific galleries, museums, private collections

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to galleries, museums, private collections of a specific country, use one of the following:

(Option A: Place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Japan 708.J [preceding 708.1]

(Option B: Class them in 708.1; in that case class galleries, museums, private collections in North America in 708.97)

Class comprehensive works in 708

.1 In North America

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to galleries, museums, private collections of a specific country other than United States and Canada, class them in this number; in that case class galleries, museums, private collections in North America in 708.97)

Class galleries, museums, private collections in Middle America in 708.972

.11 Canada

Add to base number 708.11 the numbers following —71 in notation 711–719 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in British Columbia 708.111

.13–.19 United States

Add to base number 708.1 the numbers following —7 in notation 73–79 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Pennsylvania 708.148

Class galleries, museums, private collections in Hawaii in 708.9969

.2 In British Isles In England

.21–.28 In England

Add to base number 708.2 the numbers following —42 in notation 421–428 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Manchester 708.2733

.29 In Scotland, Ireland, Wales

Add to base number 708.29 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–42 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Wales 708.2929

.3–.8 In other European countries

Add to base number 708 the numbers following —4 in notation 43–48 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in France 708.4

Class comprehensive works, and galleries, museums, private collections in other European countries not provided for in notation 43–48 from Table 2 in 708.94, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Belgium 708.9493

.9 In other geographical areas

Add to base number 708.9 notation 1, 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., comprehensive works on galleries, museums, private collections in Islamic areas 708.917671, in European countries 708.94

709 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of fine and decorative arts

Development, description, critical appraisal, works

Class here finished works of experimental and mixed-media art that do not fit easily into a recognized medium

Class looting, plundering, theft, destruction of art as a crime in 364.162, two-dimensional experimental and mixed-media art in 760

See Manual at 700

SUMMARY

709.01	**Arts of nonliterate peoples, and earliest times to 499**
.02	**500–1499**
.03	**1500–**
.04	**1900–1999**
.05	**2000–2099**

.01 Arts of nonliterate peoples, and earliest times to 499

.011 Nonliterate peoples

Regardless of time or place, but limited to nonliterate peoples of the past and nonliterate peoples clearly not a part of contemporary society

.011 2 Paleolithic art

.011 3 Rock art

> 709.012–709.05 Periods of development

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality, European art limited by period, school, or style

Class comprehensive works in 709

See Manual at 709.012–709.05 vs. 709.3–709.9

.012 To 4000 B.C.

.013 3999–1000 B.C.

.014 999–1 B.C.

.015 1–499 A.D.

.02 500–1499

Class here medieval art

.021 500–1199

.021 2 Early Christian art

Class early Christian art before 500 in 709.015

.021 4 Byzantine art

Class Byzantine art before 500 in 709.015

.021 6 Romanesque art

.022 1200–1299

Class here Gothic art

Class Gothic art of an earlier or later period with the specific period, e.g., 500–1199 709.021

.023 1300–1399

.024 1400–1499

Class here Renaissance art

Class Renaissance art of an earlier or later period with the period, e.g., 1500–1599 709.031

.03 1500–

For 1900–1999, see 709.04; 2000–2099, 709.05

.031 1500–1599

.032 1600–1699

Class here baroque art

Class baroque art of 1700–1799 in 709.033

.033 1700–1799

Including rococo art

.034 1800–1899

.034 1 Classical revival (Neoclassicism)

Class classical revival of 1700–1799 in 709.033

.034 2 Romanticism

Class romanticism of 1700–1799 in 709.033

.034 3 Naturalism and realism

Class naturalism and realism of an earlier or later period with the specific period, e.g., 1700–1799 709.033

.034 4 Impressionism

Including luminism, pleinairism

.034 5 Neo-impressionism

Including divisionism, pointillism

.034 6 Postimpressionism

.034 7 Symbolism and synthetism

.034 8 Kitsch (Trash)

Comprehensive works

Class kitsch of 1900–1999 in 709.04013

.034 9 Art nouveau

Comprehensive works

Class art nouveau of 1900–1999 in 709.04014

.04 1900–1999

Including artists' books; computer, mail, performance, video art

Class here modern art

For 1800–1899, see 709.034

.040 01–.040 07 Special topics

Add to base number 709.0400 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–07 in table under —0901–0905 in Table 1, e.g., collecting modern art 709.040075

.040 1 Art deco, kitsch, art nouveau

.040 12 Art deco

.040 13 Kitsch (Trash)

Class comprehensive works on kitsch in 709.0348

.040 14 Art nouveau

Class comprehensive works on art nouveau in 709.0349

.040 2 Functionalism

.040 3 Cubism and futurism

Including geometric design

.040 32 Cubism

.040 33 Futurism

.040 4 Expressionism and fauvism

.040 42 Expressionism

Class abstract expressionism in 709.04052

.040 43 Fauvism

.040 5 Abstractionism, nonobjectivity, constructivism

.040 52 Abstractionism [*formerly also* 704.945]

Including abstract expressionism, geometric abstractionism, neoplasticism

.040 56 Nonobjectivity

.040 57 Constructivism

.040 6 Dadaism and surrealism

.040 62 Dadaism

.040 63 Surrealism

.040 7 Composite media and sensations

.040 71 Pop art

.040 72 Optical art (Op art)

.040 73 Kinetic art

.040 74 Happenings, environments, events

.040 75 Conceptual art

.040 76 Land art (Earthworks)

.040 77 Structuralism

.040 78 Multiple art

.040 79 Space art

.041–.049 Periods

Add to base number 709.04 the numbers following —0904 in notation 09041–09049 from Table 1, e.g., arts of 1960–1969 709.046

Class a specific school or style in a specific period in 709.0401–709.0407

.05 2000–2099

.1 Treatment by areas, regions, places in general

Class history and description of fine and decorative arts with respect to kinds of persons in 704.03–704.87, art of nonliterate peoples regardless of place in 709.011

.2 Persons

Class here description, critical appraisal, biography, works of artists not limited to or chiefly identified with a specific form, e.g., painting, or group of forms, e.g., graphic arts

See Manual at 709.2 vs. 380.1457092

.22 Collected treatment

Class works of more than one artist in the same geographical area in 709.1, 709.3–709.9

.3–.9 Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities

Class here art of specific periods, e.g., art of 1800–1899 in South America 709.809034

Class history and description of fine and decorative arts with respect to kinds of persons in 704.03–704.87; art of nonliterate peoples regardless of place in 709.011; comprehensive works on European art of specific periods in 709.01–709.05 (*not* 709.4), e.g., art of 1800–1899 in Europe 709.034 (*not* 709.409034)

See Manual at 709.012–709.05 vs. 709.3–709.9

710 Civic and landscape art

SUMMARY

711	**Area planning (Civic art)**
712	**Landscape architecture (Landscape design)**
713	**Landscape architecture of trafficways**
714	**Water features in landscape architecture**
715	**Woody plants in landscape architecture**
716	**Herbaceous plants in landscape architecture**
717	**Structures in landscape architecture**
718	**Landscape design of cemeteries**
719	**Natural landscapes**

711 Area planning (Civic art)

Design of physical environment for public welfare, convenience, pleasure

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., plans and planning of pedestrian malls in business districts 711.5522 (*not* 711.74)

Plans and planning for specific specific kinds of areas	711.5
Plans and planning of specific elements	711.6–.8
Plans and planning at specific levels	711.2–.4
Procedural and social aspects	711.1

Class interdisciplinary works on area planning in 307.12, comprehensive works on area planning and architecture in 720

For landscape architecture, see 712

See Manual at 711 vs. 307.12

SUMMARY

711.028	**Apparatus, equipment, materials**
.1	**Procedural and social aspects**
.2	**International and national plans and planning**
.3	**Interstate, state, provincial, county plans and planning**
.4	**Local community (City) plans and planning**
.5	**Plans and planning for specific kinds of areas**
.6	**Plans and planning of structural elements**
.7	**Plans and planning of transportation facilities**
.8	**Plans and planning of nontransportation utilities**

.028 Apparatus, equipment, materials

Class auxiliary techniques and procedures in 711.1

.1 Procedural and social aspects

.12 Professional practice and technical procedures

Examples: collection of data, preparation and presentation of plans and models

.13 Social factors affecting planning

.14 Economic factors affecting planning

> **711.2–711.4 Plans and planning at specific levels**

Class comprehensive works in 711

.2 International and national plans and planning

.3 Interstate, state, provincial, county plans and planning

For metropolitan areas, see 711.43

.4 Local community (City) plans and planning

Class here urban renewal (conservation, rehabilitation, redevelopment)

For urban renewal of specific kinds of areas, see 711.5

.409 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here specific cities

> 711.41–711.45 Specific types of plans

Class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number coming last in the schedule, e.g., plans for small cities in cold climates 711.43 (*not* 711.42)

Class comprehensive works in 711.4, specific types of plans and planning for specific cities in 711.409

.41 Plans based on street patterns

Examples: gridiron, radial, studied irregularity plans

.42 Plans based on environment

Examples: plans based on topography and climate

.43 Plans based on size

Examples: villages, small and large cities, metropolitan areas

.45 Plans based on function

Examples: cities serving primarily as governmental, industrial, residential centers

Including new towns

.5 Plans and planning for specific kinds of areas

Class here plans and planning for urban renewal (conservation, rehabilitation, redevelopment) of specific kinds of areas

Class interdisciplinary works on urban renewal in 307.3416

.55 Functional areas

Class here plazas, squares

For religious centers, see 711.56; cultural and educational areas, 711.57; residential areas, 711.58; parking areas, 711.73

.551 Civic, administrative, governmental areas

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all of the topics named in the heading

.552 Commercial and industrial areas

Class plans and planning of transportation facilities in 711.7

.552 2 Commercial areas

Class here business districts, shopping centers

.552 4 Industrial areas

Class here industrial parks

.554 Agricultural areas

.555 Medical centers

.556 Prison and reformatory areas

.557 Hotel and restaurant areas

Including trailer camps for transients

.558 Recreational areas

Examples: parks, playgrounds, theatrical and performing arts centers

.56 Religious centers

.57 Cultural and educational areas

Examples: areas for libraries, museums, colleges and universities

Class theatrical and performing arts centers in 711.558

.58 Residential areas

Urban, suburban, rural areas

Examples: apartment-house districts, trailer parks for long-term residents

For housing renewal, see 711.59; hotel areas, 711.557

.59 Housing renewal

Class interdisciplinary works on housing renewal in 307.34

> **711.6–711.8 Plans and planning of specific elements**

Class comprehensive works in 711.6

.6 Plans and planning of structural elements

Adaptation to site and use

Class here comprehensive works on plans and planning of specific elements

For utilities, see 711.7

.7 Plans and planning of transportation facilities

Class here comprehensive works on plans and planning of utilities

For plans and planning of nontransportation utilities, see 711.8

.72 Bicycle transportation facilities

.73 Motor vehicle transportation facilities

Including parking areas, motorcycle transportation facilities

.74 Pedestrian transportation facilities

Including pedestrian malls

.75 Railroad transportation facilities

Including rapid transit facilities

.76 Marine transportation facilities

.78 Air transportation facilities

.8 Plans and planning of nontransportation utilities

Examples: water, gas, electricity transmission and supply; communication lines; sanitation and flood control facilities

712 Landscape architecture (Landscape design)

Class engineering aspects of landscape architecture in 624

For specific elements in landscape architecture, see 714–717

.01 Philosophy and theory

Class aesthetics, composition, style in 712.2

.028 Apparatus, equipment, materials

Class auxiliary techniques and procedures in 712.3

> **712.2–712.3 General considerations**

Class comprehensive works in 712, general considerations of design of specific kinds of land tracts in 712.5–712.7

.2 Principles

Examples: aesthetics, composition, effect, style

.3 Professional practice and technical procedures

Examples: collection of data, preparation and presentation of plans and models, supervision of operations

---

> **712.5–712.7 Specific kinds of land tracts**

Class comprehensive works in 712

For trafficways, see 713; cemeteries, 718; natural landscapes, 719

.5 Public parks and grounds

Class here amusement parks, commons, fairgrounds, zoological and botanical gardens; comprehensive works on parks

Class parks of public reserved lands in 719.3

For private parks, see 712.6

.6 Private parks and grounds

Class here front yards and backyards, home gardens, penthouse gardens, estates

.7 Semiprivate and institutional grounds

Class here grounds of churches, country clubs, hospitals, hotels, industrial plants, schools

713 Landscape architecture of trafficways

> 714–717 Specific elements in landscape architecture

Class comprehensive works in 712

714 Water features in landscape architecture

Examples: cascades, fountains, natural and artificial pools

Class comprehensive works on fountains in 731.72

715 Woody plants in landscape architecture

Nonflowering and flowering

Class comprehensive works on woody and herbaceous plants in landscape architecture in 712

.1 Topiary work

> **715.2–715.4 Specific kinds of plants**

Class comprehensive works in 715, topiary work on specific kinds of plants in 715.1

.2 Trees

.3 Shrubs

.4 Vines

716 Herbaceous plants in landscape architecture

Nonflowering and flowering

Including ground cover

Class here comprehensive works on flowering plants in landscape architecture

For flowering woody plants, see 715

717 Structures in landscape architecture

Relationship of buildings, terraces, fences, gates, steps, ornamental accessories to other elements of landscape architecture

Including pedestrian facilities, street furniture

718 Landscape design of cemeteries

.8 National cemeteries

719 Natural landscapes

Class natural water features in 714

.3 Reserved lands

.32 Public parks and natural monuments

Standard subdivisions are added for public parks and natural monuments, for public parks alone, or for natural monuments alone

.33 Forest and water-supply reserves

.36 Wildlife reserves

720 Architecture

Class here comprehensive works on architecture and civic and landscape art

For civic and landscape art, see 710

SUMMARY

720.1–.9 **[Standard subdivisions]**
721 **Architectural structure**
722 **Architecture from earliest times to ca. 300**
723 **Architecture from ca. 300 to 1399**
724 **Architecture from 1400**
725 **Public structures**
726 **Buildings for religious and related purposes**
727 **Buildings for educational and research purposes**
728 **Residential and related buildings**
729 **Design and decoration of structures and accessories**

.1 Philosophy and theory

.103–.108 Special topics

Add to base number 720.10 the numbers following 700.10 in 700.103–700.108, e.g., effects of social conditions and factors on architecture 720.103

.2 Miscellany

.22 Illustrations, models, miniatures

[.221] Drafting illustrations

Do not use; class in 720.284

.222 Architectural drawings and related illustrations

Add to base number 720.222 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., architectural drawings from England 720.22242

Class architectural drawings for one structure or a specific type of structure in 725–728, using notation 0222 from table under 721–729

.28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Including site planning

.284 Architectural drawing

Class drawings, illustrations, models in 720.222–720.228

.286 Remodeling

.288 Conservation, preservation, restoration

Do not use for routine maintenance and repair; class in 720.289

Class interdisciplinary works on conservation, preservation, restoration in 363.69

See Manual at 930–990: Historic preservation

.289 Safety measures and routine maintenance and repair

.4 Special topics

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 720.4 in the one coming first, e.g., multiple-purpose skyscrapers 720.483 (*not* 720.49)

.42 Architecture for the handicapped

.43 Architecture for persons in late adulthood and ill persons

.47 Architecture and the environment

.472 Energy resources

Example: use of solar energy

Class here energy conservation

.473 Earth-sheltered buildings

Class here underground architecture

.48 Buildings by shape

Examples: atrium, circular, multistory, single-story buildings

.483 Tall buildings

Class here skyscrapers

.49 Multiple-purpose buildings

Class a multiple-purpose building with one primary purpose with single-purpose buildings of that type, e.g., an apartment building with a floor of commercial space 728.314

.8 Architecture with respect to kinds of persons

[.846] Late adulthood

Do not use; class in 720.43

.87 Gifted persons

Class handicapped persons in 720.42, ill persons in 720.43

.9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here Oriental architecture from ca. 300 limited to a specific country or locality [*formerly* 722], schools and styles limited to a specific country or locality, architectural aspects of historic buildings

Class architectural drawings in 720.222, comprehensive works on specific schools and styles not limited to a specific country or locality in 722–724

See Manual at 913–919: Historic sites and buildings

[.901–.905] Historical periods

Do not use; class in 722–724

[.93] Ancient world

Do not use; class in 722

.942 090 31 English architecture of 1500–1599

Class here Elizabethan architecture [*formerly also* 724.1]

.942 090 32 English architecture of 1600–1699

Including Jacobean architecture [*formerly also* 724.1]

.942 090 33 English architecture of 1700–1799

Including Queen Anne architecture [*formerly also* 724.1]

.946 090 32 Spanish architecture of 1600–1699

Class here Churrigueresque architecture [*formerly also* 724.19]

.95 Asia

Class here comprehensive works on Oriental architecture [*formerly* 722], Buddhist architecture [*formerly* 722.4]

Class Buddhist architecture of national styles not provided for here with the style, e.g., Japanese Buddhist architecture 720.952

.954 South Asia India

Class here comprehensive works on Jain, Hindu architecture [*formerly* 722.4]

.97 North America

Class here comprehensive works on ancient American, ancient North American architecture [*formerly also* 722.91]

.98 South America

Class here ancient South American architecture [*formerly also* 722.91]

> 721–729 Specific aspects of architecture

Add to each term identified by * as follows:

01 Philosophy and theory

0103–0108 Special topics

Add to 010 the numbers following 700.10 in 700.103–700.108, e.g., effects of social conditions and factors on architecture 0103

02 Miscellany

0222 Architectural drawings and related illustrations

Add to 0222 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., architectural drawings from England 022242

028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

0286 Remodeling

0288 Conservation, preservation, restoration

Do not use for routine maintenance and repair; class in 0289

0289 Safety measures and routine maintenance and repair

04 Special topics

Add to 04 the numbers following 720.4 in 720.42–720.49, e.g., energy conservation 0472

09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class architectural drawings in 0222

Class comprehensive works in 720

721 Architectural structure

Class here interdisciplinary works on design and construction

Class architectural structure of specific types of structures in 725–728

For engineering design and construction, see 690; design and decoration, 729; structural engineering, 624.1

See Manual at 721; 721 vs. 690

SUMMARY

721.01–.09	**Standard subdivisions**
.1	**Foundations**
.2	**Walls**
.3	**Columnar constructions**
.4	**Curved constructions and details**
.5	**Roofs and roof structures**
.6	**Floors**
.7	**Ceilings**
.8	**Other elements**

.01–.02 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 720.1–720.2, e.g., remodeling 721.0286; however, class materials in 721.044

.04 Special topics

.042 Buildings by shape

Examples: atrium, circular, multistory, single-story buildings

Class architectural construction of buildings of specific materials regardless of shape in 721.044

.044 Specific materials

.044 1–.044 6 Masonry

Add to base number 721.044 the numbers following 693 in 693.1–693.6, e.g., architectural construction in reinforced concrete 721.04454

.044 7 Metals

Add to base number 721.0447 the numbers following 669 in 669.1–669.7, e.g., architectural construction in aluminum 721.0447722

.044 8 Wood

.044 9 Other

Add to base number 721.0449 the numbers following 693.9 in 693.91–693.99, e.g., architectural construction in glass 721.04496

.046 Other special topics of architectural construction

Add to base number 721.046 the numbers following 720.4 in 720.42–720.49, e.g., energy conservation 721.04672; however, class buildings by shape in 721.042

> **721.1–721.8 Structural elements**

Class here design [*formerly also* 729.3], decoration [*formerly* 729.3]

Class comprehensive works in 721, decoration of structural elements in specific mediums in 729.4–729.8

.1 Foundations

.2 Walls

Including footings, entablatures; colonnades, partitions; bearing and retaining walls

Arcades relocated to 721.41

See also 725.96 for free-standing walls

.3 Columnar constructions

Examples: abutments, colonnettes, columns, pedestals, piers, pilasters, posts

For colonnades, entablatures, see 721.2

.36 Architectural orders

For entablatures, see 721.2

.4 Curved constructions and details

.41 Arcades [*formerly* 721.2] and arches

For groined arches, see 721.44

See also 725.96 for free-standing arches

.43 Vaults

For specific types of vaults, see 721.44–721.45

> 721.44–721.45 Specific types of vaults

Class comprehensive works in 721.43

.44 Groined vaults

Including groined arches

.45 Other types of vaults

Examples: expanding, fan, rib, tunnel vaults

.46 Domes

Class cupolated roofs in 721.5

.48 Niches

.5 Roofs and roof structures

Examples: dormers, gables; cornices, pediments; cupolas, pinnacles, spires, towers

Including chimneys, skylights

.6 Floors

.7 Ceilings

.8 Other elements

Examples: balustrades, fastenings, fireplaces

.82 Openings

Class here blinds

.822 Doors and doorways

.823 Windows

Class windows as parts of roof structures in 721.5

.83 Means of vertical access

Example: ramps

.832 Stairs

Including escalators

.833 Elevators

.84 Extensions

Examples: balconies, decks, patios, porches

> 722–724 Architectural schools and styles

Class comprehensive works, schools and styles from ca. 300 limited to a specific country or locality in 720.9; architects of specific schools and styles not limited to a specific type of structure in 720.92; specific types of structures regardless of school or style in 725–728; details of construction of specific schools and styles in 721; design and decoration of structures of specific schools and styles in 729

722 Architecture from earliest times to ca. 300

Comprehensive works on Oriental architecture relocated to 720.95, Oriental architecture from ca. 300 limited to a specific country or locality relocated to 720.9, comprehensive works on Oriental architecture from ca. 300 to 1399 relocated to 723, comprehensive works on Oriental architecture from 1400 relocated to 724

.1 Ancient Chinese, Japanese, Korean architecture

Class here ancient Oriental architecture

Class ancient architecture of ancient south and southeast Asia in 722.4, of ancient Middle East in 722.5

.11 *Ancient Chinese architecture

Class ancient Tibetan architecture in 722.4

.12 *Ancient Japanese architecture

.13 *Ancient Korean architecture

.2 *Ancient Egyptian architecture

.3 *Ancient Semitic architecture

Class comprehensive works on Semitic architecture in 720.8992

.31 Phoenician architecture

Class here architecture of Tyre, Sidon, Beirut, Byblos

For colonial Phoenician, see 722.32

.32 Colonial Phoenician architecture

Examples: architecture of ancient Carthage, Utica, Cadiz, Cyprus

.33 Ancient Palestinian architecture

Including Israelite, Judean, Jewish architecture

.4 Ancient south and southeast Asian architecture

Comprehensive works on Buddhist architecture relocated to 720.95, on Jain, Hindu architecture relocated to 720.954

.44 *Ancient Indian architecture

.5 Ancient Middle Eastern architecture

For Semitic architecture, see 722.3; Egyptian architecture, 722.2; Aegean architecture, 722.61

.51 Mesopotamian architecture

.52 Ancient Persian architecture

.6 Ancient Western architecture

For Roman architecture, see 722.7; Greek (Hellenic) architecture, 722.8; other ancient Western architecture, 722.9

*Add as instructed under 721–729

.61 *Aegean, *Minoan, *Mycenaean architecture

.62 *Etruscan architecture

.7 *Roman architecture

.709 37 Architecture of Italian Peninsula and adjacent territories

Class architecture of Roman empire in 722.7

.8 *Greek (Hellenic) architecture

Class here comprehensive works on Greek and Roman architecture

For Roman architecture, see 722.7

.809 38 Architecture of Greece

Class architecture of Hellenistic world in 722.8

.9 Other ancient Western architecture

[.91] Ancient American architecture

Comprehensive works on ancient American, ancient North American architecture relocated to 720.97; on ancient South American architecture to 720.98

723 Architecture from ca. 300 to 1399

Class here comprehensive works on Oriental architecture from ca. 300 to 1399 [*formerly* 722]; medieval architecture

[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use notation 09 from Table 1 here or in any subdivision of 723; class architecture from ca. 300 to 1399 limited to a specific country or locality in 720.9, persons treatment in 720.92

.1 Early Christian architecture

.2 Byzantine architecture

.3 Saracenic architecture

Class here Muslim, Moorish, Mudejar styles

.4 Romanesque and Norman architecture

.5 Gothic architecture

724 Architecture from 1400

Class here comprehensive works on Oriental architecture from 1400 [*formerly* 722], modern architecture

[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use notation 09 from Table 1 here or in any subdivision of 724; class architecture from 1400 limited to a specific country or locality in 720.9, persons treatment in 720.92

*Add as instructed under 721–729

.1 1400–1800

Class here colonial styles

Elizabethan architecture relocated to 720.94209031, Jacobean architecture to 720.94209032, Queen Anne architecture relocated to 720.94209033

Class colonial styles of a later period with the period, e.g., 1800–1899 724.5

.12 1400–1499

Class here Renaissance architecture

Class Renaissance architecture of an earlier or later period with the period, e.g., 1500–1599 724.14

.14 1500–1599

.16 1600–1699

Class here comprehensive works on baroque architecture [*formerly* 724.19]

Class baroque architecture of 1700–1799 in 724.19

.19 1700–1799

Class here Georgian, rococo architecture

Churrigueresque architecture relocated to 720.94609032, comprehensive works on baroque architecture relocated to 724.16

.2 Classical revival architecture

Class here neoclassical architecture [*formerly also* 724.5]

.22 Roman revival architecture

.23 Greek revival architecture

.3 Gothic revival architecture

.5 1800–1899

Class here eclecticism, revivals, Victorian architecture

Neoclassical architecture relocated to 724.2

Class eclecticism and revivals of another specific period with the period, e.g., 1700–1799 724.19

For classical revival architecture, see 724.2, gothic revival architecture, 724.3

.52 Italianate revivals

Including Romanesque revival [*formerly* 724.8], Renaissance revival architecture

.6 1900–1999 [*formerly* 724.91]

Including art nouveau, expressionism, international style, functionalism

[.7] Swiss timber and half-timber

Provision discontinued because without meaning in styles of architecture

[.8] **Romanesque revival architecture**

Relocated to 724.52

[.9] **1900–**

Use of this number discontinued; class in 724

[.91] 1900–1999

Relocated to 724.6

> ## 725–728 Specific types of structures

Class here development of architectural schools and styles, comprehensive works on specific structures and their interior design and decorations, interdisciplinary works on design and construction

Class comprehensive works in 720; engineering design and construction of specific types of habitable structures in 690.5–690.8; structures rehabilitated to a single new use with the new use, e.g., warehouses converted into apartments 728.314; structures rehabilitated to multiple new uses with the old use, e.g., warehouses converted into retail stores and apartments 725.35

For structural engineering, see 624.1; interior decoration, 747

725 Public structures

Not used primarily for religious, educational, research, residential purposes

SUMMARY

725.1	**Government buildings**
.2	**Commercial and communications buildings**
.3	**Transportation and storage buildings**
.4	**Industrial buildings**
.5	**Health and welfare buildings**
.6	**Prison and reformatory buildings**
.7	**Refreshment facilities and park structures**
.8	**Recreation buildings**
.9	**Other public structures**

.1 *Government buildings

Class here international government, civic center buildings

.11 *Legislative buildings

Class here capitols

.12 *Executive buildings

Class here buildings containing branches of executive department

.13 *County and *city government buildings

.14 *Customs buildings

.15 *Court, *record, *archive buildings

*Add as instructed under 721–729

.16 *Post offices

.17 *Official residences

Including embassy, legation, consulate buildings

Class here executive mansions, palaces of rulers

.18 *Military and *police buildings

Examples: barracks, forts, castles, fortresses, armory and arsenal buildings

Class engineering of forts and fortresses in 623.1, comprehensive works on castles in 728.81

.19 *Fire stations

.2 *Commercial and communications buildings

For refreshment facilities, see 725.7

.21 *Retail trade buildings

Class here stores, shops; bazaars, shopping malls

.23 *Office and *communications buildings

Examples: medical office buildings and clinics, radio and television buildings and towers

.24 *Financial institutions

For exchanges, see 725.25

.25 *Exchanges

Examples: stock and commodity exchange, board of trade, chamber of commerce buildings

.3 *Transportation and storage buildings

.31 *Railroad and *rapid transit stations

Class here passenger stations

For railroad freight stations, see 725.32

.32 *Railroad freight stations

.33 *Railroad and *rapid transit buildings

Examples: roundhouses, shops; tool storage, guard, signal buildings

For railroad and rapid transit stations, see 725.31

.34 *Marine transportation facilities

Examples: docks, piers

Class shipyards in 725.4; engineering of naval facilities in 623.64; engineering of harbors, ports, roadsteads in 627.2

*Add as instructed under 721–729

.35 *Warehouses

Class here comprehensive works on storage buildings

Class a specific kind of storage building other than warehouse with the kind, e.g., storage elevators 725.36

.36 *Storage elevators

.38 *Motor vehicle transportation buildings

Examples: bus terminals, garages, filling stations

.39 *Air transportation buildings

Examples: air terminals, hangars

Class engineering of military air facilities in 623.66

.4 *Industrial buildings

Examples: factories, mills, plants, shipyards

.5 *Health and welfare buildings

For medical office buildings and clinics, see 725.23

.51 *General hospital and sanitarium buildings

For children's hospital buildings, see 725.57

.52 *Psychiatric hospital buildings

.53 *Buildings of institutions for persons with mental handicaps

.54 *Buildings of institutions for persons with physical handicaps

.55 *Buildings of institutions for the poor

Class buildings of institutions for indigent persons in late adulthood in 725.56

.56 *Buildings of institutions for persons in late adulthood

.57 *Child welfare institutions and *children's hospital buildings

.59 Other

.592 *Veterinary hospitals and shelters

.594 *Homes for veterans

.597 *Morgues and *crematories

.6 *Prison and *reformatory buildings

.7 Refreshment facilities and park structures

.71 *Restaurant buildings

.72 *Bars (Pubs)

.73 *Bathhouses and *saunas

*Add as instructed under 721–729

.74 *Swimming pools

.76 *Amusement park buildings and *casinos

.8 Recreation buildings

For refreshment facilities and park structures, see 725.7

.804 General categories of recreation buildings

.804 2 Multiple-purpose complexes

Class here cultural centers, recreation centers

Class community centers for adult education in 727.9

.804 3 Sports complexes

Variant names: sports centers, sports pavilions

.81 *Music halls and *concert halls

For opera houses, see 725.822

.82 *Buildings for shows and spectacles

.822 *Theaters and *opera houses

.827 *Buildings for outdoor performances and *for outdoor sports

Example: grandstands

Class here amphitheaters, astrodomes, stadiums

For racetrack buildings, see 725.89

.83 *Auditoriums

Class here performing arts centers

For music halls and concert halls, see 725.81; theaters and opera houses, 725.822

.84 *Buildings for indoor games

Examples: bowling alleys; pool halls; halls for card games, checkers, chess

For gymnasiums, see 725.85

.85 *Gymnasiums and *athletic club buildings

.86 *Rinks and *dance halls

.87 *Boathouses and *recreation pier buildings

Including canoe club, yacht club buildings

.88 *Riding-club buildings

.89 *Racetrack buildings

*Add as instructed under 721–729

.9 Other public structures

.91 *Convention centers

Class here exhibition buildings

.94 *Memorial buildings

Class memorial buildings for a specific purpose with the purpose, e.g., memorial library buildings 727.8

.96 Arches, gateways, walls

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all of the topics in the heading

See also 721.2 for walls as structural elements, 721.41 for arches as structural elements

.97 *Towers

Examples: bell, clock towers

.98 Bridges, tunnels, moats

Class engineering of moats in 623.31, of tunnels in 624.193, of bridges in 624.2

726 Buildings for religious and related purposes

SUMMARY

726.1	**Temples and shrines**
.2	**Mosques and minarets**
.3	**Synagogues and Judaic temples**
.4	**Accessory houses of worship**
.5	**Buildings associated with Christianity**
.6	**Cathedrals**
.7	**Monastic buildings**
.8	**Mortuary chapels and tombs**
.9	**Other buildings for religious and related purposes**

> **726.1–726.3 Buildings associated with non-Christian religions**

Class comprehensive works in 726; a specific kind of building for religious purposes associated with a specific religion with the building, e.g., Buddhist monasteries 726.7843

See also 726.5 for buildings associated with Christianity

.1 *Temples and *shrines

Add to base number 726.1 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g., Buddhist temples and shrines 726.143; however, class mosques and minarets in 726.2, synagogues and Judaic temples in 726.3

See Manual at 726.1

.2 *Mosques and *minarets

.3 *Synagogues and *Judaic temples

*Add as instructed under 721–729

.4 *Accessory houses of worship

For all religions

Examples: chapels, parish houses, Sunday school buildings

Class here comprehensive works on baptistries

Class baptistries as a part of church buildings in 726.596

For mortuary chapels, see 726.8

See also 726.595 for side chapels

.5 *Buildings associated with Christianity

Class here church buildings

Class a specific kind of building not provided for here with the building, e.g., Franciscan monasteries 726.773

For cathedrals, see 726.6

.51 Design [*formerly also* 726.523], decoration [*formerly* 726.523], construction of structural elements

Add to base number 726.51 the numbers following 721 in 721.1–721.8, e.g., design, decoration, construction of church vaulting 726.5143

Class decoration of structural elements in specific mediums in 726.524–726.528

.52 Design and decoration of parts and built-in church furniture

[.523] Design and decoration of structural elements

Relocated to 726.51

.524–.528 Decoration in specific mediums

Add to base number 726.52 the numbers following 729 in 729.4–729.8, e.g., decoration in relief 726.525

Class decorations of built-in church furniture in 726.529; decoration in a specific medium not in an architectural context with the medium, e.g., sculpture 730

.529 Built-in church furniture [*formerly also* 729.9]

Class built-in church furniture in a specific medium not in an architectural context with the medium, e.g., carved pew ends 731.54

.529 1 Sacramental furniture

Examples: altars, baptismal fonts, confessionals, tabernacles

.529 2 Rostral furniture

Examples: pulpits, lecterns, prayer desks

.529 3 Seats and canopies

Examples: baldachins, bishops' thrones, choir stalls, pews

*Add as instructed under 721–729

.529 6 Screens and railings

Examples: altar and rood screens, altar and chancel railings, reredoses

.529 7 Organ cases

.529 8 Lighting fixtures

.58 Buildings of specific denominations

Add to base number 726.58 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., Anglican church buildings 726.583

Class geographical treatment of buildings of specific denominations in 726.509, specific parts of church buildings of specific denominations in 726.59

.59 Parts

Class design and construction of parts in 726.51, design and decoration of parts in 726.52

.591 Entrances and approaches

.592 Naves and transepts

.593 Chancels, sanctuaries, choir lofts, pulpit platforms

.594 Clerestories

.595 Side chapels

See also 726.4 for chapels as separate buildings

.596 Sacristies and baptistries

Class comprehensive works on baptistries in 726.4

.597 Towers and steeples

.6 *Cathedrals

Class details and parts of cathedrals in 726.51–726.59

> 726.62–726.65 Cathedrals of specific denominations

Class comprehensive works in 726.6, geographical treatment of cathedrals of specific denominations in 726.609

.62 Cathedrals of Eastern churches

For Eastern Orthodox cathedrals, see 726.63

.63 Eastern Orthodox cathedrals

.64 Roman Catholic cathedrals

.65 Anglican cathedrals

*Add as instructed under 721–729

.69 Accessory structures

Examples: cathedral cloisters, chapter houses

Class here comprehensive works on cloisters

Class monastic cloisters in 726.79

.7 *Monastic buildings

Class here abbeys, convents, friaries, monasteries, priories

Class monastic churches either as a place of public worship or as a separate church building in 726.5

.77 Of specific Christian orders

Add to base number 726.77 the numbers following 271 in 271.1–271.9, e.g., Franciscan monasteries 726.773

Class geographical treatment of buildings of specific orders in 726.709

.78 Of orders of other religions

Add to base number 726.78 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g., Buddhist monasteries 726.7843

.79 Parts and accessory structures

Examples: cells, cloisters, refectories

Class monastic libraries in 727.8

.8 *Mortuary chapels and *tombs

.9 Other buildings for religious and related purposes

Examples: episcopal palaces, missions, parsonages, buildings of religious associations, buildings housing roadside shrines

727 *Buildings for educational and research purposes

Class here school buildings

.1 *Elementary school buildings

.2 *Secondary school buildings

.3 *College and university buildings

Class specialized buildings of colleges and universities in 727.4–727.8

.38 Accessory structures

Examples: dining halls, dormitories, student unions

Music room buildings relocated to 727.478

.4 Professional and technical school buildings

Use 727.40001–727.40009 for standard subdivisions

Add to base number 727.4 notation 001–999, e.g., music room buildings 727.478 [*formerly also* 727.38], law school buildings 727.434

*Add as instructed under 721–729

.5 Research buildings

Examples: laboratory, observatory buildings

Use 727.50001–727.50009 for standard subdivisions

Add to base number 727.5 notation 001–999, e.g., physics laboratories 727.553

.6 Museum buildings

Use 727.60001–727.60009 for standard subdivisions

Add to base number 727.6 notation 001–999, e.g., science museum buildings 727.65

For art museum buildings, see 727.7

.7 *Art museum and *gallery buildings

.8 *Library buildings

> 727.82–727.84 Specific kinds of libraries

Class comprehensive works in 727.8, geographical treatment regardless of kind of library in 727.809

.82 General libraries

Add to base number 727.82 the numbers following 027 in 027.1–027.8, e.g., public library buildings 727.824; then add further as instructed under 721–729

For branch libraries, see 727.84

.83 Libraries devoted to specific subjects

.84 Branch libraries

.9 Other buildings for educational and research purposes

Examples: community centers for adult education, learned society buildings

728 *Residential and related buildings

Class here domestic architecture, conventional housing

Class residential educational buildings in 727.1–727.3

For official residences, see 725.17; episcopal palaces, parsonages, 726.9

.1 *Low-cost housing

Unit and multiple dwellings designed along simple lines to reduce construction costs

Class specific types of low-cost housing in 728.3–728.7

.3 Specific kinds of conventional housing

Use of this number for comprehensive works on conventional housing discontinued; class in 728

*Add as instructed under 721–729

.31 *Multiple dwellings

.312 *Row houses and *townhouses

Including duplex houses

.314 *Apartments (Flats)

Including apartment hotels, tenements

.37 *Separate houses

Class here cottages

Class farmhouses and farm cottages in 728.6, vacation houses in 728.72, large and elaborate private dwellings in 728.8

.370 472 Energy conservation

Including solar houses [*formerly* 728.69]

.372 *Houses with two or more stories

.373 *Single-story houses

Class here bungalows, ranch and split-level houses

> **728.4–728.7 Special-purpose housing**

Class comprehensive works in 728

.4 *Club houses

Country, city, fraternal clubs

Class a type of club house not provided for here with the type, e.g., racetrack club houses 725.89

.5 *Hotels and *motels

For apartment hotels, see 728.314

.6 *Farmhouses and *farm cottages

Class farm buildings other than human residences in 728.92

[.67] Farmhouses and farm cottages

Use of this number discontinued; class in 728.6

[.69] Solar houses

Relocated to 728.370472

.7 *Vacation houses, cabins, hunting lodges, houseboats, mobile homes

.72 *Vacation houses

.73 *Cabins

Class vacation cabins in 728.72

*Add as instructed under 721–729

.78 Houseboats

.79 Mobile homes

Examples: campers, trailers

For houseboats, see 728.78

See Manual at 629.226 vs. 643.2, 690.879, 728.79

.8 *Large and elaborate private dwellings

Class here chateaux, manor houses, mansions, plantation houses, villas

.81 *Castles

Fortified residences

Class here comprehensive works on architecture of castles

Class castles as military structures in 725.18

.82 *Palaces

Residences of the nobility

Use of this number for chateaux discontinued; class in 728.8

Class fortified palaces in 728.81

See also 725.17 for palaces of rulers, 726.9 for episcopal palaces

[.83–.84] Mansions, manor houses, villas

Numbers discontinued; class in 728.8

.9 Accessory domestic structures

Examples: bathhouses, conservatories, garages, gatehouses, patios, saunas, swimming pools

.92 Farm buildings other than human residences

.922 *Barns

729 Design and decoration of structures and accessories

Class here interior design (the art or practice of planning and supervising the design and execution of architectural interiors and their furnishings)

Class design and decoration of structures and accessories of specific types of buildings in 725–728

For interior decoration, see 747

See Manual at 729

> **729.1–729.2 Design in specific planes**

Class comprehensive works in 729, design of structural elements in specific planes in 721.1–721.8

*Add as instructed under 721–729

.1 Design in vertical plane

Examples: facades, elevations, sections

.11 Composition

.13 Proportion

.19 Inscriptions and lettering

.2 Design in horizontal plane (Plans and planning)

As related to function and size of areas

Class here modular design

.23 Proportion

.24 *Interior arrangement

.25 *Lines of interior communication

.28 Lighting

.29 Acoustics

[.3] Design and decoration of structural elements

Relocated to 721.1–721.8

> **729.4–729.8 Decoration in specific mediums**

Class comprehensive works in 729; decoration in a specific medium not in an architectural context with the medium, e.g., sculpture 730

.4 Decoration in paint

As an adjunct to architecture

.5 Decoration in relief

Examples: carved and sculptured decoration and ornament, Gothic tracery

.6 Decoration in veneer and incrustation

Use of wood, stone, metal, enamel in architectural decoration

.7 Decoration in mosaic

Class comprehensive works on mosaics in 738.5

.8 Decoration in ornamental glass

[.9] Built-in church furniture

Relocated to 726.529

*Add as instructed under 721–729

730 Plastic arts Sculpture

Class kinetic, sound sculpture; mixed media and composites; assemblages, constructions; land art in 709.04

SUMMARY

730.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of plastic arts
.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of sculpture
731 Processes, forms, subjects of sculpture
732 Sculpture from earliest times to ca. 500, sculpture of nonliterate peoples
733 Greek, Etruscan, Roman sculpture
734 Sculpture from ca. 500 to 1399
735 Sculpture from 1400
736 Carving and carvings
737 Numismatics and sigillography
738 Ceramic arts
739 Art metalwork

.01 Philosophy and theory of plastic arts

.02 Miscellany of plastic arts

.028 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials of plastic arts

Class here techniques of two or more of the plastic arts, e.g., firing of clays in sculpture and ceramics

.03–.09 Standard subdivisions of plastic arts

> **730.1–730.9 Standard subdivisions of sculpture**

Class comprehensive works in 730

.1 Philosophy and theory of sculpture

.11 Appreciative aspects

Do not use for systems; class in 730.1

Class psychological principles in 730.19

.117 Aesthetics

.118 Criticism and appreciation

Theory, technique, history

Class works of critical appraisal in 730.9

.18 Inherent features

Examples: color, composition, decorative values, form, movement, space, style, symmetry, vision

.2 Miscellany of sculpture

[.28] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 731.028

.3–.8 Standard subdivisions of sculpture

.9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of sculpture

Class here Oriental sculpture from ca. 500 limited to a specific country or locality [*formerly* 732.3–732.9], schools and styles limited to a specific country or locality

Class comprehensive works on specific schools and styles not limited to country or locality in 732–735, sculpture of nonliterate peoples regardless of time or place in 732.2

[.901–.905] Historical periods

Do not use; class in 732–735

.92 Sculptors

Description, critical appraisal, biography of sculptors and their works regardless of process, representation, style or school, period, place

Class sculptors who also work in the other plastic arts in 730.092

.922 Collected sculptors

Including works of sculptors from several geographical areas

Class works of more than one sculptor in the same geographical area in 730.91, 730.94–730.99, 732–735

[.93] Ancient world

Do not use; class in 732–733

.95 Asia

Class here comprehensive works on Oriental sculpture [*formerly* 732.3–732.9], Buddhist sculpture [*formerly* 732.4]

Class Buddhist sculpture not provided for here with the style, e.g., Japanese Buddhist sculpture 730.952

.954 South Asia India

Class here comprehensive works on Jain, Hindu sculpture [*formerly* 732.4]

> 731–735 Sculpture

Class comprehensive works in 730

See Manual at 736–739 vs. 731–735

731 Processes, forms, subjects of sculpture

Class processes, forms, subjects of individual sculptors in 730.92; of specific periods and by specific schools in 732–735; of specific medieval or modern schools limited to a specific country or locality in 730.9

SUMMARY

731.028 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
.2 Materials
.3 Apparatus and equipment
.4 Techniques and procedures
.5 Forms
.7 Specific types of sculpture in the round
.8 Iconography

.028 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Comprehensive works

Class techniques and procedures in 731.4, apparatus and equipment in 731.3, materials in 731.2

> **731.2–731.4 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials**

Class comprehensive works in 731.028; forms and subjects employing techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials in 731.5–731.8

.2 Materials

Examples: metals, wire, wood, stone, ceramic material, clay, glass, wax, rope, textiles, plastics, fiber glass, paper, papier-mâché, found objects

Class use of materials in specific techniques in 731.4

.3 Apparatus and equipment

Examples: tools, machines, accessories

Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 731.4

.4 Techniques and procedures

.41 Direct-metal sculpture

Examples: beating, hammering, bending, shaping, cutting, welding, soldering metals (including pipe and wire)

Class art metalwork in 739

.42 Modeling

In clay, wax, other plastic materials with and without armatures

.43 Molding

Preparation of molds and models

Class use of molds in 731.45

.45 Casting

Example: sand casting

.452 In plaster and cement

.453 In plastics

.456 In bronze

Including lost-wax casting

Class here casting in metals

For casting in other metals, see 731.457

.457 In other metals

.46 Carving and chiseling techniques in sculpture

.462 Sculpturing in wood

.463 Sculpturing in stone

.47 Firing and baking

Including firing and baking clay models for molding

Class techniques of firing and baking in ceramics in 738.143

.48 Conservation, preservation, restoration, routine maintenance and repair, safety measures

.5 Forms

Not limited by time, place, person

General aspects: development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works

For sculpture in the round, see 731.7

.54 Sculpture in relief

Class iconography of sculpture in relief in 731.8

.542 Portals and doors

.549 Monumental reliefs

For monumental brasses, see 739.522

.55 Mobiles and stabiles

.7 Specific types of sculpture in the round

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works

Example: totem poles

Class iconography of sculpture in the round in 731.8

.72 Decorative sculpture

Examples: garden sculpture, fountains, sculptured vases and urns

.74 Busts

.75 Masks

.76 Monuments

For monumental brasses, see 739.522

.8 Iconography

Not limited by time, place, person

General aspects: development, description, critical appraisal, works

.81 Equestrian sculpture

.82–.89 Other specific subjects

Add to base number 731.8 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., mythology and legend 731.87; however, class busts in 731.74, masks in 731.75

> **732–735 Schools and styles of sculpture**

Class comprehensive works, medieval and modern Western schools and styles limited to a specific country or locality in 730.9; sculptors associated with specific schools and styles in 730.92

732 Sculpture from earliest times to ca. 500, sculpture of nonliterate peoples

[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class persons treatment in 730.9, historical, geographical treatment in 732

.2 Sculpture of nonliterate peoples

Regardless of time or place

.22 Paleolithic sculpture

.23 Rock art (sculpture)

> **732.3–732.9 Ancient sculpture**

Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 in any subdivision of 732.3–732.9; class all persons treatment in 730.9

Comprehensive works on Oriental sculpture relocated to 730.95, Oriental sculpture from ca. 500 limited to a specific country or locality relocated to 730.9, comprehensive works on Oriental sculpture from ca. 500 to 1399 relocated to 734, comprehensive works on Oriental sculpture from 1400 relocated to 735

Class comprehensive works in 732

.3 Ancient Palestinian sculpture

Including Israelite, Judean, Jewish sculpture

.4 Ancient south and southeast Asian sculpture

Comprehensive works on Buddhist sculpture relocated to 730.95, on Jain, Hindu sculpture relocated to 730.954

.44 Ancient Indian sculpture

.5 Mesopotamian and ancient Persian sculpture

.6 Ancient Germanic, Celtic, Slavic, Iberian, British sculpture

.7 Ancient Oriental sculpture

Class ancient Oriental sculpture of a specific place not provided for here with the place, e.g., ancient Indian sculpture 732.44

.71 Ancient Chinese sculpture

.72 Ancient Japanese sculpture

.73 Ancient Korean sculpture

.8 Ancient Egyptian sculpture

.9 Sculpture of other ancient areas

Add to base number 732.9 the numbers following —39 in notation 391–398 from Table 2, e.g., Phoenician sculpture 732.944; however, ancient sculpture of Greek Archipelago relocated from 732.91 to 733.309391

For Greek, Etruscan, Roman sculpture, see 733

733 Greek, Etruscan, Roman sculpture

.3 Greek (Hellenic) sculpture

Comprehensive works on Greek and Roman sculpture is classed in 733

.309 38 Sculpture of Greece

Class sculpture of Hellenistic world in 733.3

.309 391 Sculpture of Greek Archipelago [*formerly* 732.91]

.4 Etruscan sculpture

.5 Roman sculpture

.509 37 Sculpture of Italian Peninsula and adjacent territories

Class sculpture of Roman Empire in 733.5

734 Sculpture from ca. 500 to 1399

Class here comprehensive works on Oriental sculpture from ca. 500 to 1399 [*formerly* 732.3–732.9]; medieval sculpture

Class sculpture from ca. 500 to 1399 limited to a specific country or locality in 730.9

[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use notation 09 from Table 1 here or in any subdivision of 734; class all geographical and persons treatment in 730.9

.2 Styles

.22 Early Christian and Byzantine sculpture

.222 Early Christian sculpture

.224 Byzantine sculpture

.24 Romanesque sculpture

.25 Gothic sculpture

735 Sculpture from 1400

Class here comprehensive works on Oriental sculpture from 1400 [*formerly* 732.3–732.9]; modern sculpture

Class sculpture from 1400 limited to a specific country or locality in 730.9

[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use notation 09 from Table 1 here or in any subdivision of 735; class all geographical and persons treatment in 730.9

.2 Specific periods

.21 1400–1799

Examples: Renaissance, baroque sculpture

.22 1800–1899

Examples: classical revival sculpture, romanticism, realism

.23 1900–1999

.230 4 Schools and styles

Add to base number 735.2304 the numbers following 709.040 in 709.0401–709.0407, e.g., abstractionism in sculpture 735.230452

.231–.239 Periods

Add to base number 735.23 the numbers following —0904 in notation 09041–09049 from Table 1, e.g., sculpture of 1960–1969 735.236

.24 2000–2099

> 736–739 Other plastic arts

Processes and products

Class comprehensive works in 730, other plastic arts not provided for here in 745–749

See also 731–735 for sculpture

See Manual at 736–739 vs. 731–735

736 Carving and carvings

.2 Precious and semiprecious stones (Glyptics)

Class engraved seals, stamps, signets in 737.6, setting of precious and semiprecious stones in 739.27

.202 8 Lapidary work

Contains cutting, polishing, engraving gems

.22 Specific forms

Class scarabs in 736.20932, carving in specific materials regardless of form in 736.23–736.28

.222 Cameos

.223 Intaglios

.224 Figurines

> 736.23–736.28 Specific stones

Class comprehensive works in 736.2

.23 Diamonds

.24 Jade

See also 731–735 for jade sculpture

.25 Sapphires

.28 Obsidian

.4 Wood

Including whittling

Example: butter prints and molds

See also 731–735 for wood sculpture, 745.51 for wood handicrafts

.5 Stone

Including lettering, inscriptions, designs

Class here effigial and sepulchral slabs

.6 Ivory, bone, horn, shell, amber

.62 Ivory

Class netsukes of ivory in 736.68

See also 731–735 for ivory sculpture

.68 Netsukes

.7 Ornamental fans

Class fans of a specific material with the material, e.g., ivory fans 736.62

.9 Other materials

.93 Wax

.94 Snow and ice

.95 Soap

.98 Paper cutting and folding

.982 Origami

.984 Silhouettes

Class comprehensive works on drawing and cutting silhouettes in 741.7

737 Numismatics and sigillography

For paper money, see 769.55

.2 Medals and related objects

.22 Medals

Class here medallions

.222 Commemorative medals

.223 Civilian and military medals

Including decorations, orders

.224 Religious medals

.23 Talismans and amulets

.24 Pins and buttons

.242 Political (Campaign) pins and buttons

.243 Sports pins and buttons

Example: baseball pins and buttons

.3 Counters and tokens

Standard subdivisions are added for counters and tokens, for counters alone, for tokens alone

.4 Coins

Class here counterfeit coins

.409 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class coins of specific countries in 737.49

.43 Gold coins

.430 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class gold coins of specific countries in 737.49

.49 Of specific countries

By place of origin

Add to base number 737.49 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Roman coins minted in Egypt 737.4932

See also 737.43094 for gold coins of Europe

.6 Engraved seals, stamps, signets

Class here sigillography

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all of the topics in the heading

738 Ceramic arts

Class here pottery

Class ceramic sculpture in 731–735

Works about "pottery" in the sense of porcelain and earthenware or stoneware are classed here, in the sense of only porcelain are classed in 738.2

For glass, see 748

SUMMARY

738.01–.09	**Standard subdivisions**
.1	**Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials**
.2	**Porcelain**
.3	**Earthenware and stoneware**
.4	**Enameling and enamels**
.5	**Mosaics**
.6	**Ornamental bricks and tiles**
.8	**Other products**

[.028] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 738.1

.09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here brands of pottery [*formerly* 738.23]

.092 Potters

Description, critical appraisal, biography of potters regardless of material or product

Class here ceramic artists

Class enamelers in 738.4092, mosaicists in 738.5092

.1 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

.12 Materials

Examples: clays, e.g., kaolin; glazes, e.g., petuntse; color materials

Class use of materials in specific techniques in 738.14

.13 Apparatus and equipment

Examples: kilns, potter's wheels

Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 738.14

.14 Techniques and procedures

Class techniques of making specialized products in 738.4–738.8

For decorative treatment, see 738.15; conservation, preservation, restoration, safety measures, 738.18

.142 Modeling and casting

.143 Firing

Before and after glazing

.144 Glazing

.15 Decorative treatment

Examples: underglaze and overglaze painting, slip tracing, sgrafitto decoration, transfer painting

For glazing, see 738.144

.18 Conservation, preservation, restoration, safety measures

Including expertizing, routine maintenance and repair

> **738.2–738.8 Products**

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works

Class comprehensive works in 738

.2 Porcelain

Use of this number for comprehensive works on pottery discontinued; class in 738

Class comprehensive works on porcelain, earthenware, stoneware in 738

[.202 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 738.1

.209 Historical and geographical treatment of porcelain

Class here brands [*formerly* 738.27], geographical treatment of types and varieties [*formerly* 738.2709], geographical treatment of products [*formerly* 738.2809]

[.209 2] Persons treatment

Do not use; class in 738.092

[.23] Specific varieties and brands of pottery

Number discontinued; class in 738

Brands of pottery relocated to 738.09

[.24] Specific products of pottery

Number discontinued; class in 738

.27 Specific types and varieties of porcelain

Examples: blue and white, flow-blue

Brands relocated to 738.209

.270 9 Historical treatment of porcelain

Geographical treatment of types and varieties relocated to 738.209

.28 Specific porcelain products

Class specific products of specific types or varieties in 738.27, specialized products in 738.4–738.8

.280 9 Historical treatment

Geographical treatment of products relocated to 738.209

.3 Earthenware and stoneware

[.302 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 738.1

.309 Historical and geographical treatment

Class here brands [*formerly* 738.37], geographical treatment of types and varieties [*formerly* 738.3709], geographical treatment of products [*formerly* 738.3809]

[.309 2] Persons treatment

Do not use; class in 738.092

.37 Specific types and varieties of earthenware and stoneware

Examples: delft, faïence, majolica

Brands relocated to 738.309

.370 9 Historical treatment

Geographical treatment of types and varieties relocated to 738.309

.38 Specific earthenware and stoneware products

Class specific products of specific types and varieties in 738.37; specialized products in 738.4–738.8

.380 9 Historical treatment

Geographical treatment of products relocated to 738.309

.382 Middle Eastern and Western vessels

Ancient and classical

Standard subdivisions are added for a specific type of vessel, e.g., ancient Egyptian vases 738.3820932

Use of this number for comprehensive works on vases discontinued; class in 738.38

[.383] Other containers

Number discontinued; class in 738.38

> **738.4–738.8 Specialized products and techniques of making them**

Class comprehensive works in 738

.4 Enameling and enamels

Examples: basse-taille, champlevé, ronde bosse

For nielloing, see 739.15; jewelry, 739.27

.42 Cloisonné

.46 Surface-painted enamels

.5 Mosaics

Class here mosaic painting, comprehensive works on mosaics in all materials

Class mosaics of a specific material not provided for here with the material, e.g., mosaic glass 748.5

.52 Mosaics used with architecture

Examples: walls, floors, pavements, fixed screens and panels

.56 Mosaics applied to portable objects

Examples: mosaic jewelry, ornaments, ornamental objects, movable panels

.6 Ornamental bricks and tiles

Standard subdivisions are added for bricks and tiles, for bricks alone, and for tiles alone

.8 Other products

Examples: braziers, candlesticks, lamps, lighting fixtures, stoves

.82 Figurines

Examples: figure groups, animals, plants

739 Art metalwork

For numismatics, see 737

SUMMARY

739.1	**Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials**
.2	**Work in precious metals**
.3	**Watches and clocks**
.4	**Ironwork**
.5	**Work in other metals**
.7	**Arms and armor**

[.028] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 739.1

.1 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials for a specific kind of metalwork with the kind, e.g., goldsmithing 739.22028

.12 Materials

Class use of materials in specific techniques in 739.14

.13 Apparatus and equipment

Examples: tools, machines, accessories

Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 739.14

.14 Techniques and procedures

Examples: bending, casting, drawing, forging, rolling, shaping metals by hammering and beating (repoussé work), stamping, welding

For decorative treatment, see 739.15

.15 Decorative treatment

Examples: chasing, damascening, nielloing, painting, patinating

.16 Conservation, preservation, restoration, safety measures

Including routine maintenance and repair

.2 Work in precious metals

Class watches and clocks in precious metals in 739.3

> 739.22–739.24 In specific metals

Class comprehensive works in 739.2, jewelry in specific metals in 739.27

.22 Goldsmithing

Class comprehensive works on gold- and silversmithing in 739.2

.220 28 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class techniques and procedures in 739.224, apparatus and equipment in 739.223, materials in 739.222

[.220 9] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 739.227

(.220 92) Goldsmiths

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 739.2272)

.222–.226 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Add to base number 739.22 the numbers following 739.1 in 739.12–739.16, e.g., decorative treatment 739.225

Class comprehensive works in 739.22028; historical, geographical, persons treatment in 739.227; techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials for specific products in 739.228

.227 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 739.227 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., goldsmiths 739.2272
(Option: Class goldsmiths in 739.22092)

Works about ''goldsmiths'' in the sense of both gold- and silversmiths are classed in 739.2092

.228 Products

Gold and gold-plate

Class historical, geographical, persons treatment of specific products in 739.227

.228 2 Religious articles

.228 3 Tableware

Utensils used for setting a table or serving food and drink

Including flatware, hollow ware

Class tableware for religious use in 739.2282

.228 4 Receptacles

Examples: boxes, loving cups, vases

Class religious receptacles in 739.2282

.23 Silversmithing

Add to base number 739.23 the numbers following 739.22 in 739.22028–739.228, e.g., silversmiths 739.2372, silver tableware 739.2383

.24 Platinumwork

.27 Jewelry

Design of settings, mounting gems, repair work

Class here interdisciplinary works on making fine and costume jewelry

Class interdisciplinary works on jewelry in 391.7, on making costume jewelry in 688.2; making handcrafted costume jewelry in 745.5942; carving precious and semiprecious stones in 736.2; jewelry made in a material other than metal with the material, e.g., mosaic jewelry 738.56

.270 28 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class techniques and procedures in 739.274, apparatus and equipment in 739.273, materials in 739.272

.272–.276 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Add to base number 739.27 the numbers following 739.1 in 739.12–739.16, e.g., techniques 739.274

Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials for specific products in 739.278

.278 Specific products

Examples: belt buckles, finger rings, shoe buckles, watch fobs

.3 Watches and clocks

Class here clockcases regardless of material

Add to base number 739.3 the numbers following 739.22 in 739.22028–739.227, e.g., decorative treatment 739.35

Class clocks as furniture in 749.3; interdisciplinary works on clocks in 681.113, on watches in 681.114

> **739.4–739.5 Work in base metals**

Class comprehensive works in 739, watches and clocks in base metals in 739.3

For arms and armor, see 739.7

.4 Ironwork

Class here wrought iron, cast iron, stainless steel

.402 8–.47 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials; historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 739.4 the numbers following 739.22 in 739.22028–739.227, e.g., decorative treatment 739.45

.48 Specific products

Examples: balcony motifs, balustrades, grills, knockers, ornamental nails

Class historical, geographical, persons treatment of specific products in 739.47

.5 Work in other metals

.51 Copper and its alloys

For brass, see 739.52

.511 Copper

.512 Bronze

Class bronze sculpture in 731–735

.52 Brass

.522 Monumental brasses

Class here rubbing and rubbings for study and research of brasses

Class rubbings as art form in 760

.53 Tin and its alloys

For bronze, see 739.512

.532 Tin

.533 Pewter

.54 Lead

.55 Zinc and its alloys

For brass, see 739.52

.56 Nickel

.57 Aluminum

.58 Chromium

.7 Arms and armor

Class here decorative treatment of shapes, handles, grips, metalwork

Class interdisciplinary works in 623.44

See also 623.441 for stone weapons

> 739.72–739.74 Arms

Class comprehensive works in 739.7

.72 Edged weapons

Examples: axes, bayonets, daggers, dirks, knives, spears

Class edged arrows in 739.73, interdisciplinary works on knives in 621.932

.722 Swords and sabers

Standard subdivisions are added for swords and sabers, for swords alone, for sabers alone

.73 Missile-hurling weapons

Examples: air guns, bows and arrows, spring guns

For firearms, see 739.74

.74 Firearms

Add to base number 739.74 the numbers following 623.4 in 623.42–623.44, e.g., pistols 739.7443

Class interdisciplinary works on small firearms in 683.4

.75 Armor

.752 Shields

740 Drawing and decorative arts

SUMMARY

741 Drawing and drawings
742 Perspective
743 Drawing and drawings by subject
745 Decorative arts
746 Textile arts
747 Interior decoration
748 Glass
749 Furniture and accessories

741 Drawing and drawings

Class comprehensive works on drawing and painting in 750, on two-dimensional art in 760

For drawing and drawings by subject, see 743

SUMMARY

741.01–.09 Standard subdivisions
.2 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
.5 Cartoons, caricatures, comics
.6 Graphic design, illustration, commercial art
.7 Silhouettes
.9 Collections of drawings

.01 Philosophy and theory

.011 Appreciative aspects

Do not use for systems; class in 741.01

Class psychological principles in 741.019

.011 7 Aesthetics

.011 8 Criticism and appreciation

General aspects: theory, technique, history

Class works of critical appraisal in 741.09

.018 Inherent features

Examples: composition, color, form, style, decorative values, light, space, time, movement, symmetry

Class perspective in 742

[.028] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 741.2

.074 Museums and exhibits

Class collections of drawings in 741.9

.09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class collections of drawings of specific periods and places in 741.92–741.99

.092 Artists

Description, critical appraisal, biography of artists regardless of medium, process, subject, period, place

Description, critical appraisal, biography of artists working in special applications relocated to 741.5–741.7

Class collections of drawings in 741.9

.2 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Including one-color washes highlighting drawings

Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials used in special applications in 741.5–741.7; used in drawing specific subjects in 743.4–743.8; used by individual artists in 741.092

For perspective, see 742

See also 751.422 for watercolor

.21 Techniques of reproduction and conservation

.217 Reproduction

Execution and identification

.217 2 Reproductions and copies

.217 4 Forgeries and alterations

.218 Conservation, preservation, restoration

Including expertizing

Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 741.217; routine maintenance and repair in 741.219

.219 Safety measures and routine maintenance and repair

> 741.22–741.29 Specific mediums

Class comprehensive works in 741.2

.22 Charcoal

.23 Chalk and crayon

.235 Pastel

.24 Pencil

.25 Silverpoint

.26 Ink with pen, brush, marker

.29 Scratchboard and airbrush drawing

> **741.5–741.7 Special applications**

Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, description, critical appraisal, collections

Class here description, critical appraisal, biography of artists working in special applications [*formerly* 741.092]; collections by an individual artist devoted to special applications [*formerly* 741.9]

Class comprehensive works in 741.6

.5 Cartoons, caricatures, comics

Including fotonovelas

Class here cartoon fiction [*formerly also* with fiction with use of notation 306 from Table 3–B], graphic novels (visual novels)

Class cartoons or caricatures whose purpose is to inform or persuade with the subject of the cartoon or caricature, e.g., political cartoons 320.0207

.507 4 Museums and exhibits

Class collections in 741.59

.509 2 Artists

Class collections by individual artists in 741.593–741.599

.58 Animated cartoons

Class comprehensive works on cartoon films in 791.433, photographic techniques in 778.5347

.59 Collections

Class here cartoons with subordinate text

.590 9 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by specific continents, countries, localities in 741.593–741.599 (*not* 741.59093–741.59099)

.593–.599 Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 741.59 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., collections of cartoons from London 741.59421

Collections by individual artists are classed at country level only. Notation 074 from Table 1 for collections is not added. For example, a collection of an individual artist from London is classed in 741.5942 (*not* 741.95421, 741.9542074421)

.6 Graphic design, illustration, commercial art

Class here comprehensive works on special applications of drawing; on graphic design, illustration, commercial art

Class graphic arts, comprehensive works on two-dimensional art in 760; a specific type of illustration, a specific form of graphic design, a specific form of commercial art, not provided for here with the type or form, e.g., original oil paintings for book jackets 759

See Manual at 800 vs. 741.6

.64 Books and book jackets

Standard subdivisions are added for books and book jackets, books alone, and for book jackets alone

Class illumination of manuscripts and books in 745.67

.642 Children's books

.65 Magazines and newspapers

.652 Magazines and magazine covers

Standard subdivisions are added for magazines and magazine covers, for magazines alone, and for magazine covers alone

.66 Covers for sheet music and recordings

.67 Advertisements and posters

Standard subdivisions are added for advertisements and posters, for advertisements alone

.672 Fashion drawing

Class fashion design in 746.92

.674 Posters

Class posters as a specific form of prints in 769.5

.68 Calendars, postcards, greeting and business cards

.682 Calendars

.683 Postcards

Class government-issued postcards without illustration in 769.566

.684 Greeting cards

.685 Business cards (Trade cards)

.69 Labels and match covers

.692 Labels

.694 Match covers [*formerly also* 769.5]

.7 Silhouettes

Class cut-out silhouettes in 736.984

.9 Collections of drawings

Regardless of medium or process

Class here exhibition catalogs

Preliminary drawings are classed with the finished work unless they are treated as works of art in their own right

Collections by an individual artist devoted to special applications relocated to 741.5–741.7

Class collections by more than one artist devoted to special applications in 741.5–741.7, collections of drawings by subject not from a specific period or place in 743.9

> 741.92–741.99 Collections of drawings from specific periods and places

Regardless of subject

Class comprehensive works in 741.9

.92 Historical periods

Not limited geographically

.921 Earliest times to 499 A.D.

.922 500–1399

.923 1400–1799

.924 1800–

.924 1 1800–1899

.924 2 1900–1999

.93–.99 Specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 741.9 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., collections of drawings from London 741.9421

Collections by individual artists are classed at country level only. Notation 074 from Table 1 for collections is not added. For example, a collection of an individual artist from London is classed in 741.942 (*not* 741.9421, 741.942074421)

742 Perspective

General aspects: theory, principles, methods

Class perspective in drawing specific subjects in 743.4–743.8, in special applications in 741.5–741.7; comprehensive works on perspective in the arts in 701.82

743 Drawing and drawings by subject

.028 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Comprehensive works

Class specific subjects in 743.4–743.8

> **743.4–743.8 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials**

Class comprehensive works in 743.028, artists regardless of subject in 741.092

.4 Drawing human figures

Class here nudes

For drawing draped figures, see 743.5

.42 Portraiture

Class portraiture of specific kinds of persons in 743.43–743.45

> 743.43–743.45 Specific kinds of persons

Class comprehensive works in 743.4, anatomy of specific kinds of persons in 743.49

.43 Men

.44 Women

.45 Children

.46 Bones (Skeletal system)

.47 Muscles (Muscular system)

.49 Anatomy for artists

Including parts and regions of body, e.g., head, abdomen, hands

For bones, see 743.46; muscles, 743.47

.5 Drawing draperies and draped figures

For fashion drawing, see 741.672

.6 Drawing animals

.62–.69 Specific animals

Add to base number 743.6 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., drawing birds 743.68

.7 Drawing plants

Including flowers, fruit

.8 Drawing other subjects

Add to base number 743.8 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.943–704.949, e.g., landscapes 743.836

.9 Collections of drawings by subject (Iconography)

Not limited by period or by place of production

Add to base number 743.9 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., collections of drawings of buildings 743.94

Class collections of drawings by subject from a specific period or place in 741.92–741.99

[744] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 17

745 Decorative arts

Class here folk art

Class decorative arts not provided for here in 736–739, 746–749

For interior decoration, see 747

SUMMARY

745.1	**Antiques**
.2	**Industrial art and design**
.4	**Pure and applied design and decoration**
.5	**Handicrafts**
.6	**Calligraphy, illumination, heraldic design**
.7	**Decorative coloring**
.8	**Panoramas, cycloramas, dioramas**
.9	**Other decorative arts**

.1 Antiques

Class a specific kind of antique with the kind, e.g., brasses 739.52, passenger automobiles 629.222

See Manual at 745.1

.102 8 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

.102 87 Techniques and reproduction

Execution and identification

.102 872 Reproductions and copies

.102 874 Forgeries and alterations

.102 88 Conservation, preservation, restoration

Including expertizing

Do not use for routine maintenance and repair; class in 745.10289

Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 745.10287

.102 89 Safety measures and routine maintenance and repair

.2 Industrial art and design

Creative design of mass-produced commodities

Class design of a specific commodity with the commodity, e.g., automobiles 629.231

.4 Pure and applied design and decoration

Class here design source books

Class design in a specific art form with the form, e.g., design in architecture 729

For industrial design, see 745.2

[.409] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 745.44

(.409 2) Artists

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 745.4492)

.44 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

> 745.441–745.445 Periods of development

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality

Class comprehensive works in 745.44

.441 Nonliterate peoples, and earliest times to 499

Including paleolithic art

Class here design and decoration by nonliterate peoples regardless of time or place

.442 500–1399

Including early Christian, Byzantine, Romanesque, Gothic styles

.443 1400–1799

Including Renaissance, baroque, rococo styles

.444 1800–1999

.444 1 1800–1899

Including classical revival, romantic, art nouveau styles

.444 2 1900–1999

.445 2000–2099

.449 Geographical and persons treatment

Add to base number 745.449 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., artists 745.4492
(Option: Class artists in 745.4092)

Class design and decoration by nonliterate peoples regardless of place in 745.441

.5 Handicrafts

Creative work done by hand with aid of simple tools or machines

Including work in bread dough

Class home (amateur) workshops in 684.08, interdisciplinary works on handicrafts in 680

For decorative coloring, see 745.7; floral arts, 745.92

See Manual at 745.5 vs. 680

SUMMARY

745.51	**In woods**
.53	**In leathers and furs**
.54	**In papers**
.55	**In shells**
.56	**In metals**
.57	**In rubber and plastics**
.58	**From beads, found and other objects**
.59	**Making specific objects**

> 745.51–745.58 In specific materials

Class comprehensive works in 745.5, specific objects made from specific materials in 745.59, glass handicrafts in 748

For textile handicrafts, see 746

.51 In woods

Examples: inlay trim, marquetry, ornamental woodwork, scrollwork

Including bamboo

Class treen (woodenware) in 674.88, cabinetmaking in 684.08, wooden furniture making in 684.104, artistic aspects of furniture in 749

For ornamental woodwork in furniture, see 749.5

.53 In leathers and furs

Class construction of clothing in 646.3

.531 Leathers

.537 Furs

.54 In papers

Examples: endpapers, paper boxes, tissue papers, wallpapers

Including gift wrapping, quilling

Class paper cutting and folding in 736.98

.542 Papier-mâché

Class papier-mâché used in sculpture in 731.2

.546 Decoupage

Including potichomania

.55 In shells

.56 In metals

Class art metalwork in 739

.57 In rubber and plastics

.572 Plastics

.58 From beads, found and other objects

Class specific objects made from other objects in 745.59

.582 Beads

For bead embroidery, see 746.5

.584 Found objects

Examples: cattails, scrap, stones, hosiery

.59 Making specific objects

Class here handicrafts in composite materials

.592 Toys, models, miniatures, related objects

Class interdisciplinary works on models and miniatures in 688.1, on mass-produced and handcrafted toys in 688.72

Including paper airplanes

> 745.592 2–745.592 4 Toys

Class comprehensive works in 745.592

For toy soldiers, see 745.59282

.592 2 Dolls, puppets, marionettes, and their clothing

.592 21 Dolls and their clothing

.592 24 Puppets and marionettes and their clothing

.592 3 Dollhouses and furniture

.592 4 Soft toys

Example: stuffed animals

Class stuffed dolls in 745.59221

.592 8 Models and miniatures

Including ships in bottles

Class here interdisciplinary works on handcrafted models and miniatures

Class models and miniatures produced by assembly-line or mechanized manufacturing, interdisciplinary works on models and miniatures in 688.1; miniature and model educational exhibits, models for technical and professional use with the subject illustrated, e.g., handcrafted miniature anthropological exhibits 573.074

See Manual at 745.5928

.592 82 Military models and miniatures

Including toy soldiers

.593 Useful objects

For toys, models, miniatures, related objects, see 745.592

.593 2 Lampshades

.593 3 Candles and candlesticks

.593 32 Candles

.593 4 Snuffboxes

.593 6 Decoys

Class carved birds not used for hunting in 730

.594 Decorative objects

.594 1 For special occasions

Examples: holidays, weddings

Class here greeting cards

For Easter eggs, see 745.5944

.594 12 Christmas

.594 2 Costume jewelry

Class interdisciplinary works on costume jewelry in 391.7, on making jewelry in 739.27, on making costume jewelry in 688.2

.594 3 Artificial flowers

Class arrangement of artificial flowers in 745.92

.594 4 Egg decorating

Including Easter eggs

.6 Calligraphy, illumination, heraldic design

.61 Calligraphy

Class here artistic, decorative lettering

Class penmanship in 652.1, typography in 686.22

.619 Styles

.619 7 Latin (Western) styles

.619 74 Carolingian calligraphy

.619 75 Black-letter and Gothic calligraphy

.619 77 Italic calligraphy

.619 78 Roman calligraphy

.619 8 Greek calligraphy

.619 9 Other

Add to base number 745.6199 the numbers following —9 in —91–99 from Table 6, e.g., Chinese calligraphy 745.619951

.66 Heraldic design

.67 Illumination of manuscripts and books

Class here facsimiles of manuscripts reproduced for their illuminations

Standard subdivisions are added for manuscripts and books, for manuscripts alone, and for books alone

Class development, description, critical appraisal of manuscripts in 091, of illustrated books in 096.1

See also 741.64 for book illustration

See Manual at 745.67

.674 Illuminated manuscripts and books by language

Add to base number 745.674 notation 1–9 from Table 6, e.g., illuminated manuscripts in Byzantine Greek 745.67487; however, class illuminated manuscripts in Latin in 745.67094

Class illuminated manuscripts and books in specific languages produced in specific countries and localities in 745.67093–745.67099

.7 Decorative coloring

Class printing, painting, dyeing textiles in 746.6

.72 Painting and lacquering

.723 Painting

Examples: rosemaling, tolecraft

.726 Lacquering

Class here japanning

.73 Stenciling

.74 Decalcomania

.75 Gilding

Class gilding as an aspect of bookbinding in 686.36, of illumination of manuscripts and books in 745.67

.8 Panoramas, cycloramas, dioramas

.9 Other decorative arts

.92 Floral arts

Flower arrangement: selection and arrangement of plant materials and appropriate accessories

Class here arrangement of artificial flowers

Class making artificial flowers in 745.5943, potted plants as interior decorations in 747.98

> 745.922–745.926 Three-dimensional arrangements

Class comprehensive works in 745.92

> 745.922–745.925 Three-dimensional arrangements with specific materials

Class comprehensive works in 745.92, arrangements with specific materials for special occasions in 745.926

.922 Flower arrangements in containers

.922 4 Occidental compositions

.922 5 Oriental compositions

.922 51 Chinese flower arrangements

.922 52 Japanese flower arrangements

.923 Flower arrangements without containers

Examples: corsages, boutonnieres, set floral pieces

.924 Fruit and vegetable arrangements

Including carving of vegetables to produce artificial flowers

.925 Arrangements with other plant materials

Examples: driftwood, pods and cones, dried and gilded grasses and leaves

.926 Three-dimensional arrangements for special occasions

Examples: arrangements for church services, funerals, holidays, weddings

.928 Two-dimensional arrangements

Use of seeds and other dried plant materials in pictures, hangings, trays, for other decorative purposes

746 Textile arts

Class here textile handicrafts

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
Class techniques of reproduction and conservation in 048
0288 Routine maintenance and repair [*formerly also* 0489]
0289 Safety measures [*formerly also* 0489]
04 Special topics
041 Patterns
042 Stitches
048 Techniques of reproduction and conservation
0487 Reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations
Execution and identification
0488 Conservation, preservation, restoration
Including expertizing
Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 0487
[0489] Routine maintenance and repair, safety measures
Routine maintenance and repair relocated to 0288, safety measures relocated to 0289

Class domestic sewing and related operations in 646.2, a specific textile product not provided for here with the product, e.g., stuffed animals 745.5924

SUMMARY

746.04 Specific materials
.1 Yarn preparation and weaving
.2 Laces and related fabrics
.3 Pictures, hangings, tapestries
.4 Needle- and handwork
.5 Bead embroidery
.6 Printing, painting, dyeing
.7 Rugs and carpets
.9 Other textile products

.04 Specific materials

Add to base number 746.04 the numbers following 677 in 677.1–677.7, e.g., silk 746.0439, string art 746.0471

Class products in a specific material with the product, e.g., string pictures 746.3

> 746.1–746.9 Products and processes

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., embroidering tapestry 746.3 (*not* 746.44)

Laces and related fabrics	746.2
Pictures, hangings, tapestries	746.3
Rugs and carpets	746.7
Other textile products	746.9
Yarn preparation and weaving	746.1
Needle- and handwork	746.4
Bead embroidery	746.5
Printing, painting, dyeing	746.6

Class comprehensive works in 746, home sewing and clothing in 646, textile manufacturing in 677

.1 Yarn preparation and weaving

.11 Carding and combing

.12 Spinning, twisting, reeling

.13 Dyeing

.14 *Weaving

Example: card weaving

For weaving unaltered vegetable fibers, see 746.41; nonloom weaving, 746.42

.2 Laces and related fabrics

.22 *Laces

Examples: crocheted, darned laces

For tatting, see 746.436

.222 *Bobbin laces

.224 *Needlepoint laces

.226 *Knitted laces

.27 Passementerie

Examples: braids, cords, fringes

.3 *Pictures, hangings, tapestries

[.309] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 746.39

(.309 2) Artists

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 746.392)

*Add as instructed under 746

.39 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 746.39 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., artists 746.392 (Option: Class artists in 746.3092)

.4 Needle- and handwork

.41 Weaving, braiding, matting unaltered vegetable fibers

Examples: raffia work, rushwork

.412 Basketry

.42 Nonloom weaving and related techniques

Examples: braiding, plaiting, twining

Class nonloom weaving of unaltered vegetable fibers in 746.41

For card weaving, see 746.14

.422 Knotting

.422 2 *Macramé

.422 4 *Netting

Including knotless netting, sprang

.43 *Knitting, crocheting, tatting

.432 *Knitting

Class comprehensive works on knitting and crocheting in 746.43

.434 *Crocheting

.436 *Tatting

.44 *Embroidery

Examples: couching, cutwork, drawn work, hardanger, smocking

.440 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Including machine embroidery

.442 *Canvas embroidery and needlepoint

Including bargello

Class cross-stitch and counted thread embroidery in 746.443

.443 *Cross-stitch

Class here counted thread embroidery

.445 *Appliqué

.446 *Crewelwork

.46 *Patchwork and quilting

Class quilts in 746.97

*Add as instructed under 746

.5 *Bead embroidery

.6 Printing, painting, dyeing

Examples: hand decoration, stenciling

.62 *Printing

Block and silk-screen

.66 Resist-dyeing

.662 *Batik

.664 *Tie-dyeing

.7 *Rugs and carpets

[.709] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 746.79

(.709 2) Artists

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 746.792)

.72 *Woven rugs and carpets

Examples: Jacquard, plain, tapestry, twill weaves

Including Navaho rugs

For pile rugs and carpets, see 746.75

.73 *Crocheted, knitted, braided rugs and carpets

.74 *Hooked and embroidered rugs and carpets

.75 Pile rugs and carpets

.750 95 Asian pile rugs and carpets

Class here Oriental-style rugs and carpets

Class styles from specific Asian countries and localities in 746.751–746.758, from Caucasus region in 746.759

> 746.751–746.759 Oriental-style rugs and carpets

Class comprehensive works in 746.75095

.751–.758 Styles from specific Asian countries and localities

Add to base number 746.75 the numbers following —5 in notation 51–58 from Table 2, e.g., Chinese rugs 746.751

.759 Styles from Caucasus region

.79 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 746.79 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., artists 746.792 (Option: Class artists in 746.7092)

*Add as instructed under 746

.9 Other textile products

.92 Costume

Including fashion design

Class interdisciplinary works on clothing in 391, on clothing construction in 646.4

See Manual at 391 vs. 646.3, 746.92

> 746.94–746.98 Interior furnishings

Standard subdivisions are added for a single product, e.g., New England quilts 746.970974

Class comprehensive works in 746.9

.94 *Draperies and curtains

.95 *Furniture covers

Examples: antimacassars, kneelers, slipcovers, upholstery

.96 *Table linens

Examples: doilies, mats, napkins (serviettes), scarves, tablecloths; fair linens

.97 *Bedclothing

Examples: afghans, bedspreads, blankets, quilts; sheets, pillowcases

.98 *Towels and toweling

747 Interior decoration

Design and decorative treatment of interior furnishings

Class here interior decoration of residential buildings [*formerly also* 645]

Class textile arts and handicrafts in 746, interior design in 729

Interior decoration of specific types of residential buildings is classed in 747.88

For furniture and accessories, see 749

SUMMARY

747.1	**Decoration under specific limitations**
.2	**Historical, geographical, persons treatment**
.3	**Ceilings, walls, doors, windows**
.4	**Floors**
.5	**Draperies, upholstery, rugs and carpets**
.7	**Decoration of specific rooms of residential buildings**
.8	**Decoration of specific types of buildings**
.9	**Specific decorations**

[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 747.2

*Add as instructed under 746

(.092) Artists

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 747.2)

.1 Decoration under specific limitations

Example: decorating on a budget

Class a specific aspect of decoration under limitations with the aspect, e.g., decorating dining rooms on a budget 747.76

.2 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here artists
(Option: Class artists in 747.092)

> 747.201–747.205 Periods of development

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality

Class comprehensive works in 747.2

.201 Earliest times to 499 A.D.

.202 500–1399

.203 1400–1799

.203 4 1400–1499

Class here Renaissance period

Class Renaissance decoration of an earlier or later period with the specific period, e.g., interior decoration in the 1500s 747.2035

.203 5 1500–1599

.203 6 1600–1699

.203 7 1700–1799

.204 1800–1999

.204 8 1800–1899

.204 9 1900–1999

Add to base number 747.2049 the numbers following —0904 in notation 09041–09049 from Table 1, e.g., interior decoration in the 1970s 747.20497

.205 2000–2099

.21–.29 Geographical treatment

Add to base number 747.2 the numbers following 708 in 708.1–708.9, e.g., interior decoration and artists in Islamic areas 747.2917671

Individual artists are classed in notation at country level only

> **747.3–747.4 Decoration of specific elements**

Class comprehensive works in 747, decoration of specific elements in specific types of buildings in 747.8, decoration of specific elements in specific rooms of residential buildings in 747.7, specific decorations of specific elements in 747.9

.3 Ceilings, walls, doors, windows

Including decorative hangings, painting, paneling, woodwork

Class here textile wall coverings, wallpapers

For draperies, see 747.5

.4 Floors

For rugs and carpets, see 747.5

.5 Draperies, upholstery, rugs and carpets

.7 Decoration of specific rooms of residential buildings

Standard subdivisions are added for individual rooms

Class specific decorations regardless of room in 747.9

.73 Home libraries and studies

.75 Living rooms, drawing rooms, parlors

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all of the topics in the heading

.76 Dining rooms

.77 Bedrooms and nurseries

.78 Bathrooms and powder rooms

.79 Other rooms

.791 Recreation and family rooms

.797 Kitchens

.8 Decoration of specific types of buildings

Class specific decorations regardless of type of building in 747.9

.85–.87 Decoration of public, religious, educational, research buildings

Add to base number 747.8 the numbers following 72 in 725–727, e.g., decoration of theaters 747.85822

.88 Decoration of specific types of residential buildings

Add to base number 747.88 the numbers following 728 in 728.1–728.9, e.g., decoration of hotels 747.885

Class decoration of residential buildings of institutions in 747.85–747.87

Comprehensive works on decoration of residential buildings are classed in 747

For decoration of specific rooms of residential buildings, see 747.7

.9 Specific decorations

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., decorative lighting for Christmas 747.92 (*not* 747.93)

Decorating with house plants	747.98
Decorative lighting	747.92
Decorating with color	747.94
Decorations for specific occasions	747.93

See also 747.5 for draperies, upholstery, rugs and carpets

.92 Decorative lighting

.93 Decorations for specific occasions

Examples: for parties, weddings, holidays

.94 Decorating with color

.98 Decorating with houseplants

748 Glass

SUMMARY

748.092	**Persons treatment**
.2	**Glassware**
.5	**Stained, painted, leaded, mosaic glass**
.6	**Methods of decoration**
.8	**Specific articles**

.092 Persons treatment

Class here glassmakers

The term "glassmakers" when referring only to makers of glassware is classed in 748.29

.2 Glassware

Class here blown, cast, decorated, fashioned, molded, pressed glassware

Class stained glass in 748.5

For methods of decoration, see 748.6; specific articles, 748.8

.202 8 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

.202 82 Glassblowing

.202 86 Bottle and jar cutting

.202 87 Reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations

Execution and identification

.202 88 Repair and restoration

Including expertizing

Safety measures relocated to 748.20289

Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 748.20287

.202 89 Safety measures [*formerly also* 748.20288]

[.209] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 748.29

(.209 2) Glassware makers

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 748.29)

.29 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here glassware makers
(Option: Class glassware makers in 748.2092)

.290 1–.290 5 Periods of development

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality

Add to base number 748.290 the numbers following 747.20 in 747.201–747.205, e.g., glassware of 1700–1799 748.29037; however, Greco-Roman glass relocated from 748.2901 to 748.29938

.291–.299 Geographical treatment

Add to base number 748.29 the numbers following 708 in 708.1–708.9, e.g., Greco-Roman glass 748.29938 [*formerly* 748.2901], glassware and glassmakers of Pennsylvania 748.29148

Individual glassmakers are classed in notation at country level only

.5 Stained, painted, leaded, mosaic glass

Standard subdivisions are added for stained glass alone, for painted glass alone, and for leaded glass alone

Class comprehensive works on mosaics in 738.5

For specific articles, see 748.8

.502 8 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

.502 82 Glass painting and staining

.502 84 Leaded glass craft

.502 85 Mosaic glass craft and making glass mosaics

.502 88 Conservation, preservation, restoration

Do not use for routine maintenance and repair; class in 748.50289

.502 89 Safety measures and routine maintenance and repair

[.509] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 748.59

(.509 2) Artists

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 748.59)

.59 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here artists
(Option: Class artists in 748.5092)

.590 1–.590 5 Periods of development

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality

Add to base number 748.590 the numbers following 747.20 in 747.201–747.205, e.g., 500–1399 748.5902

.591–.599 Geographical treatment

Add to base number 748.59 the numbers following 708 in 708.1–708.9, e.g., stained glass of Chartres 748.59451

Individual artists are classed in notation at country level only

.6 Methods of decoration

Examples: cutting, enameling, engraving, etching, sandblasting

Class methods of decoration of specific articles in 748.8

For painted glass, see 748.5

[.609 2] Persons treatment

Do not use; class in 748.29

.8 Specific articles

Examples: mirrors, ornaments

Class mirrors as furniture in 749.3, glass lamps and lighting fixtures in 749.63

.82 Bottles

Bottles of artistic interest regardless of use

Class manufacture of glass bottles in 666.192

.83 Tableware

Class here drinking glasses

.84 Paperweights

.85 Glass beads

749 Furniture and accessories

For upholstery, see 747.5

[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 749.2

(.092) Furniture makers

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 749.2)

.1 Antique furniture

Class specific kinds of antique furniture in 749.3

.102 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

.102 87 Reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations

Execution and identification

.102 88 Conservation, preservation, restoration

Including expertizing

Do not use for routine maintenance and repair; class in 749.10289

Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 749.10287

.102 89 Safety measures and routine maintenance and repair

[.109] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 749.2

.2 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here antiques and reproductions, furniture makers
(Option: Class furniture makers in 749.092)

.201–.205 Periods of development

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality

Add to base number 749.20 the numbers following 747.20 in 747.201–747.205, e.g., Renaissance period 749.2034

.21–.29 Geographical treatment

Add to base number 749.2 the numbers following 708 in 708.1–708.9, e.g., English furniture and furniture makers 749.22

Individual furniture makers are classed in notation at country level only

.3 Specific kinds of furniture

Examples: beds, cabinets, chests, clockcases, desks, mirrors, screens, tables

Class outdoor furniture in 749.8

For built-in furniture, see 749.4; heating and lighting fixtures and furniture, 749.6; picture frames, 749.7

.32 Chairs

.4 Built-in furniture

Class built-in church furniture in architectural design in 726.529

For heating and lighting fixtures and furniture, see 749.6

.5 Ornamental woodwork in furniture

Examples: inlay trim, lacquer work, marquetry, scrollwork

Class ornamental woodwork in a specific kind of furniture with the kind, e.g., picture frames 749.7

.6 Heating and lighting fixtures and furniture

.62 Heating

Examples: mantels, fireplace and inglenook fixtures and furniture

.63 Lighting

Examples: chandeliers, lamps, sconces

Class built-in church lighting fixtures in architectural design in 726.5298

.7 Picture frames

Including shadow boxes

Class here picture framing

.8 Outdoor furniture

Class furniture used both in- and outdoors in 749.3

750 Painting and paintings

Class here comprehensive works on painting and drawing

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., Canadian painters of landscapes 759.11 (*not* 758.10971), landscape painting in Canada 758.10971 (*not* 759.11)

Individual painters and their work	759.1–.9
Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials	751.2–.6
Iconography	753–758
Specific forms	751.7
Geographical treatment	759.1–.9
Periods of development	759.01–.07
Color	752

Class comprehensive works on graphic arts, two-dimensional art in 760; painting in a specific decorative art with the art, e.g., illumination of manuscripts and books 745.67

For drawing and drawings, see 741

SUMMARY

750.1–.9	**Standard subdivisions**
751	**Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, forms**
752	**Color**
753	**Symbolism, allegory, mythology, legend**
754	**Genre paintings**
755	**Religion and religious symbolism**
757	**Human figures and their parts**
758	**Other subjects**
759	**Historical, geographical, persons treatment**

.1 Philosophy and theory

.11 Appreciative aspects

Do not use for systems; class in 750.1

Class psychological principles in 750.19

.117 Aesthetics

.118 Criticism and appreciation

General aspects: theory, technique, history

Class works of critical appraisal in 759

.18 Inherent features

Examples: composition, form, style, perspective, decorative values, light, vision, space, movement, symmetry

Class color in 752

[.28] Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Relocated to 751

[.9] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 759

(.92) Painters

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 759)

751 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials [*formerly* 750.28], forms

.2 Materials

Examples: surfaces, pigments, mediums, fixatives, coatings

Class use of materials in specific techniques in 751.4

.3 Apparatus, equipment, artists' models

Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 751.4

.4 Techniques and procedures

.42 Use of water-soluble mediums

For tempera painting, see 751.43

.422 Watercolor painting

Including casein painting, gouache

Class ink painting in color in 751.425

.422 4 Watercolor painting techniques by subject

Add to base number 751.4224 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., techniques of landscape painting in watercolor 751.422436

.425 Ink painting

.425 1 Chinese ink painting

.425 14 Chinese ink painting techniques by subject

Add to base number 751.42514 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., techniques of landscape painting in Chinese ink painting 751.4251436

.425 2 Japanese ink painting

.426 Acrylic painting

.43 Tempera painting

.44 Fresco painting

.45 Oil painting

.454 Oil painting techniques by subject

Add to base number 751.454 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., techniques of landscape painting in oils 751.45436

.46 Encaustic (Wax) painting

.49 Other methods

Examples: finger, polymer, roller (brayer), sand painting

Class mosaic painting in 738.5

.493 Collage

With painting as the basic technique

.494 Airbrush

.5 Techniques of reproduction

Execution, identification, determination of authenticity of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations

For printmaking and prints, see 760

.58 Forgeries and alterations

.6 Conservation, preservation, restoration, safety measures, routine care

.62 Conservation, preservation, restoration

Including expertizing

Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 751.5; routine care in 751.67

.67 Safety measures, routine care

.7 Specific forms

[.72] Easel paintings

Number discontinued; class in 750

.73 Murals and frescoes

Class here painted graffiti, street art

.74 Panoramas, cycloramas, dioramas

.75 Scene paintings

Including theatrical scenery

.76 Glass underpainting

Class glass underpainting as a technique of glass decoration in 748.6

.77 Miniatures

Class miniatures done as illuminations in manuscripts and books in 745.67

See Manual at 745.67

752 Color

Class technology of color in 667, comprehensive works on color in the fine and decorative arts in 701.85

> 753–758 Iconography

General aspects: development, description, critical appraisal, works regardless of form

Class comprehensive works in 750

See Manual at 753–758

753 Symbolism, allegory, mythology, legend

.6 Symbolism and allegory

For religious symbolism, see 755

.7 Mythology and legend

Class religious mythology in 755

754 Genre paintings

755 Religion and religious symbolism

Add to base number 755 the numbers following 704.948 in 704.9482–704.9489, e.g., paintings of Holy Family 755.56

[756] Historical events

Relocated to 758.99

757 Human figures and their parts

Not provided for in 753–755, 758

Class here portraits

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., groups of nude women 757.4 (*not* 757.22 or 757.6)

Erotica	757.8
Miniature portraits	757.7
Specific kinds of persons	757.3–.5
Groups of figures	757.6
According to attire	757.2

.2 According to attire

.22 Nudes

.23 Draped figures

> 757.3–757.5 Specific kinds of persons

Class here portraits of individuals

Class comprehensive works in 757

.3 Men

.4 Women

.5 Children

.6 Groups of figures

.7 Miniature portraits

.8 Erotica

Including pornography

[.9] General collections of portraits

Number discontinued; class in 757

758 Other subjects

.1 Landscapes

Add to base number 758.1 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., landscapes of Utah 758.1792

.2 Marine scenes and seascapes

.3 Animals

Including hunting scenes

Class hunting scenes in which animals are not the center of interest with the subject, e.g., hunters 757.6

See Manual at 753–758

.4 Still life

.42 Flowers

.5 Plants

For flowers, see 758.42

See Manual at 753–758

.6 Industrial and technical subjects

.7 Architectural subjects and cityscapes

Add to base number 758.7 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., cityscapes of England 758.742

.9 Other

Add to base number 758.9 notation 001–999, e.g., paintings of historical events 758.99 [*formerly also* 756]

For genre paintings, see 754; landscapes, 758.1; seascapes, 758.2; cityscapes, 758.7

759 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

General aspects: development, description, critical appraisal, works

(Option: Class painters in 750.92)

Class exhibitions of paintings not limited by place, period, or subject in 750.74

> 759.01–759.07 Periods of development

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality, works on one or two periods of European painting

Class comprehensive works in 759; works on three or more periods of European painting in 759.94; schools associated with a specific locality in 759.1–759.9, e.g., Florentine school of Italian painting 759.551

.01 Nonliterate peoples, and earliest times to 499

.011 Nonliterate peoples

Regardless of time or place

Class paintings of both nonliterate and literate cultures in 759.1–759.9

.011 2 Paleolithic painting and paintings

.011 3 Rock art (painting and paintings)

.02 500–1399

Class here medieval painting and paintings

.021 500–1199

.021 2 Early Christian painting and paintings

Class early Christian painting and paintings before 500 in 759.01

.021 4 Byzantine painting and paintings

Class Byzantine painting and paintings before 500 in 759.01

.021 6 Romanesque painting and paintings

.022 1200–1399

Class here Gothic painting and paintings

Class Gothic painting and paintings of an earlier or later period with the specific period, e.g., 500–1199 759.021

.03 1400–1599

Class here Renaissance painting and paintings

Class Renaissance painting and paintings before 1400 in 759.022

.04 1600–1799

.046 1600–1699

Class here baroque painting and paintings

Class baroque painting and paintings of 1700–1799 in 759.047

.047 1700–1799

Including rococo painting and paintings

.05 1800–1899

Add to base number 759.05 the numbers following 709.034 in 709.0341–709.0349, e.g., romanticism in painting 759.052

.06 1900–1999

Class here modern painting

Add to base number 759.06 the numbers following 709.040 in 709.0401–709.0407, e.g., surrealist painting 759.0663

For 1800–1899, see 759.05

.07 2000–2099

> **759.1–759.9 Geographical treatment**

Individual painters are classed in notation at country level only

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to painting and paintings of a specific country, use one of the following:

(Option A: Place them first by use of a letter or other symbol for the country, e.g., Burmese painting and paintings 759.B [preceding 759.1]

(Option B: Class them in 759.1; in that case class painting and paintings of North America in 759.97)

Class comprehensive works in 759, painting and paintings of nonliterate peoples in 759.011, Western painting of one or two specific periods in 759.02–759.07

.1 North America

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to painting and paintings of a specific country other than United States and Canada, class them in this number; in that case class painting and paintings of North America in 759.97)

Class painting and paintings of Middle America in 759.972

.11 Canada

Add to base number 759.11 the numbers following —71 in notation 711–719 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of Toronto 759.113541

.13 United States

Class painting and paintings of specific states in 759.14–759.19

See also 759.97295 for painting and paintings of Puerto Rico

.14–.19 Specific states of United States

Add to base number 759.1 the numbers following —7 in notation 74–79 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of San Francisco 759.19461

Class individual painters in 759.13, painting and paintings of Hawaii in 759.9969

.2 British Isles England

For the purpose of classification, England, Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland are considered to be separate countries. Therefore, an English painter is classed in 759. 2, a Scottish painter in 759. 2911, a Welsh painter in 759. 2929, and a Northern Ireland painter in 759. 2916

.21–.28 England

Add to base number 759.2 the numbers following —42 in notation 421–428 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of Manchester 759.2733

.29 Scotland, Ireland, Wales

Add to base number 759.29 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–42 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of Scotland 759.2911

.3–.8 Other European countries

Add to base number 759 the numbers following —4 in notation 43–48 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of France 759.4

Class comprehensive works, and painting and paintings of other European countries not provided for in notation 43–48 from Table 2 in 759.94, e.g., painting and paintings of Netherlands 759.9492

.9 Other geographical areas

.91 Areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 759.91 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., Western Hemisphere 759.91812

Class individual painters in the notation for their respective countries

.93–.99 Continents, countries, localities

Class here painting and paintings of specific periods, e.g., painting and paintings of 1800–1899 in South America 759.9809034

Add to base number 759.9 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., comprehensive works on painting and paintings of Europe 759.94, Etruscan painting and paintings 759.9375

Class works on one or two periods of European painting in 759.02–759.07, e.g., painting and paintings of 1800–1899 in Europe 759.05 (*not* 759.9409034); individual painters from Soviet Union in 759.7, individual Hawaiian painters in 759.13

760 Graphic arts Printmaking and prints

Graphic arts: any and all nonplastic representations on flat surfaces, including painting, drawing, prints, and photographs

Including copy art made with photoduplication equipment, rubbings, typewriter art, typographical designs; two-dimensional mixed-media art and composites

Class here two-dimensional art; prints and at least one other of the graphic arts

Class comprehensive works on graphic and plastic arts in 701–709; rubbings used for study and research in a specific field with the field, e.g., monumental brasses 739.522

For drawing and drawings, see 741; painting and paintings, 750; photography and photographs, 770; printing, 686.2

See Manual at 700

SUMMARY

760.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of graphic arts
.1–.8 Standard subdivisions of printmaking and prints
761 Relief processes (Block printing)
763 Lithographic (Planographic) processes
764 Chromolithography and serigraphy
765 Metal engraving
766 Mezzotinting, aquatinting, related processes
767 Etching and drypoint
769 Prints

.01–.03 Standard subdivisions of graphic arts

.04 Special topics of graphic arts

.044 Iconography of graphic arts

Add to base number 760.044 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., landscapes in graphic arts 760.04436

.05–.08 Standard subdivisions of graphic arts

.09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

.090 1–.090 5 Periods of development

Not limited by country or locality

Add to base number 760.090 the numbers following 709.0 in 709.01–709.05, e.g., graphic arts of the Renaissance 760.09024

.1 Philosophy and theory of printmaking and prints

.11 Appreciative aspects

Do not use for systems; class in 760.1

Class psychological principles in 760.19

.117 Aesthetics

.118 Criticism and appreciation

General aspects: theory, technique, history

Class works of critical appraisal in 769.9

.18 Inherent features

Examples: color, composition, decorative values, form, light, movement, perspective, style, space, symmetry, vision

.2 Miscellany of printmaking and prints

.28 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials of printmaking and prints

Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials for making specific kinds of prints in 761–767

.3–.6 Standard subdivisions of printmaking and prints

.7 Education, research, related topics of printmaking and prints

[.75] Collecting prints

Do not use; class in 769.12

.8 History and description of printmaking and prints with respect to kinds of persons

[.9] **Historical, geographical, persons treatment of printmaking and prints**

Do not use; class in 769.9

(.92) Printmakers

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 769.92)

> **761–769 Printmaking and prints**

Class comprehensive works in 760

> **761–767 Printmaking**

Fine art of executing a printing block or plate representing a picture or design conceived by the printmaker or copied from another artist's painting or drawing or from a photograph

General aspects: techniques, procedures, equipment, materials

Class comprehensive works in 760.28; techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials of reproduction, preservation, routine care in 769.1; techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials employed by individual printmakers in 769.92

761 Relief processes (Block printing)

Examples: raw potato printing, rubber-stamp printing

.2 Wood engraving

.3 Linoleum-block printing

.8 Metal engraving

[762] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

763 Lithographic (Planographic) processes

For chromolithography, see 764.2

.2 Surfaces

.22 Stone lithography

.23 Aluminum lithography

.24 Zinc lithography

764 Chromolithography and serigraphy

.2 Chromolithography

.8 Serigraphy

Class here silk-screen printing

> **765–767 Intaglio processes**

Class comprehensive works in 765

765 Metal engraving

Class here comprehensive works on metal relief and metal intaglio processes, on intaglio processes

Class metal relief engraving in 761.8

For mezzotinting and aquatinting, see 766; etching and drypoint, 767

.2 Line engraving

.5 Stipple engraving

.6 Criblé engraving

766 Mezzotinting, aquatinting, related processes

.2 Mezzotinting

.3 Aquatinting

.7 Composite processes

Use of two or more processes in a single print

767 Etching and drypoint

.2 Etching

.3 Drypoint

[768] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

769 Prints

Works produced using a printing block, screen, or plate

General aspects: description, critical appraisal, collections regardless of process

SUMMARY

769.01–.08	**Standard subdivisions**
.1	**Collecting, reproduction, preservation, routine care of prints**
.4	**Iconography**
.5	**Forms of prints**
.9	**Historical, geographical, persons treatment of printmaking and prints**

.028 8 Maintenance and repair [*formerly also* 769.19]

Class conservation, preservation, restoration in 769.18

[.075] Collecting prints

Do not use; class in 769.12

[.09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 769.9

.1 Collecting, reproduction, preservation, routine care of prints

Class collecting, reproduction, preservation, routine care of specific forms of prints in 769.5

.12 Collecting prints

.17 Techniques of reproduction

.172 Reproductions and copies

.174 Forgeries and alterations

.18 Conservation, preservation, restoration

Including expertizing

Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 769.17

[.19] Maintenance and repair

Relocated to 769.0288

.4 Iconography

Add to base number 769.4 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., portrait prints 769.42

Class postage stamps by subject in 769.564, printmakers regardless of subject in 769.92

.5 Forms of prints

Examples: lettering, inscriptions, designs on name cards, diplomas, decorative prints, posters

Match covers relocated to 741.694

Class prints other than postage stamps on a specific subject regardless of form in 769.4, made by an individual printmaker regardless of form in 769.92; comprehensive works on posters in 741.674

.52 Bookplates

.53 Paper dolls

.55 Paper money

Class here counterfeit paper money

[.550 9] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 769.559

.559 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 769.559 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., paper money of France 769.55944

.56 Postage stamps and related devices

Class here philately

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the one coming first, e.g., counterfeit stamps depicting birds 769.562 (*not* 769.56432)

Class stamps other than for prepayment of postage in 769.57

[.560 9] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 769.569

.561 United Nations postage stamps, postal stationery, covers

.562 Counterfeit postage stamps, covers, cancellations

.563 Postage stamps commemorating persons and events

.564 Postage stamps depicting various specific subjects (Iconography)

Add to base number 769.564 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.943–704.949, e.g., postage stamps of birds of the world 769.56432

For stamps commemorating persons and events, see 769.563

.565 Covers

.566 Postal stationery

Postal-service-issued stationery (e.g., letter sheets, envelopes, postcards) bearing imprinted stamps

Class illustrated postcards in 741.683

.567 Postmarks, cancellations, cachets

Standard subdivisions may be added for postmarks, cancellations, cachets, for postmarks alone, for cancellations alone, and for cachets alone

See also 769.562 for counterfeit cancellations

.569 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 769.569 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., postage stamps from San Marino 769.5694549

.57 Stamps other than for prepayment of postage

Examples: Christmas seals, officially sealed labels, ration coupons; postage-due, postal savings, revenue and savings stamps

.9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of printmaking and prints

Add to base number 769.9 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., printmakers 769.92
(Option: Class printmakers in 760.92)

Class the history of a specific process with the process, e.g., history of lithography 763.09

See Manual at 769.92

770 Photography and photographs

Class technological photography in 621.367

SUMMARY

770.1–.9	**Standard subdivisions**
771	**Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials**
772	**Metallic salt processes**
773	**Pigment processes of printing**
774	**Holography**
778	**Specific fields and special kinds of photography, and related activities**
779	**Photographs**

.1 Philosophy and theory

.11 Inherent features

Examples: color, composition, decorative values, form, light, movement, perspective, space, style, symmetry, vision

Do not use for systems; class in 770.1

.2 Miscellany

.23 Photography as a profession, occupation, hobby

.232 Photography as a profession and occupation

.233 Photography as a hobby

[.28] Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use for apparatus, equipment, materials; class in 771

Techniques and procedures relocated to 771

.9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

.92 Photographers

Regardless of type of photography; however, class motion-picture photographers in 778.53092, television photographers in 778.59092

Class photographs in 779

771 Techniques, procedures [*formerly also* 770.28], apparatus, equipment, materials

Including techniques of pinhole photography, of photography without camera

Class here interdisciplinary works on description, use, manufacture of apparatus, equipment, materials

Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials used in special processes in 772–774; in specific fields and special kinds of photography in 778; manufacture of a specific kind of apparatus, equipment, material with the subject, e.g., of cameras 681.418

.1 Studios, laboratories, darkrooms

Class laboratory and darkroom practice in 771.4

.2 Furniture and fittings

.3 Cameras and accessories

.31 Specific makes (brands) of cameras

Arrange alphabetically by trade name

.32 Specific types of cameras

Examples: 35mm single-lens reflex, automatic, instant, large format, miniature

Class specific makes of specific types of cameras in 771.31

.35 Optical parts of cameras

Class optical parts of specific makes of cameras in 771.31

For shutters, see 771.36; focusing and exposure apparatus, 771.37

.352 Lenses

.356 Filters

.36 Camera shutters

Class shutters of specific makes of cameras in 771.31

.37 Focusing and exposure apparatus

Examples: exposure meters, range finders, viewfinders

Class focusing and exposure apparatus of specific makes of cameras in 771.31

.38 Accessories

Examples: carrying cases, tripods

.4 Darkroom and laboratory practice

For chemical materials, see 771.5

.43 Preparation of negatives

.44 Preparation of positives

Examples: contact printing, enlarging, developing, mounting

.45 Preservation and storage of negatives and transparencies

.46 Preservation and storage of positives

For mounting, see 771.44

.47 Recovery of waste materials

.49 Developing and printing apparatus

Examples: enlargers, frames, trays, utensils

.5 Chemical materials

.52 Support materials

Examples: backings of cellulose compounds, ceramics, glass, metal, paper

.53 Photosensitive surfaces

.532 Specific photosensitive surfaces

.532 2 Plates

.532 3 Papers

.532 4 Films

.54 Developing and printing supplies

Examples: developing, fixing, intensifying, reducing, toning solutions

---

> 772–774 Special processes

Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class comprehensive works in 771, processing techniques in specific fields and special kinds of photography in 778

For photomechanical printing techniques, see 686.232

772 Metallic salt processes

.1 Direct positive and printing-out processes

Early photographic processes

For platinum printing-out process, see 772.3

.12 Daguerreotype process

.14 Wet-collodion, ferrotype, tintype processes

.16 Kallitype processes

.3 Platinotype processes

Including platinum printing-out process

.4 Silver processes

Use of silver halides in principal light-sensitive photographic emulsions

773 Pigment processes of printing

Early photographic printing processes

.1 Carbon and carbro processes

Examples: Mariotype, ozotype, ozobrome

.2 Powder (Dusting-on) processes

Including peppertype processes

Class xerography in 686.44

.3 Imbibition processes

.5 Gum-bichromate processes

.6 Photoceramic and photoenamel processes

.7 Diazotype processes

.8 Oil processes

Including bromoil process

774 Holography

[775] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

[776] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

[777] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

778 Specific fields and special kinds of photography, and related activities

General aspects: techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class here interdisciplinary works on use and manufacture of apparatus, equipment, materials of specific fields and specific kinds of photography

Class manufacture of a specific kind of apparatus, equipment, materials with the subject, e.g., of cameras 681.418

SUMMARY

778.2	**Photographic projection**
.3	**Special kinds of photography**
.4	**Stereoscopic photography and projection**
.5	**Motion-picture and television photography, and related activities**
.6	**Color photography and photography of colors**
.7	**Photography under specific conditions**
.8	**Special effects and trick photography**
.9	**Photography of specific subjects**

.2 Photographic projection

Including filmstrips, filmslides

For stereoscopic projection, see 778.4; motion-picture projection, 778.55

.3 Special kinds of photography

Not provided for elsewhere

Including Kirlian photography (high-voltage, high-frequency photopsychography)

Class a specific application of photography with the application, e.g., use of photography in astronomy 522.63

For technological photography and photo-optics, see 621.367

See also 133.8 for parapsychological aspects of Kirlian photography

See Manual at 778.3 vs. 621.367

.31 Photomicrography

For motion-picture photomicrography, see 778.56

.32 Photography in terms of focus

.322 Telephotography

For aerial and space photography, see 778.35; panoramic photography, 778.36

.324 Close-up photography

Including photomacrography

Class close-up motion-picture and television photography in 778.5

.34 Infrared photography

Interdisciplinary works

Class technological infrared photography in 621.3672

.35 Aerial and space photography

Including interpretation

For photogrammetry, see 526.982

.36 Panoramic photography

.37 High-speed photography

Including use of short-duration electronic flash

Class high-speed motion-picture photography in 778.56, use of normal photographic electronic flash (flashbulb photography) in 778.72

.4 Stereoscopic photography and projection

Class stereoscopic motion-picture projection in 778.5541

For stereoscopic motion-picture photography, see 778.5341

.5 Motion-picture and television photography, and related activities

.52 General topics of motion-picture and television photography

Add to base number 778.52 the numbers following 778.5 in 778.53–778.58, e.g., lighting for motion-picture and television photography 778.52343

> 778.53–778.58 Motion pictures

Class comprehensive works in 778.5

.53 Motion-picture photography (Cinematography) and editing

Class here comprehensive works on cinematography and projection

Class special kinds of motion-picture photography applicable to science and technology in 778.56, comprehensive works on motion-picture production and cinematography in 791.43

For motion-picture projection, see 778.55

.532 Darkroom and laboratory practice

.534 Specific types and elements of motion-picture photography

.534 1 Stereoscopic

.534 2 Color

.534 3 Lighting

.534 4 Sound

Including sound-picture recording, sound synchronization and scoring, postsynchronization

Film music relocated to 781.542

.534 5 Special effects

Examples: double-image, trick photography

.534 6 Time-lapse

.534 7 Animated cartoons

.534 9 Amateur

Class darkroom and laboratory practice for amateurs in 778.532; specific types and elements of amateur motion-picture photography in 778.5341–778.5347

.534 91 Specific types of cameras

.535 Editing films

Including titling

Class editing in a specific type or element of motion-picture photography in 778.534

.538 Photography of specific subjects

Add to base number 778.538 notation 001–999, e.g., motion-picture photography of birds 778.538598

Class specific types and elements of motion-picture photography regardless of subject in 778.534

.55 Motion-picture projection

.554 Of specific kinds of motion pictures

.554 1 Stereoscopic

.554 2 Color

.554 4 Sound

.554 9 Amateur

.56 Special kinds of motion-picture photography

Not provided for elsewhere

Examples: high-speed motion-picture photography, motion-picture photomicrography

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., use of motion-picture photography in diagnosis of diseases 616.075028

.58 Preservation and storage of motion-picture films

.59 Television photography

Television music relocated to 781.546

.599 Television recording and recorders

Tape, film, disc

.599 2 Recording

.599 3 Recorders

.6 Color photography and photography of colors

Class color photomicrography in 778.31

For color motion-picture photography, see 778.5342

.602 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Class processing auxiliary techniques and procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials in color photography in 778.66

.62 Photography of colors in monochrome

Orthochromatic and panchromatic

.63 Direct process reproduction in color photography

Including Lippmann process

.65 Additive processes in color photography

.66 Processing techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials in color photography

Class here subtractive processes, production of color films and prints by subtractive analysis and subtractive synthesis, respectively

Class direct process reproduction in color photography in 778.63, additive processes in color photography in 778.65

.7 Photography under specific conditions

.71 Outdoors

.712 In sunlight

.719 At night

For infrared photography, see 778.34

.72 Indoors and by artificial light

Class here use of normal photographic electronic flash (flashbulb photography)

Class short-duration flash in high-speed photography in 778.37

For infrared photography, see 778.34

.73 Underwater

.75 Under extreme climatic conditions

.76 Available light

Class outdoor available light photography in 778.71, indoor available light photography in 778.72

.8 Special effects and trick photography

Examples: composite, high-contrast, tabletop photography; photomontage; photography of specters, distortions, multiple images, silhouettes

Class special effects motion-picture photography in 778.5345

.9 Photography of specific subjects

Class here comprehensive works on techniques of photographing, photographs of, and photographers of a specific subject

Add to base number 778.9 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., portrait photography 778.92

Class photographers in 770.92, photography by specific methods regardless of subject in 778.3–778.8

779 Photographs

Add to base number 779 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., photographs of children 779.25

See Manual at 779

780 Music

This schedule is new and has been prepared with little or no reference to previous editions. Most numbers have been reused with new meanings.

A comparative table giving both old and new numbers for a substantial list of topics and equivalence tables showing the numbers in the old and new schedules appear in Volume 1 in this edition

(Option: Distinguish scores by prefixing a letter or other symbol to the number for treatises, e.g., music for violin M787.2 or &787.2, and distinguish miniature scores from other scores by a special prefix, e.g., MM787.2; distinguish recordings in a similar manner, e.g., violin recordings R787.2 or MR787.2. Alternatively, distinguish scores, texts, recordings by adding to the number for treatises the numbers following 78 in 780.26–780.269, e.g., miniature scores of music for violin 787.20265. Examples in this schedule do not distinguish scores, texts, or recordings)

In building numbers, do not add by use of 0 or 1 (alone or in combination) more than twice, e.g., history of rock protest songs 782.421661592 (*not* 782.42166159209)

(Option: Add as many times as desired)

See Manual at 780

SUMMARY

780.000 1–.099 9 Relation of music to other subjects
.1–.9 Standard subdivisions

781 General principles and musical forms
.01–.09 Standard subdivisions
.1 Basic principles
.2 Elements of music
.3 Composition
.4 Techniques of music
.5 Kinds of music
.6 Traditions of music
.7 Sacred music
.8 Musical forms

782 Vocal music
.001–.009 Standard subdivisions
.01–.08 [General principles and musical forms]
.1 Dramatic vocal forms Operas
.2 Nondramatic vocal forms
.3 Services (Liturgy and ritual)
.4 Secular forms
.5 Mixed voices
.6 Women's voices
.7 Children's voices
.8 Men's voices
.9 Other types of voices

783 Music for single voice The voice
- **.001–.009 Standard subdivisions**
- **.01–.09 [General principles and musical forms]**
- **.1 Single voices in combination**
- **.2 Solo voice**
- **.3 High voice**
- **.4 Middle voice**
- **.5 Low voice**
- **.6–.8 Woman's, child's, man's voice**
- **.9 Other types of voice**

784 Instruments and instrumental ensembles and their music
- **.01–.09 Standard subdivisions**
- **.1 General principles, musical forms, instruments**
- **.2 Full (Symphony) orchestra**
- **.3 Chamber orchestra**
- **.4 Light orchestra**
- **.6 Keyboard, mechanical, electronic, percussion bands**
- **.7 String orchestra**
- **.8 Wind band**
- **.9 Brass band**

785 Ensembles with only one instrument per part
- **.001–.009 Standard subdivisions**
- **.01–.09 [General principles, musical forms, instruments]**
- **.1 Ensembles by size**
- **.2 Ensembles with keyboard**
- **.3 Ensembles without electrophones and with percussion and keyboard**
- **.4 Ensembles without keyboard**
- **.5 Ensembles without keyboard and with percussion**
- **.6 Keyboard, electrophone, percussion ensembles**
- **.7 String ensembles Bowed string ensembles**
- **.8 Woodwind ensembles**
- **.9 Brass ensembles**

786 Keyboard, mechanical, electrophonic, percussion instruments
- **.2 Pianos**
- **.3 Clavichords**
- **.4 Harpsichords**
- **.5 Keyboard wind instruments Organs**
- **.6 Mechanical and aeolian instruments**
- **.7 Electrophones Electronic instruments**
- **.8 Percussion instruments**
- **.9 Drums and devices used for percussion effects**

787 Stringed instruments (Chordophones) Bowed stringed instruments
- **.2 Violins**
- **.3 Violas**
- **.4 Cellos (Violoncellos)**
- **.5 Double basses**
- **.6 Other bowed stringed instruments Viols**
- **.7 Plectral instruments**
- **.8 Plectral lute family**
- **.9 Harps and musical bows**

788 Wind instruments (Aerophones)
.2 Woodwind instruments and free aerophones
.3 Flute family
.4 Reed instruments
.5 Double-reed instruments
.6 Single-reed instruments
.7 Saxophones
.8 Free reeds
.9 Brass instruments (Lip-reed instruments)

.000 1–.099 9 Relation of music to other subjects

Works in which the focus is music

Add to base number 780.0 three-digit notation 001–999, e.g., music and literature 780.08, music and Welsh literature 780.0891 (*not* 780.089166), music and the performing arts 780.079 (*not* 780.07902)

See Manual at 780.079 vs. 790.2

.1 Philosophy and theory

Class general principles, theory of music in 781

.14 Languages (Terminology) and communication

.148 Musical notation, abbreviations, symbols

Examples: staff notation, neumes, tablature, tonic sol-fa

Including braille musical notation

Class transcription from one form of notation to another in 780.149

.149 Editing

.15 Analytical guides and program notes

Do not use for scientific principles; class in 781.2

(.16) Bibliographies, catalogs, indexes

(Optional number; prefer 016.78)

(.162) *Bibliographies and catalogs of music literature

(.164) *Bibliographies and catalogs of scores and parts

Example: bibliographies and catalogs of manuscript scores and parts

(.166) *Discographies

Bibliographies and catalogs of music recorded on phonorecords (cylinders, discs, wires, tapes, films)

Example: biodiscographies

[.19] Psychological principles

Do not use; class in 781.11

.2 Miscellany

*(Optional number; prefer 016.78)

.202 Synopses and outlines

Class synopses of stories and plots in 782.00269

.216 Lists, inventories, catalogs of music

Class here thematic catalogs

Class thematic catalogs of individual composers in 780.92

.26 Treatises on music scores, recordings, texts

(Option: Use this number and its subdivisions to distinguish scores and recordings within 780; see details in note under 780)

(Option: Class here law; prefer appropriate subdivisions of 340)

In other parts of the schedules, indicate scores, recordings, texts, and treatises about them by adding the numbers following 78 in 780.262–780.269, e.g., bibliography of musical manuscripts 016.780262, bibliography of manuscripts of violin music 016.78720262, discography of violin music 016.78720266

See Manual at 780: Standard subdivisions

> 780.262–780.265 Scores

Class comprehensive works in 780.26

For words and other vocal sounds to be sung or recited with music, see 780.268

.262 *Manuscripts

Including sketch books, autograph scores

.263 *Printed music

For performance scores, see 780.264; study scores 780.265

See also 070.5794 for music publishing, 686.284 for music printing

.264 *Performance scores and parts

Examples: full scores, conducting scores, piano-vocal scores

.265 *Study scores (Miniature scores, Pocket scores)

.266 *Sound recordings of music

Class here comprehensive works on music recordings

For video recordings, see 780.267

See also 781.49 for recording of music

.267 *Video recordings of music

*(Option: Use this standard subdivision to distinguish scores and recordings, see details in note under 780)

.268 Words and other vocal sounds to be sung or recited with music

Examples: librettos, lyrics, poems, screenplays

Class here texts

The words must be discussed in a musical context. Thus, if the words are presented as literature, folklore, or religious text, class the work in 800, 398, 200, respectively

Use this subdivision only for building other numbers; never use it by itself

Class comprehensive works in 782.00268

For stories plots, synopses, see 780.269

See Manual at 780.268

.269 Stories, plots, synopses

Example: scenarios

Use this subdivision only for building other numbers; never use it by itself

Class comprehensive works in 782.00269

See Manual at 780.269

.28 Auxiliary procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Class techniques of music in 781.4, instruments in 784

See also 780.26 for scores, 780.266 for recordings

.7 Education, research, performances, related topics

Including use of apparatus and equipment in study and teaching

.76 Review, exercises, examinations, works for self-instruction

.77 Special teaching and learning methods

Example: programmed teaching

Class techniques for acquiring musical skills and learning a repertoire in 781.42

.78 Performances

General aspects: concerts and recitals

Do not use for use of apparatus and equipment in study and teaching; class in 780.7

Add to base number 780.78 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., concerts in London 780.78421

See also 781.43 for performance techniques

.79 Competitions, festivals, awards, financial support

Including adjudication

Add to base number notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., festivals in France 780.7944

Class performances at festivals and competitions in 780.78

.8 History and description of music with respect to kinds of persons

.89 Music with respect to specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Class folk music in 781.62

See Manual at 780.89 vs. 781.62

.9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

General aspects: development, description, critical appraisal

Class critical appraisal in analytical guides and program notes in 780.15

> 780.901–780.905 Periods of stylistic development of music

Class here schools and styles not limited ethnically or by country or locality

Even though the periods are those of Western music, this does not limit the use of these numbers to Western or European music only. Any time period of any music transcending ethnic or country limitations is classed here

Class comprehensive works in 780.9

.901 Ancient times to 499

.902 500–1499

Examples: Gothic style, ars antiqua, ars nova, medieval music

.903 1450–

Class here modern music

For 1900–1999, see 780.904; 2000–2099, 780.905

.903 1 Ca. 1450–ca. 1600

Example: Renaissance music

.903 2 Ca. 1600–ca. 1750

Examples: baroque music, nuove musiche

.903 3 Ca. 1750–ca. 1825

Examples: preclassicism, classicism, rococo style, 18th century music

Class rococo style of earlier period, music of earlier part of 18th century in 780.9032

.903 4 Ca. 1825–ca. 1900

Examples: romanticism, nationalism, 19th century music

Class music of earlier part of 19th century in 780.9033, 20th century nationalism in 780.904

.904 1900–1999

Examples: impressionism, neoclassicism, avant-garde music

Class early impressionism in 780.9034

[.904 1–.904 9] Individual decades

Do not use; class in 780.904

.905 2000–2099

.92 Persons associated with music

Examples: composers, performers, critics

Class here thematic catalogs of individual composers

(Option: Class individual composers in 789)

Class general thematic catalogs in 780.216

.94 European music

Use this number only for works that stress that they are discussing the European origin and character of music in contrast to music from other sources

---

> 781–788 Principles, forms, ensembles, voices, instruments

Class here music of all traditions

(Option: 781–788 may be used for only one tradition of music; in that case, class all other traditions in 789. For example, if it is desired to emphasize Western art music, class it here, and class all other traditions of music in 789, e.g., jazz 789.5; or, if it is desired to emphasize jazz, class it here, and class all other traditions of music in 789, e.g., Western art music 789.8)

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 781–788 in the one coming last, e.g., Johann Sebastian Bach's cello sonatas 787.4183 (*not* 784.183), jazz mass 782.323165 (*not* 781.65)

Class comprehensive works in 780

781 General principles and musical forms

Class here music theory

Use the subdivisions of 781 only when the subject is not limited to voice, instrument, or ensemble. If voice, instrument, or ensemble is specified, class with voice, instrument, or ensemble; and then add as instructed. For example, rehearsal of music 781.44, rehearsal of opera (a form for the voice) 782.1144

SUMMARY

781.01–.09	**Standard subdivisions**
.1	**Basic principles**
.2	**Elements of music**
.3	**Composition**
.4	**Techniques of music**
.5	**Kinds of music**
.6	**Traditions of music**
.7	**Sacred music**
.8	**Musical forms**

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., music theory during the Renaissance 781.09031

.1 Basic principles

.11 Psychological principles

For aesthetics, appreciation, taste, see 781.17

.12 Religious principles

.17 Artistic principles

Including aesthetics, appreciation, taste

> **781.2–781.8 Other principles and musical forms**

Add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified at 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078

1 General principles

Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., rock music 166, rehearsing rock music 166144

Class comprehensive works in 781

.2 *Elements of music

Class here scientific principles

SUMMARY

781.22	**Time**
.23	**Musical sound**
.24	**Melody**
.25	**Harmony**
.26	**Tonal systems**
.28	**Texture**

.22 *Time

For playing time, see 781.432

.222 *Pulse

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

.224 *Rhythm

.226 *Meter

.23 *Musical sound

.232 *Pitch

.233 *Volume

.234 *Timbre (Tone color)

.235 *Attack and decay

.236 *Silence

Including rests

.237 *Intervals

For consonance, see 781.238; dissonance, 781.239

.238 *Consonance

.239 *Dissonance

.24 *Melody

.246 *Scales and scalic formations

.247 *Ornaments

Examples: trills, embellishments

.248 *Themes

Examples: subject, countersubject, idée fixe, leitmotif

See also 780.216 for thematic catalogs

.25 *Harmony

Class here harmonic organization, comprehensive works on harmony and counterpoint

Class intervals in 781.237, figured bass in 781.47

For homophony, see 781.285; counterpoint, 781.286

.252 *Chords

Including arpeggios

.254 *Cadences

.256 *Harmonic rhythm

.258 *Tonality

Key relationships

For tonal systems, see 781.26

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

.26 *Tonal systems

.262 *Diatonicism

.263 *Medieval church modes

Class here comprehensive works on modes, modes of Western folk music

For other modes, see 781.264

.264 Other modes

Examples: ancient Greek modes, Byzantine echoi, Indian rāgas

Class modes of Western folk music in 781.263

.265 *Macrotonality

Tonality based on units larger than the diatonic whole tone

Including pentatonicism

.266 *Whole tonality

Tonality based on scales of diatonic whole tones

.267 *Atonality

Music with no fixed tonic or key center

For dodecaphony, see 781.268

.268 *Dodecaphony (Twelve-tone system, Note rows)

Class comprehensive works on serialism in 781.33

.269 *Microtonality

Tonality based on melodic units smaller than the diatonic semitone

.28 *Texture

.282 *Monody

Music with a single melodic line

.283 *Heterophony

Music with a single melodic line simultaneously varied by two or more performers

.284 *Polyphony

Two or more melodic lines

For homophony, see 781.285; counterpoint, 781.286

.285 *Homophony

Two or more mutually dependent melodic lines

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

.286 *Counterpoint

Two or more independent melodic lines

Class comprehensive works on harmony and counterpoint in 781.25

.3 *Composition

[.302 85] Computer composition

Do not use; class in 781.34

.32 *Indeterminacy and aleatory composition

Forms of composition based on chance

.33 Serialism

.330 1–.330 9 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of serial music 781.33078

.331 Basic principles

.331 1 Psychological principles

For aesthetics, appreciation, taste, see 781.3317

.331 2 Religious principles

.331 7 Artistic principles

Including aesthetics, appreciation, taste

.332–.338 Specific elements

Add to base number 781.33 the numbers following 781.2 in 781.22–781.28, e.g., serialized rhythm 781.3324; however, class atonality in 781.267

.34 *Computer composition

.344–.346 Computer science aspects

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 781.34 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 781.34416, but use of digital computers 781.34 (*not* 781.344)

.36 *Extemporization (Improvisation)

.37 *Arrangement

Example: transcription

For arrangements, see 781.38

.374 *Orchestration

.377 *Paraphrase and parody

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

.38 *Arrangements

.382–.388 By original voice, instrument, ensemble

Add to base number 781.38 the numbers following 78 in 782–788, e.g., arrangements of violin music 781.3872

Use these subdivisions only for building other numbers; never use them by themselves

See Manual at 781.382–781.388

.4 *Techniques of music

Class techniques of composition in 781.3

.42 *Techniques for acquiring musical skills and learning a repertoire

.423 *Sight and score reading

Class here visual techniques

.424 *Listening and ear training

Class here aural techniques

.426 *Memorizing

.43 *Performance techniques

For extemporization, see 781.36; specific performance techniques, 781.44–781.48

See also 784.193 for techniques for playing instruments

.432 *Playing time

.434 *Harmonization

.436 *Transposition

.438 *Ensemble technique

> 781.44–781.48 Specific performance techniques

Class comprehensive works in 781.43

.44 *Rehearsal and practice

.45 *Conducting

.46 *Interpretation

Including rubato

.47 *Accompaniment

Including continuo (thorough bass)

See Manual at 781.47

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

.48 *Breathing and resonance

See also 784.1932 for breathing and resonance associated with instrumental performance

.49 *Recording of music

See also 621.3893 for sound recording and reproducing equipment, 780.266 for treatises on music recordings

.5 *Kinds of music

SUMMARY

781.52	**Music for specific times**
.53	**Music in specific settings**
.54	**Music for specific media**
.55	**Music accompanying public entertainments**
.56	**Program music**
.57	**Music accompanying activities**
.58	**Music accompanying stages of the life cycle**
.59	**Music reflecting other themes and subjects**

.52 *Music for specific times

.522 *For days of week

.522 2 *Sunday

.522 8 *Saturday

.523 *For times of day

Examples: morning, noon, evening

.524 *For the seasons

.524 2 *Spring

.524 4 *Summer

.524 6 *Fall (Autumn)

Including harvest

.524 8 *Winter

.53 *Music in specific settings

.532 *Outdoor

Including street music

.534 *Indoor

For specific indoor settings, see 781.535–781.539

> 781.535–781.539 Specific indoor settings

Class music in religious settings in 781.7, comprehensive works in 781.534

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

.535 *Domestic setting

.536 *Court setting

.538 *Theater setting

.539 *Concert hall setting

.54 *Music for specific media

To be classed here the music must be either background or mood music

.542 *Film music [*formerly also* 778.5344]

See also 778.5344 for sound synchronization of motion pictures

.544 *Radio music

.546 *Television music [*formerly also* 778.59]

See also 778.59 for sound synchronization of television programs

.55 *Music accompanying public entertainments

.552 *Dramatic music

Class here incidental dramatic music

Class dramatic vocal music in 782.1

.554 *Dance music

For ballet music, see 781.556

.556 *Ballet music

.56 *Program music

Music depicting extramusical concepts, e.g., music depicting the sea

Class musical forms depicting extramusical concepts in 784.18, e.g., nocturnes 784.18966

.57 *Music accompanying activities

Examples: inaugurations, initiations

Class music accompanying stages of the life cycle in 781.58, music reflecting other themes and subjects regardless of activity in 781.59

.58 *Music accompanying stages of the life cycle

.582 *Birth and infancy

Examples: music for infant baptisms and circumcisions

Class here music for confinements

.583 *Attainment of puberty

Example: music for bar mitzvahs

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

.584 *Attainment of majority

Example: music for debuts

.586 *Courtship and betrothal

.587 *Weddings and marriage

.588 *Dying and death

Examples: music for burials, cremations, funerals, mourning

.59 *Music reflecting other themes and subjects

.592 *Protest

.593 *Work

.594 *Sports and recreation

.595 *Sea life

.599 *Patriotic, *political, *military

Class here music commemorating historical events

.6 *Traditions of music

Works emphasizing a specific tradition

(Option: If 781–788 is used for only one tradition of music, class all other traditions in 789)

SUMMARY

781.62	**Folk music**
.63	**Popular music**
.64	**Western popular music**
.65	**Jazz**
.66	**Rock (Rock 'n' roll)**
.68	**Western art (Classical) music**
.69	**Non-Western [illegible] music**

.62 Folk music

Music indigenous to the cultural group in which it occurs, usually evolved through aural transmission

See also 780.9 for music of and performed in a specific location

See Manual at 780.89 vs. 781.62

.620 01–.620 07 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of folk music 781.620078

.620 08 History and description of folk music with respect to kinds of persons

[.620 089] Treatment with respect to specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Do not use; class in 781.621–781.629

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

.620 09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

.620 090 1–.620 090 5 Historical periods

Add to base number 781.620090 the numbers following 780.90 in 780.901–780.905, e.g., folk music of the Renaissance 781.62009031

.620 091–.620 099 Geographical and persons treatment

Class geographical treatment of folk music of specific racial, ethnic, national groups in 781.621–781.629

.620 1–.620 5 General principles

Add to base number 781.620 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g., folk music for springtime 781.6205242, rehearsing folk music for springtime 781.6205242144

.620 6 Stylistic influences of other traditions of music

Add to base number 781.6206 the numbers following 781.6 in 781.63–781.69, e.g., influence of jazz on folk music 781.62065, performances of folk music influenced by jazz 781.62065078

.621–.629 Folk music of specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 781.62 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., Spanish folk music 781.6261; then add further as follows:

001–008 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of Spanish folk music 781.62610078

009 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

00901–00905 Historical periods

Add to base number 0090 the numbers following 780.90 in 780.901–780.905, e.g., Spanish folk music of the Renaissance 781.6261009031

[0093–0099] Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities

Do not use; class in 03–09

01 General principles

Add to 01 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g., Spanish folk music for springtime 781.6261015242, rhythm in Spanish folk music for springtime 781.62610152421224

02 Stylistic influence of other traditions of music

Add to 02 the numbers following 781.6 in 781.63–781.69, e.g., influence of jazz on Spanish folk music 781.6261025, performances of Spanish folk music influenced by jazz 781.6261025078

03–09 Specific continents, countries, localities

Add to 0 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish folk music in New York City 781.626107471

> 781.63–781.69 Other traditions of music

Add to notation for each term identified by † as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078

1 General principles and stylistic influences of other traditions of music

11–15 General principles
Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g., springtime music 15242, melody in springtime music 15242124

16 Stylistic influences of other traditions of music
Add to 16 the numbers following 781.6 in 781.62–781.69, e.g., influence of folk music 162, performances of influence of folk music 162078

Class comprehensive works in 781.6

.63 †Popular music

For Western popular music, see 781.64

.64 †Western popular music

Examples: ragtime, reggae, skiffle

Most works on Western popular music are predominantly about popular songs and are classed in 782.42164

For jazz, see 781.65; rock, 781.66

.642 †Country music

Class here bluegrass music

.643 †Blues

Class here rhythm and blues

.644 †Soul

.65 †Jazz

.652 †Early jazz

Class here origins of jazz

.653 †Traditional jazz

Examples: New Orleans, Dixieland, Southwest and Kansas City, Harlem, white New York styles; Chicago breakdown

.654 †Mainstream jazz

Including swing

†Add as instructed under 781.63–781.69

.655 †Modern jazz

Examples: bop (bebop), hard bop, cool jazz, progressive jazz

For avant-garde jazz, see 781.656

.656 †Avant-garde jazz

.657 †Hybrid styles

Examples: Afro-Cuban, third stream, Indo-jazz

.66 †Rock (Rock 'n' roll)

Examples: acid, folk, hard, soft rock

.68 †Western art (Classical) music

Classical music as only one of many traditions

Class here comprehensive works on art music

Class general works on art (classical) music in 780

For non-Western art music, see 781.69

.69 †Non-Western art music

.7 Sacred music

Class sacred music accompanying stages of life cycle in 781.58

"Church music" usually means Christian church music and is classed in 781.71

See also 782.22 for sacred vocal music

SUMMARY

781.700 1–.700 9	**Standard subdivisions**
.701–.706	**General principles**
.71	**Christian sacred music**
.72	**Music of Christian church year**
.73	**Sacred music of classical (Greek and Roman) and Germanic religions**
.74–.79	**Sacred music of other specific religions**

.700 1–.700 9 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of sacred music 781.70078

.701–.706 General principles

Add to base number 781.70 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.6, e.g., harmonic rhythm in sacred music 781.70256, appreciation of harmonic rhythm in sacred music 781.70256117

.71 Christian sacred music

For music of Christian church year, see 781.72

†Add as instructed under 781.63–781.69

.710 01–.710 09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of Christian sacred music 781.70078

.710 1–.710 6 General principles

Add to base number 781.710 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.6, e.g., harmonic rhythm in Christian sacred music 781.710256, appreciation of harmonic rhythm in Christian sacred music 781.710256117

.711–.718 Of specific denominations

Add to base number 781.71 the numbers following —2 in notation 21–28 from Table 7, e.g., Baptist sacred music 781.7161; then add further as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of Baptist sacred music 781.71610078

01–06 General principles

Add to 0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.6, e.g., harmonic rhythm in Baptist sacred music 781.71610256, appreciation of harmonic rhythm in Baptist sacred music 781.71610256117

.72 *Music of Christian church year

.722 *Advent

.723 *Christmas day

Class here Christmas season

For Epiphany, see 781.724

.724 *Epiphany

.725 *Lent

.725 5 *Passiontide

For Holy Week, see 781.726

.726 *Holy Week

Including Palm Sunday, Maundy Thursday, Good Friday

.727 *Easter Sunday

Class here Eastertide (Easter season)

For Ascensiontide, see 781.728

.728 *Ascensiontide

.729 *Pentecost and Trinity Sunday

.729 3 *Pentecost (Whitsunday)

.729 4 *Trinity Sunday

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

.73 *Sacred music of classical (Greek and Roman) and Germanic religions

.74–.79 Sacred music of other specific religions

Add to base number 781.7 the numbers following —29 in —294–299 from Table 7, e.g., Judaic sacred music 781.76; then add further as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of Judaic sacred music 781.760078

01–06 General principles

Add to base number 0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.6, e.g., harmonic rhythm in Judaic sacred music 781.760256, appreciation of harmonic rhythm in Judaic sacred music 781.760256117

.8 *Musical forms

Class here formal analysis; works that do not specify voice, instrument, or ensemble

Class works for specific voice, instrument, or ensemble with the voice, instrument, or ensemble, e.g., Brahm's Variations on a theme by Schumann 786.21825 (*not* 781.825)

For vocal forms, see 782.1–782.4; instrumental forms, 784.183–784.189

.82 Specific musical forms

.822 *Binary, ternary, da capo forms

.822 2 *Binary form

.822 3 *Ternary form

.822 5 *Da capo form

.823 *Strophic form

.824 *Rondo forms

Example: sonata-rondo form

.825 *Variation forms

Example: theme and variations

.826 *Paraphrase forms

Including musical parody

.827 *Ground bass forms (Ostinato forms)

Examples: chaconne, passacaglia

.828 *Cantus firmus forms

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

782 Vocal music

Class orchestral music with vocal parts in 784.22

For music for single voices, see 783

SUMMARY

782.001–.009 Standard subdivisions
.01–.08 [General principles and musical forms]
.1 Dramatic vocal forms Operas
.2 Nondramatic vocal forms
.3 Services (Liturgy and ritual)
.4 Secular forms
.5 Mixed voices
.6 Women's voices
.7 Children's voices
.8 Men's voices
.9 Other types of voices

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of vocal music 782.0078

.01–.07 General principles

Add to base number 782.0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., rehearsing vocal music 782.044, rhythm in patriotic vocal music 782.05991224

.08 Musical forms

Add to base number 782.08 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., vocal music in waltz form 782.08846

For vocal forms, see 782.1–782.4

> **782.1–782.4 Vocal forms**

Class here treatises about and recordings of vocal forms for specific voices and ensembles

Add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078

1 General principles and musical forms

11–17 General principles
Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., rock music 166, rehearsing rock music 166144

18 Musical forms
Add to 18 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., da capo form 1822, composition in da capo form 182213

Class comprehensive works in 782

.1 *Dramatic vocal forms *Operas

Regardless of type of voice or vocal group

Operas and related forms: musical vocal forms in which the action is predominantly in the music, whether or not dialogue is involved

Example: operas for children

Class here concert versions

Stage presentations of dramatic vocal forms relocated to 792.5

See Manual at 792.5 vs. 782.1

.109 2 Persons associated with dramatic vocal forms, with operas

Class here biographies of singers known equally well as opera and recital singers, of conductors known primarily as opera conductors

Class biographies of singers known primarily as recital singers in 782.42168092, of conductors known equally well for conducting operas and orchestral music in 784.092

.109 4 European opera

Use this number only for works that stress that they are discussing European opera in contrast to operas from all other sources

.12 *Operettas

.13 *Singspiels

.14 *Musical plays

Musical vocal forms in which the action is predominantly outside the music

Examples: ballad operas, musicals, revues

For masques, see 782.15

.15 *Masques

.2 *Nondramatic vocal forms

For secular forms, see 782.4

.22 *Sacred vocal forms

For specific sacred vocal forms, see 782.23–782.29

> 782.23–782.29 Specific sacred vocal forms

Class comprehensive works in 782.22

For services, see 782.3

.23 *Oratorios

Example: passions

*Add as instructed under 782.1–782.4

.24 *Large-scale vocal works *Cantatas

Class here comprehensive works on cantatas

For oratorios, see 782.23; secular cantatas, 782.48

.25 *Sacred songs

Example: spirituals

Class here *small-scale sacred vocal forms

If the songs are called hymns, class them in 782.27; if called carols, class them in 782.28; otherwise, class them here

For motets, see 782.26; hymns, 782.27; carols, 782.28

.26 *Motets

.265 *Anthems

.27 *Hymns

Class texts of hymns without music in 245, comprehensive works on hymns without music in 264.2

For carols, see 782.28

.28 *Carols

.29 *Liturgical forms

.292 *Chant

Including responses, e.g., litanies, suffrages

Class here plainsong

Class Gregorian chant in 782.3222, Anglican chant in 782.3223

> 782.294–782.298 Specific texts

Class comprehensive works in 782.29

.294 *Psalms

.295 *Biblical texts

Examples: Lord's Prayer, amens, canticles

For psalms, see 782.294

.296 *Non-Biblical texts

Class parts of the mass in 782.323

.297 *Tropes

Accretions to the liturgy

For liturgical drama, see 782.298

.298 *Liturgical drama

*Add as instructed under 782.1–782.4

.3 *Services (Liturgy and ritual)

Musical settings of prescribed texts of specific religions

Class texts used by a specific religion with the religion, e.g., liturgy and ritual of a Christian church 264

.32 *Christian services

.322 Services of specific denominations

Add to base number 782.322 the numbers following —2 in notation 21–28 from Table 7, e.g., music for Methodist services 782.3227; then add further as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of music for Methodist services 782.32270078

01–07 General principles
Add to 0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., music for Methodist Easter Sunday services 782.32270727, composition of music for Methodist Easter Sunday services 782.3227072713

08 Musical forms
Add to 08 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., preludes for Methodist services 782.322708928, composition of preludes for Methodist services 782.32270892813

Class specific liturgies of specific denominations in 782.323–782.326

> 782.323–782.326 Specific liturgies

Class comprehensive works in 782.32

.323 *Mass (Communion service)

This number is used for music including both the common and the proper of the mass. Masses written from 1350 to today are usually limited to the common and are thus classed in 782.3232. The major exception is the requiem mass, which is classed in 782.3238. Music for an individual part of the mass is classed with that part, e.g., gradual 782.3235

.323 2 *Common (Ordinary) of the mass

Contains Kyrie, Gloria, Credo, Sanctus, Benedictus, Agnus Dei

Class common of requiem mass in 782.3238

.323 5 *Proper of the mass

Contains introit, gradual, tract, sequence, offertory, communion

Class proper of requiem mass in 782.3238

.323 8 *Requiem mass

*Add as instructed under 782.1–782.4

.324 *Divine office

Contains matins, lauds, prime, terce, sext, none, vespers, compline

See also 782.325 for morning prayer, 782.326 for evening prayer

.325 *Morning prayer

Example: matins of the Anglican church

.326 *Evening prayer

Example: evensong of the Anglican church

.33 *Services of classical (Greek and Roman) and Germanic religions

.34–.39 Services of other specific religions

Add to base number 782.3 the numbers following —29 in notation 294–299 from Table 7, e.g., music for Judaic services 782.36; then add further as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of music for Judaic services 782.360078

01–07 General principles

Add to 0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., music for Judaic spring services 782.3605242, composition of music for Judaic spring services 782.360524213

08 Musical form

Add to 08 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., preludes for Judaic services 782.3608928, composition of preludes for Judaic services 782.360892813

.4 *Secular forms

.42 *Songs

Class here comprehensive works on songs

For sacred songs, see 782.25

.421 680 92 Persons associated with art songs

Class here biographies of singers known primarily as recital singers

Class biographies of singers known equally well as opera and recital singers in 782.1092

.43 *Forms derived from poetry *Madrigals

Examples: frottole, balletts, chansons, ballads

.47 *Song cycles

.48 *Secular cantatas

*Add as instructed under 782.1–782.4

> **782.5–782.9 Vocal executants**

Add to notation for each term identified by † as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078

1 General principles and musical forms

11–17 General principles
Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., rock music 166, rehearsing rock music 166144

18 Musical forms
Add to 18 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., da capo form 1822, composition in da capo form 182213
Class dramatic vocal forms in 782.1
For nondramatic vocal forms, see 2–4

2–4 Nondramatic vocal forms
Add the numbers following 782 in 782.2–782.4, e.g., secular cantatas 48

Use 782.5–782.9 for scores and parts of vocal forms for specific vocal ensembles. Use 782.1–782.4 for treatises about and recordings of vocal forms for specific vocal ensembles. Class performance techniques for a specific ensemble or form with the ensemble or form, e.g., breathing techniques for choral music 782.5148, for opera 782.1148

Class comprehensive works in 782

.5 †Mixed voices

Class here choral music, music intended equally for choral or part-song performance, choral music with solo parts, unison voices

For part songs, see 783.1

> **782.6–782.9 Types of voices**

Class comprehensive works in 782

.6 †Women's voices

Class here music intended equally for women's or children's voices

Class music for children's voices in 782.7

.66 †Soprano (Treble) voices

.67 †Mezzo-soprano voices

.68 †Contralto (Alto) voices

.7 †Children's voices

Class music intended equally for women's or children's voices in 782.6

.76 †Soprano (Treble) voices

.77 †Mezzo-soprano voices

.78 †Contralto (Alto) voices

.79 †Changing voices

†Add as instructed under 782.5–782.9

.8 †Men's voices

.86 †Treble and alto voices

Class here countertenor, falsetto, castrato voices

.87 †Tenor voices

.88 †Baritone voices

.89 †Bass voices

.9 †Other types of voices

.96 †Speaking voices (Choral speech)

.97 †Sprechgesang

.98 †Whistle

783 Music for single voices The voice

Use 783 for scores and parts of vocal forms for specific kinds or ensembles of single voice. Use 782.1–782.4 for treatises about and recordings of vocal forms for specific kinds or ensembles of single voice. Class performance techniques for a specific kind or ensemble of single voice or for a specific form with the kind, ensemble, or form, e.g., breathing techniques for part songs 783.1148, for opera 782.1148

SUMMARY

783.001–.009	**Standard subdivisions**
.01–.09	**[General principles and forms]**
.1	**Single voices in combination**
.2	**Solo voice**
.3	**High voice**
.4	**Middle voice**
.5	**Low voice**
.6–.8	**Woman's, child's, man's voice**
.9	**Other type of voice**

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of music for single voice 783.0078

.01–.07 General principles

Add to base number 783.0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., patriotic music for single voices 783.0599, rhythm in patriotic music for single voices 783.05991224

.08 Musical forms

Add to base number 783.08 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., vocal music in waltz form for the single voice 783.08846

For dramatic vocal forms, see 782.1; nondramatic vocal forms, 783.09

†Add as instructed under 782.5–782.9

.09 Nondramatic vocal forms

Add to base number 783.09 the numbers following 782 in 782.2–782.4, e.g., carols for single voices 783.0928

.1 Single voices in combination

Class here part songs

Class music intended equally for choral or part-song performance in 782.5

.101–.109 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of part songs 783.1078

.11 General principles and musical forms

.111–.117 General principles

Add to base number 783.11 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., patriotic part songs 783.11599, rehearsing patriotic part songs 783.11599144

.118 Musical forms

Add to base number 783.118 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., part songs in waltz form 783.118846, rehearsing part songs in waltz form 783.118846144

For dramatic vocal forms, see 782.1; nondramatic vocal forms, 783.119

.119 Nondramatic vocal forms

Add to base number 783.119 the numbers following 782 in 782.2–782.4, e.g., carols for single voices in combination 783.11928

> 783.12–783.19 Ensembles by size

Add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078

1 General principles and musical forms

11–17 General principles

Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., rock music 166, rehearsing rock music 166144

18 Musical forms

Add to 18 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., da capo form 1822, composition in da capo form 182213

Class dramatic vocal forms in 782.1

For nondramatic vocal forms, see 2–4

2–4 Nondramatic vocal forms

Add the numbers following 782 in 782.2–782.4, e.g., secular cantatas 48

Class comprehensive works in 783.1

.12 †Duets

.13 †Trios

.14 †Quartets

.15 †Quintets

.16 †Sextets

.17 †Septets

.18 †Octets

.19 †Nonets and larger combinations

> **783.2–783.9 Solo voices**

Add to each subdivision identified by ‡ notation 01–4 from table under 783.12–783.19, e.g., secular cantatas 48

Class comprehensive works in 783.2

.2 ‡Solo voice

Class here comprehensive works on types of single voices

Class specific types of single voices in 783.3–783.9

> **783.3–783.9 Specific types of single voices**

Class comprehensive works in 783.2, single voices in ensembles in 783.12–783.19

.3 ‡High voice

Class woman's soprano voice in 783.66; child's soprano voice in 783.76; man's treble voice and alto voice in 783.86, tenor voice in 783.87

.4 ‡Middle voice

Class woman's mezzo-soprano voice in 783.67, child's mezzo-soprano voice in 783.77, baritone voice in 783.88

.5 ‡Low voice

Class woman's contralto voice in 783.68, child's contralto voice in 783.78, bass voice in 783.89

†Add as instructed under 783.12–783.19

‡Add as instructed under 783.2–783.9

.6–.8 Woman's, child's, man's voice

Add to base number 783 the numbers following 782 in 782.6–782.8, e.g., bass voice 783.89

.9 ‡Other types of voice

.96 ‡Speaking voice

.97 ‡Sprechgesang

.98 ‡Whistle

.99 ‡Voice instruments

Examples: didjeridu, mirliton (kazoo)

Including voice disguisers (sympathetic instruments relying on the human voice for their sound production) and roarers

---

> **784–788 Instruments and their music**

Add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078

See Manual at 784–788: Add table: 092

1 General principles, musical forms, instruments

11–17 General principles

Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., performance techniques 143

For techniques for playing instruments, see 193

18–19 Musical forms and instruments

Add to 1 the numbers following 784.1 in 784.18–784.19, e.g., sonata form 183, techniques for playing instruments 193

Class comprehensive works in 784

784 Instruments and instrumental ensembles and their music

For specific instruments and their music, see 786–788

See also 787 for music for unspecified melody instrument

SUMMARY

784.01–.09	**Standard subdivisions**
.1	**General principles, musical forms, instruments**
.2	**Full (Symphony) orchestra**
.3	**Chamber orchestra**
.4	**Light orchestra**
.6	**Keyboard, mechanical, electronic, percussion bands**
.7	**String orchestra**
.8	**Wind band**
.9	**Brass band**

‡Add as instructed under 783.2–783.9

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078

.1 General principles, musical forms, instruments

SUMMARY

784.11–.17	**General principles**
.18	**Musical forms**
.19	**Instruments**

.11–.17 General principles

Add to base number 784.1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., performance techniques 784.143

For techniques for playing instruments, see 784.193

.18 †Musical forms

SUMMARY

784.182	**General musical forms**
.183	**Sonata forms**
.184	**Symphony forms**
.185	**Suite and related forms**
.186	**Concerto forms**
.187	**Contrapuntal forms**
.188	**Dance forms**
.189	**Other instrumental forms**

.182 †General musical forms

.182 2 †Binary, ternary, da capo forms

.182 3 †Strophic form

.182 4 †Rondo forms

Example: sonata-rondo form

.182 5 †Variation forms

Example: theme and variations

.182 6 †Paraphrase forms

Including musical parody

.182 7 †Ground bass forms (Ostinato forms)

Examples: chaconne, passacaglia

> 784.183–784.189 Instrumental forms

Class comprehensive works in 784.18

†Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

.183 †Sonata forms

Class sonata-rondo form in 784.1824

.183 2 †Sonatina form

.184 †Symphony forms

Examples: sinfonietta, symphonic poem

.184 5 †Sinfonia concertante form

.185 †Suite and related forms

Example: cassation

.185 2 †Divertimento form

.185 4 †Partita form

.185 6 †Serenade form

.185 8 †Suite form

.186 †Concerto forms

Use this subdivision only for concerto forms other than solo instruments with full orchestra, e.g., concerto forms for wind bands 784.8186, Bartok's Concerto for orchestra 784.2186

Examples: cadenza, concertante

Class comprehensive works on the concerto in 784.23

.186 2 †Concertino form

.187 †Contrapuntal forms

.187 2 †Fugue form

.187 4 †Invention form

.187 5 †Canzona form

.187 6 †Fancy and ricercar forms

Examples: innomine, tiento

.187 8 †Canon form

.188 †Dance forms

.188 2 †European dance forms

Examples: galliard, saltarello

For dances of the classical suite form, see 784.1883; European dance forms of the nineteenth and later centuries, 784.1884

.188 23 †Pavane form

.188 3 †Dances of the classical suite form

Examples: gavotte, siciliano

.188 35 †Minuet form

†Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

.188 4 †European dance forms of the nineteenth and later centuries

Examples: galop, mazurka, polonaise

.188 44 †Polka form

.188 46 †Waltz form

.188 5 †Asian dance forms

.188 6 †African dance forms

.188 7 †North American dance forms

Examples: cakewalk, hoedown

For Latin-American dance forms, see 784.1888

.188 8 †Latin-American dance forms

Examples: rumba, samba

.188 85 †Tango form

.188 9 †Dance forms of the Pacific Ocean islands and other parts of the world

.189 †Other instrumental forms

Class here small-scale and character instrumental forms

.189 2 †Introductory forms

Music preceding other music or other activities

.189 24 †Fanfare form

.189 26 †Overture form

.189 28 †Prelude form

.189 3 †Intermediate forms

Music for between or after other activities

Examples: intermezzo, interlude, postlude, voluntary

Class incidental dramatic music in 781.552

.189 4 †Forms of music of an improvisatory or virtuoso nature

Examples: arabesque, impromptu

.189 45 †Rhapsody form

.189 47 †Toccata form

.189 49 †Artistic étude form

.189 6 †Romantic and descriptive forms

Examples: ballade, meditation, song without words

.189 64 †Elegy form

.189 66 †Nocturne form

.189 68 †Romance form

†Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

.189 7 †March form

.189 9 †Forms derived from vocal music

.189 92 †From sacred music

Example: chorale prelude

Class instrumental forms derived from liturgical forms in 784.18993

.189 925 †Chorale form

.189 93 †From liturgical forms

.19 Instruments

For specific instruments, see 786–788

.190 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures

Class description and design in 784.1922, construction in 784.1923

[.190 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 784.1927

[.190 288] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 784.1928

[.190 94–.190 99] Historical and geographical treatment by specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 784.194–784.199

.192 Specific techniques and procedures

.192 2 Description and design

.192 3 Construction

Class construction by machine in 681.8

.192 7 Testing, measurement, verification

.192 8 Maintenance, tuning, repair

Including temperament

.193 †Techniques for playing instruments

Class comprehensive works on performance techniques in 784.143

.193 2 †Breathing and resonance

.193 4 †Embouchure

Examples: lipping, tonguing

.193 6 †Arm techniques

.193 62 †Forearm techniques

.193 64 †Wrist techniques

†Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

.193 65 †Hand techniques

For left-hand techniques, see 784.19366; right-hand techniques, 784.19367

.193 66 †Left-hand techniques

.193 67 †Right-hand techniques

.193 68 †Finger techniques

Examples: touch, fingering, vibrato

.193 69 †Bowing techniques

.193 8 †Leg techniques

Example: pedaling

.194–.199 Geographical treatment

Add to base number 784.19 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., instruments of Germany 784.1943

.2 *Full (Symphony) orchestra

Class here comprehensive works on orchestral combinations, music intended equally for orchestral or chamber performance

For other orchestral combinations, see 784.3–784.9; chamber music, 785

.209 2 Persons associated with full (symphony) orchestras

Class here biographies of conductors known equally well for conducting operas and orchestral music

Class biographies of conductors known primarily as opera conductors in 782.1092

.22 *Orchestra with vocal parts

.23 *Orchestra with one or more solo instruments

Class here comprehensive works on concertos

For orchestra with more than one solo instrument, see 784.24; orchestra with one solo instrument, 784.25

.24 *Orchestra with more than one solo instrument

Example: concerti grossi

.25 *Orchestra with one solo instrument

Class here comprehensive works on solo concertos

For specific solo instruments, see 784.26–784.28

.26–.28 Specific solo instruments with orchestra

Add to base number 784.2 the numbers following 78 in 786–788, e.g., orchestra with solo piano 784.262, e.g., rehearsing orchestra with solo piano 784.262144

*Add as instructed under 784–788

†Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

> **784.3–784.9 Other orchestral combinations and band**

Add to notation for each term identified by † as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078

1 General principles, musical forms, instruments

11–17 General principles
Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., sacred music 17, rehearsing sacred music 17044

18–19 Musical forms and instruments
Add to 1 numbers following 784.1 in 784.18–784.19, e.g., waltz form 18846, bowing techniques 19369

2 Featured voices, instruments, ensembles
Add to 2 the numbers following 78 in 782–788, e.g., flutes 2832

Class comprehensive works on orchestral combinations and band, on band in 784; comprehensive works on orchestral combinations in 784.2

.3 †Chamber orchestra

For chamber music, see 785

.4 †Light orchestra

Class here salon orchestra

.44 †School orchestra

.46 †Orchestra with toy instruments

.48 †Dance orchestra (Dance band)

.6 †Keyboard, mechanical, electronic, percussion bands

.68 †Percussion band

Class here rhythm band

.7 †String orchestra

.8 †Wind band

Band consisting of woodwind instruments, brass instruments, or both

For brass band, see 784.9

.83 †Marching band

.84 †Military band

.89 †Woodwind band

.9 †Brass band

†Add as instructed under 784.3–784.9

785 Ensembles with only one instrument per part

Class here chamber music

Class works for solo melody instrument with keyboard or other accompaniment in 786–788

SUMMARY

785.001–.009 Standard subdivisions
.01–.09 General principles, musical forms, instruments
.1 Ensembles by size
.2 Ensembles with keyboard
.3 Ensembles without electrophones and with percussion and keyboard
.4 Ensembles without keyboard
.5 Ensembles without keyboard and with percussion
.6 Keyboard, electrophone, percussion ensembles
.7 String ensembles Bowed string ensembles
.8 Woodwind ensembles
.9 Brass ensembles

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of chamber music 785.0078

.01–.07 General principles

Add to base number 785.0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., performance techniques 785.043

For techniques for playing instruments, see 785.093

.08–.09 Musical forms and instruments

Add to base number 785.0 the numbers following 784.1 in 784.18–784.19, e.g., waltz form 785.08846, techniques for playing instruments 785.093

.1 Ensembles by size

These provisions, when applied throughout 785, refer to the number of instruments, except for percussion ensembles in 785.68, where they refer to the number of performers

.12 *Duets

.13 *Trios

.14 *Quartets

.15 *Quintets

.16 *Sextets

.17 *Septets

.18 *Octets

.19 *Nonets and larger ensembles

*Add as instructed under 784–788

> **785.2–785.9 Specific kinds of ensembles**

Add to notation for each term identified by † as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078

1 General principles, musical forms, size of ensemble

11–17 General principles
Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., sacred music 17, conducting sacred music 17045
Class instrumental techniques for mixed ensembles in 784.193, for specific instruments in 786–788, e.g., bowing techniques for violins 787.219369

18 Musical forms
Add to 18 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., waltz form 18846

19 Size of ensemble
Add to 19 the numbers following 785.1 in 785.12–785.19, e.g., octets 198

Class comprehensive works in 785

> **785.2–785.5 Ensembles consisting of two or more instrumental groups**

Class comprehensive works in 785

.2 †Ensembles with keyboard

For ensembles without electrophones and with percussion and keyboard, see 785.3

.22 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, keyboard

.23 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, keyboard

.24 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, keyboard

.25 †Ensembles of brass, strings, keyboard

†Add as instructed under 785.2–785.9

.26 †Ensembles of woodwind and keyboard

Two or more woodwind instruments

See also 788.2 for ensembles of one woodwind instrument and keyboard

.27 †Ensembles of brass and keyboard

Two or more brass instruments

See also 788.9 for ensembles of one brass instrument and keyboard

.28 †Ensembles of strings and keyboard

Two or more stringed instruments

See also 787 for ensembles of one stringed instrument and keyboard

.29 †Ensembles with electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.292 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.293 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.294 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.295 †Ensembles of brass, strings, electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.296 †Ensembles of woodwind, electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.297 †Ensembles of brass, electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.298 †Ensembles of strings, electrophones, percussion, keyboard

.299 †Ensembles with electrophones and keyboard

.299 2 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, electrophones, keyboard

.299 3 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, electrophones, keyboard

.299 4 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, electrophones, keyboard

.299 5 †Ensembles of brass, strings, electrophones, keyboard

.299 6 †Ensembles of woodwind, electrophones, keyboard

.299 7 †Ensembles of brass, electrophones, keyboard

.299 8 †Ensembles of strings, electrophones, keyboard

.299 9 †Ensembles of electrophones and keyboard

Two or more electrophones

See also 786.7 for ensembles of one electrophone and keyboard

.3 †Ensembles without electrophones and with percussion and keyboard

.32 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, percussion, keyboard

.33 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, percussion, keyboard

†Add as instructed under 785.2–785.9

.34 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, percussion, keyboard

.35 †Ensembles of brass, strings, percussion, keyboard

.36 †Ensembles of woodwind, percussion, keyboard

.37 †Ensembles of brass, percussion, keyboard

.38 †Ensembles of strings, percussion, keyboard

.39 †Ensembles of keyboard and percussion

.4 †Ensembles without keyboard

For ensembles without keyboard and with percussion, see 785.5

.42 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings

.43 †Ensembles of woodwind and brass (Wind ensembles)

.44 †Ensembles of woodwind and strings

.45 †Ensembles of brass and strings

.46 †Ensembles with electrophones

.462 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, electrophones

.463 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, electrophones

.464 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, electrophones

.465 †Ensembles of brass, strings, electrophones

.466 †Ensembles of woodwinds and electrophones

.467 †Ensembles of brass and electrophones

.468 †Ensembles of strings and electrophones

.5 †Ensembles without keyboard and with percussion

.52 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, percussion

.53 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, percussion

.54 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, percussion

.55 †Ensembles of brass, strings, percussion

.56 †Ensembles of woodwind and percussion

.57 †Ensembles of brass and percussion

.58 †Ensembles of strings and percussion

.59 †Ensembles with electrophones and percussion

.592 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, electrophones, percussion

.593 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, electrophones, percussion

.594 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, electrophones, percussion

†Add as instructed under 785.2–785.9

.595 †Ensembles of brass, strings, electrophones, percussion

.596 †Ensembles of woodwind, electrophones, percussion

.597 †Ensembles of brass, electrophones, percussion

.598 †Ensembles of strings, electrophones, percussion

.599 †Ensembles of electrophones and percussion

> **785.6–785.9 Ensembles consisting of only one instrumental group**

The inclusion of "only one kind" in the 785.6–785.9 headings limits the subdivisions to individual kind of instruments, not to family of instruments. For example, a string quartet, which usually consists of two violins, a viola, and a cello is classed in 785.7194 string quartets, *not* 785.72194 violin quartets

When adding from 786–788 to indicate the instrument, add *only* the notation for the instrument; do not follow the footnote leading to add instructions. After indicating the instrument, add as instructed under 785.2–785.9, where notation 19 is used to indicate size of ensemble. For example, 785.7194 means string quartets, *not* string instruments of Europe (the meaning that would result from following the footnote instruction). The correct number for string quartets of Europe is 785.7194094

Class comprehensive works in 785

.6 †Keyboard, electrophone, percussion ensembles

.62–.65 Keyboard ensembles

Add to base number 785.6 the numbers following 786 in 786.2–786.5 for the instrument only, e.g., music for piano ensembles 785.62; then add further as instructed under 785.2–785.9, e.g., music for two pianos 785.62192

.67 †Electrophone ensembles

Class ensembles of a specific kind or group of electrically amplified or modified standard instruments with the instrument or group of instruments, e.g., electric guitar ensembles 785.787

See also 786.7 for electronic music for one performer

.673–.676 Ensembles with only one type of electrophone instrument

Add to base number 785.67 the numbers following 786.7 in 786.73–786.76 for the instrument only, e.g., music for synthesizers 785.674; then add further as instructed under 785.2–785.9, e.g., sextets for synthesizers 785.674196

.68 †Percussion ensembles

Class here ensembles for more than one performer; see note under 785.1

See also 786.8 for percussion music for one performer

†Add as instructed under 785.2–785.9

.7 †String ensembles †Bowed string ensembles

.72–.79 Ensembles of only one kind of stringed instrument

Add to base number 785.7 the numbers following 787 in 787.2–787.9 for the instrument only, e.g., music for guitar 785.787; then add further as instructed under 785.2–785.9, e.g., quartet for guitars 785.787194

.8 †Woodwind ensembles

.82–.88 Ensembles of only one kind of woodwind instrument

Add to base number 785.8 the numbers following 788 in 788.2–788.8 for the instrument only, e.g., music for saxophones 785.87; then add further as instructed under 785.2–785.9, e.g., quartet for saxophones 785.87194

.9 †Brass ensembles

.92–.99 Ensembles of only one kind of brass instrument

Add to base number 785.9 the numbers following 788.9 in 788.92–788.99 for the instrument only, e.g., music for trombones 785.93; then add further as instructed under 785.2–785.9, e.g., quartet for trombones 785.93194

> **786–788 Specific instruments and their music**

Class here music for solo instrument, music for solo instruments accompanied by one other instrument when accompanying instrument clearly has a subsidiary role

Unless the forerunner of a modern instrument has its own notation, class it with the modern instrument. For example, the shawm, a forerunner of the oboe and an instrument without its own number, is classed with the oboe in 788.52; however, the vihuela, the forerunner of the guitar, is classed in 787.86 (its own number), *not* with the guitar in 787.87

Class comprehensive works in 784, chamber music in 785, voice instruments in 783.99

786 *Keyboard, mechanical, electrophonic, percussion instruments

Class here comprehensive works on keyboard instruments, on keyboard stringed instruments; music for unspecified keyboard instrument

SUMMARY

786.2	**Pianos**
.3	**Clavichords**
.4	**Harpsichords**
.5	**Keyboard wind instruments Organs**
.6	**Mechanical and aeolian instruments**
.7	**Electrophones Electronic instruments**
.8	**Percussion instruments**
.9	**Drums and devices used for percussion effects**

*Add as instructed under 784–788

†Add as instructed under 785.2–785.9

> **786.2–786.5 Keyboard instruments**

Class comprehensive works in 786, mechanical keyboard instruments in 786.66, keyboard idiophones in 786.83

> **786.2–786.4 Keyboard stringed instruments**

Class comprehensive works in 786

.2 *Pianos

.28 *Prepared pianos

.3 *Clavichords

.4 *Harpsichords

Class here virginals, spinets

.5 *Keyboard wind instruments *Organs

Class concertinas in 788.84, accordions in 788.86

.55 *Reed organs and *regals

Variant names for reed organs: American organs, cabinet organs, harmoniums

.59 *Electronic organs

Class here comprehensive works on keyboard electrophones

Class a keyboard instrument whose sound is generated by conventional means, even though amplified or modified electronically, with the instrument, e.g., electric piano 786.2

See also 786.74 for synthesizers

.6 *Mechanical and aeolian instruments

> 786.64–786.68 Mechanical instruments

Class comprehensive works in 786.6

.64 *Mechanical struck idiophones

Examples: mechanized bells, carillons

Class here comprehensive works on mechanical idiophones

For mechanical plucked idiophones, see 786.65

.65 *Mechanical plucked idiophones

Examples: music boxes, symphonions

*Add as instructed under 784–788

.66 *Mechanical keyboard instruments

Mechanical instruments with attached functional keyboard

Example: player pianos (pianolas)

Class mechanical wind keyboard instruments in 786.68

.67 *Mechanical stringed instruments

Class mechanical stringed keyboard instruments in 786.66

.68 *Mechanical wind instruments

Example: fair organs

.69 *Aeolian instruments

Instruments activated by the blowing of the wind

.7 *Electrophones *Electronic instruments

Class here music made from electrically produced or manipulated sounds

Class keyboard electrophones in 786.59; a specific electrically amplified or modified standard instrument other than keyboard instruments with the instrument, e.g., electric guitar 787.87

.73 *Monophonic electrophones

Electronic sound producers capable of producing only one pitch at a time

Examples: ondes martenot, theremins

.74 *Synthesizers

Class here electronic music

For tapes, see 786.75; computers, 786.76

.75 Tapes

Class here musique concrète (concrete music)

.76 Computers

.8 *Percussion instruments

For drums, see 786.92–786.98; struck stringed instruments, 787.7

.82 *Idiophones (Vibrating sonorous solids)

Class here comprehensive works on percussion instruments of definite pitch

Class percussion instruments of indefinite pitch in 786.88

For mechanical idiophones, see 786.64; keyboard idiophones, 786.83; set idiophones, 786.84–786.87; single idiophones, 786.88

.83 *Keyboard idiophones

Class here celestas

*Add as instructed under 784–788

> 786.84–786.87 Set idiophones

Class comprehensive works in 786.84

.84 *Percussed idiophones

Sonorous solids struck by or against nonsonorous objects, e.g., sticks struck on ground

Class here comprehensive works on set idiophones (similar sonorous solids combined to form one instrument)

For plucked idiophones, see 786.85; friction idiophones, 786.86; concussion idiophones, 786.87

.842–.848 Sonorous solids of specific shapes

Add to base number 786.84 the numbers following 786.884 in 786.8842–786.8848, e.g., bar idiophones 786.843, performances on bar idiophones 786.843078

.85 *Plucked idiophones

Elastic bars or rods, usually of metal, fixed at one end and vibrated by plucking the free end

Example: sanzas (thumb pianos)

.86 *Friction idiophones

Objects rubbed to produce sounds of definite pitch

.862–.868 Sonorous solids of specific shapes

Add to base number 786.86 the numbers following 786.884 in 786.8842–786.8848, e.g., vessels 786.866, rehearsing on vessels 786.866144

.87 *Concussion idiophones

Two or more similar sonorous objects struck together to make both vibrate

.872–.878 Sonorous objects of specific shapes

Add to base number 786.87 the numbers following 786.884 in 786.8842–786.8848, e.g., blocks 786.873, rehearsing playing of blocks 786.873144

.88 *Single idiophones

Idiophones consisting of a single sonorous object

Class here comprehensive works on percussion instruments of indefinite pitch

Class a specific percussion instrument of indefinite pitch not provided for here with the instrument, e.g., cymbals 786.873

*Add as instructed under 784–788

.884 *Percussed idiophones

.884 2 *Sticks or rods

Example: triangles

.884 3 *Bars, plates, blocks

Examples: anvils, gongs

.884 4 *Troughs

.884 5 *Tubes

.884 6 *Vessels

For bells, see 786.8848

.884 8 *Bells

.884 85 *Hand bells

.885 *Rattled idiophones

Examples: maracas, sistrums

.886 *Scraped idiophones

Idiophones consisting of two objects, a notched one being scraped by the other to create vibrations in one or the other

Examples: washboards, football rattles

.887 *Plucked idiophones

Example: jew's harps

.888 *Friction idiophones

Example: musical saws

.9 *Drums and devices used for percussion effects

> 786.92–786.98 Drums (Membranophones, Vibrating stretched membranes)

Class comprehensive works in 786.9

.92 *Struck drums

For kettle-shaped drums, see 786.93; tubular drums, 786.94; frame-shaped drums, 786.95

.93 *Kettle-shaped drums

Examples: timpani (kettledrums), nakers (naqara), tabla

.94 *Tubular drums

Example: snare drums (side drums)

*Add as instructed under 784–788

.95 *Frame-shaped drums

Drums with depth of body not exceeding radius of membrane

Examples: bass drums, tambourines

.96 *Rattle drums

Drums whose membrane or membranes are struck by pellets or pendants

.97 *Plucked drums

Drums each with a string that when plucked transmits a vibration to the membrane through which the string passes

.98 *Friction drums

Drums whose membrane is made to vibrate by being rubbed either directly or by an attached stick or cord

Examples: quicas, rommelpots

.99 *Devices used for percussion effects

Examples: whips, motor horns, sirens, popguns

787 *Stringed instruments (Chordophones) *Bowed stringed instruments

Class here music for unspecified melody instrument, comprehensive works on the lute family (instruments whose strings run from the resonating belly to the neck)

Class keyboard stringed instruments in 786, mechanical stringed instruments in 786.67

SUMMARY

787.2	**Violins**	
.3	**Violas**	
.4	**Cellos (Violoncellos)**	
.5	**Double basses**	
.6	**Other bowed stringed instruments**	**Viols**
.7	**Plectral instruments**	
.8	**Plectral lute family**	
.9	**Harps and musical bows**	

.2 *Violins

Class here comprehensive works on violin family

For violas, see 787.3; cellos, 787.4; double basses, 787.5

.3 *Violas

.4 *Cellos (Violoncellos)

.5 *Double basses

.6 *Other bowed stringed instruments *Viols

For double basses, see 787.5

*Add as instructed under 784–788

.62 *Descant viols

.63 *Treble viols

.64 *Tenor viols

.65 *Bass viols (Viola da gambas)

.66 *Viola d'amores

.69 *Hurdy-gurdies (Vielles)

.7 *Plectral instruments

Class here zithers, comprehensive works on struck stringed instruments

For plectral lute family, see 787.8; harps and musical bows, 787.9

> 787.72–787.75 Zithers

Class comprehensive works in 787.7

.72 *Stick, tube, trough zithers

.73 *Frame, ground, harp, raft zithers

.74 *Board zithers

Examples: cimbaloms, dulcimers, santirs, yang ch'ins

Class here struck board zithers

For plucked board zithers, see 787.75

.75 *Plucked board zithers

Examples: Appalachian dulcimers, autoharps, concert zithers, psalteries, Tyrolean zithers

.78 *Lyres

.8 *Plectral lute family

Class here long-necked, short-necked lutes

.82 *Round-backed lute family

Examples: sitars, tamburas

For lutes, see 787.83; mandolins, 787.84

.83 *Lutes

.84 *Mandolins

.85 *Flat-backed lute family

Examples: biwas, citterns, shamisens

For vihuelas, see 787.86; guitars, 787.87; banjos, 787.88; ukuleles, 787.89

*Add as instructed under 784–788

.86 *Vihuelas

.87 *Guitars

.875 *Balalaikas

.88 *Banjos

.89 *Ukuleles

.9 *Harps and musical bows

.92 *Musical bows

Stringed instruments each with one or more strings stretched across a single flexible string bearer

Class pluriarcs in 787.93

.93 *Pluriarcs (Compound musical bows)

Stringed instruments with strings stretched across several string bearers

---

> 787.94–787.98 Harps

Class comprehensive works in 787.9

.94 *Bow (Arched) harps and *angle harps

Harps with neck forming an arch with the resonator

.95 *Frame harps

Harps with pillar joining end of neck to resonator

Examples: orchestral harps, Celtic harps

.98 *Bridge harps (Harp-lutes)

Lute-bodied harps with strings that are perpendicular to body of the harp and that pass through a bridge

Example: koras

788 *Wind instruments (Aerophones)

Class keyboard wind instruments in 786.5, mechanical wind instruments in 786.68

SUMMARY

788.2	**Woodwind instruments and free aerophones**
.3	**Flute family**
.4	**Reed instruments**
.5	**Double-reed instruments**
.6	**Single-reed instruments**
.7	**Saxophones**
.8	**Free reeds**
.9	**Brass instruments (Lip-reed instruments)**

*Add as instructed under 784–788

.2 *Woodwind instruments and free aerophones

For specific woodwind instruments, see 788.3–788.8

.29 *Free aerophones

Aerophones in which the airstream is not directed into or through a cavity or tube but directly into the outer air, or the air remains static and the instrument when moved vibrates through friction with the air

Example: bull-roarers

Class free aerophones used for percussion effects in 786.99

> **788.3–788.8 Specific woodwind instruments**

Class comprehensive works in 788.2

.3 *Flute family

Class here nose flutes

.32 *Transverse (Side-blown) flutes

Variant name: flutes

For piccolos and fifes, see 788.33; bass flutes, 788.34

.33 *Piccolos and *fifes

.34 *Bass flutes

.35 *Duct, *end-blown, *notched flutes

Examples: flageolets, penny whistles, shakuhanchis

For recorders, see 788.36

.36 *Recorders

.363 *Sopranino recorders

.364 *Descant (Soprano) recorders

.365 *Treble (Alto) recorders

.366 *Tenor recorders

.367 *Bass recorders

.37 *Multiple flutes *Pan pipes

Several flutes formed into one instrument

.38 *Vessel flutes

Example: ocarinas

*Add as instructed under 784–788

.4 *Reed instruments

For double-reed instruments, see 788.5; single-reed instruments, 788.6; free reeds, 788.8

.49 *Bagpipes

Examples: cornemuses; Northumbrian, uillean (union) pipes

Class here single- and double-reed bagpipes

.5 *Double-reed instruments

Examples: crumhorns, racketts

For bagpipes, see 788.49

.52 *Oboes

.53 *Cors anglais (English horns)

.58 *Bassoons

For double bassoons, see 788.59

.59 *Double bassoons (Contrabassoons)

.6 *Single-reed instruments

For bagpipes, see 788.49; saxophones, 788.7

.62 *Clarinets

For bass clarinets, see 788.65

.65 *Bass clarinets

.7 *Saxophones

.72 *Soprano saxophones

.73 *Alto saxophones

.74 *Tenor saxophones

.75 *Bass saxophones

.8 *Free reeds

Instruments consisting of sets of individual free reeds

.82 *Mouth organs *Harmonicas

Example: shengs

.84 *Concertinas

Example: bandoneons

.86 *Accordions

.863 *Button accordions *Melodeons

.865 *Piano accordions

*Add as instructed under 784–788

.9 *Brass instruments (Lip-reed instruments)

.92 *Trumpets

.93 *Trombones

.94 *French horns (Horns)

See also 788.53 for English horns

.95 *Bugles

.96 *Cornets

.97 *Flugelhorns (Saxhorns)

.974 *Tenor horns

Examples: B-flat horns (also called baritones in United Kingdom and Germany) and E-flat horns (also called alto horns in North America and France)

.975 *Euphoniums and *baritones (American)

.98 *Tubas

.99 *Other brass instruments

Examples: cornetts, ophicleides, serpents

(789) Composers and traditions of music

(Optional number and subdivisions; prefer 780–788)

(Option A: Arrange treatises about all composers at 789 plus an alphabeting mark; then to the result add notation following 78 in 780–788

(Option B: Use 789 and its subdivisions for traditions of music

(If both options are used, class comprehensive works on traditions of music in 789.1)

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 789 in the one coming last, e.g., Spanish folk music for springtime 789.26105242 (not 789.205242)

(.1) †General principles of traditions of music

(If both options are used, class here comprehensive works on traditions of music)

Add to base number 789.1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g., treatment of springtime music in various traditions 789.15242

(.2) †Folk music

Music indigenous to the cultural group in which it occurs, usually evolved through aural transmission

(.200 1–.200 7) †Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of folk music 789.20078

*Add as instructed under 784–788

†(Optional number; prefer 781–788)

(.200 8) †History and description of folk music with respect to kinds of persons

[.200 89] Treatment with respect to specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Do not use; class in 789.21–789.29

(.200 9) †Historical, geographical, persons treatment

(.200 901–.200 905) †Historical periods

Add to base number 789.20090 the numbers following 780.90 in 780.901–780.905, e.g., Renaissance folk music 789.2009031

(.200 91–.200 99) †Geographical and persons treatment

Class geographical treatment of folk music of specific racial, ethnic, national groups in 789.21–789.29

(.201) †General principles, stylistic influences of other traditions, musical forms

(.201 1–.201 5) †General principles

Add to base number 789.201 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g., folk music for springtime 789.2015242, rhythm in folk music for springtime 789.20152421224

(.201 6) †Stylistic influences of other traditions of music

Add to base number 789.2016 the numbers following 789 in 789.3–789.9, e.g., influence of jazz on folk music 789.20165, performances of folk music influenced by jazz 789.20165078

(.201 8) †Musical forms

Add to base number 789.2018 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., march form in folk music 789.201897

(.202–.208) †Voices, instruments, ensembles

Add to base number 789.20 the numbers following 78 in 782–788, e.g., folk songs for women singers 789.202642

(.21–.29) †Folk music of specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 789.2 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., Spanish folk music 789.261; then add further as follows:

001–008 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of Spanish folk music 789.2610078

009 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

00901–00905 Historical periods

Add to 0090 the numbers following 780.90 in 780.091–780.095, e.g., Spanish folk music of the Renaissance 789.261009031

[0093–0099] Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities

Do not use; class in 03–09

(continued)

†(Optional number; prefer 781–788)

(.21–.29) †Folk music of specific racial, ethnic, national groups (continued)

01 General principles, stylistic influences of other traditions of music, musical forms

011–015 General principles
Add to 01 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g., Spanish folk music for springtime 789.261015242, rhythm in Spanish folk music for springtime 789.2610152421224

016 Stylistic influences of other traditions of music
Add to 016 the numbers following 789 in 789.3–789.9, e.g., influence of jazz on Spanish folk music 789.2610165, performances of Spanish folk music influenced by jazz 789.2610165078

018 Musical forms
Add to 018 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., march form in Spanish folk music 789.26101897

02 Voices, instruments, ensembles
Add to 02 the numbers following 78 in 782–788, e.g., Spanish folk music for the guitar 789.26102787

03–09 Specific continents, countries, localities
Add to 0 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish folk music in New York City 789.26107471

> (789.3–789.9) Other traditions of music

Add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performance 0078

01 General principles, stylistic influences of other traditions of music, musical forms

011–015 General principles
Add to 01 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g., springtime music 015242, melody in springtime music 015242124

016 Stylistic influences of other traditions of music
Add to 016 the numbers following 789 in 789.2–789.9, e.g., influence of folk music 0162, performances of music influenced by folk music 0162078

018 Musical forms
Add to 018 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., march form 01897

1 Voices, instruments, ensembles
Add to 1 the numbers following 78 in 782–788, e.g., guitar music 1787

Class comprehensive works in 789

(.3) †*Popular music

For Western popular music, see 789.4

*Add as instructed under 789.3–789.9

†(Optional number; prefer 781–788)

(.4) †*Western popular music

Examples: ragtime, reggae, skiffle

For jazz, see 789.5; rock, 789.6

(.42) †*Country music

Class here bluegrass music

(.43) †*Blues

Class here rhythm and blues

(.44) †*Soul

(.5) †*Jazz

(.52) †*Early jazz

Class here origins of jazz

(.53) †*Traditional jazz

Examples: New Orleans, Dixieland, Southwest and Kansas City, Harlem, white New York styles; Chicago breakdown

(.54) †*Mainstream jazz

Including swing

(.55) †*Modern jazz

Examples: bop (bebop), hard bop, cool jazz, progressive jazz

For avant-garde jazz, see 789.56

(.56) †*Avant-garde jazz

(.57) †*Hybrid styles

Examples: Afro-Cuban, third stream, Indo-jazz

(.6) †*Rock (Rock 'n' roll)

Examples: acid, folk, soft rock

(.8) †*Western art (Classical) music

Class here comprehensive works on art music

For non-Western art music, see 789.9

(.9) †*Non-Western art music

*Add as instructed under 789.3–789.9

†(Optional number; prefer 781–788)

790 Recreational and performing arts

Class here interdisciplinary works on recreation

Class the sociology of recreation in 306.48

For music, see 780

See Manual at 790

SUMMARY

790.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of recreation
.1–.2 [Recreational activities and the performing arts in general]
791 Public performances
792 Stage presentations
793 Indoor games and amusements
794 Indoor games of skill
795 Games of chance
796 Athletic and outdoor sports and games
797 Aquatic and air sports
798 Equestrian sports and animal racing
799 Fishing, hunting, shooting

.01 Philosophy and theory of recreation

.013 Value, influence, effect

.013 2 Psychological principles

.013 5 Effective use of leisure

[.019] Psychological principles

Do not use; class in 790.0132

.02–.05 Standard subdivisions of recreation

.06 Organizations dealing with and management of recreation

.068 Recreation centers

Indoor and outdoor

Including parks and community centers as recreation centers

Add to base number 790.068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., recreation centers of California 790.068794

Do not use for management of recreation; class in 790.069

.069 Management of recreation

Add to base number 790.069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., personnel management 790.0693

.07 Education, research, related topics of recreation

.08 History and description of recreation with respect to groups of persons

Class activities and programs for specific classes of people in 790.19

.09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment of recreation

.1 Recreational activities

Class a specific activity with the subject, e.g., outdoor sports 796, piano playing 786.2143, paper cutting and folding 736.98

[.101–.109] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 790.01–790.09

.13 Activities generally engaged in by individuals

Class here hobbies

.132 Collecting

Class collecting a specific kind of object with the object, using notation 075 from Table 1, e.g., stamp collecting 769.56075

.133 Play with mechanical and scientific toys

Examples: electric trains, racing cars sets

Class play with a specific toy provided for elsewhere with the toy, e.g., flying model airplanes 796.15

.134 Participation in contests

Examples: writing jingles, matching numbers

See also 659.17 for advertising by means of contests

.138 Passive (Spectator) activities

Examples: reading, watching, listening

.15 Activities generally engaged in by groups

.19 Activities and programs for specific classes of people

Class activities generally engaged in by individuals in 790.13, by groups other than families in 790.15

.191 For families

.192 For specific age levels

Examples: young adults, mature adults

Class activities for specific sexes regardless of age in 790.194; for invalids, convalescents, handicapped persons regardless of age in 790.196

.192 2 Children

.192 6 Adults aged 65 and over

.194 For groups by sex

Class activities for invalids, convalescents, persons with handicaps regardless of sex in 790.196

.196 For invalids, convalescents, persons with handicaps

.2 The performing arts in general

Class a specific art with the subject, e.g., motion pictures 791.43, symphony orchestra performances 784.2078

Works that treat only public performances, e.g., stage, radio, television, music, are classed in 791. Works that also include athletic and outdoor sports and games are classed here

See Manual at 780.079 vs. 790.2

791 Public performances

Other than musical, sport, game performances

Class here performances at fairs

For stage presentations, see 792; magic, 793.8

See also 780 for musical performances, 793–796 for sport and game performances

SUMMARY

791.01–.09	**Standard subdivisions**
.1	**Traveling shows**
.3	**Circuses**
.4	**Motion pictures, radio, television**
.5	**Puppetry and toy theaters**
.6	**Pageantry**
.8	**Animal performances**

.06 Organizations and management

.068 Amusement parks

Add to base number 791.068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., amusement parks of United States 791.06873

Do not use for management; class in 791.069

.069 Management

Add to base number 791.069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., management of marketing 791.0698

.092 Persons

See Manual at 791.092

.1 Traveling shows

Example: medicine shows

For circuses, see 791.3

.12 Minstrel shows and skits

See also 792.7 for vaudeville

.3 Circuses

Class here amateur circuses

.32 Animal performances

.33 Clowns

.34 Acrobatics and trapeze work

.35 Freaks and sideshows

.38 Parades

[.39] Amateur circuses

Number discontinued; class in 791.3

.4 Motion pictures, radio, television

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 791.4 in the one coming last, e.g., critical appraisal of a specific film 791.4372 (*not* 791.433)

See also 302.234 for social aspects of motion pictures, radio, and television as mass media

See Manual at 303.376 vs. 363.31, 791.4; 384.54, 384.55, 384.8 vs. 791.4

.43 Motion pictures

Class here dramatic films

Class photographic aspects of motion pictures in 778.53, made-for-TV movies in 791.45

See also 384.8 for communication aspects of motion pictures

.430 1–.430 8 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 792.01–792.02, e.g., makeup for motion pictures 791.43027; however, class programming (scheduling) in 384.84, types of presentation in 791.433

.430 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here description, critical appraisal of specific companies and studios

Class description, critical appraisal of specific films in 791.437

[.430 909] Special aspects

Relocated to 791.436

.433 Types of presentation

Examples: home and amateur films, cartoon films, puppet films

Class animation of films in 741.58

[.435] Kinds of motion pictures

Number discontinued; class in 791.43

[.435 2] Dramatic films

Number discontinued; class in 791.43

[.435 3] Educational and documentary films, newsreels

Relocated to 070.18

.436 Special aspects [*formerly* 791.430909]

Class here genres of, types of films

.436 1 Films displaying specific qualities

Add to base number 791.4361 the numbers following —1 in notation 12–17 from Table 3–C, e.g., comedies 791.43617

.436 2–.436 8 Films dealing with specific themes and subjects

Add to base number 791.436 the numbers following —3 in notation 32–38 from Table 3–C, e.g., films of the West and Westerns 791.436278

.437 Films

General aspects: description, critical appraisal, screenplays

Class texts of plays in 800, subject-oriented films themselves with the subject, e.g., films on flower gardening 635.9

See Manual at 791.437 and 791.447, 791.457, 792.9

.437 2 Single films

Arrange alphabetically by title of film

.437 5 Two or more films

Class here collections of film reviews

Class works which focus on a specific aspect of films with the aspect in 791.436, e.g., Westerns 791.436278; critical appraisal of films associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., films of a motion-picture photographer 778.5092, of a director 791.430233092

.44 Radio

Class here dramatic programs

See also 384.54 for communication aspects of radio

.440 1–.440 8 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 792.01–792.02, e.g., value of radio 791.44013; however, class programming (scheduling) in 384.5442, types of presentation in 791.443

.440 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here description, critical appraisal of specific companies and stations

Class description, critical appraisal of specific programs in 791.447

[.440 909] Special aspects

Relocated to 791.446

.443 Types of presentation

Examples: live or recorded, network production, announcing, commercials

[.445] Kinds of programs

Number discontinued; class in 791.44

Radio educational, expository, news programs relocated to 070.194, radio sports programs to 070.449796

.446 Special aspects [*formerly* 791.440909]

Class here genres of, types of programs

.446 1 Programs displaying specific qualities

Add to base number 791.4461 the numbers following —1 in notation 12–17 from Table 3–C, e.g., comedies 791.44617

.446 2–.446 8 Programs dealing with specific themes and subjects

Add to base number 791.446 the numbers following —3 in notation 32–38 from Table 3–C, e.g., programs of the West and Westerns 791.446278

.447 Programs

General aspects: description, critical appraisal, radio plays

Class texts of plays in 800, subject-oriented programs themselves with the subject, e.g., programs on flower gardening 635.9

See Manual at 791.437 and 791.447, 791.457, 792.9

.447 2 Single programs

Arrange alphabetically by name of program

.447 5 Two or more programs

Class here collections of program reviews

Class works which focus on a specific aspect of programs with the aspect in 791.446, e.g., Westerns 791.446278; critical appraisal of programs associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., programs of a director 791.440233092

.45 Television

Class here dramatic and audience programs, use of videotapes

Class use of videotapes not provided for here with the subject, e.g., video recordings of rock music 781.66

See also 384.55 for communication aspects of television

.450 1–.450 8 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 792.01–792.02, e.g., scenery and lighting for television 791.45025; however, class programming (scheduling) in 384.5531, types of presentation in 791.453

.450 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here description, critical appraisal of specific companies, stations, networks

Class description, critical appraisal of specific programs in 791.457

[.450 909] Special aspects

Relocated to 791.456

.453 Types of presentation

Examples: live or filmed, color or black-and-white, network production, announcing, commercials

[.455] Kinds of programs

Number discontinued; class in 791.45

Educational, expository, news television programs relocated to 070.195, television sports programs to 070.449796

.456 Special aspects [*formerly* 791.450909]

Class here genres of, types of programs

.456 1 Programs displaying specific qualities

Add to base number 791.4561 the numbers following —1 in notation 12–17 from Table 3–C, e.g., comedies 791.45617

.456 2–.456 8 Programs dealing with specific themes and subjects

Add to base number 791.456 the numbers following —3 in notation 32–38 from Table 3–C, e.g., programs of the West and Westerns 791.456278

.457 Programs

General aspects: description, critical appraisal, television plays

Class texts of plays in 800, subject-oriented programs themselves with the subject, e.g., programs on flower gardening 635.9

See Manual at 791.437 and 791.447, 791.457, 792.9

.457 2 Single programs

Arrange alphabetically by name of program

.457 5 Two or more programs

Class here collections of program reviews

Class works which focus on a specific aspect of programs with the aspect in 791.456, e.g., Westerns 791.456278; critical appraisal of programs associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., programs of a television photographer 778.59092, of a director 791.450233092

.5 Puppetry and toy theaters

.53 Puppetry

Class here marionettes, shadow puppets

Class puppet films in 791.433

.538 Production scripts of puppet plays

Class texts of plays in 800

.6 Pageantry

Examples: processions, festivals, illuminations, parades, floats for parades

For water pageantry, see 797.203; circus parades, 791.38

See Manual at 394.5 vs. 791.6

.62 Pageants

.622 Religious pageants

.624 Historical and patriotic pageants

.64 Cheerleading

Add to base number 791.64 the numbers following 796.3 in 796.31–796.35, e.g., cheerleading at American football games 791.6432

.8 Animal performances

Example: cockfighting

For circus animal performances, see 791.32; equestrian sports and animal racing, 798

.82 Bullfighting

.84 Rodeos

Class here Wild West shows

792 Stage presentations

Class here theater, dramatic presentation

Class texts of plays in 800

For motion pictures, radio, television, see 791.4; puppetry and toy theaters, 791.5

SUMMARY

792.01–.09	**Standard subdivisions**
.1	**Tragedy and serious drama**
.2	**Comedy and melodrama**
.3	**Pantomime**
.5	**Opera**
.6	**Musical plays**
.7	**Variety shows**
.8	**Ballet and modern dance**
.9	**Stage productions**

.01 Philosophy, theory, aesthetics

.013 Value, influence, effect

Class influence and effect on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on crime 364.254

.015 Criticism and appreciation

General aspects: theory, technique, history

Do not use for scientific principles; class in 792.01

.02 Handbooks, techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, miscellany

[.021] Tabulated and related materials

Do not use; class in 792.0291

> 792.022–792.028 Handbooks, techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Use notation 01–09 (except —028) from Table 1 under each subdivision identified by *, e.g., periodicals on amateur theater 792.022205

Do not use for miscellany; class in 792.029

Class comprehensive works in 792.02

.022 *Types of stage presentation

Examples: municipal theater, showboats, street theater

.022 2 *Amateur theater

.022 3 *Little theater

.022 4 *Summer theater

.022 6 *Children's theater

.022 8 *Arena theater (Theater-in-the-round)

.023 *Supervision

.023 2 *Production

.023 3 *Direction

.023 6 *Programming

.024 *Special effects

Examples: sound effects, visual effects

.025 *Setting

Contains scenery, lighting

.026 *Costuming

.027 *Makeup

*Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 792.022–792.028

.028 *Acting and performance

Including impersonation, improvisation, use of expression and gestures

.029 Miscellany

Do not use for commercial miscellany; class in 792.0299

.029 07 Humorous treatment

.029 08 Audiovisual treatment

.029 1–.029 7 Miscellaneous works

Add to base number 792.029 the numbers following —02 in notation 021–027 from Table 1, e.g., stage as a profession 792.0293

.029 9 Commercial miscellany

Examples: house organs, prospectuses, price lists, trade catalogs

.09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here description, critical appraisal of specific theaters and companies

Class specific productions in specific theaters or by specific companies in 792.9

[.090 9] Special aspects

Number discontinued; class in 792.09

> **792.1–792.8 Specific kinds of performances**

Add to the notation for each notation identified by † the numbers following 792 in 792.01–792.09, e.g., costuming for ballet 792.8026

Class comprehensive works in 792

.1 †Tragedy and serious drama

.12 †Tragedy

.14 †Historical drama

.16 †Religious and morality plays

Examples: passion, miracle, mystery plays

See also 792.09 for treatment of religious concepts in the theater

.2 †Comedy and melodrama

.23 †Comedy

.27 †Melodrama

Including modern mystery (suspense) drama

.3 †Pantomime

*Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 792.022–792.028

†Add as instructed under 792.1–792.8

.5 †Opera

Class here comprehensive works on stage presentations of dramatic vocal forms [*formerly* 782.1]

For musical plays, see 792.6; variety shows, 792.7

See also 782.1 for comprehensive works on opera

See Manual at 792.5 vs. 782.1

.509 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here description, critical appraisal of specific theaters and companies

Class specific productions in specific theaters or by specific companies in 792.54

.54 Opera productions

General aspects: description, critical appraisal, production and stage guides

.542 Single operas

Arrange alphabetically by title

.545 Two or more operas

Class here collections of reviews

Class critical appraisal of operas associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., operas associated with a singer 782.1092, with a director 792.50233092

.6 †Musical plays

See also 782.14 for comprehensive works on musical plays

See Manual at 792.5 vs. 782.1

.609 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here description, critical appraisal of specific theaters and companies

Class specific productions in specific theaters or by specific companies in 792.64

.62 Dancing

Including choreography

.64 Musical play productions

General aspects: description, critical appraisal, production and stage guides

.642 Single musical plays

Arrange alphabetically by name

†Add as instructed under 792.1–792.8

.645 Two or more musical plays

Class here collections of reviews

Class critical appraisal of musical plays associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., musical plays associated with a singer 782.14092, with a director 792.60233092

.7 †Variety shows

Class here burlesque, cabaret, vaudeville, music hall and night club presentations

Including tap dancing [*formerly* 793.324]

Class stage productions in 792.9

See also 791.12 for minstrel shows and skits

.8 †Ballet and modern dance

Class here comprehensive works on dancing [*formerly* 793.3], theatrical dancing [*formerly* 793.32]

Class dancing in musical plays in 792.62

For tap dancing, see 792.7, social, folk, national dancing, 793.3

See Manual at 792.8 vs. 793.3

.809 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here description, critical appraisal of specific theaters and companies

Class specific productions in specific theaters or by specific companies in 792.84

.82 Choreography

Class here choreology, e.g., Labanotation, Benesh

Use of this number for ballet dancing discontinued; class in 792.8

.84 Ballet productions

General aspects: description, critical appraisal, production scripts

Class here stories, plots, analyses, librettos, stage guides

.842 Single ballets

Arrange alphabetically by title

.845 Two or more ballets

Class here collections of reviews

Class critical appraisal of ballets associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., ballets associated with a director 792.80233092

†Add as instructed under 792.1–792.8

.9 Stage productions

General aspects: description, critical appraisal, production scripts and stage guides

Class here description, critical appraisal of specific theaters and companies

Class description, critical appraisal, production scripts of ballets in 792.84

See Manual at 791.437 and 791.447, 791.457, 792.9

.92 Single productions

Arrange alphabetically by title

.95 Two or more productions

Class here collections of reviews

Class critical appraisal of productions associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., productions associated with a director 792.0233092

793 Indoor games and amusements

For indoor games of skill, see 794; games of chance, 795

.01 Philosophy and theory

.019 Activities and programs for specific classes of people

Add to base number 793.019 the numbers following 790.19 in 790.191–790.196, e.g., indoor games and amusements for children 793.01922

Do not use for psychological principles; class 793.01

.08 History and description with respect to kinds of persons

Class activities and programs for specific classes of people in 793.019

.2 Parties and entertainments

.21 Children's parties

.22 Seasonal parties

Class children's seasonal parties in 793.21

.24 Charades and tableaux

.3 Social, folk, national dancing

Examples: belly, jazz dancing

Comprehensive works on dancing relocated to 792.8

See Manual at 792.8 vs. 793.3

.31 Folk and national dancing

[.310 9] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class 793.319

.319 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 793.319 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., folk dances of Germany 793.31943

.32 Clog dancing

Theatrical dancing relocated to 792.8

[.324] Tap and clog dancing

Use of this number for clog dancing discontinued; class in 793.32

Tap dancing relocated to 792.7

.33 Ballroom dancing (Round dances)

Examples: fox trot, jitterbug, waltz

Including disco dancing

.34 Square dancing

.35 Dances with accessory features

Examples: cotillions, germans, sword dances

.38 Balls

Class ballroom dancing in 793.33

.4 Games of action

Examples: blind man's buff, musical chairs

.5 Forfeit and trick games

.7 Games not characterized by action

For charades and tableaux, see 793.24

.73 Puzzles and puzzle games

Examples: acrostics, anagrams, literary games, quizzes; jigsaw puzzles

Class puzzles as formal instructional devices for the teaching of a specific subject with the subject, using notation 07 from Table 1, e.g., puzzles teaching the use of the Bible 220.07

For mathematical games and recreations, see 793.74

.732 Crossword puzzles

.735 Riddles

See also 398.6 for riddles as folk literature

.74 Mathematical games and recreations

.8 Magic and related activities

Example: scientific recreations

Class here conjuring

For card tricks, see 795.438

.87 Juggling

.89 Ventriloquism

.9 Other indoor diversions

Example: making cat's cradles

.92 War games (Battle games)

See also 355.48 for military use of war games, 796.1 for outdoor war games

.93 Adventure games Fantasy games

Examples: Dungeons and Dragons®, RuneQuest®

Class here mystery games, role-playing games

See also 793.92 for war games (battle games)

[.930 285] Data processing Computer applications

Do not use; class in 793.932

.932 Computer adventure games Computer fantasy games

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 793.932 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., programs for digital microcomputers 793.932536, but use of digital computers 793.932 (*not* 793.9324)

Class comprehensive works on computer games in 794.8

794 Indoor games of skill

Example: go-moku

Class here board games

Class war games in 793.92, adventure, fantasy, mystery games in 793.93, games combining skill and chance in 795

For backgammon, see 795.15

SUMMARY

794.1	**Chess**
.2	**Checkers (Draughts)**
.3	**Darts**
.6	**Bowling**
.7	**Ball games**
.8	**Electronic games Computer games**

.1 Chess

[.102 85] Data processing Computer applications

Do not use; class in 794.172

.12 Strategy and tactics

General aspects: combinations, sacrifices, traps, pitfalls, attack, counterattack, defense

Class strategy and tactics with individual chessmen in 794.14

.122 Openings

.123 Middle games

.124 End games

.14 Individual chessmen

General aspects: position, moves, power, value

.142 Pawns

.143 Rooks (Castles)

.144 Knights

.145 Bishops

.146 Queen

.147 King

.15 Collections of games

.152 Master matches

Class master matches by individual players in 794.159

.157 Tournaments and championships

Class tournaments and championships of individual players in 794.159

.159 Games, matches, tournaments, championships of individual players

.17 Special forms of chess

Examples: blind play, simultaneous play, living chess; use of nonelectronic mechanical chess players

.172 Electronic chess Computer chess

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 794.172 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital microcomputers 794.172416, but use of digital computers 794.172 (*not* 794.1724)

.18 Variants of chess

Examples: Chinese (chong-kie), Japanese (shogi), three-dimensional chess, fairy chess, hexagonal chess

.2 Checkers (Draughts)

Use of this number for other board games discontinued; class in 794

[.22] Checkers (Draughts)

Number discontinued; class in 794.2

.3 Darts

.6 Bowling

See also 796.315 for lawn bowling

.7 Ball games

Class athletic ball games in 796.3

For bowling, see 794.6

.72 Billiards

For pool, see 794.73

.73 Pool (Pocket billiards)

.735 Snooker

.75 Pinball games [*formerly* 795.2]

.8 Electronic games Computer games

Class computerized forms of a specific indoor game or amusement with the game in 793–795, using notation 0285 from Table 1, e.g., computerized checkers 794.20285

[.802 85] Data processing Computer applications

Do not use; class in 794.81

.81 Data processing Computer applications

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 794.81 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., programs for digital microcomputers 794.81536, but use of digital computers 794.81 (*not* 794.814)

Class data processing for specific genres of computer games in 794.82, for computerized athletic and outdoor sports and games in 794.86–794.89

.82 Specific genres of computer games

Class computerized war games (battle games) in 793.920285; computerized adventure, fantasy, mystery games in 793.932; computerized athletic and outdoor sports and games in 794.86–794.89

See Manual at 794.82

.822 Arcade games

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 794.822 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., programs for digital microcomputers 794.822536, but use of digital computers 794.822 (*not* 794.8224)

.86–.89 Computerized athletic and outdoor sports and games

Add to base number 794.8 the numbers following 79 in 796–799, e.g., computerized baseball 794.86357

795 Games of chance

Class here gambling

Class gambling on a specific activity with the activity, e.g., on horse racing 798.401

See also 364.172 for gambling as a crime

.01 Theory

Including betting systems, probabilities of winning

See also 519.2 for statistical probability in games of chance

.1 Games with dice

.12 Craps

.15 Backgammon

.2 Wheel and top games

Examples: roulette, slot machines

Pinball games relocated to 794.75

.3 Games dependent on drawing numbers or counters

Examples: bingo, dominoes, mah-jongg

.4 Card games

.41 Games based chiefly on skill

Example: cribbage

.412 Poker

.413 Whist and bridge whist

.414 Auction bridge

.415 Contract bridge

Class here comprehensive works on bridge

For bridge whist, see 795.413; auction bridge, 795.414

.415 2 Bidding

.415 3 Play of the hand

.415 4 Scoring systems

.415 8 Collections of games and matches

.416 Pinochle

.418 Rummy and its variants

Examples: canasta, samba, bolivia

.42 Games based chiefly on chance

Examples: baccarat, faro, twenty-one (blackjack)

.43 Games and recreations based on position and skill

Examples: solitaire, patience

.438 Card tricks

796 Athletic and outdoor sports and games

For aquatic and air sports, see 797; equestrian sports and animal racing, 798; fishing, hunting, shooting, 799

See Manual at 613.71 vs. 646.75, 796; 796

SUMMARY

796.01–.09	**Standard subdivisions**
.1	**Miscellaneous games**
.2	**Activities and games requiring equipment**
.3	**Ball games**
.4	**Weight lifting, track and field, gymnastics**
.5	**Outdoor life**
.6	**Cycling and related activities**
.7	**Driving motor vehicles**
.8	**Combat sports**
.9	**Ice and snow sports**

.01 Philosophy and theory

.019 Activities and programs for specific classes of people

Add to base number 796.019 the numbers following 790.19 in 790.191–790.196, e.g., sports for girls 796.0194

Do not use for psychological principles; class in 796.01

.06 Organizations, facilities, management

.068 Facilities

Class here astrodomes, field houses, playgrounds, stadiums

Add to base number 796.068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., playgrounds of London 796.068421

Do not use for management; class in 796.069

.069 Management

Add to base number 796.069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., financial management 796.0691

.07 Study and teaching

.077 Coaching

Do not use for programmed texts; class in 796.07

.08 History and description of sports and games with respect to groups of persons

Class activities and programs for specific classes of people in 796.019

.1 Miscellaneous games

Not provided for elsewhere

.13 Singing and dancing games

.14 Active games

Examples: leapfrog, hide-and-seek, puss in corner, prisoner's base

For activities and games requiring equipment, see 796.2

.15 Play with kites, remote-controlled devices, similar devices

Example: flying model airplanes

See also 790.133 for play with mechanical and scientific toys

.2 Activities and games requiring equipment

Not provided for elsewhere

Examples: flying discs (Frisbees®), marbles, Yo-Yos®

.21 Roller skating

Including skateboarding

.24 Pitching games

Examples: quoits, horseshoes

.3 Ball games

SUMMARY

796.31	**Ball thrown or hit by hand**
.32	**Inflated ball thrown or hit by hand**
.33	**Inflated ball driven by foot**
.34	**Racket games**
.35	**Ball driven by club, mallet, bat**

.31 Ball thrown or hit by hand

.312 Handball

.315 Lawn bowling

See also 794.6 for indoor bowling

.32 Inflated ball thrown or hit by hand

Example: netball

.323 Basketball

.323 01–.323 09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., basketball courts 796.323068

.323 2 Strategy and tactics

.323 3 Refereeing

.323 6 Specific types of basketball

Class here games [*formerly* 796.3237]

Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3232, refereeing of specific types of basketball in 796.3233

.323 62 Precollege basketball

.323 63 College basketball

.323 64 Professional and semiprofessional basketball

[.323 7] Games

Relocated to 796.3236

.323 8 Variants

Example: wheelchair basketball

.325 Volleyball

.33 Inflated ball driven by foot

Example: pushball

SUMMARY

796.332	**American football**
.333	**Rugby Union rugby**
.334	**Soccer (Association football)**
.335	**Canadian football**
.336	**Australian-rules football**

.332 American football

.332 02 Miscellany

.332 020 2 Handbooks and guides

.332 020 22 Official rules

.332 020 24 Spectators' guides

.332 028 Apparatus, equipment, materials

Examples: balls, goal posts

Class technique and procedures in 796.3322

.332 06 Organizations, facilities, management

Examples: clubs, leagues

.332 068 Grounds and their layout

Add to base number 796.332068 notations 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., football fields of Washington, D.C. 796.332068753

Do not use for management; class in 796.332069

.332 069 Management

Add to base number 796.332069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., financial management 796.3320691

.332 07 Study and teaching

.332 077 Coaching

Do not use for programmed texts; class in 796.33207

.332 079 Competitions and awards [*formerly* 796.3327]

.332 2 Strategy and tactics

.332 22 Formations

Examples: T, split T, spread, single wingback

.332 23 Line play

.332 24 Backfield play

.332 25 Passing

.332 26 Blocking and tackling

.332 27 Kicking

.332 3 Refereeing and umpiring

.332 6 Specific types of American football

Class here games [*formerly* 796.3327]

Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3322, refereeing and umpiring of specific types of American football in 796.3323

.332 62 Precollege football

.332 63 College football

Example: bowl games

See also 796.332648 for Super Bowl

.332 64 Professional and semiprofessional football

.332 648 Super Bowl

[.332 7] Games

Games relocated to 796.3326, competitions and awards to 796.332079

.332 8 Variants

Examples: six-man football, touch football

.333 Rugby Union rugby

.333 01–.333 09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., official rules 796.33302022

.333 2 Strategy and tactics

.333 23 Forward play

Including scrummaging, line-outs

.333 24 Halfback play

.333 25 Three-quarter play

.333 26 Back play

.333 3 Refereeing and umpiring

.333 6 Specific types of rugby

Class here games [*formerly* 796.3337]

Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3332, refereeing and umpiring of specific types of rugby in 796.3333

.333 62 Club

Including college and university

.333 63 County

.333 64 Tours

.333 65 International

[.333 7] Games

Relocated to 796.3336

.333 8 Variants

Example: league rugby

.334 Soccer (Association football)

.334 01–.334 09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., equipment 796.334028

.334 2 Strategy and tactics

.334 22 Formations

.334 23 Forward play

.334 24 Halfback play

.334 25 Back play

.334 26 Goalkeeping

.334 3 Refereeing and umpiring

.334 6 Specific types of soccer

Class here games [*formerly* 796.3347]

Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3342, refereeing and umpiring of specific types of soccer in 796.3343

.334 62 Amateur soccer

.334 63 League soccer

.334 64 Cup competition

For World Cup competition, see 796.334668

.334 66 International

.334 668 World Cup competition

[.334 7] Games

Relocated to 796.3346

.334 8 Variants

.335 Canadian football

.335 01–.335 09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., coaching 796.335077

.335 2 Strategy and tactics

.335 3 Refereeing and umpiring

.335 6 Specific types of Canadian football

Class here games [*formerly* 796.3357]

Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3352, refereeing and umpiring of specific types of Canadian football in 796.3353

.335 62 Precollege Canadian football

.335 63 College Canadian football

.335 64 Professional and semiprofessional Canadian football

.335 648 Grey Cup

[.335 7] Games

Relocated to 796.3356

.335 8 Variants

Example: touch football

.336 Australian-rules football

.34 Racket games

Examples: court tennis (royal tennis), paddle tennis

.342 Tennis (Lawn tennis)

.342 01–.342 09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., layout of tennis courts 796.342068

.342 2 Strategy and tactics

.342 21 Service

.342 22 Forehand

.342 23 Backhand

.342 27 Singles

.342 28 Doubles

.342 3 Refereeing

.343 Rackets and squash

.345 Badminton

.346 Table tennis

.347 Lacrosse

.35 Ball driven by club, mallet, bat

SUMMARY

796.352	**Golf**
.353	**Polo**
.354	**Croquet**
.355	**Field hockey**
.357	**Baseball**
.358	**Cricket**

.352 Golf

.352 01–.352 09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., official rules 796.35202022

.352 2 Variants

Example: miniature golf

.352 3 Tactics of play

Class here grip, swing, adapting to specific golf courses

.352 32 Play with woods

.352 33 Play with distance irons

Class here comprehensive works on play with irons

For play with chipping or pitching irons, see 796.35234

.352 34 Play with chipping or pitching irons

.352 35 Putting

.352 4 Refereeing

.352 6 Specific types of golf

Class here games and matches [*formerly* 796.3527]

Class tactics of play regardless of type in 796.3523, refereeing of specific types of golf in 796.3524

.352 62 Amateur golf

Class open games and matches in 796.35266

.352 64 Professional golf

Class open games and matches in 796.35266

.352 66 Open games and matches

Examples: British Open, Masters Tournament

[.352 7] Games and matches

Relocated to 796.3526

.353 Polo

.354 Croquet

.355 Field hockey

Including indoor hockey

See also 796.962 for ice hockey

.357 Baseball

.357 01–.357 09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., baseball leagues 796.35706

.357 2 Strategy and tactics

.357 22 Pitching

.357 23 Catching

.357 24 Infield play

Class here comprehensive works on fielding

For outfield play, see 796.35725

.357 25 Outfield play

.357 26 Batting

.357 27 Base running

.357 3 Umpiring

.357 6 Specific types of baseball

Class here games [*formerly* 796.3577]

Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3572, umpiring of specific types of baseball in 796.3573

.357 62 Precollege baseball

Including sandlot baseball

Class here Little league

.357 63 College baseball

.357 64 Professional and semiprofessional baseball

.357 646 World series games

.357 648 All-star games

[.357 7] Games

Relocated to 796.3576

.357 8 Variants

Examples: softball, indoor baseball

.358 Cricket

.358 01–.358 09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., equipment 796.358028

.358 2 Strategy and tactics

.358 22 Bowling

.358 23 Fielding

.358 24 Wicketkeeping

.358 26 Batting

.358 3 Umpiring

.358 6 Specific types of cricket

Class here matches [*formerly* 796.3587]

Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3582, umpiring of specific types of cricket in 796.3583

.358 62 Amateur cricket

Including school, college and university

.358 63 County

.358 65 International

[.358 7] Matches

Relocated to 796.3586

.358 8 Variants

Example: single-wicket cricket

.4 Weight lifting, track and field, gymnastics

Exercise relocated to 613.71

.406 Organizations, facilities, management

.406 8 Gymnasiums and stadiums

Add to base number 796.4068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., gymnasiums of Japan 796.406852

Do not use for management; class in 796.4069

.406 9 Management

Add to base number 796.4069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., financial management 796.40691

.407 Study and teaching

.407 7 Coaching

Do not use for programmed texts; class in 796.407

.41 Weight lifting

Weight lifting for fitness relocated to 613.713; calisthenics, gymnastic exercises to 613.714; sports gymnastics to 796.44

.42 Track and field

Class here running

For field events, see 796.43

See also 613.7172 for running as an exercise

.420 6 Organizations, facilities, management

.420 68 Athletic fields

Add to base number 796.42068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., athletic fields of Russia 796.4206847

Do not use for management; class in 796.42069

.420 69 Management

Add to base number 796.42069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., personnel management 796.420693

.422 Sprints [*formerly* 796.426]

Class sprint relays in 796.427

.423 Middle-distance races

Class middle-distance relay races in 796.427

.424 Distance races

Class distance relay races in 796.427

For marathon, see 796.425; cross country races, 796.428

.425 Marathon

Class here comprehensive works on non-track races

For cross country races, see 796.427; race walking, 796.429

.426 Hurdles and steeplechase

Use of this number for comprehensive works on running discontinued; class in 796.42

Sprints relocated to 796.422

Class hurdle and steeplechase relay races in 796.427

.427 Relay races

.428 Cross-country races

.429 Race walking (Heel-and-toe races)

.43 Jumping, vaulting, throwing

Class here field events

.432 Jumping

Contains long jump (broad jump), triple jump (hop, step, and jump), high jump

.434 Pole vaulting

See also 796.44 for gymnastic vaulting

.435 Throwing

Examples: boomerang and discus throwing, javelin hurling, shot-putting

See also 796.24 for throwing games

.44 Sports gymnastics [*formerly* 796.41]

Examples: rhythmic gymnastics, use of horizontal and parallel bars, vaulting

For trapeze work, rope climbing, wire walking, see 796.46; acrobatics, tumbling, trampolining, contortion, 796.47

See also 613.714 for gymnastic exercises

.46 Trapeze work, rope climbing, wire walking

See also 791.34 for trapeze work and wire walking as circus acts

.47 Acrobatics, tumbling, trampolining, contortion

Including floor exercise

See also 791.34 for acrobatics as circus acts

.48 Olympic games

Arrange specific games chronologically

Class paralympics and special olympics in 796.0196, a specific activity with the subject, e.g., basketball 796.323, swimming 797.21

For winter Olympic games, see 796.98

.480 93–.480 99 Geographical treatment

Do not use for specific games; class in 796.48

.5 Outdoor life

Class a specific activity of outdoor life not provided for here with the activity, e.g., fishing 799.1

.51 Walking

Class here backpacking, hiking, orienteering

Walkers' guides that give only route details are classed here. Guides that also give description of things en route are classed in 914–919

For walking by kind of terrain, see 796.52

.52 Walking and exploring by kind of terrain

.522 Mountains, hills, rocks

Class here mountaineering

.522 3 Rock climbing

.525 Caves

Class here spelunking

See also 797.2 for cave swimming

.53 Beach activities

For aquatic sports, see 797.1–797.3

.54 Camping

Example: snow camping

.542 Kinds of camps

Class here camps operated for profit

Class activities in specific kinds of camps in 796.545

.542 2 Institutional camps

Examples: school, church, YMCA, scouts

Class institutional day camps in 796.5423

.542 3 Day camps

.545 Activities

Examples: woodcraft, campfires, games

For beach activities, see 796.53

.56 Dude ranching and farming

.6 Cycling and related activities

Use of wheeled vehicles not driven by motor or animal power

Examples: land sailing, soapbox racing

For roller skating, see 796.21

.62 Racing

Use of this number for soapbox racing discontinued; class in 796.6

.64 Touring

.7 Driving motor vehicles

For snowmobiling, see 796.94

> 796.72–796.76 Driving for competition

Class comprehensive works in 796.7

.72 Automobile racing

See also 790.133 for toy car racing

.720 6 Organizations, facilities, management

.720 68 Race tracks and speedways

Add to base number 796.72068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., Indianapolis Motor Speedway 796.7206877252

Do not use for management; class in 796.72069

.720 69 Management

Add to base number 796.72069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., financial management 796.720691

.73 Automobile rallies

.75 Motorcycle and motor scooter racing

.756 Motocross

.76 Midget car racing (Karting)

> 796.77–796.79 Driving for pleasure

Class comprehensive works in 796.7

.77 Driving sports cars for pleasure

.78 Driving family cars for pleasure

.79 Travel for pleasure by mobile home

Examples: camper, trailer

.8 Combat sports

Class here martial arts

Class combat with animals in 791.8

.81 Unarmed combat

For boxing, see 796.83

.812 Wrestling

Including arm wrestling

.812 2 Continental (Greco-Roman) wrestling

.812 3 Freestyle (Catch-as-catch-can) wrestling

.812 5 Sumo

.815 Jujitsu and related martial arts forms

See also 613.7148 for related therapeutic exercises

.815 2 Judo

Class here jujitsus

.815 3 Karate

.815 4 Aikido

.815 5 Chinese forms T'ai chi ch'üan

For kempo and kung fu, see 796.8159

.815 9 Kempo and kung fu

Use of this number for other forms discontinued; class in 796.815

.83 Boxing

.86 Fencing

Including kendo, bojutsu

Class here sword fighting

.9 Ice and snow sports

For ice fishing, see 799.12

See also 796.54 for snow camping, 798.6 for horse-drawn sleighing

.91 Ice skating

.912 Figure skating

Examples: ice dancing, pair skating

.914 Speed skating

.92 Snowshoeing

.93 Skiing

.932 Cross-country skiing

Including biathlon

Class here Nordic skiing, Nordic combination

For jumping, see 796.933

.933 Jumping

.935 Alpine skiing

Contains downhill, giant slalom, slalom

Example: supergiant slalom

.937 Freestyle skiing

Examples: ballet, mogul, trick skiing

.94 Snowmobiling

.95 Sledding and coasting

Examples: bobsledding, lugeing, tobogganing

.96 Ice games

Example: curling

.962 Ice hockey

See also 796.355 for field hockey

.962 01–.962 09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., equipment 796.962028

.962 2 Strategy and tactics

Including skating, stickhandling, passing

.962 27 Goalkeeping

.962 3 Refereeing

.962 6 Specific types of ice hockey

Class here games [*formerly* 796.9627]

Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.9622

.962 62 Junior hockey

.962 63 College hockey

.962 64 Professional hockey

.962 648 Stanley Cup

.962 66 International hockey

Class here specific tournaments

[.962 7] Games

Relocated to 796.9626

.97 Iceboating

.98 Winter Olympic games

Arrange specific games chronologically

Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., skating 796.91

.980 93–.980 99 Geographical treatment

Do not use for specific games; class in 796.98

797 Aquatic and air sports

.028 9 Safety measures

Class comprehensive works on water safety in aquatic sports in 797.200289

> **797.1–797.3 Aquatic sports**

Class comprehensive works in 797

For fishing, see 799.1

.1 Boating

.12 With specific types of vessels

Class seamanship for specific types of vessels in 623.882, boat racing with specific types of vessels in 797.14

.122 Canoeing

.123 Rowboating

.124 Sailboating

See also 797.33 for sailboarding

.124 6 Yachting

Class here comprehensive works on yachting

Class motor yachting in 796.1256

.125 Motorboating

.125 6 Yachting

.129 Houseboating

See also 643.2 for houseboats as dwellings

.14 Boat racing and regattas

Standard subdivisions are added for any type of racing, e.g., yacht racing in Britain 791.140941

[.17] Other aquatic sports

Relocated to 797.3

.2 Swimming and diving

Class here water parks

Use 797.2001–797.2009 for standard subdivisions

.203 Water pageantry

See also 797.21 for synchronized swimming

.21 Swimming

Example: synchronized swimming

For underwater swimming, see 797.23

.23 Underwater swimming

Examples: deep-sea, skin, scuba diving

.24 Springboard and precision diving

.25 Water games

Example: water polo

.3 Other aquatic sports [*formerly* 797.17]

.32 Surfing (Surf riding)

.33 Windsurfing (Boardsailing, Sailboarding)

.35 Water skiing

.37 Jet skiing

.5 Air sports

.51 Balloon flying

> 797.52–797.54 Flying motor-driven aircraft

Class comprehensive works in 797.5

.52 Racing

.53 Flying for pleasure

.54 Stunt flying

Class here display aerobatics

.55 Gliding and soaring

Example: hang gliding

.56 Parachuting (Skydiving)

798 Equestrian sports and animal racing

> **798.2–798.6 Equestrian sports**

Class comprehensive works in 798, hunting with aid of horses in 799.23

For polo, see 796.353

.2 Horsemanship

For horse racing, see 798.4

See Manual at 798.2

.23 Riding

Class here training of both horse and rider, dressage

Class training of the horse alone in 636.1088

For jumping, see 798.25

[.230 74] Exhibitions

Do not use; class in 798.24

[.230 79] Competitions and awards

Do not use; class in 798.24

.24 Riding exhibitions and competitions

Example: three-day events

Class jumping in 798.25

.25 Jumping

.4 Horse racing Flat racing

.400 1–.400 5 Standard subdivisions

.400 6 Organizations, facilities, management

.400 68 Race tracks

Add to base number 798.40068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., race tracks of England 798.4006842

Do not use for management; class in 798.40069

.400 69 Management

Add to base number 798.40069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., management of marketing 798.400698

.400 7–.400 9 Standard subdivisions

.401 Betting

Including pari-mutuel

[.43] Flat racing

Number discontinued; class in 798.4

.45 Steeplechasing and hurdling

.46 Harness racing

.6 Driving and coaching

Including horse-drawn sleighing

For harness racing, see 798.46

.8 Dog racing

Use of this number for racing animals other than horses and dogs discontinued; class in 798

799 Fishing, hunting, shooting

See also 688.79 for the manufacture of both mass-produced and handcrafted equipment

.1 Fishing

Class commercial and sport fishing in 639.2

.11 Freshwater fishing

Class fishing for specific kinds of freshwater fish in 799.17

> 799.12–799.14 Specific methods of fishing

Class comprehensive works in 799.1; specific methods of freshwater fishing in 799.11, of saltwater fishing in 799.16, of fishing for specific kinds of fish in 799.17

.12 Angling

Examples: still fishing, fly casting, bait casting, spinning, trolling, ice fishing

See also 688.7912 for making artificial flies

.13 Net fishing

Example: seining

.14 Other methods of fishing

Example: spearfishing

.16 Saltwater fishing

Class fishing for specific kinds of saltwater fish in 799.17

[.160 916 3–.160 916 7] In specific bodies of water

Do not use; class in 799.166

.166 In specific bodies of water

Add to base number 799.166 the numbers following 551.46 in 551.461–551.469, e.g., fishing in Gulf of Darien 799.16635

.17 Fishing for specific kinds of fish

Add to base number 799.17 the numbers following 597 in 597.2–597.5, e.g., trout fishing 799.1755

.2 Hunting

Class here comprehensive works on hunting and shooting sports

Class commercial and sport hunting in 639.1

For shooting other than game, see 799.3

.202 Miscellany

.202 8 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

---

> 799.202 82–799.202 85 Ballistic devices in hunting and shooting

Class comprehensive works in 799.2028

.202 82 Blowpipes, boomerangs, spears, bolas, lassos, slings, nets

.202 83 Guns

.202 832 Rifles

.202 833 Pistols

.202 834 Shotguns

.202 85 Bows and arrows

Do not use for data processing or computers; class in 799.2028

[.209] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 799.29

> 799.21–799.23 Methods

Class comprehensive works in 799.2, methods of hunting specific kinds of animals in 799.24–799.27

.21 Shooting game

.213 With guns

.215 With bows and arrows

.23 Hunting with aid of animals

.232 With falcons

.234 With dogs

> 799.24–799.27 Hunting specific kinds of animals

Class comprehensive works in 799.2

.24 Birds

> 799.242–799.244 Of specific habitats

Class comprehensive works in 799.24, birds of specific kinds regardless of habitat in 799.248

.242 Land birds

.243 Bay and shore birds

.244 Waterfowl

.248 Specific kinds

Add to base number 799.248 the numbers following 598 in 598.3–598.9, e.g., ducks 799.24841; however, class comprehensive works on hunting bay and shore birds in 799.243

.25 Small game hunting

For birds, see 799.24

.254–.259 Specific kinds

Add to base number 799.25 the numbers following 59 in 594–599, e.g., rabbits 799.259322

.26 Big game hunting

Class here comprehensive works on hunting big game mammals

For specific kinds, see 799.27

.27 Specific kinds of big game

For birds, see 799.24

.271–.278 Mammals

Add to base number 799.27 the numbers following 599 in 599.1–599.8, e.g., elephants 799.2761

Class comprehensive works in 799.26

.279 Reptiles

Add to base number 799.279 the numbers following 597.9 in 597.92–597.98, e.g., crocodiles 799.2798

.29 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Add to base number 799.29 notation 01–9 from Table 2, e.g., hunting in Germany 799.2943

.3 Shooting other than game

For ballistic devices, see 799.20282–799.20285

.31 With guns

.312 At stationary targets

For biathlon, see 796.932

.313 At moving targets

Examples: trapshooting, skeet shooting

.32 With bow and arrow (Archery)

800

800 Literature (Belles-lettres) and rhetoric

Class here works of literature, works about literature
(Option: Class belletristic essays, speeches, letters, satire, humor, quotations, epigrams, anecdotes, diaries, journals, reminiscences on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., essays on architecture 720)

After general topics (800–809) the basic arrangement is literature by language, then literature of each language by form, then each form by historical period; however, miscellaneous writings are arranged first by historical period, then by form. More detailed instructions are given at the beginning of Table 3

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., collections of drama written in poetry from more than one literature 808.82 (*not* 808.81)

Drama
Poetry
Class epigrams in verse with miscellaneous writings
Fiction
Essays
Speeches
Letters
Miscellaneous writings
Satire and humor
Class here collections of satire and humor in two or more literary forms
(Option: Give precedence to satire and humor over all other forms)

Class interdisciplinary works on language and literature in 400, interdisciplinary works on the arts in 700, folk literature in 398.2; librettos, poems, words written to be sung or recited with music in 780

See Manual at 800; 800 vs. 398.2; 800 vs. 591, 636, 398.245; 800 vs. 741.6

801 Philosophy and theory

.3 Value, influence, effect

.9 Nature and character

.92 Psychology

Including literature as a product of imagination

.93 Aesthetics

.95 Criticism

Class here theory, technique, history of literary criticism

Class works of critical appraisal in 809

> 801.951–801.957 Criticism of specific literary forms

Observe table of precedence under 800

Class comprehensive works in 801.95, textual criticism of specific literary forms in 801.959

.951 Poetry

.952 Drama

.953 Fiction

.954 Essays

.955 Speeches

.956 Letters

.957 Satire and humor

Class here parody

.959 Textual criticism

802 Miscellany

803 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

[804] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

805 Serial publications

Class collections of literary texts in serial form in 808.80005, history, description, critical appraisal in serial form in 809.005

806 Organizations

807 Education, research, related topics

808 Rhetoric and collections of literary texts from more than one literature

Rhetoric: the effective use of language

Class here composition, literary plagiarism

Do not use for history and description of literature and rhetoric with respect to kinds of persons; class history and description of rhetoric with respect to kinds of persons in 808.008, collections of literary texts from more than one literature with respect to kinds of persons in 808.89

Class general treatment of standard usage of language (prescriptive linguistics) in 418; treatment of standard usage in a specific language with the specific language, using notation 8 from Table 4, e.g., English usage 428; theory, technique, history of literary criticism in 801.95

See Manual at 808.001–808.7 vs. 070.52

SUMMARY

808.001–.009	**Standard subdivisions of rhetoric**
.02–.06	**General topics in rhetoric**
.1	**Rhetoric of poetry**
.2	**Rhetoric of drama**
.3	**Rhetoric of fiction**
.4	**Rhetoric of essays**
.5	**Rhetoric of speech**
.6	**Rhetoric of letters**
.7	**Rhetoric of satire and humor**
.8	**Collections of literary texts from more than one literature**

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of rhetoric

> 808.02–808.06 General topics in rhetoric

Class comprehensive works in 808

.02 Authorship and editorial techniques

Writing in publishable form

Class here comprehensive works on preparation and submission of manuscripts

Authorship and editorial techniques for specific kinds of composition relocated to 808.06

Class submission of manuscripts to agents and publishers in 070.52

See also 001.4 for research

See Manual at 808.001–808.7 vs. 070.52

[.025] Writing for publication

Number discontinued; class in 808.02

.027 Editorial techniques

Preparation of manuscripts in publishable form

Class here style manuals

.04 Rhetoric in specific languages

Class preparation of manuscripts regardless of language in 808.02, rhetoric of specific kinds of composition regardless of language in 808.06

.042 In English

.042 7 Study of rhetoric through critical reading

Including collections and single works for critical reading

See Manual at 808.0427

[.042 75] Literature for learning rhetoric

Number discontinued; class in 808.0427

.043–.049 In other languages

Add to base number 808.04 notation 3–9 from Table 6, e.g., German rhetoric 808.0431; then to the result add the numbers following 808.042 in 808.04201–808.0427, e.g., study of German rhetoric through critical reading 808.04317

.06 Rhetoric of specific kinds of composition

Class here authorship and editorial techniques for specific kinds of composition [*formerly* 808.02]

Class rhetoric in specific literary forms in 808.1–808.7

.062 Abstracts and summaries

.066 Professional, technical, expository literature

Add to base number 808.066 three-digit numbers 001–999 (but no standard subdivisions), e.g., technical writing 808.0666, writing of technical dictionaries 808.0666 (*not* 808.066603), writing on bridge engineering 808.066624 (*not* 808.0666242); then, for writing in a foreign language, add 0 and to the result add notation 2–9 from Table 6, e.g., technical writing in Spanish for speakers of another language 808.0666061

Editorial mechanics in journalistic writing [*formerly* 070.415] are classed in 808.06607, style manuals for business writing in 808.06665 [*formerly* 651.7402], style of business letters in 808.066651 [*formerly* 651.75]

For expository writing for children, see 808.0688; abstracts and summaries, 808.062

See Manual at 651.7 vs. 808.06665, 658.45

.067 Adult easy literature

Works for adults learning to read or for adult beginners in foreign languages

.068 Children's literature

.068 1–.068 7 Specific literary forms

Add to base number 808.068 the numbers following 808 in 808.1–808.7, e.g., drama 808.0682

.068 8 Expository writing

> **808.1–808.7 Rhetoric in specific literary forms**

Observe table of precedence under 800

Class comprehensive works in 808, specific forms for children in 808.0681–808.0687

.1 Rhetoric of poetry

Class here prosody

Add to base number 808.1 the numbers following —10 in notation 102–108 from Table 3–B, e.g., lyric poetry 808.14

See Manual at 808.1 vs. 414.6

.2 Rhetoric of drama

Add to base number 808.2 the numbers following —20 in notation 202–205 from Table 3–B, e.g., one-act plays 808.241

.3 Rhetoric of fiction

Class here the rhetoric of novelettes and novels

Add to base number 808.3 the numbers following —30 in notation 301–308 from Table 3–B, e.g., science fiction 808.38762

.4 Rhetoric of essays

.5 Rhetoric of speech

Art or technique of oral expression

Class here voice, expression, gesture

.51 Public speaking (Oratory)

Examples: after-dinner, platform, radio speaking; making speeches and toasts for special occasions

For debating and public discussion, see 808.53; preaching, 251

.53 Debating and public discussion

.54 Recitation

Class here oral interpretation

Class choral speaking in 808.55

.543 Storytelling

.545 Reading aloud

.55 Choral speaking

.56 Conversation

[.59] Listening

Number discontinued because without meaning in context

.6 Rhetoric of letters

.7 Rhetoric of satire and humor

Class here rhetoric of parody

.8 Collections of literary texts from more than one literature

By more than one author

Use of this number for general works consisting equally of literary texts and history, description, critical appraisal of literature discontinued; class in 800

Works consisting equally of literary texts and history, description, critical appraisal of literature are classed in subdivisions of 808.8 if limited to specific topics found in those subdivisions, e.g., texts and criticism of literature of the 18th century 808.80033, texts and criticism of drama 808.82

Class two or more literatures in the same language with the literature of that language

See Manual at 808.8

SUMMARY

808.800 01–.800 07	**Standard subdivisions**
.800 1–.800 5	**Collections from specific periods**
.801–.803	**Collections displaying specific features**
.81	**Collections of poetry**
.82	**Collections of drama**
.83	**Collections of fiction**
.84	**Collections of essays**
.85	**Collections of speeches**
.86	**Collections of letters**
.87	**Collections of satire and humor**
.88	**Collections of miscellaneous writings**
.89	**Collections for and by specific kinds of persons**

.800 01–.800 07 Standard subdivisions

[.800 08] History and description with respect to kinds of persons

Do not use; class in 808.89

[.800 09] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class in 809

.800 1–.800 5 Collections from specific periods

Add to base number 808.800 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., collections of 18th century literature 808.80033

.801–.803 Collections displaying specific features

Add to base number 808.80 notation 1–3 from Table 3–C, e.g., collections of literature featuring classicism 808.80142, on death 808.80354

> 808.81–808.88 Collections in specific forms

Aside from additions, changes, deletions, exceptions shown under specific entries, add to the notation for each term identified by * as follows:

001–008 Standard subdivisions

009 Geographical treatment

Class historical periods in 01–05; persons treatment in the number for the specific form, without adding notation from Table 1

01–05 Historical periods

Add to 0 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., 18th century 033

Observe the table of precedence under 800

Class comprehensive works in 808.8

.81 *Collections of poetry

.812–.818 Specific kinds

Add to base number 808.81 the numbers following —10 in notation 102–108 from Table 3–B, e.g., collections of narrative poetry 808.813

.819 Poetry displaying specific features

Add to base number 808.819 notation 1–3 from Table 3–C, e.g., collections of poetry about animals 808.81936

Class poetry of specific kinds regardless of feature in 808.812–808.818

.82 *Collections of drama

.822–.825 Specific media, scopes, kinds

Add to base number 808.82 the numbers following —20 in notation 202–205 from Table 3–B, e.g., collections of tragedies 808.82512

.829 Drama displaying specific features

Add to base number 808.829 notation 1–3 from Table 3–C, e.g., collections of plays about Abraham Lincoln 808.829351

Class drama of specific media, scopes, kinds regardless of feature in 808.822–808.825

.83 *Collections of fiction

.831–.838 Specific scopes and types

Add to base number 808.83 the numbers following —30 in notation 301–308 from Table 3–B, e.g., collections of love stories 808.8385

*Add as instructed under 808.81–808.88

.839 Fiction displaying specific features

Add to base number 808.839 notation 1–3 from Table 3–C, e.g., collections of fiction about animals 808.83936

Class fiction of specific scopes and types regardless of feature in 808.831–808.838

.84 *Collections of essays

.849 Essays displaying specific features

Add to base number 808.849 notation 1–3 from Table 3–C, e.g., collections of descriptive essays 808.84922

.85 *Collections of speeches

.851–.856 Specific kinds

Add to base number 808.85 the numbers following —50 in notation 501–506 from Table 3–B, e.g., debates 808.853

.859 Speeches displaying specific features

Add to base number 808.859 notation 1–3 from Table 3–C, e.g., collections of descriptive speeches 808.85922

Class speeches of specific kinds regardless of feature in 808.851–808.856

.86 *Collections of letters

.869 Letters displaying specific features

Add to base number 808.869 notation 1–3 from Table 3–C, e.g., collections of letters displaying classicism 808.869142

.87 *Collections of satire and humor

.879 Satire and humor displaying specific features

Add to base number 808.879 notation 1–3 from Table 3–C, e.g., collections of literary humor about holidays 808.87933

.88 *Collections of miscellaneous writings

.882 Jokes [*formerly* 808.887], quotations, epigrams, anecdotes, graffiti

.883 Diaries, journals, notebooks, reminiscences

.887 Works without identifiable form

Class here experimental and nonformalized works

Jokes relocated to 808.882

.888 Prose literature

Class a specific form of prose literature with the form, e.g., essays 808.84; prose without identifiable form in 808.887

*Add as instructed under 808.81–808.88

.89 Collections for and by specific kinds of persons

Add to base number 808.89 notation 8–9 from Table 3–C, e.g., collections of literature in more than one language by persons of African descent 808.89896

Class literature in specific forms for and by specific kinds of persons in 808.81–808.88, literature displaying specific features for and by specific kinds of persons in 808.801–808.803, literatures of specific languages for and by specific kinds of persons in 810–890

809 History, description, critical appraisal of more than one literature

Treating works by more than one author

Class here collected biography

Class theory, technique, history of literary criticism in 801.95; two or more literatures in the same language with the literature of that language

See Manual at 808.8

.001–.007 Standard subdivisions

[.008] History and description with respect to kinds of persons

Do not use; class in 809.8

[.009] Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Do not use; class persons in 809, historical periods in 809.01–809.05, geographical treatment in 809.89

.01–.05 Literature from specific periods

Add to base number 809.0 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g, history, description, critical appraisal of 18th century literature 809.033

.1–.7 Literature in specific forms

Add to base number 809 the numbers following 808.8 in 808.81–808.87, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of narrative poetry 809.13, of poetry about animals 809.136

.8 Literature for and by specific kinds of persons

Class here history and description of literature with respect to kinds of persons

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of precedence, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of literature for or by American Roman Catholic girls 809.892827 (*not* 809.813, 809.89222, or 809.8973)

Persons of specific age groups	809.89282–.89285
Persons of specific sexes	809.89286–.89287
Persons occupied with geography, history, related disciplines	809.8929
Persons of other specific occupational and miscellaneous characteristics	809.89204–.89279
Persons of specific racial, ethnic, national groups	809.801–.889
Persons resident in specific continents, countries, localities	809.893–.899
Persons resident in specific regions	809.891

Class literature in specific forms for and by specific kinds of persons in 809.1–809.7, literature displaying specific features for and by specific kinds of persons in 809.9, literatures of specific languages for and by specific kinds of persons in 810–890

> 809.801–809.889 Literature for and by specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Class comprehensive works in 809.8

.801–.879 For and by general and larger Western racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 809.8 notation 01–79 from Table 5, e.g., North Americans 809.81

.88 For and by other racial, ethnic, national groups

.881 Ancient Greeks

.888 Modern Greeks and Cypriots

.889 Other

Add to base number 809.889 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–99 from Table 5, e.g., Jewish literature 809.88924, African literature 809.8896

.89 For and by other specific kinds of persons

Add to base number 809.89 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–99 from Table 3–C, e.g., literature in more than one language by painters 809.89275, by residents of Canada 809.8971

.9 Literature displaying specific features

Class literature in specific forms regardless of feature in 809.1–809.7

.91–.92 Displaying specific qualities and elements

Add to base number 809.9 notation 1–2 from Table 3–C, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of literature displaying tragedy and horror 809.916

Class literature dealing with specific themes and subjects regardless of quality or element displayed in 809.933

.93 Displaying other aspects

.933 Dealing with specific themes and subjects

Add to base number 809.93 notation 32–38 from Table 3–C, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of literature dealing with marriage 809.93354

.935 Emphasizing subjects

Literary appraisal of works not basically belles-lettres

Add to base number 809.935 notation 001–999, e.g., religious works as literature 809.9352, biography and autobiography as literature 809.93592

> # 810–890 Literatures of specific languages

Literature is classed by the language in which originally written, regardless of country

(Option: Class translations into a language requiring local emphasis with the literature of that language)

Unless there is a specific provision for a dialect, literature in a dialect is classed with the literature of the basic language

Literature in a pidgin or creole is classed with the source language from which more of its vocabulary comes than from its other source language(s)

(Option: For any group of literatures, add 04 and then add notation 01–89 from Table 3–B, e.g., collections of lyric poetry written in African languages 896.0410408)

(Option: To give preferred treatment to, or make available more and shorter numbers for the classification of, literature of any specific language that it is desired to emphasize, use one of the following options:

(Option A: Class in 810, where full instructions appear

(Option B: Give preferred treatment by placing before 810 through use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., literature of Arabic language 8A0, for which the base number is 8A

(Option C: Where two or more countries share the same language, either [1] use initial letters to distinguish the separate countries, or [2] use the special number designated for literatures of those countries that are *not* preferred. Full instructions appear under 810, 819, 820, 828.99, 840.1–848.9, 848.99, 860.1–868.9, 868.99, 869, 869.899)

Under each literature identified by *, add to designated base number notation 1–8 from Table 3–A for works by or about individual authors, notation 01–89 from Table 3–B for works by or about more than one author. If the base number is not identified in a note, it is the number given for the literature, e.g., for Dutch 839.31. Full instructions for building numbers are given at the start of Table 3

The numbers used in this schedule for literatures of individual languages do not necessarily correspond exactly with those in 420–490 or with the notation in Table 6. Use notation from Table 6 only when so instructed, e.g., at 899

Class comprehensive works in 800

810 *American literature in English

English-language literature of Western Hemisphere and Hawaii

Base number: 81

Special interpretations of and exceptions to notation from Table 3 for use with American literature in English:

810.8099 Collections for and by persons resident in Hawaii

810.999 History, description, critical appraisal of literature for and by persons resident in Hawaii

(continued)

810 *American literature in English (continued)

Assign period numbers for the United States (including Puerto Rico) and Canada only

PERIOD TABLES FOR AMERICAN LITERATURE IN ENGLISH

For Canada

3 Colonial period to 1867
4 1867–1900
5 1900–
52 1900–1945
54 1945–

For United States

1 Colonial period, 1607–1776
2 1776–1830
3 1830–1861
Class here 19th century
Class 1800–1830 in 2, 1861–1899 in 4
4 1861–1900
5 1900–
52 1900–1945
54 1945–

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific literature other than American literature in English, e.g., Afrikaans literature, class it here; in that case class American literature in English in 820. Other options are described under 810–890)

(Option: Distinguish literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Canada C810, of Jamaica J810, of United States U810; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 819. If literatures are identified by one of these methods, assign period numbers for Middle and South American literature as well as for United States and Canadian literature. Other options are described under 810–890)

Class comprehensive works on American literature in English and English literature in 820

811 ‡Poetry

812 ‡Drama

813 ‡Fiction

814 ‡Essays

815 ‡Speeches

816 ‡Letters

817 ‡Satire and humor

818 ‡Miscellaneous writings

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

‡Add as instructed under 810 and at the beginning of Table 3

(819) American literatures in English not requiring local emphasis

(Optional number and subdivisions; prefer 810–818 for all American literatures in English. Other options are described under 810–890)

Class here English-language literatures of specific American countries other than the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries emphasizing United States literature class here Canadian literature, and libraries emphasizing Canadian literature class here United States literature

(.1) *†Canada

(.3) *†United States

(.5) *†Mexico

(.7) †Central America

(.700 1–.708 9) †Subdivisions of Central American literature in English

Add to base number 819.70 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of Central American dramatic poetry in English 819.7010208

(.71–.77) †Specific countries

Add to 819.7 the numbers following —728 in notation 7281–7287 from Table 2, e.g., English-language literature of Costa Rica 819.76; then to the base number thus derived add as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of English-language literature of Costa Rica displaying naturalism 819.7608012

(.8) †West Indies (Antilles) and Bermuda

(.800 1–.808 9) †Subdivisions of English-language literatures of the West Indies (Antilles) and Bermuda

Add to base number 819.80 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of English-language literature of the West Indies for children 819.800809282

(.81) *†Cuba

(.82) *†Jamaica

(.83) *†Dominican Republic

(.84) *†Haiti

(.85) *†Puerto Rico

(.86) *†Bahama Islands

(.87) *†Leeward Islands

(.88) *†Windward and other southern islands

(.89) *†Bermuda

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

†(Optional number; prefer 810–818)

(.9) †South America

(.900 1–.908) †Subdivisions of English-language literatures of South America

Add to base number 819.90 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of English-language one-act plays from South America 819.90204108

(.91–.99) †Specific countries

Add to 819.9 the numbers following —8 in notation 81–89 from Table 2, e.g., English-language literature of Brazil 819.91; then add further as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., history and critical appraisal of English-language literature of Brazil 819.9109

820 *English and Old English (Anglo-Saxon) literatures

Base number for English: 82

Assign period numbers for Great Britain and Ireland only

PERIOD TABLES FOR ENGLISH

For Great Britain and Ireland

1 Early English period, 1066–1400
  Class here medieval period
2 Pre-Elizabethan period, 1400–1558
3 Elizabethan period, 1558–1625
  Including Jacobean period
  Class here 16th century, Renaissance period
  Class 1500–1558, the pre-Elizabethan part of the Renaissance in 2
4 Post-Elizabethan period, 1625–1702
  Including Caroline and Restoration periods
5 Queen Anne period, 1702–1745
  Class here 18th century
  Class 1700–1702 in 4, 1745–1799 in 6
6 1745–1800
7 1800–1837
  Class here romantic period
8 Victorian period, 1837–1900
  Class here 19th century
  Class 1800–1837 in 7
9 1900–
91 1900–2000
912 1900–1945
914 1945–

(Option: Distinguish English-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of England E820, of Ireland Ir820, of Scotland S820, of Wales W820, or of all British Isles B820, of Australia A820, of India In820; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 828.99. If literatures are identified by one of these methods, assign optional period numbers for literature of Ireland, Africa, Asia, Australia, and New Zealand. Other options are described under 810–890

(continued)

†(Optional number; prefer 810–818)

820 *English and Old English (Anglo-Saxon) literatures (continued)

(For Ireland

(1 Medieval and early modern to 1660
(2 1660–1800
(3 1800–1900
(4 Irish literary revival, 1900–1945
(5 1945–

(For African countries other than South Africa

(1 To 1960
(2 1960–

(For Asian countries

(1 Early period to 1858
(2 1858–1947
(3 1947–

(For Australia

(1 Early period to 1890
(2 1890–1945
(3 1945–

(For New Zealand

(1 Early period to 1907
(2 1907–

(For South Africa

(1 To 1909
(2 1909–1961
(3 1961–)

For American literature in English, see 810

821 ‡English poetry

822 ‡English drama

.3 Elizabethan period, 1558–1625

.33 William Shakespeare

(Option: Subarrange works about and by Shakespeare according to the following table, which may be adapted for use with any specific author:

A Authorship controversies
(Option: Class here bibliography; prefer 016.82233)
B Biography
D Critical appraisal
Class critical appraisal of individual works in O-Z
E Textual criticism
Class textual criticism of individual works in O-Z
F Sources, allusions, learning

(continued)

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

‡Add as instructed under 820 and at the beginning of Table 3

.33 William Shakespeare (continued)

G Societies, concordances, miscellany
H Quotations, condensations, adaptations
I Complete works in English without notes
J Complete works in English with notes
K Complete works in translation
L Partial collections in English without notes
M Partial collections in English with notes
N Partial collections in translation
>O–Z Individual works
Use the first number of each pair for texts, the second for description and critical appraisal
Class poems in 821.3
>O–R Comedies
O1–2 All's well that ends well
O3–4 As you like it
O5–6 The comedy of errors
O7–8 Love's labour's lost
P1–2 Measure for measure
P3–4 The merchant of Venice
P5–6 The merry wives of Windsor
P7–8 A midsummer night's dream
Q1–2 Much ado about nothing
Q3–4 The taming of the shrew
Q5–6 The tempest
Q7–8 Twelfth night
R1–2 The two gentlemen of Verona
R3–4 The winter's tale
>S–V Tragedies
S1–2 Antony and Cleopatra
S3–4 Coriolanus
S5–6 Cymbeline
S7–8 Hamlet
T1–2 Julius Caesar
T3–4 King Lear
T5–6 Macbeth
T7–8 Othello
U1–2 Pericles
U3–4 Romeo and Juliet
U5–6 Timon of Athens
U7–8 Titus Andronicus
V1–2 Troilus and Cressida
>W–X Histories
W1–2 Henry IV, parts 1–2
W3–4 Henry V
W5–6 Henry VI, parts 1–3
W7–8 Henry VIII
X1–2 King John
X3–4 Richard II
X5–6 Richard III
Y Poems
(Optional numbers; prefer 821.3)
Y1–2 General works
Y3–4 Venus and Adonis
Y5–6 The rape of Lucrece
Y7–8 Sonnets
Z Spurious and doubtful works)

823 ‡English fiction

824 ‡English essays

825 ‡English speeches

826 ‡English letters

827 ‡English satire and humor

828 ‡English miscellaneous writings

(.99) English-language literatures not requiring local emphasis

(Optional number and subdivisions; prefer 820–828 for all non-American English-language literatures. Other options are described under 810–890)

Class here English-language literatures of specific non-American countries other than the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries emphasizing British literature may class here Australian, Indian, other literatures, and libraries emphasizing Indian literature may class here British literature

(.991) †Scotland and Ireland

(Option: Class here all English-language literature of *United Kingdom, of *Great Britain, of *British Isles)

(.991 1) *†Scotland

(.991 5) *†Ireland

(.992) *†England and Wales

(.992 9) *†Wales

(.993) †New Zealand, Australia, India, South Africa

(.993 3) *†New Zealand

(.993 4) *†Australia

(.993 5) *†India

(.993 6) *†South Africa

(.994–.999) †Other parts of the world

English-language literature except of British Isles, Western Hemisphere, Hawaii, New Zealand, Australia, India, South Africa

Add to 828.99 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., English-language literature of Israel 828.995694; then add 0 and to the base number thus derived add as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., English-language poetry of Israel 828.99569401

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

†(Optional number; prefer 820–828)

‡Add as instructed under 820 and at the beginning of Table 3

829 *Old English (Anglo-Saxon)

Special interpretations of and exceptions to notation from Table 3 for use with Old English appear below under 829.2–829.8

.1 Poetry

For Caedmon, see 829.2; Beowulf, 829.3; Cynewulf, 829.4

.2 Caedmon

.3 Beowulf

.4 Cynewulf

.8 Prose literature

830 Literatures of Germanic (Teutonic) languages German literature

For English and Old English (Anglo-Saxon) literatures, see 820

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of literatures of Germanic (Teutonic) languages

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

> **830.1–838.9 Subdivisions of *German literature**

Class here literature in Alsatian, Franconian, Pennsylvania Dutch (Pennsylvania German), Swabian, Swiss-German dialects

Base number: 83

PERIOD TABLE

1 Early period to 1100
  Class here Old High German literature
  1100–1150 relocated to 21
2 1100–1350
  Class here medieval period, 750–1350; Middle High German literature
  Class 750–1100 in 1
21 1100–1250
    Including 1100–1150 [*formerly* 1]
    Class here Blütezeit
22 1250–1350
    Class here 1300–1350 [*formerly* 3]
3 1350–1517
  1350–1400 relocated to 22
4 Reformation period, 1517–1625
5 1625–1750
  Class here the baroque period
6 Classical period, 1750–1830
  Class here 18th century, the romantic period
  Class 1700–1750 in 5, the later romantic period in 7
7 Postclassical period, 1830–1856
  Class here 19th century
  Class 1800–1830 in 6, 1856–1899 in 8
8 1856–1900
9 1900–
91 1900–2000
912 1900–1945
914 1945–

Class comprehensive works in 830, Yiddish (Judeo-German) literature in 839.09, low German (Plattdeutsch) literature in 839.4

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions; collections; history, description, critical appraisal of ‡German literature

831 ‡German poetry

832 ‡German drama

833 ‡German fiction

834 ‡German essays

835 ‡German speeches

836 ‡German letters

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

‡Add as instructed under 830.1–838.9 and at the beginning of Table 3

837 ‡German satire and humor

838 ‡German miscellaneous writings

839 Other Germanic (Teutonic) literatures

.09 *Yiddish

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1700
2 Period of enlightenment, 1700–1860
3 Golden age and modern period, 1860–

> **839.1–839.4 West Germanic literatures**

Class comprehensive works in 839

.1 Old Low Germanic literatures

Examples: Old Frisian, Old Low Franconian, Old Low German, Old Saxon

---

> **839.2–839.4 Modern Low Germanic literatures**

Class comprehensive works in 839

.2 *Frisian

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1609
2 1609–1800
3 1800–1900
4 1900–

.3 Netherlandish literatures

.31 *Dutch

Class here Flemish literature [*formerly* 839.32]

PERIOD TABLE
1 Medieval period to 1450
2 Renaissance period, 1450–1600
3 1600–1700
4 1700–1800
5 1800–1900
6 1900–
62 1900–1945
64 1945–

[.32] Flemish literature

Relocated to 839.31

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

‡Add as instructed under 830.1–838.9 and at the beginning of Table 3

.36 *Afrikaans

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1875
2 1875–1904
3 1904–1924
4 1924–1961
Class here 20th century
Class 1900–1904 in 2, 1904–1924 in 3, 1961–1999 in 5
5 1961–

.4 *Low German (Plattdeutsch)

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1600
2 1600–1900
3 1900–

.5 Scandinavian (North Germanic) literatures

For specific Scandinavian literatures, see 839.6–839.8

> **839.6–839.8 Specific Scandinavian literatures**

Class comprehensive works in 839.5

.6 West Scandinavian literatures Old Norse (Old Icelandic)

.600 1–.600 9 Standard subdivisions of West Scandinavian literatures

.601–.68 Subdivisions of *Old Norse (Old Icelandic)

Base number: 839.6

.69 Modern West Scandinavian literatures Modern Icelandic

.690 01–.690 09 Standard subdivisions of modern West Scandinavian literatures

.690 1–.698 Subdivisions of *Modern Icelandic

Base number: 839.69

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period, 1500–1720
2 Age of enlightenment, 1720–1835
3 Renaissance, 1835–1900
Class here 19th century
Class 1800–1835 in 2
4 1900–

See also 839.699 for Faeroese

.699 *Faeroese

> **839.7–839.8 East Scandinavian literatures**

Class comprehensive works in 839.5

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

.7 *Swedish

PERIOD TABLE
1 Medieval period to 1520
2 Reformation period, 1520–1640
3 Age of Stjernhjelm, 1640–1740
Class here 17th century
Class 1600–1640 in 2
4 Age of Dalin, 1740–1780
Class here 18th century
Class 1700–1740 in 3
5 Age of Gustavus, 1780–1800
6 1800–1900
7 1900–
72 1900–1945
74 1945–

.8 Danish and Norwegian

.81 *Danish

PERIOD TABLE
1 Medieval period to 1500
2 Reformation period, 1500–1560
3 Learned period, 1560–1700
4 Age of Holberg, 1700–1750
5 Period of enlightenment, 1750–1800
6 1800–1900
7 1900–
72 1900–1945
74 1945–

Class Dano-Norwegian literature in 839.82

.82 *Norwegian (Bokmal, Riksmal)

Class here Dano-Norwegian literature, comprehensive works on Norwegian literature

PERIOD TABLE
1 Medieval period to 1500
2 Reformation period, 1500–1560
3 Learned period, 1560–1700
4 1700–1750
5 Period of enlightenment, 1750–1800
6 1800–1900
7 1900–
72 1900–1945
74 1945–

For New Norse literature, see 839.83

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

.83 *Norwegian (New Norse, Landsmal)

PERIOD TABLE
6 1800–1900
7 1900–
72 1900–1945
74 1945–

Class comprehensive works on Norwegian literature in 839.82

.9 East Germanic literatures

Examples: Burgundian, Gothic, Vandalic

840 Literatures of Romance languages French literature

Class comprehensive works on Italic languages in 870

For literatures of Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic languages, see 850; of Spanish and Portuguese languages, 860

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of literatures of Romance languages

---

> **840.1–848.9 Subdivisions of *French literature**

Base number: 84

Assign period numbers only for European countries

PERIOD TABLE FOR FRENCH
For European countries

1 Early period to 1400
Class here medieval period
2 1400–1500
3 Renaissance period, 1500–1600
4 Classical period, 1600–1715
5 1715–1789
Class here 18th century, Enlightment, Age of Reason
Class 1700–1715 in 4, 1789–1799 in 6
6 Revolution and Empire, 1789–1815
7 Constitutional monarchy, 1815–1848
Class here 19th century
Class 1800–1815 in 6, 1848–1899 in 8
8 1848–1900
9 1900–
91 1900–2000
912 1900–1945
914 1945–

(Option: Distinguish French-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Canada C840, of France F840; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 848.99. If literatures are identified by one of these methods, assign the following optional period numbers for Belgium and non-European countries. Other options are described under 810–890

(continued)

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

> **840.1–848.9 Subdivisions of *French literature (continued)**

(For Asian and African countries

(1 To 1960
(2 1960–

(For Belgium

(1 Early period to 1830
(2 1830–1900
Class here 19th century
Class 1800–1830 in 2
(3 1900–
(32 1900–1945
(34 1945–

(For Canada

(3 Colonial period to 1867
(4 1867–1900
(5 1900–
(52 1900–1945
(54 1945–)

Class comprehensive works in 840, Provençal literature in 849

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions; collections; history, description, critical appraisal of ‡French literature

841 ‡French poetry

842 ‡French drama

843 ‡French fiction

844 ‡French essays

845 ‡French speeches

846 ‡French letters

847 ‡French satire and humor

848 ‡French miscellaneous writings

(.99) French-language literatures not requiring local emphasis

(Optional number and subdivisions; prefer 840–848 for all French-language literatures. Other options are described under 810–890)

Class here literatures of specific countries, e.g., libraries emphasizing literature of France may class here Belgian and Canadian literatures, and libraries emphasizing Canadian literature may class here literature of France

(.991) *†France

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

†(Optional number; prefer 840–848)

‡Add as instructed under 840.1–848.9 and at the beginning of Table 3

(.992) *†Canada

(.993) *†Belgium

(.994–.999) †Other parts of the world

French-language literature except of France, Belgium, Canada

Add to 848.99 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., French-language literature of Tahiti 848.9996211; then add 0 and to the base number thus derived add as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., French-language drama of Tahiti 848.999621102

849 *Provençal and Catalan

Base number for Provençal: 849

PERIOD TABLE FOR PROVENÇAL

1 Early period to 1100
2 Golden age, 1100–1300
3 1300–1500
4 Decline and revival, 1500–1900
5 1900–
52 1900–1945
54 1945–

.9 *Catalan

PERIOD TABLE

1 First period to 1350
2 Second period, 1350–1450
3 Golden age, 1450–1500
Class here 15th century
Class 1400–1450 in 3
4 Decline and revival, 1500–1900
5 1900–
52 1900–1945
54 1945–

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

†(Optional number; prefer 840–848)

850 Literatures of *Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic languages

Base number for Italian: 85

PERIOD TABLE FOR ITALIAN

1 Early period to 1375
2 Period of classical learning, 1375–1492
  Class here Renaissance period
  Class later Renaissance period in 3
3 1492–1542
4 1542–1585
  Class here 16th century
  Class 1500–1542 in 3, 1585–1599 in 5
5 Period of decline, 1585–1748
6 Period of renovation, 1748–1814
  Class here 18th century
  Class 1700–1748 in 5
7 1814–1859
  Class here 19th century
  Class 1800–1814 in 6, 1859–1899 in 8
8 1859–1900
9 1900–
91 1900–2000
912 1900–1945
914 1945–

Class comprehensive works on Romance languages in 840, on Italic languages in 870

851 ‡Italian poetry

852 ‡Italian drama

853 ‡Italian fiction

854 ‡Italian essays

855 ‡Italian speeches

856 ‡Italian letters

857 ‡Italian satire and humor

858 ‡Italian miscellaneous writings

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

‡Add as instructed under 850 and at the beginning of Table 3

859 *Romanian and Rhaeto-Romanic

Base number for Romanian: 859

PERIOD TABLE FOR ROMANIAN

1 Early period to 1800
2 1800–1900
3 1900–
32 1900–1945
34 1945–

.9 Rhaeto-Romanic languages

Examples: Friulian, Ladin, Romansh

860 Literatures of Spanish and Portuguese languages

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of literatures of Spanish and Portuguese languages

---

> **860.1–868.9 Subdivisions of *Spanish literature**

Class here Judeo-Spanish (Ladino), Papiamento literature

Base number: 86

Assign period numbers only for Spain

PERIOD TABLES FOR SPANISH

For Spain

1 Early period to 1369
2 1369–1516
3 Golden Age, 1516–1700
4 1700–1800
5 1800–1900
6 1900–
62 1900–1945
64 1945–

(Option: Distinguish Spanish-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Chile Ch860, of Colombia Co860, of Mexico M860 [or, of all American countries A860], of Spain S860; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 868.99. If literatures are identified by one of these methods, assign the following optional period numbers for literature of American countries. Other options are described under 810–890

(continued)

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

> **860.1–868.9 Subdivisions of *Spanish literature (continued)**

(For American countries

(1 Colonial and revolutionary period, 1519–1826
(2 1826–1888
Class here 19th century
Class 1800–1826 in 1, 1888–1899 in 3
(3 Period of modernism and realism, 1888–1910
(4 1910–
(42 1910–1945
(44 1945–)

Class comprehensive works in 860

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions; collections; history, description, critical appraisal of ‡Spanish literature

861 ‡Spanish poetry

862 ‡Spanish drama

863 ‡Spanish fiction

864 ‡Spanish essays

865 ‡Spanish speeches

866 ‡Spanish letters

867 ‡Spanish satire and humor

868 ‡Spanish miscellaneous writings

(.99) Spanish-language literatures not requiring local emphasis

(Optional number and subdivisions; prefer 860–868 for all Spanish-language literatures. Other options are described under 810–890)

Class here literatures of specific countries other than the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries emphasizing literature of Spain may class here Hispanic-American literatures, and libraries emphasizing literature of Mexico may class here literatures of other Hispanic-American countries and of Spain

(.991) *†Spain

(.992) †Hispanic North America

Class here comprehensive works on Spanish-language literature of Hispanic America

For Hispanic South America, see 868.993

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

†(Optional number; prefer 860–868)

‡Add as instructed under 860.1–868.9 and at the beginning of Table 3

(.992 001–.992 08) †Subdivisions of Spanish-language literatures of Hispanic North America

Add to base number 868.9920 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of Spanish-language one-act plays of Hispanic North America 868.99202041

(.992 1) *†Mexico

(.992 2) †Central America

(.992 200 1–.992 208) †Subdivisions of Spanish-language literatures of Central America

Add to base number 868.99220 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of Spanish-language one-act plays of Central America 868.992202041

(.992 21–.992 27) †Specific countries

Add to 868.9922 the numbers following —728 in notation 7281–7289 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish-language literature of Costa Rica 868.99226; then to the base number thus derived add as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of Spanish-language literature of Costa Rica displaying naturalism 868.9922608012

(.992 3) †West Indies (Antilles)

(.992 300 1–.992 308) †Spanish-language literatures of the West Indies (Antilles)

Add to base number 868.99230 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of Spanish-language one-act plays of the West Indies 868.99230204108

(.992 31) *†Cuba

(.992 33) *†Dominican Republic

(.992 35) *†Puerto Rico

(.993) †Hispanic South America

(.993 001–.993 08) †Subdivisions of Spanish-language literatures of Hispanic South America

Add to base number 868.9930 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of Spanish-language dramatic poetry of Hispanic South America 868.993010208

(.993 2–.993 9) †Specific countries

Add to 868.993 the numbers following —8 in notation 82–87, 89 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish-language literature of Chile 868.9933; then to the base number thus derived add as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., history and critical appraisal of Spanish-language literature of Chile 868.993309

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

†(Optional number; prefer 860–868)

(.994–.999) †Other parts of the world

Spanish-language literature except of Spain, Hispanic America

Add to 868.99 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish-language literature of the United States 868.9973; then add 0 and to the base number thus derived add as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., Spanish-language poetry of the United States 868.997301

869 *Portuguese

Class here Galician (Gallegan) literature

Assign period numbers for Portugal only

PERIOD TABLES FOR PORTUGUESE

For Portugal

1 Early period to 1500
2 1500–1800
Including classical period
3 1800–1900
4 1900–
41 1900–1945
42 1945–

(Option: Distinguish Portuguese-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Brazil B869, of Portugal P869; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 869.899. If literatures are identified by one of these methods, assign the following optional period numbers for literature of Brazil. Other options are described under 810–890

(For Brazil

(1 Period of formation, 1500–1750
(2 Period of transformation, 1750–1830
(3 1830–1921
Class here 19th century
Class 1800–1830 in 2
(4 1921–)

See also 860 for Papiamento literature

(.899) Portuguese-language literatures not requiring local emphasis

(Optional number and subdivisions; prefer 869.01–869.8 for all Portuguese-language literatures. Other options are described under 810–890)

Class here literatures of specific countries other than the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries emphasizing literature of Portugal may class here Brazilian literature, and libraries emphasizing Brazilian literature may class here literature of Portugal

(.899 1) *‡Portugal

(.899 2) *‡Brazil

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

†(Optional number; prefer 860–868)

‡(Optional number; prefer 869.01–869.8)

(.899 4–.899 9) ‡Other parts of world

Portuguese-language literature except of Portugal, Brazil

Add to 869.899 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Portuguese-language literature of India 869.89954; then add 0 and to the base number thus derived add as instructed at the beginning of Table 3, e.g., Portuguese-language drama of India 869.8995402

870 Literatures of Italic languages Latin literature

Class comprehensive works of or on literatures of classical languages in 880

For literatures of Romance languages, see 840

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of literatures of Italic languages

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions, collections, history, description, critical appraisal of *Latin literature

In more than one form by more than one author

Use the period table under 871–878

> 871–878 Specific forms of Latin literature

Add to base number 87 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3; however, observe the special interpretations of and exceptions to notation from Table 3 that appear below, e.g., collections of Latin poetry of the medieval period 871.0308, critical appraisal of Latin epic poetry and fiction of the Roman period 873.0109

PERIOD TABLE FOR LATIN

1 Roman period to ca. 500
2 Pre-Carolingian period, ca. 500–ca. 750
3 Medieval period, ca. 750–1350
4 Modern period, 1350–

Class comprehensive works in 870

871 ‡Latin poetry

For dramatic poetry, see 872; epic poetry, 873; lyric poetry, 874

.01–.04 Specific periods

Use the period table under 871–878

Do not use 871.02–871.08 for specific kinds

872 ‡Latin dramatic poetry and drama

.01–.04 Specific periods

Use the period table under 871–878

Do not use 872.02–872.05 for specific media, scopes, kinds

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

‡(Optional number; prefer 869.01–869.8)

873 ‡Latin epic poetry and fiction

.01–.04 Specific periods

Use the period table under 871–878

Do not use 873.01–873.08 for specific scopes and types

874 ‡Latin lyric poetry

.01–.04 Specific periods

Use the period table under 871–878

875 ‡Latin speeches

.01–.04 Specific periods

Use the period table under 871–878

Do not use 875.01–875.06 for specific kinds

876 ‡Latin letters

.01–.04 Specific periods

Use the period table under 871–878

877 ‡Latin satire and humor

.01–.04 Specific periods

Use the period table under 871–878

878 ‡Latin miscellaneous writings

.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions

.002–.008 Specific kinds

.01–.04 Specific periods

Use the period table under 871–878

879 Literatures of other Italic languages

.4 Latinian literatures other than Latin

.7 Literatures of Sabellian languages

.9 Osco-Umbrian literatures

880 Literatures of Hellenic languages Classical Greek literature

Class here comprehensive works of or on literatures of classical languages

For Latin literature, see 870

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of classical literatures

‡Add as instructed under 871–878 and at the beginning of Table 3

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions, collections, history, description, critical appraisal of *classical Greek literature

In more than one form by more than one author

Use the period table under 881–888

> **881–888 Specific forms of classical Greek literature**

Add to base number 88 as instructed at the beginning of Table 3; however, observe the special interpretations of and exceptions to notation from Table 3 that appear below, e.g., collections of classical Greek poetry of the medieval and Byzantine periods 881.0208, critical appraisal of classical Greek epic poetry and fiction of the ancient period 883.0109

PERIOD TABLE FOR CLASSICAL GREEK

1 Ancient period to ca. 500
2 Medieval and Byzantine periods, ca. 500–1600
3 Modern period, 1600–

Class comprehensive works in 880

881 ‡Classical Greek poetry

For dramatic poetry, see 882; epic poetry, 883; lyric poetry, 884

.01–.03 Specific periods

Use the period table under 881–888

Do not use 881.02–881.08 for specific kinds

882 ‡Classical Greek dramatic poetry and drama

.01–.03 Specific periods

Use the period table under 881–888

Do not use 882.02–882.05 for specific media, scopes, kinds

883 ‡Classical Greek epic poetry and fiction

.01–.03 Specific periods

Use the period table under 881–888

Do not use 883.01–883.08 for specific scopes and types

884 ‡Classical Greek lyric poetry

.01–.03 Specific periods

Use the period table under 881–888

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

‡Add as instructed under 881–888 and at the beginning of Table 3

885 ‡Classical Greek speeches

.01–.03 Specific periods

Use the period table under 881–888

Do not use 885.01–885.06 for specific kinds

886 ‡Classical Greek letters

.01–.03 Specific periods

Use the period table under 881–888

887 ‡Classical Greek satire and humor

.01–.03 Specific periods

Use the period table under 881–888

888 ‡Classical Greek miscellaneous writings

.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions

.002–.008 Specific kinds

.01–.03 Specific periods

Use the period table under 881–888

889 *Modern Greek

Class here Katharevusa and Demotic

PERIOD TABLE

1 Early period to 1821
2 1821–1900
3 1900–
32 1900–1945
34 1945–

890 Literatures of other languages

SUMMARY

891 East Indo-European and Celtic literatures
892 Afro-Asiatic (Hamito-Semitic) literatures Semitic literatures
893 Non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic literatures
894 Ural-Altaic, Paleosiberian, Dravidian literatures
895 Literatures of East and Southeast Asia Sino-Tibetan literatures
896 African literatures
897 Literatures of North American native languages
898 Literatures of South American native languages
899 Literatures of nonaustronesian languages of Oceania, of Austronesian languages, of miscellaneous languages

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

‡Add as instructed under 881–888 and at the beginning of Table 3

891 East Indo-European and Celtic literatures

SUMMARY

891.1 **Indo-Iranian (Aryan) literatures**
.2 **Sanskrit**
.3 **Middle Indic literatures (Secondary Prakrits)**
.4 **Modern Indic literatures (Tertiary Prakrits)**
.5 **Iranian literatures**
.6 **Celtic literatures**
.7 **East Slavic literatures** **Russian**
.8 **Slavic literatures**
.9 **Baltic and other Indo-European literatures**

.1 Indo-Iranian (Aryan) literatures

For Indic (Indo-Aryan) literatures, see 891.2–891.4; Iranian literatures, 891.5

> 891.2–891.4 Indic (Indo-Aryan) literatures

Class comprehensive works in 891.1

.2 *Sanskrit

Class here Vedic (Old Indic) literature, classical Sanskrit literature

.3 Middle Indic literatures (Secondary Prakrits)

Class here comprehensive works on Prakrit literatures

Class tertiary Prakrit literatures in 891.4

.37 *Pali

.4 Modern Indic literatures (Tertiary Prakrits)

PERIOD TABLE FOR SPECIFIC MODERN INDIC LITERATURES

1 To 1345
2 1345–1645
3 1645–1845
4 1845–1895
Class here 19th century
Class 1800–1845 in 3, 1895–1899 in 5
5 1895–1920
6 1920–1940
7 1940–
Class here 20th century
Class 1900–1920 in 5, 1920–1940 in 6

(Option: Treat literatures of all *modern Indic languages as literature of one language, with base number 891.4)

.41 *Sindhi and Lahnda

Base number for Sindhi: 891.41

Use the period table under 891.4

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

.419 *Lahnda

Use the period table under 891.4

.42 *Panjabi

Use the period table under 891.4

.43 Western Hindi literatures Hindi

.430 01–.430 09 Standard subdivisions of Western Hindi literatures

.430 1–.438 Subdivisions of *Hindi

Base number: 891.43

Use the period table under 891.4

.439 *Urdu

Use the period table under 891.4

.44 *Bengali

Use the period table under 891.4

Class Assamese literature in 891.451

.45 Assamese, Bihari, Oriya

.451 *Assamese

Use the period table under 891.4

.454 *Bihari

Class here literatures in Bhojpuri, Magahi, Maithili

Use the period table under 891.4

.46 *Marathi

Class here Konkani literature

Use the period table under 891.4

.47 *Gujarati and Rajasthani

Base number for Gujarati: 891.47

Use the period table under 891.4

.479 *Rajasthani

Class here Jaipuri, Marwari literatures

Use the period table under 891.4

.48 *Sinhalese

Class here Mahl (Maldivian), Sinhalese-Maldivian literatures

Use the period table under 891.4

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

.49 Other Indic (Indo-Aryan) literatures

Examples: Eastern Hindi, Nepali, Pahari

Including literatures in Awadhi, Bagheli, Chattisgarhi

See also 895.49 for literatures of Himalayan languages, e.g., Newari

.499 Dardic (Pisacha) literatures

Examples: Kashmiri, Khowar, Kohistani, Shina

Including Kafiri, Romany (Gypsy)

.5 Iranian literatures

.51 *Old Persian

Class here ancient West Iranian literatures

See also 891.52 for Avestan literature

.52 *Avestan

Class here ancient East Iranian literatures

.53 Middle Iranian literatures

Examples: Khotanese (Saka), Pahlavi (Middle Persian), Sogdian

.55 *Modern Persian (Farsi)

PERIOD TABLE
1 Period of formal development, ca. 1000–1389
2 Period of traditionalism, 1389–1900
3 1900–

Class Tajik literature in 891.59

.59 Other modern Iranian literatures

Examples: Baluchi, Kurdish, Ossetic, Tajik, Yaghnobi

.593 Pamir (Galcha) literatures Pashto (Afghan)

.593 001–.593 009 Standard subdivisions of Pamir (Galcha) literatures

.593 01–.593 8 Subdivisions of *Pashto (Afghan) literature

.6 Celtic literatures

Example: Gaulish

.62 *Irish Gaelic

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1171
2 Period of decline, 1171–1700
3 Period of renaissance, 1700–1850
4 Modern period, 1850–

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

.63 *Scottish Gaelic

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1600
2 Renaissance, 1600–1830
3 Modern period, 1830–
Including 19th century
Class 1800–1830 in 2

.64 *Manx

.66 *Welsh (Cymric)

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1600
2 1600–

.67 *Cornish

.68 *Breton

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1800
2 1800–1900
3 1900–

.7 East Slavic literatures Russian

.700 1–.700 9 Standard subdivisions of East Slavic literatures

.701–.78 Subdivisions of *Russian

Base number: 891.7

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1700
2 1700–1800
3 1800–1917
4 1917–
42 1917–1945
44 1945–

.79 *Ukrainian and Belorussian

Base number for Ukrainian: 891.79

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1798
2 1798–1917
3 1917–

.799 *Belorussian

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1798
2 1798–1917
3 1917–

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

.8 Slavic literatures

Class here comprehensive works on literatures of Balto-Slavic languages

For East Slavic literatures, see 891.7; Baltic literatures, 891.91–891.93

.81 South Slavic literatures Bulgarian

For Serbo-Croatian, see 891.82; Slovenian, 891.84

.810 01–.810 09 Standard subdivisions of South Slavic literatures

.810 1–.818 Subdivisions of *Bulgarian

Base number: 891.81

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1850
2 1850–1900
3 1900–

.819 *Macedonian

.82 *Serbo-Croatian

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to ca. 1550
2 Period of renaissance, ca. 1550–1700
3 1700–1800
4 1800–1900
5 1900–

.84 *Slovenian

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to ca. 1550
2 Period of renaissance, ca. 1550–1700
3 1700–1800
4 1800–1900
5 1900–

.85 West Slavic literatures Polish

Including Kashubian

For Czech, see 891.86; Slovak, 891.87; Wendish, 891.88; Polabian, 891.89

.850 01–.850 09 Standard subdivisions of West Slavic literatures

.850 1–.858 Subdivisions of *Polish

Base number: 891.85

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1400
2 Period of development, 1400–1500
3 Golden age, 1500–1600
4 Period of decline, 1600–1700
5 1700–1795
6 Period of renaissance, 1795–1919
7 1919–

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

.86 *Czech

For literature in Moravian dialects, see 891.87

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1400
2 Reformation period, 1400–1450
3 Humanist period, 1450–1620
4 Period of decline, 1620–1900
5 1900–

.87 *Slovak

Class here literature in Moravian dialects

.88 *Wendish (Sorbian, Lusatian)

.89 *Polabian

.9 Baltic and other Indo-European literatures

> 891.91–891.93 Baltic literatures

Class comprehensive works in 891.9

.91 Old Prussian

.92 *Lithuanian

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1800
2 1800–1900
3 1900–

.93 *Latvian (Lettish)

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1800
2 1800–1900
3 1900–

.99 Other Indo-European literatures

.991 *Albanian

.992 *Armenian

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 600
2 600–1000
3 1000–1400
4 1400–1850
5 Modern period, 1850–

.993–.998 Other

Add to 891.99 the numbers following —9199 in notation 91993–91998 from Table 6, e.g., Hittite 891.998

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

892 Afro-Asiatic (Hamito-Semitic) literatures Semitic literatures

For non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic literatures, see 893

.1 East Semitic literatures Akkadian literature

Class here literatures in Assyrian, Babylonian, Chaldean dialects of Akkadian

See also 892.2 for Aramaic, 899.95 for Sumerian

> **892.2–892.9 West Semitic literatures**

Class comprehensive works in 892

> **892.2–892.6 Northwest Semitic literatures**

Class comprehensive works in 892

.2 Aramaic literatures

For Eastern Aramaic literatures, see 892.3

.29 Western Aramaic literatures

Former heading: Biblical Aramaic (Chaldee) and Samaritan

.3 Eastern Aramaic literatures Syriac

.4 *Hebrew

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 700
2 Medieval period, 700–1700
3 1700–1820
4 1820–1885
Class here 19th century
Class 1800–1820 in 3, 1885–1899 in 5
5 1885–1947
6 1947–
Class here 20th century
Class 1900–1947 in 5

.6 Canaanite-Phoenician literatures

Examples: Eblaite, Ugaritic literatures

Class here comprehensive works on Canaanitic literatures

For Hebrew, see 892.4

See also 899.95 for Sumerian literature

> **892.7–892.9 Southwest Semitic literatures**

Class comprehensive works in 892

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

.7 *Arabic

Class here Maltese literature

PERIOD TABLE
1 Pre-Islamic period to 622
2 Early Islamic and Mukhadrami period, 622–661
Class here 7th century
Class 600–622 in 1, 661–699 in 32
3 661–1258
32 Umayyad period, 661–750
34 Abbasid period, 750–1258
4 Period of decline, 1258–1800
5 Period of renaissance, 1800–1945
6 Contemporary period, 1945–

.8 Ethiopic literatures

Examples: Geez, Gurage, Harari, Tigre, Tigrinya

.87 *Amharic

.9 South Arabic literatures

Examples: Mahri, Qarawi, Shkhauri, Sokotri

893 Non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic literatures

Former heading: Hamitic and Chad literatures

Add to 893 the numbers following —93 in notation 931–937 from Table 6, e.g., Somali literature 893.5

Base number for *Coptic: 893.2

Base number for *Hausa: 893.72

894 Ural-Altaic, Paleosiberian, Dravidian literatures

.1–.3 Altaic literatures

Add to 894 the numbers following —94 in notation 941–943 from Table 6, e.g., Mongolian literature 894.2

Base number for *Turkish (Osmanli): 894.35

PERIOD TABLE FOR TURKISH (OSMANLI)
1 Early period to 1500
2 1500–1850
3 Modern period, 1850–
Including 19th century
Class 1800–1850 in 2

Base number for *Azerbaijani: 894.361

Class comprehensive works in 894; Japanese in 895.6; Korean in 895.7

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

> **894.4–894.5 Uralic literatures**

Class comprehensive works in 894

.4 Samoyedic literatures

.5 Finno-Ugric literatures

.51 Ugric literatures

Examples: Ostyak, Vogul

.511 *Hungarian (Magyar)

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1800
2 1800–1900
3 1900–

.53 Permian literatures

Contains Votyak (Udmurt), Zyrian

.54 Finnic literatures

Examples: Karelian, Livonian, Veps

For Lapp, see 894.55; Middle Volga literatures, 894.56

.541 *Finnish (Suomi)

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1800
2 1800–1900
3 1900–

.545 *Estonian

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1861
2 Modern period, 1861–

.55 *Lapp

.56 Middle Volga literatures

Examples: Mari, Mordvin

.6 Paleosiberian (Hyperborean) literatures

Including Ainu literature

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

.8 Dravidian literatures

PERIOD TABLE FOR SPECIFIC DRAVIDIAN LITERATURES

1 To 1345
2 1345–1645
3 1645–1845
4 1845–1895
Class here 19th century
Class 1800–1845 in 3, 1895–1899 in 5
5 1895–1920
6 1920–1940
7 1940–
Class here 20th century
Class 1900–1920 in 5, 1920–1940 in 6

(Option: Treat literatures of all *Dravidian languages as literature of one language, with base number 894.8)

.81 South Dravidian literatures

Examples: Kota, Toda

Class here literatures of the Dravida group

Kurukh (Orâon), Malto literatures relocated to 894.83

.811 *Tamil

Use the period table under 894.8

.812 *Malayalam

Use the period table under 894.8

.814 *Kannada (Kanarese)

Use the period table under 894.8

.82 Central Dravidian literatures

Former heading: Andhra group

.823 *Gondi

Use the period table under 894.8

.824 *Khond (Kandh)

Use the period table under 894.8

.827 *Telugu

Use the period table under 894.8

.83 North Dravidian literatures Brahui

Examples: Kurukh (Oraon), Malto [*both formerly* 894.81]

.830 01–.830 09 Standard subdivisions of North Dravidian literatures

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

.830 1–.838 Subdivisions of *Brahui

Use the period table under 894.8

Base number: 894.83

895 Literatures of East and Southeast Asia Sino-Tibetan literatures

Example: Miao (Hmong) literature

Here are classed literatures of South Asian languages closely related to the languages of East and Southeast Asia

Class literature of Malay languages in 899.2

.1 *Chinese

PERIOD TABLE

1 Origins, 15th century to 221 B.C.
221–200 B.C. relocated to 22
Class here the classical age
2 221 B.C.–618 A.D.
Class here the middle epoch
618–699 A.D. relocated to 3
22 Period of Chin and Han dynasties, 221 B.C.–220 A.D.
Including 221–200 B.C. [*formerly* 1]
24 Period of Six Dynasties and Sui dynasty, 220–618 A.D.
3 Period of T'ang and Five dynasties, 618–960
Including 618–699 [*formerly* 2]
Class here renaissance and neoclassicism
4 960–1912
42 Period of Sung dynasty, 960–1279
44 Period of Yüan (Mongol) dynasty, 1271–1368
Class period of Yüan dynasty during 1271–1279 in 42
46 Period of Ming dynasty, 1368–1644
48 Period of Ch'ing (Manchu) dynasty, 1644–1912
5 Modern Chinese literature, 1912–
51 1912–1949
52 1949–

.4 Tibeto-Burman literatures Tibetan

Examples: literatures of the Bodo-Naga-Kachin, Kuki-Chin, Loloish languages

For Burmese, see 895.8

.400 1–.400 9 Standard subdivisions of Tibeto-Burman literatures

.401–.48 Subdivisions of *Tibetan

Base number: 895.4

.49 Literatures of Himalayan (Gyarung-Mishmi) languages

Example: Newari

See also 891.49 for Nepali literature

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

.6 *Japanese

PERIOD TABLE

1 Early period to 1185
14 Heian period, 794–1185
2 Medieval period, 1185–1603
22 Kamakura period, 1185–1334
24 1334–1603
Class here Muromachi period
3 Tokugawa (Edo) period, 1603–1868
32 1603–1770
Including Genroku period
34 1770–1868
4 1868–1945
Including Bunka-Bunsei period (1804–1830)
42 Meiji period, 1868–1912
44 1912–1945
Class here 20th century
Class 1900–1912 in 42, 1945–1999 in 5
5 1945–

.7 *Korean

PERIOD TABLE

1 Early period to 1392
2 Yi period, 1392–1910
28 Transition period, 1894–1910
3 1910–1945
4 1945–
Class here 20th century
Class 1900–1910 in 28, 1910–1945 in 3

.8 *Burmese

PERIOD TABLE

1 Early period to 1800
2 1800–1900
3 1900–

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

.9 Literatures of miscellaneous languages of Southeast Asia; Munda literatures

Limited to the literatures named below

Class Malay literatures in 899.2

.91 Thai (Tai) literatures Thai (Siamese)

Class Annam-Muong literatures in 895.92

.910 01–.910 09 Standard subdivisions of literatures of Thai languages

.910 1–.918 Subdivisions of *Thai (Siamese)

Base number: 895.91

PERIOD TABLE
1 Early period to 1800
2 1800–1900
3 1900–

.919 Other Thai (Tai) literatures

Examples: Ahom, Khamti, Lao, Shan

Use of this number for Karen discontinued; class in 895

Class Annam-Muong literatures in 895.92

.92–.95 Annam-Muong, Mon-Khmer, Munda literatures

Add to 895.9 the numbers following —959 in notation 9592–9595 from Table 6, e.g., Mundari literature 895.95

Base number for *Vietnamese (Annamese): 895.922

PERIOD TABLE FOR VIETNAMESE (ANNAMESE)
1 Early period to 1800
2 1800–1900
3 1900–

Base number for *Khmer (Cambodian): 895.932

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

896 African literatures

Add to 896 the numbers following —96 in notation 961–965 from Table 6, e.g., Mandingo literature 896.34

(Option: Treat literatures of all *African languages as literature of one language, with base number 896)

Base number for *Wolof: 896.3214

Base number for *Fulani (Fulah): 896.322

Base number for *Ibo (Igbo): 896.332

Base number for *Yoruba: 896.333

Base number for *Ewe: 896.3374

Base number for *Akan: 896.3385

Base number for *Bemba: 896.3915

Base number for *Nyanja: 896.3918

Base number for *Swahili: 896.392

Base number for *Kongo: 896.3931

Base number for *Ruanda: 896.39461

Base number for *Rundi: 896.39465

Base number for *Kikuyu: 896.3954

Base number for *Ganda (Luganda): 896.3957

Base number for *Lingala: 896.39686

Base number for *Shona: 896.3975

Base number for *Northern Sotho: 896.39771

Base number for *Southern Sotho: 896.39772

Base number for *Tswana: 896.39775

Base number for *Xhosa: 896.3985

Base number for *Zulu: 896.3986

PERIOD TABLE FOR SPECIFIC AFRICAN LITERATURES

1 To 1960
2 1960–

For Ethiopic literatures, see 892.8; non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic literatures, 893

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

897 Literatures of North American native languages

Example: Tarascan

Class here comprehensive works on literatures of North and South American native languages

Add to 897 the numbers following —97 in notation 971–979 from Table 6, e.g., Macro-Penutian literatures 897.4
(Option: Treat literatures of all *North American native languages as literature of one language, with base number 897)

For literatures of South American native languages, see 898

898 Literatures of South American native languages

Examples: Hishkaryana; Penutian literatures of South America

Add to 898 the numbers following —98 in notation 982–984 from Table 6, e.g., Guaraní literature 898.3
(Option: Treat literatures of all *South American native languages as literature of one language, with base number 898)

Base number for *Quechua: 898.323

Class comprehensive works on literatures of North and South American native languages in 897

899 Literatures of nonaustronesian languages of Oceania, of Austronesian languages, of miscellaneous languages

Add to 899 the numbers following —99 in notation 991–999 from Table 6, e.g., Polynesian literatures 899.4

Use of this number for literatures of other languages discontinued; class in 890

Base number for *Tagalog (Filipino): 899.211

PERIOD TABLE FOR TAGALOG (FILIPINO)
1 Early period to 1800
2 1800–1900
3 1900–

Base number for *Indonesian (Bahasa Indonesia): 899.221

PERIOD TABLE FOR INDONESIAN (BAHASA INDONESIA)
1 Early period to 1900
2 1900–

Base number for *Javanese: 899.222

Base number for *Malay (Bahasa Malaysia): 899.28

Base number for *Malagasy: 899.3

Base number for *Basque: 899.92

Base number for *Sumerian: 899.95

Base number for *Esperanto: 899.992

Base number for *Interlingua: 899.993

*Add to base number as instructed at the beginning of Table 3

900

900 Geography, history, and auxiliary disciplines

Class here social situations and conditions; general political history; military, diplomatic, political, economic, social, welfare aspects of specific wars

History of witch crazes relocated to 133.4309, sociology of witch crazes to 306.4

Class historical and geographical treatment of a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject, using notation 09 from Table 1, e.g., historical and geographical treatment of natural sciences 509, of economic situations and conditions 330.9, of purely political situations and conditions 320.9, history of military science 355.009

Interdisciplinary works on ancient world, on specific continents, countries, localities are classed in 930–990

See also 303.49 for projected events (future history)

See Manual at 400 vs. 900; 900

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of geography and history

901 Philosophy and theory of history

902 Miscellany of history

903 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of history

904 Collected accounts of events

Class here adventure

Class travel in 910; collections limited to a specific period in 909, to a specific area or region in 909.09, 930–990; history of a specific kind of event with the event, e.g., geological history of California earthquakes 551.2209794

See Manual at 900: Historic events vs. nonhistoric events

.5 Events of natural origin

.7 Events induced by human activity

905 Serial publications of history

906 Organizations and management of history

907 Education, research, related topics of history

.2 Historical research

Class here historiography

Class writing of history in 808.0669

.201–.209 Geographical and persons treatment

Add to base number 907.20 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., historians and historiographers 907.202

Historians and historiographers who specialize in a specific area are classed with the area in 930–990, using notation 007202 from table under 930–990, e.g., the biography of a German who specializes in French history in general 944.007202. Those who specialize in specific historical periods of a specific area are classed with the historical period for the area studied, using notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., the biography of a German historian who specializes in the French Revolutionary period 944.04092

908 History with respect to kinds of persons

[.9] Racial, ethnic, national groups

Do not use; class in 909.04

909 World history

Civilization and events not limited geographically

(Option: Class elementary textbooks on general history in 372.89045)

Class history of ancient world to ca. 499 in 930, history of specific continents, countries, localities in modern world in 940–990; collected accounts of events not limited by period, area, region, subject in 904

See Manual at 305 vs. 306, 909, 930–990; 320 vs. 909, 930–990; 910 vs. 909, 930–990

[.001–.008] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 901–908

[.009] Historical treatment

Do not use; class in 907.2

.04 History with respect to racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 909.04 notation 03–99 from Table 5, e.g., world history of Jews 909.04924; then add 0 and to the result add the numbers following 909 in 909.1–909.8, e.g., world history of Jews in 18th century 909.0492407

(Option: Class here general history of racial, ethnic, national groups in a specific continent, country, locality; prefer subdivision 004 from table under 930–990. If option is chosen, add notation 03–99 from Table 5 as above; then add 00 instead of 0 as above for world history by period, e.g., world history of Jews in 18th century 909.04924007; for specific areas add 0 and to the result add notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., history of Jews in Germany 909.04924043)

> 909.07–909.08 General historical periods

Class here general histories covering three or more continents (or three or more countries if not on the same continent)

Class comprehensive works in 909, ancient history in 930, specific historical periods in 909.1–909.8

.07 Ca. 500–1450/1500

Including Crusades

See also 940.18 for history of Europe during the Crusades

.08 Modern history, 1450/1500–

.09 Areas, regions, places in general

Not limited by continent, country, locality

Class here interdisciplinary works on areas, regions, places in general (other than land forms, oceans, seas)

Use 909.0901–909.0909 for standard subdivisions

Add to base number 909.09 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., history of tropical regions 909.093, of Caribbean Sea 909.096365; then add *0 and to the result add the numbers following 909 in 909.1–909.8, e.g., history of tropical regions in 1950–1959 909.0930825

Class interdisciplinary works on land forms, oceans, seas in 551.4

For geography of and travel in areas, regions, places in general, see 910.91

> **909.1–909.8 Specific historical periods**

Class comprehensive works in 909, general historical periods in 909.07–909.08

.1 6th-12th centuries, 500–1199

.2 13th century, 1200–1299

.3 14th century, 1300–1399

.4 15th century, 1400–1499

.5 16th century, 1500–1599

.6 17th century, 1600–1699

.7 18th century, 1700–1799

.8 1800–

.81 19th century, 1800–1899

Class here Industrial Revolution

*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

.82 20th century, 1900–1999

.821 1900–1919

For World War I, see 940.3

.822 1920–1929

.823 1930–1939

.824 1940–1949

For World War II, see 940.53

.825 1950–1959

.826 1960–1969

.827 1970–1979

.828 1980–1989

.829 1990–1999

.83 21st century, 2000–2099

See also 303.49 for futurology

910 Geography and travel

(Option: Class elementary textbooks on general geography in 372.891045)

Class works on civilization, other than accounts of travel in 909, in ancient world and specific places in modern world in 930–990; geographical treatment of specific disciplines or subjects with the discipline or subject, e.g., geographical treatment of religion 200.9, of geomorphology 551.409

See Manual at 508 vs. 574, 910, 304.2; 550 vs. 910; 910 vs. 909, 930–990

.01 Philosophy and theory of geography and travel

.014 Language (Terminology) and communication

Class here discourses on place names and their origin, history, meaning

Class dictionaries and gazetteers of place names in 910.3

.02 The earth (Physical geography)

Class specific features in 550, e.g., glaciers 551.312

See also 551.4 for geomorphology

See Manual at 550 vs. 910

.020 9 Historical and persons treatment

Class physical geography of areas, regions, places in general in 910.021; of ancient world in 913.02; of specific continents, countries, localities in 913.1–919.9, using notation 02 from table under 913–919

.021 Of areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 910.021 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–18 from Table 2, e.g., of forests 910.02152

[.09] Geography of and travel in areas, regions, places in general

Relocated to 910.91

(.1) Topical geography

(Optional number; prefer specific subject, e.g., economic geography 330.91–330.99)

Do not use for philosophy and theory of geography and travel; class 910.01

Add to base number 910.1 notation 001–899, e.g., economic geography 910.133; then add 0 and to the result add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., economic geography of British Isles 910.133041

.2 Miscellany

.202 World travel guides

Class here guidebooks and tour books providing tourists updated information about places in many areas of the globe: how to travel, what to see, where to stay, how to plan a vacation

Class guides to areas, regions, places in general in 910.91, to specific continents, countries, localities in 913–919, using notation 04 from table under 913–919

.22 Illustrations, models, miniatures

.222 Pictures and related illustrations

Example: aerial photographs not limited to one specific area or region

.223 Diagrams

Class maps, plans, related forms in 912

.25 Directories of persons and organizations

Class here city directories, telephone books

Class city directories, telephone books of a specific place in 913–919

.3 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances, gazetteers

Class here works on place names systematically arranged for ready reference

Class discourses on place names in 910.014; historical material associated with place names in general in 909, on specific places in 930–990

.4 Accounts of travel

Not geographically limited

Class travel accounts that emphasize civilization of places visited in 909

For discovery and exploration, see 910.9

See also 508 for scientific exploration and travel, 910.202 for world travel guides

.41 Trips around the world

.45 Ocean travel and seafaring adventures

Examples: pirates' expeditions, shipwrecks

Class ocean trips around the world in 910.41; travel in specific oceans in 910.9163–910.9167

[.453] Collected voyages of adventure

Number discontinued; class in 910.45

.5–.8 Standard subdivisions

.9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class here discovery, exploration, growth of geographic knowledge

.91 Geography of and travel in areas, regions, places in general [*formerly* 910.09]

(Option: Class elementary geography textbooks on specific areas, regions, places in general in 372.8911)

Class interdisciplinary works on land forms, oceans, seas in 551.4; physical geography of areas, regions, places in general in 910.02

.92 Geographers, travelers, explorers regardless of country of origin

.93–.99 Discovery and exploration by specific countries

Do not use for geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds; class in 913–919

Add to base number 910.9 notation 3–9 from Table 2 for the country responsible, e.g., explorations by Great Britain 910.941

Class discovery and exploration by a specific country in areas, regions, places in general in 910.91, in specific continents, countries, localities, extraterrestrial worlds in 913–919, using notation 04 from table under 913–919; periods of discovery and exploration in history in 940–990

911 Historical geography

Growth and changes in political divisions

Class here historical atlases

.09 Historical treatment

Class geographical and persons treatment in 911.1–911.9

.1–.9 Geographical and persons treatment

Add to base number 911 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., historical geography of China 911.51

912 Graphic representations of surface of earth and of extraterrestrial worlds

Class here atlases, maps, charts, plans

Class map drawing in 526.0221

See Manual at T1—0223 vs. 912

.01 Philosophy and theory

.014 Map reading

Do not use for languages (terminology); class in 912.01

.014 8 Map scales, symbols, abbreviations

.09 Historical and persons treatment of maps and map making

Class maps of specific areas, regions, places in general in 912.19; of specific continents, countries, localities, extraterrestrial worlds in 912.3–912.9

.1 Areas, regions, places in general

[.100 1–.189 9] Specific subjects

Relocated to subject with use of notation 0223 from Table 1

.19 Specific areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 912.19 the numbers following 1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., maps of Western Hemisphere 912.19812

.3–.9 Specific continents, countries, localities, extraterrestrial worlds

Class here land atlases of countries, tax maps that provide general descriptions of assessed land and structures

Add to base number 912 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., maps of Du Page County, Illinois 912.77324

> **913–919 Geography of and travel in ancient world and specific continents, countries, localities in modern world; extraterrestrial worlds**

Class here comprehensive works on ancient and modern geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities

(Option: Class elementary geography textbooks on ancient world, on specific continents, countries, localities in 372.8913–372.8919)

Add to base number 91 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., geography of England 914.2, of Norfolk, England 914.261; then add further as follows:

001 Philosophy and theory
0014 Language (Terminology) and communication
Class here discursive works on place names and their origin, history, and meaning
Class dictionaries and gazetteers of place names in 003
002 Miscellany
0022 Illustrations, models, miniatures
00222 Pictures and related illustrations
Example: aerial photographs
Class photographs reflecting the civilization of places in 930–990
0025 Directories of persons and organizations
Class here city directories, telephone books
003 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances, gazetteers
Class here works on place names systematically arranged for ready reference
Class discourses on place names in 0014, historical material associated with place names in 930–990
005–008 Standard subdivisions
01 Prehistoric geography
Do not add to notation 4–6 from Table 2 if there is a corresponding notation 3 from Table 2, e.g., prehistoric geography of Greece 913.801 (*not* 914.9501), of Russia 914.701
Class prehistoric geography of areas, regions, places in general in 09, prehistoric physical geography in 02
02 The earth (Physical geography)
Class specific features in 550, e.g., glaciers of Canada 551.3120971
See also 551.4 for geomorphology
See Manual at 550 vs. 910

(continued)

> **913–919 Geography of and travel in ancient world and specific continents, countries, localities in modern world; extraterrestrial worlds (continued)**

04 Travel

Class here discovery, exploration; guidebooks

Guidebooks emphasizing a specific subject relocated to the subject, e.g., a guidebook to holy places in Spain 263.04246

Class travel accounts that emphasize the civilization of country visited in 930–990, world travel guides in 910.202

See Manual at 913–919: Add table: 04

041–049 Historical periods

Add to 04 the historical period numbers following 0 that appear in subdivisions of 930–990, e.g., travel in England during Tudor period 914.2045

For United States historical periods, add to 04 the numbers following 973 in 973. 1–973. 9, e.g., travel in United States during the Nixon administration 917. 304924

09 Areas, regions, places in general

Add to 09 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–18 from Table 2, e.g., geography of urban regions of England 914.209732

Class physical geography of areas, regions, places in 02; travel in 04; civilization in subdivisions 0091–0098 under 930–990

Class comprehensive works, geography of and travel in more than one continent in 910; historical geography in 911; graphic representations in 912; interdisciplinary works on geography and history of ancient world, of specific continents, countries, localities in 930–990; area studies in 940–990

See Manual at 913–919.

913 *Geography of and travel in ancient world

Class Biblical geography in 220.91

914 *Geography of and travel in Europe

915 *Geography of and travel in Asia

916 *Geography of and travel in Africa

917 *Geography of and travel in North America

918 *Geography of and travel in South America

919 *Geography of and travel in other parts of world and extraterrestrial worlds

*Add as instructed under 913–919

920 Biography, genealogy, insignia

Class here autobiographies, diaries, reminiscences, correspondence

Class biography of persons associated with a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject, using notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., biography of chemists 540.92

(Option: Class individual biography in 92 or B, collected biography in 92 or 920 undivided)

.001–.007 Standard subdivisions of biography

.008 History and description with respect to kinds of persons

[.008 1–.008 2] Men and women

Do not use; class in 920.7

[.008 8] Occupational and religious groups

Do not use; class in 920.1–928.9

[.008 9] Racial, ethnic, national groups

Do not use; class in 920.0092

.009 General collections of biography by period, region, group

Class collections by specific continents, countries, localities in 920.03–920.09

.009 01–.009 05 Historical periods

Add to base number 920.0090 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., general biography of 19th century 920.009034

.009 1 Areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 920.0091 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., biographies of suburbanites 920.0091733

.009 2 Racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 920.0092 notation 03–99 from Table 5, e.g., biographies of Swedes 920.0092397

.02 General collections of biography

Not limited by period, place, group and not associated with a specific subject

.03–.09 General collections of biography by specific continents, countries, localities

Not associated with a specific subject

Add to base number 920.0 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., collections of biographies of persons resident in England 920.042

Class collections by sex regardless of continent, country, locality in 920.7

> **920.1–928.9 Biography of specific classes of persons**

(Option A: Use subdivisions identified by *

(Option B: Class individual biography in 92 or B, collected biography in 92 or 920 undivided

(Option C: Class individual biography of men in 920.71, of women in 920.72

(Prefer specific discipline or subject, using notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., collected biography of scientists 509.22)

Add to notation for each term identified by † notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Baptists from Louisiana 922.6763

Class comprehensive works in 920.02

(.1) *Bibliographers

(.2) *Librarians and book collectors

(.3) *Encyclopedists

Class lexicographers in 924

(.4) *Publishers and booksellers

(.5) *Journalists and news commentators

.7 Persons by sex

Class here individual biography of persons not associated with a specific discipline or subject, collected biography of persons by sex

(Option: Class here all individual biography; prefer specific discipline or subject, using notation 092 from Table 1)

.71 Men

.72 Women

(.9) *Persons associated with other subjects

Not provided for in 920.1–920.5, 921–928

Add to base number 920.9 notation 001–999, e.g., astrologers 920.91335

(921) *Philosophers and psychologists

> (921.1–921.8) Modern Western philosophers and psychologists

Class comprehensive works in 921

(.1) *United States and Canadian philosophers and psychologists

(.2) *British philosophers and psychologists

Contains English, Scottish, Irish, Welsh philosophers and psychologists

(.3) *German and Austrian philosophers and psychologists

*(Optional number; prefer specific subject or discipline, as described under 920.1–928.9)

(.4) *French philosophers and psychologists

(.5) *Italian philosophers and psychologists

(.6) *Spanish and Portuguese philosophers and psychologists

(.7) *Russian philosophers and psychologists

(.8) *†Other modern Western philosophers and psychologists

(.9) *Ancient, medieval, Oriental philosophers and psychologists

Add to base number 921.9 the numbers following 18 in 181–189, e.g., Aristotelian philosophers 921.95

(922) *Religious leaders, thinkers, workers

> (922.1–922.8) Christians

Class comprehensive works in 922

(.1) *†Early and Eastern churches

(.2) *Roman Catholics

(.21) *Popes

(.22) *Saints

(.24–.29) *†Other

(.3) *†Anglicans

(.4) *†Lutherans, Huguenots, continental Protestants

(.5) *†Presbyterians, Congregationalists, American Reformed

(.6) *†Baptists, Disciples of Christ, Adventists

(.7) *†Methodists

(.8) *Members of other Christian denominations and sects

(.81) *†Unitarians and Universalists

(.83) *†Latter-Day Saints

(.84) *†Swedenborgians

(.85) *†Christian Scientists

(.86) *†Friends (Quakers)

(.87) *†Mennonites

(.88) *†Shakers

(.89) *Others

*(Optional number; prefer specific subject or discipline, as described under 920.1–928.9)
†Add as instructed under 920.1–928.9

(.9) *Adherents of other religions

(.91) *Atheists and Deists

Theosophists relocated to 922.99

(.94) *Adherents of Indic religions

(.943) *Buddhists

(.944) *Jains

(.945) *Hindus

(.946) *Sikhs

(.95) *Zoroastrians (Parsees)

(.96) *Adherents of Judaism

(.97) *Adherents of Islam

(.99) *Others

Example: Theosophists [*formerly* 922.91]

(923) *Persons in social sciences

(.1) *†Heads of state

Examples: kings, queens, presidents

(.2) *†Persons in political science and politics

Examples: legislators, governors, politicians, statesmen, diplomats, nobility; political scientists

For heads of state, see 923.1

(.3) *Persons in economics

(.31) *†Labor leaders

(.33–.39) *†Others

(.4) *Criminals and persons in law

(.41) *†Criminals

(.43–.49) *†Persons in law

(.5) *†Public administrators and military persons

For heads of state, see 923.1; governors, politicians, statesmen, 923.2

(.6) *†Philanthropists, humanitarians, social reformers

(.7) *†Educators

(.8) *†Persons in commerce, communication, transportation

(.9) *Explorers, geographers, pioneers, frontiersmen

*(Optional number; prefer specific subject or discipline, as described under 920.1–928.9)

†Add as instructed under 920.1–928.9

(924) *Philologists and lexicographers

Add to base number 924 notation 1–9 from Table 6, e.g., lexicographers of Chinese 924.951

(925) *Scientists

Add to base number 925 the numbers following 5 in 510–590, e.g., botanists 925.8

(926) *Persons in technology

Add to base number 926 the numbers following 6 in 610–690, e.g., engineers 926.2

See also 920.4 for booksellers

(927) *Persons in the arts and recreation

Add to base number 927 the numbers following 7 in 710–790, e.g., baseball players 927.96357

For persons in literature, see 928

(928) *Persons in literature, history, biography, genealogy

Examples: historians, writers and critics of belles-lettres

See also 923.9 for explorers, geographers, pioneers, frontiersmen

(.1) *Americans

(.2–.9) *Others

Add to base number 928 notation 2–9 from Table 6 for language in which person has written, e.g., writers in Italian 928.51

929 Genealogy, names, insignia

.1 Genealogy

For sources, see 929.3; family histories, 929.2

See Manual at 929.1

[.102 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class genealogical techniques and procedures in 929.1072; equipment, apparatus, materials in 929.3

.107 2 Research

Class here the specific techniques and procedures involved in doing genealogical research in a specific area

Class comprehensive works on genealogical research in 929.1

[.109 4–.109 9] Continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 929.1072

*(Optional number; prefer specific subject or discipline, as described under 920.1–928.9)

.2 Family histories

(Option: Arrange alphabetically by name)

Class family histories emphasizing the contributions of the members of the family to a specific occupation with the occupation, e.g., the Rothschilds as a family of bankers 332.10922; family histories of a prominent person that emphasize the person's life with the biography number for the person, e.g., forebears, family, and life of Winston Churchill 941.082092

For royal houses, peerage, gentry, see 929.7

See Manual at 929.2; 929.2 vs. 929.7

.202 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Class the techniques of compiling family histories in 929.1

.3 Genealogical sources

Examples: census records, court records, tax lists, wills

Use only for sources published by a genealogical organization or by a genealogist. Sources published by other agencies are classed with the subject of the publication, e.g., United States census records 317.3.

Standard subdivisions are added for miscellaneous collections and individual sources

Cemetery records relocated to 929.5

Class how to use sources in 929.1

For epitaphs, see 929.5

.309 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by specific continents, countries, localities in 929.33–929.39 (*not* 929.3093–929.3099)

.33–.39 Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities

Regardless of form

Add to base number 929.3 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., sources from New York 929.3747

.4 Personal names

See also 929.97 for names of houses, pets, ships

.42 Surnames

.44 Forenames

Class here lists of names for babies

.5 Cemetery records [*formerly* 929.3]

Regardless of form

Example: epitaphs

.6 Heraldry

Class here family coats of arms

Class comprehensive works on coats of arms in 929.82

For armorial bearings, see 929.82; royal houses, peerage, gentry, orders of knighthood, 929.7

.7 Royal houses, peerage, gentry, orders of knighthood

Class here rank, precedence, titles of honor; genealogies tracing or establishing titles of honor; works emphasizing lineage or descent with respect to royalty, the peerage, or gentry; history and genealogy of royal families

Class histories of a royal family that include general historical events or biographies of members of the royal family in 930–990

See Manual at 929.2 vs. 929.7

.709 Historical and geographical treatment

Class here countries outside Europe [*formerly* 929.7999]

Class historical and geographical treatment by specific countries of Europe in 929.72–929.79 (*not* 929.70941–929.70949)

.71 Orders of knighthood

Class Christian orders of knighthood in 255.791, Christian orders of knighthood in church history in 271.791

> 929.72–929.79 Treatment of royal houses, peerage, gentry by specific countries of Europe

Class comprehensive works in 929.7094

.72 Great Britain and Ireland

.73–.79 Other countries of Europe

Add to base number 929.7 the numbers following —4 in notation 43–49 from Table 2, e.g., royal houses of France 929.74

[.799 9] Countries outside Europe

Relocated to 929.709

.8 Awards, orders, decorations, armorial bearings, autographs

.81 Awards, orders, decorations

Standard subdivisions are added for awards, orders, or decorations considered alone

Add to base number 929.81 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., orders of Germany 929.8143

Class awards, orders, decorations associated with a specific subject with the subject, using notation 079 from Table 1, e.g., American football awards 796.332079

For armorial bearings, see 929.82

.82 Armorial bearings

Contains coats of arms, crests, seals

For family coats of arms, see 929.6

.88 Autographs

.9 Forms of insignia and identification

Examples: motor vehicle registration plates, ownership and service marks, trademarks

Class forms of insignia and identification not provided for here with the form, e.g., coats of arms 929.82; identification marks in a specific subject with the subject, using notation 027 from Table 1, e.g., airline insignia 387.70275

.92 Flags and banners

Examples: national, state, provincial, ship, ownership flags and banners

Class military use in 355.15

.97 Names

Examples: names of houses, ships, pets

For place names, see 910.014; personal names, 929.4

> **930–990 History of ancient world; of specific continents, countries, localities; of extraterrestrial worlds**

Civilization and events

Class here interdisciplinary works on geography and history of ancient world, of specific continents, countries, localities

(Option: Class elementary history textbooks on ancient world, on specific continents, countries, localities in 372.893–372.899)

Add to base number 9 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., general history of Europe 940, of England 942, of Norfolk, England 942.61; then add further as follows:

001–003 Standard subdivisions

004 Racial, ethnic, national groups

(Option: Class in 909.04)

Add to 004 notation 03–99 from Table 5, e.g., history and civilization of North American native peoples in New York 974.700497

Class indigenous groups in the prehistoric period with the period, e.g., Inca empire before Spanish conquest 985.01; relation of racial, ethnic, national groups to a war with the war, e.g., relation of Jews to World War II 940.531503924

005–006 Standard subdivisions

007 Study and teaching

0072 Historical research

Class here historiography

007202 Historians and historiographers

Class historians and historiographers specializing in a specific historical period of a specific area with the historical period for the area studied, using notation 092 from Table 1; e.g., the biography of a Canadian historian who specializes in United States Revolutionary War 973.3092

008 History with respect to kinds of persons

[0089] Racial, ethnic, national groups

Do not use; class in 004

009 Areas, regions, places, persons

0091–0098 Areas, regions, places in general

Add to 009 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–18 from Table 2, e.g., urban regions 009732

(continued)

> **930–990 History of ancient world; of specific continents, countries, localities; of extraterrestrial worlds (continued)**

0099 Persons
Description, critical appraisal, biography of persons associated with the history of the continent, country, locality but limited to no specific period
Class persons of a specific period in 01–09, using notation 092 from Table 1; historians and historiographers in 007202

00992 Collected treatment

[00994] Individual treatment
Notation discontinued; class in 0099

01–09 Historical periods
Class here indigenous groups in the prehistoric period, e.g., Inca empire before Spanish conquest 985.01 (*not* 985.00498)
Add to 0 the period division numbers following 0 from the appropriate continent, country, locality in 930–990, e.g., period of 1760–1820 in British history 073 (from 941.073), period of 1815–1847 in German history 073 (from 943.073), period of 1815–1847 in Austrian history 042 (from 943.6042)
Unless other period notation is specified, add to each geographical subdivision of an area the period notation for the area as a whole, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire in Saudi Arabia 953.803 (based on period of Ottoman Empire in Arabian Peninsula 953.03)
Class areas, regions, places in general in a specific period in 0091–0098; racial, ethnic, national groups in a specific period in 004
See Manual at 930–990: Add table: 01–09

The schedules that follow do not enumerate all the countries and localities that appear in Table 2; however, the foregoing instructions apply to history of any place in notation 3–9 from Table 2

Class comprehensive works in 909; geography of ancient world, of specific continents, countries, localities in 913–919; sociology of war in 303.66, of military institutions in 306.27; social factors affecting war in 355.02, social causes of war in 355.0274

See Manual at 305 vs. 306, 909, 930–990; 320 vs. 909, 930–990; 355.009 vs. 930–990; 910 vs. 909, 930–990; 930–990

930 History of ancient world to ca. 499

SUMMARY

930.01–.09 Standard subdivisions
.1–.5 [Archaeology and historical periods]
931 China to 420
932 Egypt to 640
933 Palestine to 70
934 India to 647
935 Mesopotamia and Iranian Plateau to 637
936 Europe north and west of Italian peninsula to ca. 499
937 Italian peninsula and adjacent territories to 476
938 Greece to 323
939 Other parts of ancient world to ca. 640

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 930–990; however, class archaeology in 930.1

.1 Archaeology

Study of past civilizations through discovery, collection, interpretation of material remains

Class here prehistoric archaeology; interdisciplinary works on archaeology

Class archaeology of continents, countries, localities provided for in notation 3 from Table 2 in 931–939; archaeology of modern period, ancient and prehistoric archaeology of continents, countries, localities not provided for in notation 3 from Table 2 in 940–990; archaeology of specific oceans and seas in 909.0963–909.0967; industrial archaeology in 609

See also 700 for artistic aspects of archaeological objects

.102 Miscellany

.102 8 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

.102 804 Underwater archaeology

.102 82 Discovery of remains

.102 83 Excavation of remains

.102 85 Interpretation of remains

Including dating techniques

> 930.11–930.16 Specific prehistoric ages

Class comprehensive works in 930.1

.11 Eolithic Age

.12 Paleolithic (Old Stone) Age

Class here comprehensive works on Stone Ages

For Mesolithic Age, see 930.13; Neolithic Age, 930.14

.13 Mesolithic (Middle Stone) Age

.14 Neolithic (New Stone) Age

.15 Copper and Bronze Age

.16 Iron Age

.2–.5 Historical periods

Add to base number 930 the numbers following —0901 in notation 09012–09015 from Table 1, e.g., world history in 1st century A.D. 930.5; however, class specific archaeological ages in 930.11–930.16

> 931–939 Specific places

Class comprehensive works in 930; archaeology of modern period, ancient and prehistoric archaeology of continents, countries, localities not provided for in notation 3 from Table 2 in 940–990; archaeology of specific oceans and seas in 909.0963–909.0967

931 *China to 420

(Option: Class in 951.011–951.014)

.01 Earliest history to ca. 1523 B.C.

.02 Period of Shang (Yin) dynasty, ca. 1523–ca. 1028 B.C.

.03 Period of Chou dynasty and warring states, ca. 1028–222 B.C.

.04 Period of Ch'in to Chin (Tsin) dynasties, 221 B.C.–420 A.D.

932 *Egypt to 640

(Option: Class in 962.01)

.01 Earliest history to 332 B.C.

.011 Prehistoric period to ca. 3100 B.C.

.012 Protodynastic, Old Kingdom, first intermediate periods, ca. 3100–2052 B.C.

Contains 1st-11th dynasties

.013 Middle Kingdom and second intermediate periods, 2052–1570 B.C.

Contains 12th-17th dynasties

.014 Period of New Kingdom, 1570–1075 B.C.

Contains 18th-20th dynasties

.015 Late and Saite periods, 1075–525 B.C.

Contains 21st-26th dynasties

Including period of sovereignty of Cush

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.016 Persian periods and last Egyptian kingdom, 525–332 B.C.

Contains 27th-31st dynasties

.02 Hellenistic, Roman, Byzantine periods, 332 B.C.–640 A.D.

.021 Hellenistic period, 332–30 B.C.

.022 Roman period, 30 B.C.–324 A.D.

.023 Byzantine (Coptic) period, 324–640

933 *Palestine to 70

(Option: Class in 956.9401, Jordan in 956.9501)

See also 220.93 for Biblical archaeology, 220.95 for history of Biblical events

.01 Earliest history to return of Jews from bondage in Egypt, ca. 1225 B.C.

.02 Great age of Twelve Tribes, ca. 1225–922 B.C.

Including rule of Judges, Saul, David, Solomon

.03 Periods of partition, conquest, foreign rule, 922–168 B.C.

Including periods of Assyrian, Babylonian, Persian, Hellenistic rule

.04 168–63 B.C.

Contains Hasmonean (Maccabean) period

.05 Period of Roman protectorate and rule to destruction of Jerusalem, 63 B.C.–70 A.D.

934 *India to 647

(Option: Class in 954.01)

.01 Pre-Aryan civilizations to ca. 1500 B.C.

.02 Indo-Aryan (Vedic) period, ca. 1500–ca. 600 B.C.

Including Iron Age culture in south India

.03 Ca. 600–ca. 322 B.C.

.04 Period of Mauryas, ca. 322–185 B.C.

.043 Ca. 322–ca. 274 B.C.

.045 Reign of Aśoka, ca. 274–ca. 237 B.C.

.047 Ca. 237–185 B.C.

.05 Period of changing dynasties, 185 B.C.–318 A.D.

.06 Period of Guptas, 318–500

.07 500–647

Including reign of Harsha, 606–647

*Add as instructed under 930–990

935 *Mesopotamia and Iranian Plateau to 637

(Option: Class Mesopotamia in 956.701, Iranian Plateau in 955.01)

.01 Elamite, Sumerian, Akkadian, Ur periods to ca. 1900 B.C.

.02 Period of Babylonian Empire and Kingdom of Mitanni, ca. 1900–ca. 900 B.C.

Including reign of Hammurabi, ca. 1792–ca. 1750 B.C.

.03 Period of Assyrian Empire, ca. 900–625 B.C.

.04 Period of Median and Neo-Babylonian (Chaldean) Empires, 625–539 B.C.

Including reign of Nebuchadnezzar II, 605–562 B.C.

.05 Period of Persian Empire, 539–332 B.C.

For Persian Wars, see 938.03

.06 Hellenistic, Seleucid, Parthian periods, 332 B.C.–226 A.D.

.07 Period of Neo-Persian (Sassanian) Empire, 226–637

936 *Europe north and west of Italian Peninsula to ca. 499

Class here comprehensive works on ancient Europe

Class a specific part of ancient Europe not provided for here with the part, e.g., Italy 937, Russia 947.01

(Option: Class in 940.11)

.1 *British Isles to 410 Northern Britain and Ireland

(Option: Class British Isles in 941.012, northern Britain in 941.1012, Ireland in 941.5012)

Add to base number 936.1 the numbers following 936.2 in 936.201–936.204, e.g., Roman period 936.104

For southern Britain, see 936.2

.2 *Southern Britain to 410 England

(Option: Class in 942.012)

.201 Earliest period to ca. 600 B.C.

.202 Celtic period, ca. 600–55 B.C.

.203 Period of early Roman contacts, 55 B.C.–43 A.D.

.204 Roman period, 43–410

.3 *Germanic regions to 481

(Option: Class general works in 943.012, Austria in 943.601, general works on Scandinavia in 948.012, Norway in 948.1012, Sweden in 948.5012, Denmark in 948.9012, Netherlands in 949.2012)

.301 Earliest period to 113 B.C.

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.302 Period of contacts with Roman Republic and Empire, 113 B.C.–481 A.D.

.4 *Celtic regions to 486

(Option: Class general works in 944.012, Belgium in 949.3012, Luxembourg in 949.3501, Switzerland in 949.4012)

For British Isles, see 936.1

.401 Earliest period to 125 B.C.

.402 Gallo-Roman period, 125 B.C.–486 A.D.

.6 *Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands to 415

(Option: Class general works in 946.012, Portugal in 946.9012)

.601 Earliest period to ca. 1000 B.C.

.602 Period of Greek, Phoenician, and early Celtic and Germanic contacts, ca. 1000–218 B.C.

.603 Roman period, 218 B.C.–415 A.D.

937 *Italian Peninsula and adjacent territories to 476

(Option: Class in 945.012)

.01 Earliest period and Roman Kingdom to ca. 500 B.C.

.02 Period of Roman Republic, ca. 500–31 B.C.

For specific periods, see 937.03–937.05

> 937.03–937.05 Specific periods under the Republic

Class comprehensive works in 937.02

.03 Period of unification of Italy, ca. 500–264 B.C.

.04 Period of Punic Wars, 264–146 B.C.

.05 Period of civil strife, 146–31 B.C.

.06 Period of Roman Empire, 31 B.C.–476 A.D.

For specific periods, see 937.07–937.09

> 937.07–937.09 Specific periods under the Empire

Class comprehensive works in 937.06

.07 Early and middle periods, 31 B.C.–284 A.D.

.08 Period of absolutism, 284–395

.09 Final period, 395–476

*Add as instructed under 930–990

938 *Greece to 323

(Option: Class in 949.5012)

.01 Earliest times to 775 B.C.

.02 775–500 B.C.

.03 Persian Wars, 500–479 B.C.

.04 Period of Athenian supremacy, 479–431 B.C.

.05 Period of Peloponnesian War, 431–404 B.C.

.06 Period of Spartan and Theban supremacy, 404–362 B.C.

.07 Period of Macedonian supremacy, 362–323 B.C.

.08 Hellenistic period, 323–146 B.C.

.09 Roman era, 146 B.C.–323 A.D.

.1 *Macedonia to 323

(Option: Class comprehensive works in 949.56012, Albania in 949.65012)

939 *Other parts of ancient world to ca. 640

.1 *Aegean Islands to 323

(Option: Class in 949.9012)

Add to base number 939.1 the numbers following 938 in 938.01–938.09, e.g., Hellenistic period 939.108

.18 *Crete to 323

(Option: Class in 949.98012)

.2 *Western Asia Minor to ca. 640

Class here comprehensive works on Asia Minor

(Option: Class in 956.1012)

For eastern Asia Minor, see 939.3

.3 *Eastern Asia Minor and Cyprus to ca. 640

(Option: Class in 956.1012)

.37 *Cyprus to ca. 640

(Option: Class in 956.45012)

.4 *Middle East to ca. 640

(Option: Class Middle East in 956.012)

Class a specific part of Middle East not provided for here with the part, e.g., Egypt 932, Palestine 933

.43 *Syria

Including Antioch

(Option: Class Antioch in 956.4, Syria in 956.9101)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.44 *Phoenicia to ca. 640

(Option: Class in 956.9202)

.46 *Edom and Moab to 70

(Option: Class Edom in 956.94901; Moab in 956.95601)

.47 *Arabia Deserta to 637

(Option: Class in 956.701)

.48 *Arabia Petraea to 622

Including Sinai Peninsula; Petra

(Option: Class Arabia Petraea in 953.01; Sinai Peninsula in 953.101; Petra in 956.95701)

.49 *Arabia Felix to 622

Class here comprehensive works on Arabia

(Option: Class Arabia Felix, Arabia in 953.01)

For Arabia Deserta, see 939.47; Arabia Petraea, 939.48

.6 *Central Asia to ca. 640

Including earliest history of Afghanistan to ca. 640 [*formerly also* 958.101]

(Option: Class in 958)

.7 *North Africa to ca. 640

(Option: Class in 961.01)

For Egypt, see 932

.71 *Mauretania to 647

(Option: Class in 965.01, Morocco in 964.01)

.72 *Numidia to 647

(Option: Class in 965.501)

.73 *Carthage to 647

(Option: Class in 961.101)

.74 *Tripolis to 644

Class here comprehensive works on ancient Libya

(Option: Class in 961.201)

For Cyrenaica, see 939.75; Marmarica, 939.76

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.75 *Cyrenaica to 644

(Option: Class in 961.201)

.76 *Marmarica to 644

(Option: Class in 961.201)

.77 *Gaetulia to 647

(Option: Class in 965.701)

.78 *Ethiopia to 500

(Option: Class in 962.501)

.8 *Southeastern Europe to ca. 640

(Option: Class Hungary in 943.9011, Turkey in Europe in 949.61012, Yugoslavia in 949.7012, Serbia in 949.71011, Bulgaria in 949.77012, Romania in 949.8012)

> **940–990 General history of modern world, of extraterrestrial worlds**

Class here area studies; comprehensive works on ancient and modern history of specific continents, countries, localities

Class comprehensive works in 909

For general history of ancient world, see 930

940 General history of Europe Western Europe

SUMMARY

940.01–.09 Standard subdivisions
.1 Early history to 1453
.2 1453–
.3 World War I, 1914–1918
.4 Military history of World War I
.5 1918–

941 British Isles
.01–.08 [Historical periods of British Isles]
.1 Scotland
.2 Northeastern Scotland
.3 Southeastern Scotland
.4 Southwestern Scotland
.5 Ireland
.6 Ulster Northern Ireland
.7 Republic of Ireland
.8 Leinster
.9 Munster

942 England and Wales
.01–.08 [Historical periods of England and Wales]

*Add as instructed under 930–990

943 Central Europe Germany
- **.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of central Europe**
- **.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Germany**
- **.01–.08 Historical periods of Germany**
- **.1 Northeastern Germany**
- **.6 Austria and Liechtenstein**
- **.7 Czechoslovakia**
- **.8 Poland**
- **.9 Hungary**

944 France and Monaco
- **.01–.08 Historical periods of France**
- **.9 Southeastern France and Monaco Provence region**

945 Italian Peninsula and adjacent islands Italy
- **.01–.09 Historical periods of Italy**
- **.4 Emilia-Romagna region and San Marino**
- **.6 Central Italy and Vatican City**
- **.8 Sicily and adjacent islands**

946 Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands Spain
- **.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands**
- **.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Spain**
- **.01–.08 Historical periods of Spain**
- **.7 Eastern Spain and Andorra**
- **.8 Andalusia autonomous community and Gibraltar**
- **.9 Portugal**

947 Eastern Europe Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Soviet Union)
- **.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of eastern Europe**
- **.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Russia**
- **.01–.08 Historical periods of Russia**

948 Northern Europe Scandinavia
- **.01–.08 Historical periods of Scandinavia**
- **.1 Norway**
- **.2 Southeastern Norway**
- **.3 Southwestern Norway**
- **.4 Central and northern Norway**
- **.5 Sweden**
- **.6 Southern Sweden**
- **.7 Central Sweden**
- **.8 Northern Sweden**
- **.9 Denmark and Finland**

949 Other parts of Europe
- **.1 Northwestern islands**
- **.2 Netherlands (Holland)**
- **.3 Southern Low Countries Belgium**
- **.4 Switzerland**
- **.5 Greece**
- **.6 Balkan Peninsula**
- **.7 Yugoslavia and Bulgaria**
- **.8 Romania**
- **.9 Aegean Sea islands**

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 930–990

.1 **Early history to 1453**

Class here Middle Ages, 476–1453

Class ancient history to ca. 499 in 936

(.11) Ancient history to ca. 499

(Optional number; prefer 936)

.12 Ca. 500–799

Class here Dark Ages

.14 Age of feudalism, 800–1099

.142 800–899

.144 900–999

.146 1000–1099

For period of First Crusade, see 940.18

.17 1100–1453

For period of Crusades, 1100–1299, see 940.18; 1300–1453, 940.19

.18 Period of Crusades, 1100–1299

Including First Crusade, 1096–1099

Class comprehensive works on Crusades in 909.07

.182 1100–1199

.184 1200–1299

.19 1300–1453

.192 1300–1399

Including period of Black Death

.193 1400–1453

.2 **1453–**

For World War I, see 940.3; 1918– , 940.5

.21 Renaissance period, 1453–1517

Class here 15th century

For 1400–1453, see 940.193

See also 945.05 for Renaissance period in Italy

.22 1517–1789

For Reformation period, 1517–1648, see 940.23; 1648–1789, 940.25

.23 Reformation period, 1517–1648

For Thirty Years' War, see 940.24

.232 1517–1618

.24 Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648

.25 1648–1789

.252 1648–1715

Class here 17th century

Class 1600–1648 in 940.23

.252 5 1688–1701

Class here War of the League of Augsburg (War of the Grand Alliance), 1688–1697

Class North American aspects of the war in 973.25

.252 6 War of the Spanish Succession, 1701–1714

Class North American aspects of the war in 973.25

.253 1715–1789

.253 2 War of the Austrian Succession, 1740–1748

Class North American aspects of the war in 973.26

.253 4 Seven Years' War, 1756–1763

Class North American aspects of the war in 973.26

.27 Period of French Revolution and Napoleon I, 1789–1815

Class here Napoleonic Wars in specific European countries, e.g., war in Spain, 1807–1814

.28 1815–1914

Class here comprehensive works on 19th-20th centuries

Class comprehensive works on 20th century in 940.5

.282 1815–1829

.283 1830–1848

.284 Revolutions of 1848

.285 1848–1859

.286 1860–1869

.287 1870–1899

.288 1900–1914

.3 World War I, 1914–1918

For military history, see 940.4

[.308] World War I with respect to kinds of persons

Do not use; class in 940.315

.31 Social, political, economic history

Add to base number 940.31 the numbers following 940.531 in 940.5311–940.5317, e.g., internment camps 940.317 [*formerly* 940.472]

For diplomatic history, see 940.32

.32 Diplomatic history

Class diplomatic causes in 940.3112, efforts to preserve or restore peace in 940.312, diplomatic results in 940.314

.322 Allies and associated powers

Add to base number 940.322 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., diplomatic history of Great Britain 940.32241

.324 Central Powers

Add to base number 940.324 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., diplomatic history of Germany 940.32443

.325 Neutrals

Add to base number 940.325 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., diplomatic history of Switzerland 940.325494

.33 Participation of specific groups of countries

Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., diplomatic history among neutrals 940.325

For participation of specific countries and localities, see 940.34–940.39

.332 Allies and associated powers

.334 Central Powers

.335 Neutrals

.34–.39 Participation of specific countries and localities

Class here mobilization in specific countries and localities

Add to base number 940.3 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., participation of Great Britain 940.341

Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., efforts by a specific country to preserve or restore peace 940.312

.4 Military history of World War I

SUMMARY

940.400 1–.400 9	**Standard subdivisions**
.401–.409	**[General aspects]**
.41	**Operations and units**
.42	**Land campaigns and battles of 1914–1916**
.43	**Land campaigns and battles of 1917–1918**
.44	**Air operations**
.45	**Naval operations**
.46–.48	**Celebrations, commemorations, memorials; prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services; other topics**

.400 1–.400 8 Standard subdivisions

.400 9 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class military participation of specific countries in 940.409, personal narratives in 940.481–940.482

.401 Strategy

.401 2 Allies and associated powers

.401 3 Central Powers

.402 Mobilization

For mobilization in specific countries and localities, see 940.34–940.39

.403 Racial minorities as troops

.405 Repressive measures and atrocities

Class internment camps in 940.317

.409 Military participation of specific countries

Add to base number 940.409 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., military participation of Germany 940.40943

.41 Operations and units

Class land campaigns and battles by year in 940.42–940.43

For air operations, see 940.44; naval operations, 940.45

> 940.412–940.413 Military units and their operations

Class here organization, history, rosters, service records

Class comprehensive works in 940.41; units engaged in a special service with the service, e.g., ambulance companies 940.4753; operations in specific theaters in 940.414–940.416

For rolls of honor and lists of dead, see 940.467

.412 Military units of Allies and associated powers

Add to base number 940.412 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., French units 940.41244

.413 Military units of Central Powers

Add to base number 940.413 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Austrian units 940.413436

.414 Operations in Europe

.414 3 German fronts

.414 4 French front

Class here western front

Class German western front in 940.4143

.414 5 Italian front

.414 7 Russian front

Class here eastern front

Class German eastern front in 940.4143

.415 Operations in Asia

.416 Operations in Africa

.42 Land campaigns and battles of 1914–1916

.421 1914, western front

.422 1914, eastern front

.423 1914, other areas

.424 1915, western and Austro-Italian fronts

.425 1915, eastern Europe

.426 1915, other areas

.427 1916, European fronts

.427 2 Western and Austro-Italian fronts

.427 5 Eastern front

.429 1916, other areas

.429 1 Asia Minor

.43 Land campaigns and battles of 1917–1918

.431 1917, western and Austro-Italian fronts

.432 1917, eastern front

.433 1917, other areas

.434 1918, western and Austro-Italian fronts

Including final German offensives

Class final allied offensives in 940.435–940.436

.435 Allied offensives of July 18–September 24, 1918

.436 Allied offensives of September 25–November 11, 1918

.437 1918, eastern front

.438 1918, other areas

.439 Armistice, November 11, 1918

.44 Air operations

Including antiaircraft defenses

Class here combined air and naval operations

For naval operations, see 940.45

[.441] Activities

Number discontinued; class in 940.44

.442 Air raids

Class specific events by year in 940.444–940.448

.443 Air bases

> 940.444–940.448 Events by year

Class comprehensive works in 940.44

.444 Events of 1914

.445 Events of 1915

.446 Events of 1916

.447 Events of 1917

.448 Events of 1918

.449 Operations of specific countries

Class here aircraft, fliers, units

Add to base number 940.449 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., air operations of Germany 940.44943

Class events by year regardless of country in 940.444–940.448

.45 Naval operations

.451 Submarine warfare

.451 2 German use

Class events by year in 940.4514

.451 3 Allied use

Add to base number 940.4513 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., United States use of submarines 940.451373

Class events by year in 940.4514

.451 4 Specific events

.451 6 Antisubmarine warfare

Class events by year in 940.4514

.452 Blockades and blockade running

For events by year, see 940.454–940.458

.453 Naval bases

> 940.454–940.458 Events by year

Class comprehensive works in 940.45, events in submarine warfare by year in 940.4514

.454 Events of 1914

.455 Events of 1915

.456 Events of 1916

.457 Events of 1917

.458 Events of 1918

.459 Naval operations of specific countries

Class here ships, crews, units

Add to base number 940.459 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., naval operations of Italy 940.45945

Class events by year regardless of country in 940.454–940.458

.46–.48 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials; prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services; other topics

Add to base number 940.4 the numbers following 940.54 in 940.546–940.548, e.g., prisoner-of-war camps 940.472; however, internment camps relocated from 940.472 to 940.317

.5 1918–

SUMMARY

940.51	**1918–1929**
.52	**1930–1939**
.53	**World War II, 1939–1945**
.54	**Military history of World War II**
.55	**1945–**

.51 1918–1929

.52 1930–1939

Class Holocaust in 940.5318

.53 World War II, 1939–1945

Class here Sino-Japanese Conflict, 1937–1945

Class Sino-Japanese Conflict during 1937–1941 in 951.042

For military history, see 940.54

[.530 8] World War II with respect to kinds of persons

Do not use; class in 940.5315

.530 92 Persons

Class personal narratives in 940.5481–940.5482

.531 Social, political, economic history

For diplomatic history, see 940.532

.531 1 Causes

.531 12 Political and diplomatic

.531 13 Economic

.531 14 Social and psychological

.531 2 Efforts to preserve or restore peace

.531 4 Political, diplomatic, economic results

Class results in and effects on a specific country with history of the country, e.g., on Norway 948.1045

.531 41 Conferences and treaties

For consequences of conferences and treaties, see 940.53142

.531 42 Consequences of conferences and treaties

.531 422 Reparations

.531 424 Territorial questions

.531 425 Establishment of new nations

.531 426 Establishment of mandates

.531 44 Reconstruction

.531 5 Relation of kinds of persons to the war

Class kinds of persons in relation to a specific aspect of the war and related events with the aspect or event, e.g., Jews and the Holocaust 940.5318

.531 503–.531 587 Classes by various characteristics

Add to base number 940.5315 notation 03–87 from Table 7, e.g., scientists 940.53155; however, class refugees in 940.53159; children and other noncombatants, pacifists, enemy sympathizers in 940.5316

.531 59 Refugees

.531 6 Noncombatants, pacifists, enemy sympathizers

.531 61 Noncombatants

Example: children

.531 62 Pacifists

.531 63 Enemy sympathizers

.531 7 Concentration and related camps

Examples: internment camps [*formerly* 940.5472], labor camps

Class the camps as a part of the Holocaust in 940.5318, prisoner-of-war camps in 940.5472

.531 709 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Use area notation to indicate country maintaining the camps, e.g., internment camps maintained by the United States 940.53170973

Class camps by location in 940.53174–940.53179

.531 74–.531 79 Camps by location

Regardless of kind of camp

Add to base number 940.5317 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Manzanar internment camp for Japanese-Americans 940.531779487

Class extermination camps in 940.5318

.531 8 Holocaust

.532 Diplomatic history

Class diplomatic causes in 940.53112, efforts to preserve or restore peace in 940.5312, diplomatic results in 940.5314

.532 2 United Nations (Allies)

Add to base number 940.5322 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., diplomatic history of Great Britain 940.532241

.532 4 Axis Powers

Add to base number 940.5324 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., diplomatic history of Japan 940.532452

.532 5 Neutrals

Add to base number 940.5325 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., diplomatic history of Switzerland 940.5325494

.533 Participation of specific groups of countries

Class here national groups, anti- and pro-Axis national groups, mobilization

Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., diplomatic history among Axis Powers 940.5324

For participation of specific countries, see 940.534–940.539

.533 2 United Nations (Allies)

.533 4 Axis Powers

.533 5 Neutrals

.533 6 Occupied countries

Class here governments-in-exile, underground movements

For countries occupied by Axis Powers, see 940.5337; by United Nations (Allies) 940.5338

.533 7 Countries occupied by Axis Powers

.533 8 Countries occupied by United Nations (Allies)

.534–.539 Participation of specific countries

Class here mobilization in specific countries

Add to base number 940.53 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., participation of Great Britain 940.5341

Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., efforts by a specific country to preserve or restore peace 940.5312

.54 Military history of World War II

SUMMARY

940.540 01–.540 09	**Standard subdivisions**
.540 1–.540 9	**[General aspects]**
.541	**Operations and units**
.542	**Campaigns and battles by theater**
.544	**Air operations**
.545	**Naval operations**
.546	**Celebrations, commemorations, memorials**
.547	**Prisoner-of-war camps; medical and social services**
.548	**Other topics**

.540 01–.540 08 Standard subdivisions

.540 09 Historical, geographical, persons treatment

Class military participation of specific countries in 940.5409, personal narratives in 940.5481–940.5482

.540 1 Strategy

.540 12 United Nations (Allies)

.540 13 Axis Powers

.540 2 Mobilization

For mobilization in specific countries, see 940.534–940.539

.540 3 Afro-Americans and American native peoples as troops

.540 4 Racial minorities as troops

For Afro-Americans and American native peoples as troops, see 940.5403

.540 5 Repressive measures and atrocities

Class concentration and related camps in 940.5317, Holocaust in 940.5318

.540 9 Military participation of specific countries

Add to base number 940.5409 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., military participation of Germany 940.540943

.541 Operations and units

For campaigns and battles by theater, see 940.542; air operations, 940.544; naval operations, 940.545

> 940.541 2–940.541 3 Military units and their operations

Class here organization, history, rosters, service records

Class comprehensive works in 940.541; units engaged in a special service with the service, e.g., ambulance companies 940.54753

For rolls of honor and lists of dead, see 940.5467

.541 2 Military units of United Nations (Allies)

Add to base number 940.5412 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., French units 940.541244

.541 3 Military units of Axis Powers

Add to base number 940.5413 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Japanese units 940.541352

.542 Campaigns and battles by theater

.542 1 In European theater

Add to base number 940.5421 the numbers following —4 in —41–49 from Table 2, e.g., battles in France 940.542144

.542 3 In Middle East and African theaters

.542 5 In east and southeast Asian and East Indian theaters

Examples: theaters covering Asian mainland, Japan, Netherlands East Indies, Philippines

Class Sino-Japanese Conflict during 1937–1941 in 951.042

.542 6 In Pacific Ocean theater

Examples: theaters covering Hawaiian Islands, South Pacific Ocean islands

For East Indian theater, see 940.5425

See also 940.5425 for Japan and Philippines

.542 8 In American theater

.542 9 In other areas

.544 Air operations

Including antiaircraft defenses

Class here combined air and naval operations

For naval operations, see 940.545

[.544 1] Activities

Number discontinued; class in 940.544

.544 2 Campaigns and battles

For campaigns and battles by theater, see 940.542

.544 3 Air bases

Add to base number 940.5443 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., air bases in England 940.544342

.544 9 Operations of specific countries

Class here aircraft, fliers, units

Add to base number 940.5449 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., operations of Germany 940.544943

Class campaigns and battles of specific countries in 940.5442

.545 Naval operations

For campaigns and battles by theater, see 940.542

.545 1 Submarine warfare

.545 16 Antisubmarine warfare

.545 2 Blockades and blockade running

.545 3 Naval bases

.545 9 Operations of specific countries

Class here ships, crews, units

Add to base number 940.5459 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Australian naval operations 940.545994

Class a specific kind of operation with the operation, e.g., blockades 940.5452

.546 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Including commemorative meetings, flag presentations, decorations and awards

Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., Battle of the Coral Sea 940.5426

.546 5 Monuments and cemeteries

Add to base number 940.5465 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., monuments and cemeteries in France 940.546544

.546 7 Rolls of honor and lists of dead

Add to base number 940.5467 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., lists of Japanese dead 940.546752

.547 Prisoner-of-war camps; medical and social services

.547 2 Prisoner-of-war camps

Add to base number 940.5472 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., prisoner-of-war camps maintained by Germany 940.547243

Internment camps relocated to 940.5317

.547 3 Prisoners exchange

.547 5 Medical services

For hospitals, see 940.5476

.547 52 Sanitary affairs

.547 53 Ambulance services

.547 54–.547 59 Services of specific countries

Add to base number 940.5475 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., French medical services 940.547544

.547 6 Hospitals

.547 609 Historical and persons treatment

Class hospitals in specific places in 940.54763

.547 63 In specific places

Add to base number 940.54763 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., hospitals in Rome 940.5476345632

Class hospitals maintained in specific places by specific countries in 940.54764–940.54769

.547 64–.547 69 Maintained by specific countries

Add to base number 940.5476 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., hospitals maintained by Italy 940.547645

.547 7 Relief and welfare services

.547 709 Historical and persons treatment

Class activities in specific places in 940.54779

.547 71 Activities of Red Cross

.547 78 Activities conducted by specific countries

Add to base number 940.54778 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., activities conducted by Switzerland 940.54778494

Class Red Cross activities conducted by specific countries in 940.54771

.547 79 Activities in specific places

Add to base number 940.54779 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., welfare activities in Paris 940.5477944361

Class welfare activities conducted in specific places by specific countries in 940.54778, activities of Red Cross in specific places in 940.54771

.547 8 Religious life and chaplain services

.548 Other topics

> 940.548 1–940.548 2 Personal narratives

Class comprehensive works in 940.548, personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, using notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., on blockade running 940.5452092

.548 1 Personal narratives of individuals from United Nations (Allies)

Add to base number 940.5481 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., personal narratives of Britons 940.548141

.548 2 Personal narratives of individuals from Axis Powers

Add to base number 940.5482 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., personal narratives of Germans 940.548243

.548 3 Military life and customs of United Nations (Allies)

Add to base number 940.5483 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., military life in United States Navy 940.548373

.548 4 Military life and customs of Axis Powers

Add to base number 940.5484 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., military life in Luftwaffe 940.548443

.548 5 Unconventional warfare

Examples: infiltration, intelligence, sabotage, subversion

For unconventional warfare of United Nations, see 940.5486; of Axis Powers, 940.5487; propaganda, 940.5488

.548 6 Unconventional warfare of United Nations (Allies)

Add to base number 940.5486 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., intelligence operation of United States 940.548673

.548 7 Unconventional warfare of Axis Powers

Add to base number 940.5487 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., intelligence operations of Germany 940.548743

.548 8 Propaganda

.548 809 Historical and persons treatment

Class propaganda in specific places in 940.54889

.548 86 By United Nations (Allies)

Add to base number 940.54886 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., propaganda by United States 940.5488673

.548 87 By Axis Powers

Add to base number 940.54887 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., propaganda by Germany 940.5488743

.548 89 Propaganda in specific places

Add to base number 940.54889 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., propaganda in United States 940.5488973

Class propaganda by one side or one country regardless of location in 940.54886–940.54887

.55 1945–

.554 1945–1949

.555 1950–1959

.556 1960–1969

.557 1970–1979

.558 1980–1989

.559 1990–1999

941 *British Isles

Class here Great Britain, United Kingdom

See Manual at 941

SUMMARY

941.01–.08	**[Historical periods of British Isles]**
.1	**Scotland**
.2	**Northeastern Scotland**
.3	**Southeastern Scotland**
.4	**Southwestern Scotland**
.5	**Ireland**
.6	**Ulster Northern Ireland**
.7	**Republic of Ireland**
.8	**Leinster**
.9	**Munster**

*Add as instructed under 930–990

SUMMARY

941.01	**Early history to 1066**
.02–.05	**From Norman period through Tudor period, 1066–1603**
.06	**Stuart and Commonwealth periods, 1603–1714**
.07	**Period of House of Hanover, 1714–1837**
.08	**Period of Victoria and House of Windsor, 1837–**

.01 Early history to 1066

Class ancient history to 410 in 936.1

(.012) Ancient history to 410

(Optional number; prefer 936.1)

Add to base number 941.012 the numbers following 936.20 in 936.201–936.204, e.g., 4th century 941.0124

.013–.019 From pre-Anglo-Saxon period through reign of Saxon kings, 410–1066

Add to base number 941.01 the numbers following 942.01 in 942.013–942.019, e.g., period of Danish kings 941.018

.02–.05 From Norman period through Tudor period, 1066–1603

Add to base number 941.0 the numbers following 942.0 in 942.02–942.05, e.g., reign of Henry VIII 941.052

.06 Stuart and Commonwealth periods, 1603–1714

(Option: Class here Anglo-Dutch Wars; prefer 949.204)

.061 Reign of James I, 1603–1625

.062 Reign of Charles I, 1625–1649

.063 Period as Commonwealth, 1649–1660

For Oliver Cromwell, see 941.064; Richard Cromwell, 941.065

.064 Protectorate of Oliver Cromwell, 1653–1658

.065 Protectorate of Richard Cromwell, 1658–1659

.066 Reign of Charles II, 1660–1685 (Restoration)

.067 1685–1689

Class here reign of James II, 1685–1688

.068 Reigns of William III (of Orange) and Mary II, 1689–1702

.069 Reign of Anne, 1702–1714

.07 Period of House of Hanover, 1714–1837

.071 Reign of George I, 1714–1727

.072 Reign of George II, 1727–1760

(Option: Class here War of Jenkins' Ear; prefer 946.055)

.073 Reign of George III, 1760–1820

Including formation of United Kingdom

.074 Reign of George IV, 1820–1830

.075 Reign of William IV, 1830–1837

.08 Period of Victoria and House of Windsor, 1837–

.081 Reign of Victoria, 1837–1901

Class here 19th century

(Option: Class here Crimean War, South African [Second Anglo-Boer] War; prefer 947.073 for Crimean War, 968.048 for South African [Second Anglo-Boer] War)

Class 1800–1820 in 941.073, 1820–1830 in 941.074, 1830–1837 in 941.075

.082 1901–

For reign of George V, see 941.083; period of World War II, 941.084; 1945– , 941.085

.082 3 Reign of Edward VII, 1901–1910

.083 Reign of George V, 1910–1936

.084 1936–1945

Class here reigns of Edward VIII, 1936, and George VI, 1936–1952; period of World War II, 1939–1945

Class reign of George VI during 1945–1949 in 941.0854, during 1950–1952 in 941.0855

.085 1945–

Class here reign of Elizabeth II, 1952–

.085 4 1945–1949

.085 5 1950–1959

.085 6 1960–1969

.085 7 1970–1979

.085 8 1980–1989

.085 9 1990–

.1 *Scotland

For northeastern Scotland, see 941.2; southeastern Scotland, 941.3; southwestern Scotland, 941.4

.101 Early history to 1057

Class ancient history to 410 in 936.1

*Add as instructed under 930–990

(.101 2) Ancient history of northern Britain to 410

(Optional number; prefer 936.1)

.102 1057–1314

Including Battle of Bannockburn, 1314

.103 1314–1424

.104 Reigns of James I-James V, 1424–1542

.105 Reformation period, 1542–1603

Class here 16th century

Class 1500–1542 in 941.104

.106–.108 From personal union with England to present time, 1603–

Add to base number 941.10 the numbers following 941.0 in 941.06–941.08, e.g., reign of Edward VII 941.10823

.2 *Northeastern Scotland

Add to base number 941.2 the numbers following 941.1 in 941.101–941.108, e.g., Reformation period 941.205

.3 *Southeastern Scotland

Add to base number 941.3 the numbers following 941.1 in 941.101–941.108, e.g., Reformation period 941.305

.4 *Southwestern Scotland

Add to base number 941.4 the numbers following 941.1 in 941.101–941.108, e.g., Reformation period 941.405

.5 *Ireland

.501 Early history to 1086

Including Battle of Clontarf, 1014

Class ancient history to 410 in 936.1

(.501 2) Ancient history to 410

(Optional number; prefer 936.1)

.502 1086–1171

.503 Under House of Plantagenet, 1171–1399

.504 Under Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485

.505 Under Tudors, 1485–1603

.506 Under Stuarts, 1603–1691

.507 1691–1799

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.508 1800–

.508 1 1800–1899

.508 2 1900–

.508 21 1900–1921

Including Sinn Fein Rebellion (Easter Rebellion), 1916; Anglo-Irish War, 1919–1921

.508 22 1921–1949

.508 23 1950–1969

.508 24 1970–

.6 *Ulster Northern Ireland

.608 1800–

.608 1 1800–1899

.608 2 1900–

.608 21 1900–1920

Including Government of Ireland Act, 1920

.608 22 1921–1949

.608 23 1949–1968

.608 24 1969–

.7 *Republic of Ireland

For Leinster, see 941.8; Munster, 941.9

.708 1800–

.708 1 1800–1899

.708 2 1900–

.708 21 1900–1921

.708 22 1922–1949

Including period as Irish Free State, 1922–1937; as Eire, 1937–1949

.708 23 1949–1969

.708 24 1970–

.8 *Leinster

.808 1800–

Add to base number 941.808 the numbers following 941.708 in 941.7081–941.7082, e.g., 1949–1969 941.80823

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.9 *Munster

.908 1800–

Add to base number 941.908 the numbers following 941.708 in 941.7081–941.7082, e.g., 1949–1969 941.90823

942 *England and Wales

See Manual at 941

SUMMARY

942.01	**Early history to 1066**
.02	**Norman period, 1066–1154**
.03	**Period of House of Plantagenet, 1154–1399**
.04	**Period of Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485**
.05	**Tudor period, 1485–1603**
.06–.08	**From Stuart and Commonwealth periods to present time, 1603–**

.01 Early history to 1066

Class ancient history to 410 in 936.2

(.012) Ancient history of southern Britain to 410

(Optional number; prefer 936.2)

Add to base number 942.012 the numbers following 936.20 in 936.201–936.204, e.g., Celtic period 942.0122

.013 Pre-Anglo-Saxon period, 410–449

.014 449–ca. 600

Including reign of King Arthur

.015 Period of Heptarchy, ca. 600–829

Class supremacy of Wessex in 942.016

.015 3 Supremacy of Northumberland, 603–685

.015 7 Supremacy of Mercia, 757–796

.016 Supremacy of Wessex, 829–924

Class here 9th century

Class 800–829 in 942.015

.016 1 Reign of Egbert, 829–839

.016 2 Reign of Ethelwulf, 839–858

.016 3 Reigns of Ethelbald, Ethelbert, Ethelred I, 858–871

.016 4 Reign of Alfred the Great, 871–899

.016 5 Reign of Edward the Elder, 899–924

.017 Reigns of Saxon kings of England, 924–1016

.017 1 Reign of Athelstan, 924–940

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.017 2 Reigns of Edmund I, Edred, Edwy, 940–959

.017 3 Reigns of Edgar and Edward the Martyr, 959–978

.017 4 Reigns of Ethelred II and Edmund II, 978–1016

.018 Reigns of Danish kings, 1016–1042

Class here 11th century

Class 1000–1016 in 942.0174, 1042–1066 in 942.019, 1066–1099 in 942.02

.018 1 Reign of Canute, 1016–1035

.018 2 Reign of Harold I, 1035–1040

.018 3 Reign of Hardecanute, 1040–1042

.019 1042–1066

Contains reigns of Edward the Confessor, 1042–1066, and Harold II, 1066

.02 Norman period, 1066–1154

Class here 12th century

Class 1154–1199 in 942.03

.021 Reign of William I, 1066–1087

Including Battle of Hastings, 1066

.022 Reign of William II, 1087–1100

.023 Reign of Henry I, 1100–1135

.024 Reign of Stephen, 1135–1154

.03 Period of House of Plantagenet, 1154–1399

.031 Reign of Henry II, 1154–1189

.032 Reign of Richard I, 1189–1199

.033 Reign of John, 1199–1216

.034 Reign of Henry III, 1216–1272

Class here 13th century

Class 1200–1216 in 942.033, 1272–1299 in 942.035

.035 Reign of Edward I, 1272–1307

.036 Reign of Edward II, 1307–1327

.037 Reign of Edward III, 1327–1377

Class here 14th century

(Option: Class here Hundred Years' War; prefer 944.025)

Class 1300–1307 in 942.035, 1307–1327 in 942.036, 1377–1399 in 942.038

.038 Reign of Richard II, 1377–1399

.04 Period of Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485

Class here Wars of the Roses, 1455–1485

.041 Reign of Henry IV, 1399–1413

.042 Reign of Henry V, 1413–1422

.043 Reign of Henry VI, 1422–1461

.044 Reign of Edward IV, 1461–1483

.045 Reign of Edward V, 1483

.046 Reign of Richard III, 1483–1485

.05 Tudor period, 1485–1603

.051 Reign of Henry VII, 1485–1509

.052 Reign of Henry VIII, 1509–1547

.053 Reign of Edward VI, 1547–1553

.054 Reign of Mary I, 1553–1558

.055 Reign of Elizabeth I, 1558–1603

Including Spanish Armada, 1588

.06–.08 From Stuart and Commonwealth periods to present time, 1603–

Add to base number 942.0 the numbers following 941.0 in 941.06–941.08, e.g., English Civil War 942.062

943 Central Europe Germany

SUMMARY

943.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of central Europe
.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Germany
.01–.08 Historical periods of Germany
.1 Northeastern Germany
.6 Austria and Liechtenstein
.7 Czechoslovakia
.8 Poland
.9 Hungary

.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of central Europe

As modified under 930–990

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Germany

As modified under 930–990

SUMMARY

943.01	**Early history to 843**
.02	**Period of early Holy Roman Empire, 843–1519**
.03	**Period of Reformation and Counter-Reformation, 1519–1618**
.04	**1618–1705**
.05	**1705–1790**
.06	**Period of Napoleonic Wars, 1790–1815**
.07	**Period of German Confederation, 1815–1866**
.08	**1866–**

> 943.01–943.08 Historical periods of Germany

Class comprehensive works in 943

.01 Early history to 843

Class ancient history to 481 in 936.3

(.012) Ancient history to 481

(Optional number; prefer 936.3)

(.012 1) Earliest period to 113 B.C.

(Optional number; prefer 936.301)

(.012 2) Period of contacts with Roman Republic and Empire, 113 B.C.–481 A.D.

(Optional number; prefer 936.302)

.013 Period of Merovingian dynasty in Germany, 481–751

Class comprehensive works on Merovingian dynasty in France and Germany in 944.013

.014 751–843

Class here Carolingian dynasty in Germany, 751–911

Class comprehensive works on Carolingian dynasty in France and Germany in 944.014

For 843–911, see 943.021

.02 Period of early Holy Roman Empire, 843–1519

After Treaty of Verdun, 843

.021 843–911

.022 Period of Conrad I and Saxon emperors, 911–1024

.023 Period of Salian (Franconian) emperors and Lothair II, 1024–1137

.024 Hohenstaufen period, 1138–1254

Including reign of Frederick I Barbarossa, 1152–1190

Class here 12th century

Class 1100–1137 in 943.023

For later Hohenstaufen period, see 943.025

.025 Later Hohenstaufen period and Interregnum, 1198–1273

.026 Period of early Hapsburgs and others, 1273–1378

.027 Period of House of Luxemburg, 1378–1438

.028 Reigns of Albert II and Frederick III, 1438–1493

Class here 15th century

Class 1400–1438 in 943.027, 1493–1499 in 943.029

.029 Reign of Maximilian I, 1493–1519

.03 Period of Reformation and Counter-Reformation, 1519–1618

.031 Reign of Charles V, 1519–1556

Including wars with France; Peasants' War, 1524–1525; Schmalkaldic War, 1546–1547
(Option: Class wars with France in 944.028)

.032 Reign of Ferdinand I, 1556–1564

.033 Reign of Maximilian II, 1564–1576

.034 Reign of Rudolf II, 1576–1612

.035 Reign of Matthias, 1612–1619

.04 1618–1705

.041 Period of Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648

Class reign of Matthias during Thirty Years' War in 943.035, of Ferdinand II in 943.042, of Ferdinand III in 943.043

.042 Reign of Ferdinand II, 1619–1637

.043 Reign of Ferdinand III, 1637–1657

.044 Reign of Leopold I, 1658–1705

.05 1705–1790

Class here rise of Prussia

.051 Reign of Joseph I, 1705–1711

.052 Reign of Charles VI, 1711–1740

.053 1740–1786

Class here reign of Frederick the Great, King of Prussia, 1740–1786

For reign of Charles VII, see 943.054; Francis I, 943.055; Joseph II, 943.057

.054 Reign of Charles VII, 1742–1745

.055 Reign of Francis I, 1745–1765

Including period of Seven Years' War, 1756–1763

.057 Reign of Joseph II, 1765–1790

.06 Period of Napoleonic Wars, 1790–1815

Including Confederation of the Rhine

.07 Period of German Confederation, 1815–1866

Class here 19th century

Class 1800–1815 in 943.06, 1866–1899 in 943.08

.073 1815–1847

.076 1848–1866

Including Schleswig-Holstein War, 1864; Austro-Prussian War (Seven Weeks' War), 1866
(Option: Class Schleswig-Holstein War in 948.904)

.08 1866–

.081 1866–1871

Class here period of North German Confederation

For Franco-German War, see 943.082

.082 Franco-German War, 1870–1871

(Option: Class in 944.07)

.083 Reign of William I, 1871–1888

Class here German Empire, 1871–1918

For reigns of Frederick III and William II, see 943.084

.084 Reigns of Frederick III and William II, 1888–1918

.085 Period of Weimar Republic, 1918–1933

.086 Period of Third Reich, 1933–1945

.087 1945–

Class here Federal Republic, 1949– , comprehensive works on Federal and Democratic Republics

Class German Democratic Republic in 943.1087

.087 4 1945–1949

.087 5 1950–1959

.087 6 1960–1969

.087 7 1970–1979

.087 8 1980–1989

.087 9 1990–

.1 *Northeastern Germany

.108 7 German Democratic Republic, 1949–

Class here East Germany, 1945–

Add to base number 943.1087 the numbers following 943.087 in 943.0874–943.0879, e.g., 1960–1969 943.10876

.6 *Austria and Liechtenstein

Class ancient history to 481 in 936.3

(.601) Ancient history of Austria to 481

(Optional number; prefer 936.3)

> 943.602–943.605 Historical periods of Austria

Class comprehensive works in 943.6

.602 Medieval period, 481–1500

.602 2 481–976

.602 3 Period of Babenberg dynasty, 976–1246

.602 4 1246–1273

.602 5 Early period of Hapsburgs, 1273–1500

.603 1500–1815

See also 940.2532 for War of the Austrian Succession

.604 1815–1919

Class here Austrian Empire, 1804–1919

Class Austrian Empire during 1804–1815 in 943.603

.604 2 1815–1847

.604 3 1848–1867

.604 4 Period of Austro-Hungarian Monarchy, 1867–1919

.605 1919–

.605 1 Period of Republic, 1919–1938

.605 2 1938–1955

.605 22 Anschluss and war periods, 1938–1945

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.605 23 1945–1955

.605 3 1955–

.64 *Western Austria, and Liechtenstein

.648 †Liechtenstein

Class ancient history to 481 in 936.3

.7 *Czechoslovakia

.702 Early history to 1918

Class here Kingdom of Bohemia

.702 1 To 907

Including Great Moravian Empire

.702 2 907–1526

.702 23 Period of Přemyslid dynasty, 907–1306

.702 24 Period of Luxembourg dynasty, 1306–1526

Including Hussite Wars, 1419–1436

.702 3 1526–1815

.702 32 1526–1620

.702 33 1620–1800

.702 34 1800–1815

.702 4 1815–1918

.703 1918–1945

.703 2 Period of Czechoslovak Republic, 1918–1939

.703 3 1939–1945

Class here Protectorate of Bohemia and Moravia

Slovak Republic relocated to 943.73033

.704 1945–

.704 2 1945–1968

Including reform and repression, 1968

.704 3 1968–

.73 *Slovakia

Add to base number 943.73 the numbers following 943.7 in 943.702–943.704, e.g., Slovak Republic 943.73033 [*formerly* 943.7033]

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

.8 *Poland

.802 Early history to 1795

.802 2 To 1370

Including period of Piast dynasty

.802 3 Period of Jagellonian dynasty, 1370–1572

.802 4 Period of elective kings, 1572–1697

.802 5 Period of Saxon dynasty and partitions, 1697–1795

Including partitions of 1772, 1793, 1795

.803 Period of foreign rule, 1795–1918

.803 2 1795–1862

.803 3 1863–1918

.804 Period of Republic, 1918–1939

.805 1939–

.805 3 1939–1945

.805 4 1945–1956

.805 5 1956–1980

.805 6 1980–

.9 *Hungary

.901 Early history to 894

Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.8

(.901 1) Ancient history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.8)

.902 Period of Arpad dynasty, 894–1301

.903 Period of elective kings, 1301–1526

.904 Turkish and Hapsburg periods, 1526–1918

.904 1 Turkish period, 1526–1686

.904 2 Hapsburg period, 1686–1918

For period of Austro-Hungarian Monarchy, see 943.9043

.904 3 Period of Austro-Hungarian Monarchy, 1867–1918

.905 1918–

.905 1 1918–1941

.905 2 1942–1956

Including uprising and suppression, 1956

.905 3 1956–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

944 *France and Monaco

SUMMARY

944.01	**Early history to 987**
.02	**Period of growth of royal power, 987–1589**
.03	**Bourbon period, 1589–1789**
.04	**Revolutionary period, 1789–1804**
.05	**Period of First Empire, 1804–1815**
.06	**Period of Restoration, 1815–1848**
.07	**Period of Second Republic and Second Empire (period of Napoleon III), 1848–1870**
.08	**1870–**

> 944.01–944.08 Historical periods of France

Class comprehensive works in 944

.01 Early history to 987

Class ancient history to 486 in 936.4

(.012) Ancient history to 486

(Optional number; prefer 936.4)

(.012 1) Earliest period to 125 B.C.

(Optional number; prefer 936.401)

(.012 2) Gallo-Roman period, 125 B.C.–486 A.D.

(Optional number; prefer 936.402)

.013 Period of Merovingian dynasty, 486–751

Class here comprehensive works on Merovingian dynasty in France and Germany

For Merovingian dynasty in Germany, see 943.013

.014 Period of Carolingian dynasty, 751–987

Class here comprehensive works on Carolingian dynasty in France and Germany

For Carolingian dynasty in Germany, see 943.014

.02 Period of growth of royal power, 987–1589

.021 Period of House of Capet, 987–1328

Including reigns of Hugh Capet, Robert II, Henry I, 987–1060

Class reigns of other Capetian kings in 944.022–944.024

.022 Reigns of Philip I, Louis VI, Louis VII, 1060–1180

.023 Reigns of Philip II, Louis VIII, Louis IX, 1180–1270

.024 Reigns of Philip III, Philip IV, Louis X, Jean I, Philip V, Charles IV, 1270–1328

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.025 Period of House of Valois, 1328–1589

Including reigns of Philip VI, Jean II, Charles V, 1328–1380

Class here Hundred Years' War, 1337–1453
(Option: Class Hundred Years' War in 942.037)

Class reigns of other Valois kings in 944.026–944.029

.026 Reigns of Charles VI and Charles VII, 1380–1461

.027 Reigns of Louis XI, Charles VIII, Louis XII, 1461–1515

Class here comprehensive works on French invasions of Italy, 1494–1559
(Option: Class French invasions of Italy in 945.06)

Class invasions during period of House of Angoulême in 944.028

.028 Period of House of Angoulême, 1515–1589

Including reigns of Francis I and Henry II, 1515–1559

(Option: Class here wars with Holy Roman Emperor Charles V; prefer 943.031)

For reigns of Francis II, Charles IX, Henry III, see 944.029

.029 Reigns of Francis II, Charles IX, Henry III, 1559–1589

.03 Bourbon period, 1589–1789

.031 Reign of Henry IV, 1589–1610

.032 Reign of Louis XIII, 1610–1643

.033 Reign of Louis XIV, 1643–1715

Including War of Devolution, 1667–1668

Class here 17th century

Class 1600–1610 in 944.031, 1610–1643 in 944.032

.034 Reign of Louis XV, 1715–1774

Class here 18th century

Class a specific part of 18th century not provided for here with the part, e.g., Reign of Terror 944.044

.035 1774–1789

Class here period of Louis XVI, 1774–1792

Class period of Louis XVI during 1789–1792 in 944.041

.04 Revolutionary period, 1789–1804

.041 Period of Estates-General, National Assembly, Legislative Assembly, 1789–1792

.042 Period of First Republic, 1792–1799

For period of National Convention, see 944.043; Directory, 944.045

.043 Period of National Convention, 1792–1795

For Reign of Terror, see 944.044

.044 Period of Reign of Terror, 1793–1794

.045 Period of Directory, 1795–1799

.046 Period of Consulate, 1799–1804

.05 Period of First Empire, 1804–1815

Including reign of Louis XVIII, 1814–1815; Hundred Days, 1815

Class here reign of Napoleon I, 1804–1814

Class Napoleonic Wars in 940.27

.06 Period of restoration, 1815–1848

Class here 19th century

Class a specific part of 19th century not provided for here with the part, e.g., Second Empire 944.07

.061 Reign of Louis XVIII, 1815–1824

.062 Reign of Charles X, 1824–1830

.063 Period of Louis Philippe, 1830–1848 (July Monarchy)

.07 Period of Second Republic and Second Empire (period of Napoleon III), 1848–1870

(Option: Class here Franco-German War; prefer 943.082)

.08 1870–

.081 Period of Third Republic, 1870–1945

.081 2 1870–1899

Including Paris Commune, 1871

.081 3 1900–1914

.081 4 Period of World War I, 1914–1918

.081 5 1918–1939

.081 6 Period of World War II, 1939–1945

.082 Period of Fourth Republic, 1945–1958

.083 Period of Fifth Republic, 1958–

.083 6 1958–1969

.083 7 1970–1979

.083 8 1980–1989

.083 9 1990–

.9 *Southeastern France and Monaco Provence region

.94 *Alpes-Maritimes, Corse, Monaco

.949 †Monaco

Class ancient history to 486 in 936.4

945 *Italian Peninsula and adjacent islands Italy

> 945.01–945.09 Historical periods of Italy

Class comprehensive works in 945

.01 Early history to 774

Including Gothic and Lombard kingdoms, 476–774

Class ancient history to 476 in 937

(.012) Ancient history to 476

(Optional number; prefer 937)

Add to base number 945.012 the numbers following 937.0 in 937.01–937.09, e.g., Punic Wars 945.0124

.02 Period of Carolingian (Frankish) rule, 774–962

.03 Period of German emperors, 962–1122

.04 1122–1300

.05 Renaissance period, 1300–1494

.06 1494–1527

(Option: Class here French invasions of Italy; prefer 944.027)

.07 Period of Spanish and Austrian domination, 1527–1796

.08 1796–1900

.082 Napoleonic period, 1796–1814

.083 Period of Risorgimento, 1814–1861

.084 Reigns of Victor Emmanuel II and Umberto I, 1861–1900

Including 1870–1900 [*formerly* 945.09]

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

.09 1900–

1870–1900 relocated to 945.084

.091 Reign of Victor Emmanuel III, 1900–1946

Class here Fascist period

(Option: Class here Ethiopian War and Italo-Ethiopian War; prefer 963.043 for Ethiopian War, 963.056 for Italo-Ethiopian War)

.092 Period of Republic, 1946–

.092 4 1946–1949

.092 5 1950–1959

.092 6 1960–1969

.092 7 1970–1979

.092 8 1980–1989

.092 9 1990–

.4 *Emilia-Romagna region and San Marino

.49 †San Marino

Class ancient history to 476 in 937.4

.6 *Central Italy and Vatican City

.63 *Roma (Rome) province and Vatican City

.634 *Vatican City

.8 *Sicily and adjacent islands

.85 †Malta

Class ancient history to 476 in 937.8

946 Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands Spain

.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands

As modified under 930–990

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Spain

As modified under 930–990

> 946.01–946.08 Historical periods of Spain

Class comprehensive works in 946

.01 Early history to 711

Class here period of Visigothic domination, 415–711

Class ancient history to 415 in 936.6

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

(.012) Ancient history to 415

(Optional number; prefer 936.6)

(.012 1) Earliest period to ca. 1000 B.C.

(Optional number; prefer 936.601)

(.012 2) Period of Greek, Phoenician, early Celtic and Germanic contacts, ca. 1000–218 B.C.

(Optional number; prefer 936.602)

(.012 3) Roman period, 218 B.C.–415 A.D.

(Optional number; prefer 936.603)

.02 Period of Moorish dynasties and reconquest, 711–1479

.03 Reign of Ferdinand V and Isabella I, 1479–1516

Including union of Castile and Aragon

.04 Period of Hapsburg rulers, 1516–1700

For period of later Hapsburg rulers, see 946.051

.042 Reign of Charles I, 1516–1556

.043 Reign of Philip II, 1556–1598

.05 Period of later Hapsburg rulers and Bourbon rulers, 1598–1808

.051 Period of later Hapsburg rulers, 1598–1700

Including reign of Philip III, 1598–1621

For reign of Philip IV, see 946.052; Charles II, 946.053

.052 Reign of Philip IV, 1621–1665

.053 Reign of Charles II, 1665–1700

.054 1700–1808

Class here comprehensive works on Bourbon rulers in Spain

Class the reign of a specific Bourbon ruler with the reign, e.g., reign of Isabella II 946.072

.055 Reign of Philip V, 1700–1746

Including Anglo-Spanish War (War of Jenkins' Ear), 1739–1741 (Option: Class War of Jenkins' Ear in 941.072)

See also 940.2526 for War of the Spanish Succession

.056 Reign of Ferdinand VI, 1746–1759

.057 Reign of Charles III, 1759–1788

.058 Reign of Charles IV, 1788–1808

.06 Period of Peninsular War and rule of Joseph Bonaparte, 1808–1814

.07 1814–1931

.072 Reigns of Ferdinand VII and Isabella II, 1814–1868

Including first Bourbon restoration

(Option: Class here Spanish-Moroccan War; prefer 964.03)

.073 1868–1874 [*formerly* 946.08]

Including revolution 1868–1871; second Bourbon restoration, 1871–1873; First Republic, 1873–1874

.074 Reigns of Alfonso XII and Alfonso XIII, 1874–1931 [*formerly* 946.08]

(Option: Class here Spanish-American War; prefer 973.89)

.08 1931–

Class here 20th century

1868–1874 relocated to 946.073; reigns of Alfonso XII and Alfonso XIII, 1874–1931 to 946.074

.081 Period of Second Republic, 1931–1939

Class here Civil War, 1936–1939

.082 Period of Francisco Franco, 1939–1975

.082 4 1939–1949

.082 5 1950–1959

.082 6 1960–1969

.082 7 1970–1975

.083 Reign of Juan Carlos I, 1975–

.7 *Eastern Spain and Andorra

.79 †Andorra

Class ancient history to 415 in 936.6

.8 *Andalusia autonomous community and Gibraltar

.89 †Gibraltar

Class ancient history to 415 in 936.6

.9 *Portugal

.901 Early history to 1143

Class ancient history to 415 in 936.6

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

(.901 2) Ancient history to 415

(Optional number; prefer 936.6)

Add to base number 946.9012 the numbers following 946.012 in 946.0121–946.0123, e.g., period of Greek contacts 946.90122

.902 Period of rise and fall of empire, 1143–1640

.903 Period of House of Braganza, 1640–1910

.903 2 1640–1750

Including restoration of Portuguese monarchy

.903 3 1750–1807

Including Pombaline reforms

.903 4 Period of monarchy in exile, 1807–1820

Including period of Peninsular War

.903 5 1820–1847

.903 6 1847–1910

.904 1910–

.904 1 Period of Republic, 1910–1926

.904 2 1926–1968

Including period of Salazar, 1933–1968

Class here Novo Estado, 1933–1974

Class Novo Estado during 1968–1974 in 946.9043

.904 3 1968–1974

.904 4 1974–

947 Eastern Europe (Soviet Union) Union of Soviet Socialist Republics

.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of eastern Europe

As modified under 930–990

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Russia

As modified under 930–990

> 947.01–947.08 Historical periods of Russia

Class comprehensive works in 947

.01 Early history to 862

.02 Kievan period, 862–1240

.03 Period of Tatar suzerainty, 1240–1462

.04 1462–1689

.041 Reign of Ivan III, 1462–1505

.042 Reign of Basil III, 1505–1533

.043 Reign of Ivan IV, (the Terrible), 1533–1584

Including Livonian War, 1557–1582
(Option: Class Livonian War in 948.502)

.044 Reigns of Theodore I and Boris Godunov, 1584–1605

.045 Time of Troubles, 1605–1613

Including reigns of Pseudo-Demetrius I and Pseudo-Demetrius II

.046 Period of House of Romanov, 1613–1917

Class reigns of specific Romanovs in 947.047–947.083

.047 Reign of Michael, 1613–1645

.048 Reign of Alexis, 1645–1676

.049 Reigns of Theodore III and regent Sophia, 1676–1689

.05 Reign of Peter I (the Great), 1689–1725

Including Great Northern War, 1700–1721
(Option: Class Great Northern War in 948.05 or 948.503)

.06 1725–1796

.061 Reigns of Catherine I, Peter II, Anne, Ivan VI, 1725–1741

.062 Reigns of Elizabeth and Peter III, 1741–1762

.063 Reign of Catherine II (the Great), 1762–1796

.07 1796–1855

Class here 19th century

Class 1855–1900 in 947.08

.071 Reign of Paul I, 1796–1801

.072 Reign of Alexander I, 1801–1825

Including period of invasion by Napoleon, 1812

.073 Reign of Nicholas I, 1825–1855

Including Crimean War, 1853–1856
(Option: Class Crimean War in 941.081)

.08 1855–

.081 Reign of Alexander II, 1855–1881

Including Russo-Turkish War, 1877–1878
(Option: Class Russo-Turkish War in 956.1015)

.082 Reign of Alexander III, 1881–1894

.083 Reign of Nicholas II, 1894–1917

(Option: Class here Russo-Japanese War; prefer 952.031)

.084 1917–

Class here Communist period; Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, 1923–

For 1953– , see 947.085

.084 1 Period of revolutions, Alexander Kerensky, V. I. Lenin, 1917–1924

.084 2 Period of Joseph Stalin, 1924–1953

(Option: Class here Russo-Finnish War; prefer 948.97032)

.085 1953–

.085 2 Periods of Georgi Malenkov, Nikolay Aleksandrovich Bulganin, Nikita Sergeevich Khrushchev, 1953–1964

.085 3 Periods of Leonid Il'ich Brezhnev and Aleksey Nikolayevich Kosygin, 1964–1982

.085 4 Periods of IU. V. Andropov, K. U. Chernenko, and Mikhail Sergeevich Gorbachev, 1982–

948 *Northern Europe Scandinavia

SUMMARY

948.01–.08	**Historical periods of Scandinavia**
.1	**Norway**
.2	**Southeastern Norway**
.3	**Southwestern Norway**
.4	**Central and northern Norway**
.5	**Sweden**
.6	**Southern Sweden**
.7	**Central Sweden**
.8	**Northern Sweden**
.9	**Denmark and Finland**

> 948.01–948.08 Historical periods of Scandinavia

Class comprehensive works in 948

.01 Early history to 800

Class ancient history to 481 in 936.3

(.012) Ancient history to 481

(Optional number; prefer 936.3)

.02 Period of migration and conquest, 800–1387

.022 Viking period, 800–1066

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.023 1066–1387

.03 1387–1523

Class here period of Kalmar Union, 1397–1523

.04 Period of reformation and rise of Sweden, 1523–1648

.05 Period of conflict, 1648–1792

(Option: Class here Great Northern War; prefer 947.05)

.06 1792–1814

.07 1814–1905

.08 1905–

.081 1905–1919

.082 1920–1929

.083 1930–1939

.084 1940–1949

.084 2 Period of World War II, 1940–1945

.084 3 1945–1949

.085 1950–1959

.086 1960–1969

.087 1970–1979

.088 1980–

.1 *Norway

For southeastern Norway, see 948.2; southwestern Norway, 948.3; central and northern Norway, 948.4

.101 Early history to 1387

Class ancient history to 481 in 936.3

(.101 2) Ancient history to 481

(Optional number; prefer 936.3)

.102 Period of union with Denmark, 1387–1814

Including period of Kalmar Union, 1397–1523

.103 Period of union with Sweden, 1814–1905

.104 1905–

.104 1 1905–1945

.104 5 1945–1959

.104 6 1960–1969

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.104 7 1970–1979

.104 8 1980–1989

.104 9 1990–

.2 *Southeastern Norway

Add to base number 948.2 the numbers following 948.1 in 948.101–948.104, e.g., period of Kalmar Union 948.202

.3 *Southwestern Norway

Add to base number 948.3 the numbers following 948.1 in 948.101–948.104, e.g., period of Kalmar Union 948.302

.4 *Central and northern Norway

Add to base number 948.4 the numbers following 948.1 in 948.101–948.104, e.g., period of Kalmar Union 948.402

.5 *Sweden

For southern Sweden, see 948.6; central Sweden, 948.7; northern Sweden, 948.8

.501 Early history to 1523

Including period of Kalmar Union, 1397–1523

Class ancient history to 481 in 936.3

(.501 2) Ancient history to 481

(Optional number; prefer 936.3)

.502 Period of Vasa dynasty, 1523–1654

(Option: Class here Livonian War; prefer 947.043)

.503 Period of decline of power, 1654–1818

(Option: Class here Great Northern War; prefer 947.05)

.504 1818–1905

.505 1905–

.505 1 1905–1945

.505 5 1945–1959

.505 6 1960–1969

.505 7 1970–1979

.505 8 1980–1989

.505 9 1990–

.6 *Southern Sweden

Add to base number 948.6 the numbers following 948.5 in 948.501–948.505, e.g., period of Vasa dynasty 948.602

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.7 *Central Sweden

Add to base number 948.7 the numbers following 948.5 in 948.501–948.505, e.g., period of Vasa dynasty 948.702

.8 *Northern Sweden

Add to base number 948.8 the numbers following 948.5 in 948.501–949.505, e.g., period of Vasa dynasty 948.802

.9 Denmark and Finland

.900 1–.900 9 Standard subdivisions of Denmark

As modified under 930–990

> 948.901–948.905 Historical periods of Denmark

Class comprehensive works in 948.9

.901 Early history to 1387

Class ancient history to 481 in 936.3

(.901 2) Ancient history to 481

(Optional number; prefer 936.3)

.902 Period of union with Norway and Sweden, 1387–1523

Class here period of Kalmar Union, 1397–1523

.903 Period of union with Norway, 1523–1814

For Great Northern War, see 947.05

.904 1814–1906

(Option: Class here Schleswig-Holstein War; prefer 943.076)

.905 1906–

.905 1 1906–1945

.905 5 1945–1959

.905 6 1960–1969

.905 7 1970–1979

.905 8 1980–1989

.905 9 1990–

.97 *Finland

.970 1 Early history to end of Swedish rule, 1809

For Great Northern War, see 947.05

.970 2 Period of Russian rule, 1809–1917

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.970 3 1917–

.970 31 1917–1939

.970 32 1939–1945

Including Russo-Finnish War, 1939–1940
(Option: Class Russo-Finnish War in 947.0842)

.970 33 1945–1982

.970 34 1982–

949 Other parts of Europe

SUMMARY

949.1	**Northwestern islands**	
.2	**Netherlands (Holland)**	
.3	**Southern Low Countries**	**Belgium**
.4	**Switzerland**	
.5	**Greece**	
.6	**Balkan Peninsula**	
.7	**Yugoslavia and Bulgaria**	
.8	**Romania**	
.9	**Aegean Sea islands**	

.1 *Northwestern islands

.12 *Iceland

.120 1 Early history to 1262

.120 2 Medieval period, 1262–1550

.120 3 1550–1848

.120 4 Modern period, 1848–1940

Including independence under Danish crown, 1918–1944

Class 1940–1944 in 949.1205

.120 5 1940–

Class here period of Republic, 1944–

.15 †Faeroes

.2 *Netherlands (Holland)

.201 Early history to 1477

Class ancient history to 481 in 936.3

(.201 2) Ancient history to 481

(Optional number; prefer 936.3)

.202 Period of Hapsburg rule, 1477–1568

.203 Period of struggle for independence, 1568–1648

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

.204 Period of Dutch Republic, 1648–1795

Including Anglo-Dutch Wars, 1652–1653, 1665–1667; Great Wars against England, France, and allies, 1672–1678; Coalition War, 1690–1697

(Option: Class Anglo-Dutch Wars in 941.06)

.205 1795–1830

Including Batavian Republic, 1795–1806; Kingdom of Holland, 1806–1813

Class here Napoleonic era

.206 1830–1901

Class here 19th century

Class 1800–1830 in 949.205

.207 1901–

.207 1 Reign of Wilhelmina, 1890–1948

Class reign of Wilhelmina during 1890–1901 in 949.206

.207 2 Reign of Juliana, 1948–1980

.207 3 Reign of Beatrix, 1980–

.3 Southern Low Countries Belgium

.300 01–.300 09 Standard subdivisions of southern Low Countries

As modified under 930–990

.300 1–.300 9 Standard subdivisions of Belgium

As modified under 930–990

> 949.301–949.304 Historical periods of Belgium

Class comprehensive works in 949.3

.301 Early history to 1477

Class ancient history to 486 in 936.4

(.301 2) Ancient history to 486

(Optional number; prefer 936.4)

.302 Period of foreign rule, 1477–1830

.303 1830–1909

Class here 19th century

Class 1800–1830 in 949.302

.304 1909–

.304 1 Reign of Albert I, 1909–1934

.304 2 Reign of Léopold III, 1934–1951

.304 3 Reign of Baudouin I, 1951–

.35 *Luxembourg

.350 1 Early history to 1482

Class ancient history to 486 in 936.4

(.350 12) Ancient history to 486

(Option: Class here ancient history; prefer 936.4)

.350 2 Period of foreign rule, 1482–1830

.350 3 1830–1890

Class here 19th century

Class 1800–1830 in 949.3502, 1890–1899 in 949.35041

.350 4 1890–

.350 41 1890–1918

.350 42 1918–1945

.350 43 1945–

.4 *Switzerland

.401 Early history to 1291

Class ancient history to 486 in 936.4

(.401 2) Ancient history to 486

(Optional number; prefer 936.4)

.402 1291–1499

.403 1499–1648

.404 1648–1798

Including 1789–1798 [*formerly* 949.405]

.405 Napoleonic period, 1798–1815

Class here Helvetic Republic, 1798–1803

1789–1798 relocated to 949.404

.406 1815–1900

.406 2 Period of restoration, 1815–1848

.406 3 1848–1900

.407 1900–

.407 1 1900–1918

.407 2 1918–1945

.407 3 1945–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.5 *Greece

Class here Byzantine Empire

.501 Early history to 717

Including wars against Avars and Persians

Class here Eastern Roman (Byzantine) Empire, 323–717

Class ancient history to 323 in 938

(.501 2) Ancient history to 323

(Optional number; prefer 938)

Add to base number 949.5012 the numbers following 938.0 in 938.01–938.09, e.g., Persian Wars 949.50123

.502 Period of Byzantine prosperity, 717–1057

.503 Period of dissolution of Byzantine Empire, 1057–1204

.504 Period of Latin and Greek states and Turkish conquest, 1204–1453

.505 Period of Turkish domination, 1453–1821

.506 Period of monarchy, 1821–1924

Including Greco-Turkish War, 1896–1897
(Option: Class Greco-Turkish War in 956.1015)

For Balkan Wars, see 949.6

.507 1924–

.507 3 Period of Republic, 1924–1935

.507 4 Period of restoration of monarchy, 1935–1967

.507 5 Period of military junta, 1967–1974

.507 6 Period of restoration of democratic rule, 1974–

.56 *Macedonia

Add to base number 949.56 the numbers following 949.5 in 949.501–949.507, e.g., period of Republic 949.56073

Class ancient history to 323 in 938.1

.6 *Balkan Peninsula

Including Balkan Wars, 1912–1913

.61 *Turkey in Europe (Turkish Thrace)

.610 1 History to 1918

.610 11–.610 14 Early history to 1453

Add to base number 949.6101 the numbers following 949.50 in 949.501–949.504, e.g., period of Byzantine prosperity, 717–1057 949.61012

Class ancient history to 323 in 939.8

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.610 15 1453–1918

Class here period of Ottoman empire, 1453–1922

Class 1918–1922 in 949.61023

.610 2–.610 3 1918–

Add to base number 949.61 the numbers following 956.1 in 956.102–956.103, e.g., 1918–1923 949.61023

.65 *Albania

.650 1 Early history to 1912

Class ancient history to 323 in 938.1

(.650 12) Ancient history to 323

(Optional number; prefer 938.1)

.650 2 1912–1946

.650 3 Period of People's Republic, 1946–

.7 Yugoslavia and Bulgaria

.700 01–.700 09 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 930–990

.700 1–.700 9 Standard subdivisions of Yugoslavia

As modified under 930–990

> 949.701–949.702 Historical periods of Yugoslavia

Class comprehensive works in 949.7

.701 Early history to 1918

Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.8

For Balkan Wars, see 949.6

(.701 2) Ancient history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.8)

.702 1918–

.702 1 Period of Kingdom, 1918–1939

Class 1939–1941 in 949.7022

.702 2 Period of World War II, 1939–1945

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.702 3 Administration of Josip Broz Tito, 1945–1980

.702 4 1980–

.71 *Serbia

.710 1 Early history to 1918

Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.8

(.710 11) Ancient history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.8)

.710 12 Ca. 640–1389

.710 13 Turkish period, 1389–1878

For 1804–1878, see 949.71014

.710 14 Period of revolt and autonomy, 1804–1878

.710 15 Period of independence, 1878–1918

.710 2 1918–

Class here 20th century

Add to base number 949.7102 the numbers following 949.702 in 949.7021–949.7024, e.g., period of World War II 949.71022

Class 1901–1918 in 949.71015

.77 *Bulgaria

.770 1 Early history to 1878

Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.8

(.770 12) Ancient history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.8)

.770 13 Ca. 640–1018

Class here First Bulgarian Empire, ca. 680–1014

.770 14 Period of Byzantine rule and Second Bulgarian Empire, 1018–1396

.770 15 Turkish period, 1396–1878

.770 2 1878–1946

.770 22 1878–1918

For Balkan Wars, see 949.6

.770 23 1918–1946

.770 3 Period of People's Republic, 1946–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.8 *Romania

.801 Early history to 1861

Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.8

(.801 2) Ancient history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.8)

.801 3 Ca. 640–1250

.801 4 Period of Wallachia and Moldavia principalities, 1250–ca. 1500

.801 5 Turkish period, ca. 1500–1821

Including reign of Michael the Brave, 1593–1601; Phanarist period, 1711–1821

.801 6 1821–1861

.802 Period of monarchy, 1861–1947

Class here period of Kingdom, 1881–1947

For Balkan Wars, see 949.6

.803 Period of People's Republic, 1947–

.9 *Aegean Sea islands

Add to base number 949.9 the numbers following 949.5 in 949.501–949.507, e.g., early Byzantine period 949.901

(Option: Class ancient history in 949.9012; prefer 939.1)

Class ancient history to 323 in 939.1

.98 *Crete

.980 1 Early history to 961

Class ancient history to 323 in 939.18

(.980 12) Ancient history to 323

(Optional number; prefer 939.18)

Add to base number 949.98012 the numbers following 938.0 in 938.01–938.09, e.g., mythical age to 775 B.C. 949.980121

.980 2 961–1664

.980 3 Period of Turkish domination, 1664–1898

.980 4 1898–

.980 41 Period of autonomy, 1898–1913

.980 42 Period of incorporation into Greece, 1913–1924

.980 43–.980 46 1924–

Add to base number 949.9804 the numbers following 949.507 in 949.5073–949.5076, e.g., restoration of monarchy 949.98044

*Add as instructed under 930–990

950 General history of Asia Orient Far East

SUMMARY

950.01–.09 Standard subdivisions
.1–.4 [Historical periods]
951 China and adjacent areas
952 Japan
953 Arabian Peninsula and adjacent areas
954 South Asia India
955 Iran
956 Middle East (Near East)
957 Siberia (Asiatic Russia)
958 Central Asia
959 Southeast Asia

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 930–990

.1 Early history to 1162

.2 Period of Mongol and Tatar Empires, 1162–1480

Including reigns of Genghis Khan, ca. 1200–1227; Kublai Khan, ca. 1259–1294; Timur (Tamerlane), ca. 1336–1405

.3 Period of European exploration and penetration, 1480–1905

.4 1905–

.41 1905–1945

.42 1945–

.424 1945–1949

.425 1950–1959

.426 1960–1969

.427 1970–1979

.428 1980–1989

.429 1990–1999

951 China and adjacent areas

.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 930–990

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of China

As modified under 930–990

> 951.01–951.05 Historical periods of China

Class comprehensive works in 951

.01 Early history to 960

Class ancient history to 420 in 931

(.011–.014) Ancient history to 420

(Optional numbers; prefer 931)

Add to base number 951.01 the numbers following 931.0 in 931.01–931.04, e.g., Shang dynasty 951.012

.015 Period of Northern and Southern dynasties, 420–581

.016 Period of Sui dynasty, 581–618

.017 Period of T'ang dynasty, 618–907

.018 Period of Five dynasties and Ten kingdoms, 907–960

.02 960–1644

.024 Period of Sung dynasty, 960–1279

.025 Period of Yüan (Mongol) dynasty, 1271–1368

Class period of Yüan dynasty during 1271–1279 in 951.024

.026 Period of Ming dynasty, 1368–1644

.03 Period of Ch'ing (Manchu) dynasty, 1644–1912

.032 1644–1795

.033 1796–1850

Including Opium War, 1840–1842

Class here 19th century

Class 1850–1864 in 951.034, 1864–1899 in 951.035

.034 Period of Taiping Rebellion, 1850–1864

.035 1864–1911

Including Boxer Rebellion, 1899–1901

(Option: Class here Sino-Japanese War, 1894–1895; prefer 952.031)

.036 Period of Revolution of 1911–1912

.04 Period of Republic, 1912–1949

.041 1912–1927

.042 Period of nationalist government, 1927–1949

Including Sino-Japanese Conflict during 1937–1941
(Option: Class Sino-Japanese Conflict during 1937–1941 in 952.033)

Class comprehensive works on Sino-Japanese Conflict, 1937–1945, in 940.53

.05 Period of People's Republic, 1949–

Class here 20th century

Class a specific part of 20th century not provided for here with the part, e.g., Revolution of 1911–1912 951.036

.055 1949–1959

.056 1960–1969

Including Cultural Revolution

.057 1970–1979

.058 1980–1989

.059 1990–

.2 *Southeastern China and adjacent areas

.24 *East China Sea area

.249 *Taiwan (Formosa) and adjacent islands

.249 02 Early history to 1683

.249 03 Chinese period, 1683–1895

.249 04 Japanese period, 1895–1945

.249 05 Period of Republic of China (Nationalist China), 1945–

.25 *Hong Kong

.250 1–.250 3 Chinese period to 1843

Add to base number 951.250 the numbers following 951.0 in 951.01–951.03, e.g., period of Ming dynasty 951.25026

.250 4 Period as a British dependency, 1843–

For 1945– , see 951.2505

.250 5 1945–

.26 †Macao

Class ancient history in 931

.7 *Mongolia

.73 †Outer Mongolia (Mongolian People's Republic)

.9 *Korea

.901 Early history to 1392

.902 Period of Yi dynasty, 1392–1910

.903 Japanese period, 1910–1945

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

.904 1945–

.904 1 1945–1950

.904 2 Korean War, 1950–1953

.904 3 1953–

952 *Japan

.01 Early history to 1185

.02 Feudal period, 1185–1868

.021 Kamakura period, 1185–1334

.022 Namboku period, 1334–1392

.023 Muromachi period, 1392–1573

.024 Momoyama period, 1573–1603

.025 Tokugawa (Edo) period, 1603–1868

.03 1868–1945

.031 Meiji period, 1868–1912

Including Sino-Japanese War, 1894–1895; Russo-Japanese War, 1904–1905

(Option: Class Sino-Japanese War in 951.035, Russo-Japanese War in 947.083)

.032 Taishō period, 1912–1926

.033 Shōwa period, 1926–

(Option: Class here Sino-Japanese Conflict, 1937–1941; prefer 951.042)

For 1945– , see 952.04

.04 1945–

.044 1945–1949

.045 1950–1959

.046 1960–1969

.047 1970–1979

.048 1980–1989

.049 1990–

953 *Arabian Peninsula and adjacent areas

Class early history to 622 in 939.49

(.01) Early history to 622

(Optional number; prefer 939.49)

.02 622–1517

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.03 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1517–1740

Class period of struggles to overthrow Turks in 953.04

.04 1740–1926

Class here period of struggles to overthrow Turks, 1740–1918

.05 1926–

.052 1926–1964

.053 1964–

.1 *Sinai (Sinai Peninsula)

Governorate of Egypt

Add to base number 953.1 the numbers following 962 in 962.01–962.05, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 953.103

Class ancient history in 939.48

.3 †Southwestern coast of Arabia

Class ancient history in 939.49

.32 †Yemen (Yemen Arab Republic)

Class ancient history in 939.49

.35 †Southern Yemen (People's Democratic Republic of Yemen)

Class ancient history in 939.49

.5 †Oman and United Arab Emirates

Class ancient history in 939.49

.53 †Oman

Class ancient history in 939.49

.57 †United Arab Emirates

Class ancient history in 939.49

.6 †Persian Gulf States

Class ancient history in 939.49

For Oman and United Arab Emirates, see 953.5

.63 †Qatar

Class ancient history in 939.49

.65 †Bahrain

Class ancient history in 939.49

.67 †Kuwait

Class ancient history in 939.49

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–99; however, do not add historical periods

.8 *Saudi Arabia

Class ancient history in 939.49

954 *South Asia India

Class history of India to 647 in 934

(.01) Early history to 647

(Optional number; prefer 934)

Add to base number 954.01 the numbers following 934.0 in 934.01–934.07, e.g., reign of Aśoka 954.0145

SUMMARY

954.02	**647–1785**
.03	**Period of British rule, 1785–1947**
.04	**1947–1971**
.05	**1971–**

.02 647–1785

.021 647–997

.022 Period of Muslim conquests, 997–1206

.022 3 Period of Ghazni dynasty, 997–1196

.022 5 Period of Ghor dynasty, 1196–1206

.023 1206–1414

.023 2 Period of slave kings of Delhi, 1206–1290

.023 4 Period of Khalji dynasty, 1290–1320

.023 6 Period of Tughluk dynasty, 1320–1414

.024 1414–1526

.024 2 Period of Sayyid dynasty, 1414–1451

.024 5 Period of Lodi dynasty, 1451–1526

.025 Period of Mogul Empire, 1526–1707

.025 2 Reign of Babur, 1526–1530

.025 3 Reign of Humayun, 1530–1556

.025 4 Reign of Akbar, 1556–1605

.025 6 Reign of Jahangir, 1605–1627

.025 7 Reign of Shahjahan, 1628–1658

.025 8 Reign of Aurangzeb, 1658–1707

.029 Period of European penetration, 1707–1785

.029 2 1707–1744

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.029 4 Period of Anglo-French conflict, 1744–1757

Including Battle of Plassey, 1757

.029 6 1757–1772

Including governorship of Lord Clive, 1757–1767

.029 8 Governorship of Warren Hastings, 1772–1785

.03 Period of British rule, 1785–1947

Class governorship of Lord Clive in 954.0296, of Warren Hastings in 954.0298

.031 Period of East India Company, 1785–1858

.031 1 Governorships of Sir John Macpherson, Marquis Cornwallis (1st term), John Shore (Lord Teignmouth), 1785–1798

.031 2 Governorships of Marquess Wellesley, Marquess Cornwallis (2nd term), Sir George Barlow, 1798–1807

.031 3 Governorships of 1st Earl of Minto, Marquess of Hastings, Earl Amherst, 1807–1828

.031 4 Governorships of Lord Bentinck, Lord Metcalfe, Earl of Auckland, 1828–1842

.031 5 Governorships of Earl of Ellenborough and Viscount Hardinge, 1842–1848

.031 6 Governorship of Marquess of Dalhousie, 1848–1856

.031 7 Governorship of Earl Canning, 1856–1862

Including Sepoy Mutiny, 1857–1858

Class governorship of Earl Canning during 1858–1862 in 954.0351

.035 Period of control by crown, 1858–1947

.035 1 Governorships of Earl Canning, 8th Earl of Elgin, Baron Lawrence, 1858–1868

.035 2 Governorships of Earl of Mayo and Earl of Northbrook, 1869–1876

.035 3 Governorships of Earl of Lytton and Marquess of Ripon, 1876–1884

.035 4 Governorships of Marquis of Dufferin and Marquess of Lansdowne, 1884–1894

.035 5 Governorships of 9th Earl of Elgin and Marquis of Curzon, 1894–1905

.035 6 Governorships of 4th Earl of Minto and Baron Hardinge, 1905–1916

.035 7 Governorships of Viscount Chelmsford and Marquess of Reading, 1916–1926

.035 8 Governorships of Earl of Halifax and Marquess of Willingdon, 1926–1936

.035 9 Governorships of Marquess of Linlithgow, Earl of Wavell, Earl Mountbatten, 1936–1947

.04 1947–1971

.042 Prime ministership of Jawaharlal Nehru, 1947–1964

.043 Prime ministership of Lal Bahadur Shastri, 1964–1966

(Option: Class here Indo-Pakistan War, 1965; prefer 954.9045)

.045 First prime ministership of Indira Gandhi, 1966–1977

Class first prime ministership of Indira Gandhi during 1971–1977 in 954.051

.05 1971–

.051 Later half of first prime ministership of Indira Gandhi, 1971–1977

(Option: Class here Indo-Pakistan War, 1971; prefer 954.9205)

.052 1977–

Contains prime ministerships of Moraji Desai, 1977–1979, Charan Singh, 1979, Rajiv Gandhi, 1984– ; second prime ministership of Indira Gandhi, 1980–1984

.9 Other jurisdictions

Class here *Pakistan (West and East, 1947–1971)

.904 1947–1971

.904 2 Administration of Mahomed Ali Jinnah, 1947–1948

.904 3 1948–1958

.904 5 Administration of Mohammad Ayub Khan, 1958–1969

Including Indo-Pakistan War, 1965
(Option: Class Indo-Pakistan War, 1965, in 954.043)

.904 6 Administration of Aga Muhammad Yahya Khan, 1969–1971

.91 *Pakistan

.910 4 Period of union of West and East Pakistan, 1947–1971

Add to base number 954.9104 the numbers following 954.904 in 954.9042–954.9046, e.g., administration of Mohammad Ayub Khan 954.91045

.910 5 1971–

For Indo-Pakistan War, 1971, see 954.9205

.92 *Bangladesh

.920 4 Period of union of East and West Pakistan, 1947–1971

Add to base number 954.9204 the numbers following 954.904 in 954.9042–954.9046, e.g., administration of Mahomed Ali Jinnah 954.92042

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.920 5 1971–

Including Indo-Pakistan War, 1971
(Option: Class Indo-Pakistan War, 1971, in 954.051)

.93 *Sri Lanka

.930 1 Early history to 1795

.930 2 British period, 1795–1948

.930 3 1948–

.95 †Maldives

.96 †Nepal

.98 †Bhutan

955 *Iran

Class ancient history to 637 in 935

(.01) Early history to 637

(Optional number; prefer 935)

Add to base number 955.01 the numbers following 935.0 in 935.01–935.07, e.g., period of Sassanian Empire 955.017

.02 Period of Arab, Turkish, Mongol, Turkoman domination, 637–1499

.03 Period of Persian dynasties, 1499–1794

.04 1794–1906

.05 1906–

.051 1906–1925

.052 Reign of Reza Shah Pahlavi, 1925–1941

.053 Reign of Mohammed Reza Pahlavi, 1941–1979

.054 1979–

Class here period of Ruhollah Khomeini; Iraqi-Iranian Conflict, 1980–
(Option: Class Iraqi-Iranian Conflict, 1980– in 956.7043)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

956 *Middle East (Near East)

SUMMARY

956.01–.05	**[Historical periods]**
.1	**Turkey and Cyprus**
.2	**Western Turkey**
.3	**North central Turkey**
.4	**South central Turkey and Cyprus**
.5	**East central Turkey**
.6	**Eastern Turkey**
.7	**Iraq**
.9	**Eastern Mediterranean**

.01 Early history to 1900

Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.4

(.012) Ancient history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.4)

.013 640–1000

.014 Period of Seljuk supremacy, 1000–1300

.015 1300–1900

Class here Ottoman Empire, ca. 1300–1922

Class 1900–1918 in 956.02; 1918–1922 in 956.03; a specific part of the Ottoman Empire with the part, e.g., Ottoman Empire in Turkey 956.1015

.02 1900–1918

.03 1918–1945

.04 1945–1980

.042 Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949

.044 Sinai Campaign, 1956

.046 Israel-Arab War, 1967 (Six Days' War)

.048 Israel-Arab War, 1973 (Yom Kippur War)

.05 1980–

.052 Israel-Lebanon-Syria Conflict, 1982–1985

.053 1985–

.1 Turkey and Cyprus

For divisions of Turkey and Cyprus, see 956.2–956.6

.100 01–.100 09 Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons

As modified under 930–990

.100 1–.100 9 Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Turkey

As modified under 930–990

*Add as instructed under 930–990

> 956.101–956.103 Historical periods of Turkey

Class comprehensive works in 956.1

.101 Early history to 1918

Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.2

(.101 2) Ancient history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.2)

.101 3 640–1100

.101 4 Period of Seljuk rule, 1100–1300

.101 5 1300–1918

Class here period of Ottoman Empire, 1300–1922

(Option: Class here Russo-Turkish War of 1877–1878, Greco-Turkish War; prefer 947.081 for Russo-Turkish War of 1877–1878, 949.506 for Greco-Turkish War)

Class 1918–1922 in 956.1023

.102 1918–1950

Class here 20th century; Republic, 1923–

Class 1900–1918 in 956.1015, 1950– in 956.103

.102 3 1918–1923

.102 4 Administration of Kemal Ataturk, 1923–1938

.102 5 Administration of Ismet Inonu, 1938–1950

Including 1945–1950 [*formerly also* 956.1035]

.103 1950–

.103 5 1950–1959

1945–1950 relocated to 956.1025

.103 6 1960–1969

.103 7 1970–1979

.103 8 1980–1989

.103 9 1990–1999

> **956.2–956.6 Divisions of Turkey and Cyprus**

Class comprehensive works in 956.1

For Turkey in Europe, see 949.61

.2 *Western Turkey

Add to base number 956.2 the numbers following 956.1 in 956.101–956.103, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 956.2015

Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.2

.3 *North central Turkey

Add to base number 956.3 the numbers following 956.1 in 956.101–956.103, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 956.3015

Class ancient Bithyia to ca. 640 in 939.25, ancient Paphlagonia in 939.31, ancient Galatia in 939.32

.4 *South central Turkey and Cyprus

Add to base number 956.4 the numbers following 956.1 in 956.101–956.103, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 956.4015

Class ancient Pisidia to ca. 640 in 939.27, ancient Lycia in 939.28, ancient Pamphylia in 939.29, ancient Cappadocia in 939.34, ancient Cilicia in 939.35, ancient Commagene in 939.36

.45 *Cyprus

.450 1 Early history to 1571

Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.37

(.450 12) Ancient history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.37)

.450 2 1571–1878

.450 3 British period, 1878–1960

.450 4 1960–

.5 *East central Turkey

Add to base number 956.5 the numbers following 956.1 in 956.101–956.103, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 956.5015

Class ancient history to ca. 640 in 939.33

.6 *Eastern Turkey

Add to base number 956.6 the numbers following 956.1 in 956.101–956.103, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 956.6015

Class ancient Armenia to ca. 640 in 939.55

.7 *Iraq

Class ancient history to 637 in 935

*Add as instructed under 930–990

(.701) Ancient history to 637

(Optional number; prefer 935 for Mesopotamia, 939.47 for Arabia Deserta)

Add to base number 956.701 the numbers following 935.0 in 935.01–935.07, e.g., Hellenistic period 956.7016

.702 637–1553

.703 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1553–1920

.704 1920–

.704 1 Period of mandate, 1920–1932

Class here reign of Faisal I, 1921–1933

Class reign of Faisal I during 1932–1933 in 956.7042

.704 2 Period of independent monarchy, 1932–1958

Contains reigns of Ghazi I, Faisal II

.704 3 Period of Republic, 1958–

(Option: Class here Iraqi-Iranian Conflict, 1980– ; prefer 955.054)

.9 *Eastern Mediterranean

.91 *Syria

Class early history to ca. 640 in 939.43

(.910 1) Early history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.43)

.910 2 640–1516

.910 3 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1516–1920

.910 4 1920–

.910 41 Period of mandate, 1920–1945

.910 42 Period of Republic, 1945–

Including period as a part of United Arab Republic, 1958–1961

Class Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949, in 956.042; Israel-Arab War, 1967, in 956.046; Israel-Arab War, 1973, in 956.048; Israel-Lebanon-Syria Conflict, 1982–1985, in 956.052

.92 *Lebanon

Class early history to ca. 640 in 939.44

(.920 2) Early history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.44)

.920 3 640–1926

.920 32 640–1517

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.920 34 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1517–1920

Including period of autonomy, 1861–1918

.920 35 Period of mandate, 1920–1941

Class 1926–1941 in 956.92042

.920 4 1926–

.920 42 1926–1941

.920 43 1941–

Class Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949, in 956.042

For 1975– , see 956.92044

.920 44 Period of civil war and religious strife, 1975–

Class Israel-Lebanon-Syria Conflict, 1982–1985, in 956.052

.94 *Palestine Israel

Class early history to 70 in 933

See also 909.04924 for world history of Jews

[.940 01] Zionism

Relocated to 320.54095694

(.940 1) Early history to 70

(Optional number; prefer 933)

Add to base number 956.9401 the numbers following 933.0 in 933.01–933.05, e.g., age of Solomon 956.94012

.940 2 Mishnaic and Talmudic periods, 70–640

.940 3 640–1917

Including period of Ottoman Empire

.940 4 Period of British control, 1917–1948

.940 5 1948–

.940 52 1948–1967

Class Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949, in 956.042; Sinai Campaign, 1956, in 956.044; Israel-Arab War, 1967, in 956.046

.940 53 1967–1974

Class Israel-Arab War, 1973, in 956.048

.940 54 1974–

Class Israel-Lebanon-Syria Conflict, 1982–1985, in 956.052

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.949 *Southern district

Add to base number 956.949 the numbers following 956.94 in 956.9401–956.9405, e.g., period of British control 956.94904

Class ancient Judah, Judea in 933; ancient Edom in 939.46

.95 *Jordan

Class early history to 70 in 933

(.950 1) Early history to 70

(Optional number; prefer 933)

.950 2 70–640

.950 3 640–1923

Including period of Ottoman Empire

.950 4 1923–

.950 42 Period of mandate, 1923–1946

.950 43 Period of Hashemite Kingdom, 1946–

Class Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949, in 956.042; Israel-Arab War, 1967, in 956.046

For 1967– , see 956.95044

.950 44 1967–

.956 *Karak district

Add to base number 956.956 the numbers following 956.95 in 956.9501–956.9504, e.g., period of Hashemite Kingdom 956.956043

Class ancient Moab to 70 in 939.46

.957 *Maan district

Add to base number 956.957 the numbers following 956.95 in 956.9501–956.9504, e.g., period of Hashemite Kingdom 956.957043

Class ancient Petra to 70 in 939.48

957 *Siberia (Asiatic Russia)

.03 Pre-Russian period to 1581

.07 1581–1855

.08 1855–

Add to base number 957.08 the numbers following 947.08 in 947.081–947.085, e.g., period of Siberia under Stalin 957.0842

958 *Central Asia

(Option: Class here early history to ca. 640; prefer 939.6)

Class early history to ca. 640 in 939.6

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.1 *Afghanistan

.101 Early history to 1221

Earliest history to ca. 640 relocated to 939.6

.102 1221–1709

.103 1709–1919

.104 1919–

.104 2 1919–1933

.104 3 Reign of Muhammad Zahir Shah, 1933–1973

.104 4 Period of Republic, 1973–1978

.104 5 Period of Democratic Republic, 1978–

.4 *Turkestan Soviet Central Asia

For Turkmenistan, see 958.5, Tadzhikistan, 958.6; Uzbekistan, 958.7

.407 Pre-Russian period to 1855

Class early history to ca. 640 in 939.6

.408 Russian period, 1855–

Add to base number 958.408 the numbers following 947.08 in 947.081–947.085, e.g., later 20th century 958.4085

.5 *Turkmenistan (Turkmen Soviet Socialist Republic)

Add to base number 958.5 the numbers following 958.4 in 958.407–958.408, e.g., pre-Russian period 958.507

.6 *Tadzhikistan (Tadzhik Soviet Socialist Republic)

Add to base number 958.6 the numbers following 958.4 in 958.407–958.408, e.g., Russian period 958.608

.7 *Uzbekistan (Uzbek Soviet Socialist Republic)

Add to base number 958.7 the numbers following 958.4 in 958.407–958.408, e.g., later 20th century 958.7085

959 *Southeast Asia

SUMMARY

959.01–.05	**[Historical periods]**
.1	**Burma**
.3	**Thailand**
.4	**Laos**
.5	**Commonwealth of Nations territories Malaysia**
.6	**Cambodia (Khmer Republic, Kampuchea)**
.7	**Vietnam**
.8	**Indonesia**
.9	**Philippines**

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.01 Early history to 1499
.02 1500–1699
.03 1700–1799
.04 1800–1899
.05 1900–
.051 1900–1941
.052 Period of Japanese occupation, 1941–1945
.053 1945–
.1 *Burma
.102 Early history to 1826
.103 Period of British conquest, 1826–1885
.104 Period of British rule, 1886–1948
.105 1948–
.3 *Thailand
.302 Early history to 1782
.302 1 Earliest history to 1219
.302 2 Sukhothai period, 1219–1350
.302 3 Ayutthaya period, 1350–1767
.302 4 Reign of Phraya Taksin, 1767–1782
.303 1782–1910
.303 1 Reign of Phutthayotfa Chulalok (Rama I), 1782–1809
.303 2 Reign of Phutthalœtla Naphalai (Rama II), 1809–1824
.303 3 Reign of Nangklao (Rama III), 1824–1851
.303 4 Reign of Mongkut (Rama IV), 1851–1868
.303 5 Reign of Chulalongkorn (Rama V), 1868–1910
.304 1910–
.304 1 Reign of Vajiravudh (Rama VI), 1910–1925
.304 2 Reign of Prajadhipok (Rama VII), 1925–1935
.304 3 Reign of Ananda Mahidol (Rama VIII), 1935–1946
.304 4 Reign of Bhumibol Adulyadej (Rama IX), 1946–
.4 *Laos
.403 Early history to 1949
Including period as a part of French Indochina, 1893–1954

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.404 1949–

Class here 20th century

Class 1900–1949 in 959.403, military operations in Laos during Vietnamese War in 959.70434

.5 *Commonwealth of Nations territories Malaysia

.503 Early history to 1946

.504 1946–1963

.505 Period of federation, 1963–

Class here 20th century

Class 1900–1946 in 959.503, 1946–1963 in 959.504

.505 1 Prime ministership of Tunku Abdul Rahman Putra Al-Haj, 1963–1970

Including separation of Singapore, 1965

.505 2 Prime ministership of Tun Haji Abdul Razak bin Dato' Hussein, 1971–1976

.505 3 Prime ministership of Datuk Hussein Onn, 1976–1981

.505 4 Prime ministership of Mahathir bin Mohamad, 1981–

.55 *Brunei

.550 3 Early history to 1946

.550 5 1946–

Class here 20th century

Class 1900–1946 in 959.5503

.57 *Singapore

.570 3 Early history to 1946

.570 4 1946–1963

.570 5 Periods of federation with Malaysia, 1963–1965, and separate nationhood, 1965–

Class here 20th century

Class 1900–1946 in 959.5703, 1946–1963 in 959.5704

.6 *Cambodia (Khmer Republic, Kampuchea)

.603 Early history to 1949

Including period as a part of French Indochina, 1863–1949

.604 1949–

Class here 20th century

Class 1900–1949 in 959.603, military operations in Cambodia during Vietnamese War in 959.70434

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.7 *Vietnam

.703 Early history to 1949

Including period as a part of French Indochina, 1883–1954

Class here comprehensive works on French Indochina

For Laos as a part of French Indochina, see 959.403; Cambodia as a part of French Indochina, 959.603; Indochinese War, 1946–1954, 959.7041

.704 1949–

.704 1 Indochinese War, 1946–1954

.704 2 1954–1961

.704 3 Vietnamese War, 1961–1975

[.704 308] Vietnamese War with respect to kinds of persons

Do not use; class 959.70431

.704 309 2 Persons

Class personal narratives in 959.70438

.704 31 Social, political, economic history

Including causes, results, efforts to preserve or restore peace, relation of specific classes of persons to the war, internment camps

Class general diplomatic history in 959.70432; prisoner-of-war camps in 959.70437; results in and effects on a specific country with history of the country, e.g., on United States 973.923

.704 32 Diplomatic history

Class diplomatic causes, efforts to preserve or restore peace, diplomatic results in 959.70431

.704 33 Participation of specific countries, localities, groups

Class military participation of specific countries, localities, groups in 959.70434

.704 331 North Vietnam

.704 332 South Vietnam

.704 332 2 National Liberation Front

Class here Vietcong

.704 332 5 Government forces

.704 334–.704 339 Foreign participation

Add to base number 959.70433 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., United States participation 959.7043373

Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., efforts to preserve or restore peace 959.70431

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.704 34 Military operations

Including military units

Class units engaged in a specific type of operation or service with the operation or service, e.g., medical units 959.70437

.704 342 Land operations

.704 345 Naval operations

.704 348 Air operations

.704 36 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Including decorations and awards, rolls of honor, cemeteries, monuments

.704 37 Prisoner-of-war camps, health and social services

.704 38 Other topics

Including personal narratives, military life and customs, unconventional warfare, propaganda

Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., medical units 959.70437

.704 4 1975–

.8 *Indonesia

.801 Early history to 1602

.801 2 Earliest history to 1478

.801 5 Period of Muslim rule, 1478–1602

.802 Dutch period, 1602–1945

.802 1 Period of Dutch East India Company, 1602–1798

.802 2 Periods under control of British and Netherlands governments, 1798–1945

Including Java War, 1825–1830

.803 Period of Republic, 1945–

Class here 20th century

Class 1900–1945 in 959.8022

.803 5 1945–1959

Class here administration of Sukarno, 1945–1967

Class administration of Sukarno during 1960–1967 in 959.8036

.803 6 1960–1969

.803 7 1970–1979

.803 8 1980–1989

.803 9 1990–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.9 *Philippines

.901 Early history to 1564

.902 Spanish period, 1564–1898

.902 7 Period of insurrection against Spanish, 1896–1898

.903 United States period, 1898–1946

.903 1 Philippine-American War, 1898–1901

.903 2 Period of United States rule, 1901–1935

.903 5 Period of Commonwealth, 1935–1946

.904 Period of Republic, 1946–

.904 1 Administration of Manuel Roxas, 1946–1948

.904 2 Administration of Elpidio Quirino, 1948–1954

.904 3 Administration of Ramon Magsaysay, 1954–1957

.904 4 Administration of Carlos Garcia, 1957–1961

.904 5 Administration of Diosdado Macapagal, 1961–1965

.904 6 Administration of Ferdinand Marcos, 1965–1986

.904 7 Administration of Corazon Cojuangco Aquino, 1986–

960 General history of Africa

SUMMARY

960.01–.09 Standard subdivisions
.1–.3 [Historical periods]
961 Tunisia and Libya
962 Egypt and Sudan
963 Ethiopia
964 Northwest African coast and offshore islands Morocco
965 Algeria
966 West Africa and offshore islands
967 Central Africa and offshore islands
968 Southern Africa Republic of South Africa
969 South Indian Ocean islands

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 930–990

.1 Early history to 640

.2 640–1885

.21 640–1450

.22 1450–1799

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.23 1800–1885

1885–1899 relocated to 960.312

.3 1885–

.31 1885–1945

.312 1885–1914

Including 1885–1899 [*formerly* 960.23]

.314 1914–1918

.316 1918–1945

.32 1945–

.324 1945–1949

.325 1950–1959

.326 1960–1969

.327 1970–1979

.328 1980–1989

.329 1990–1999

961 *Tunisia and Libya

Class here North Africa

Class early history to ca. 640 in 939.7

(.01) Early history to ca. 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.7)

.02 Periods of Arab rule and Ottoman Empire, ca. 640–1830

.022 Period of Arab rule, ca. 640–ca. 1520

.023 Period of Ottoman Empire, ca. 1520–1830

(Option: Class here Tripolitan War with the United States, United States War with Algiers; prefer 973.47 for Tripolitan War, 973.53 for War with Algiers)

.03 Period of European conquest and hegemony, 1830–1950

Including 20th century

Class 1950– in 961.04

.04 1950–

.045 1950–1959

.046 1960–1969

.047 1970–1979

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.048 1980–1989

.049 1990–1999

.1 *Tunisia

Class early history to 647 in 939.73

(.101) Early history to 647

(Optional number; prefer 939.73)

.102 Period of Arab rule, 647–1516

.103 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1516–1881

.104 1881–1956

.105 1956–

.105 1 Administration of Habib Bourguiba, 1956–1987

.105 2 1987–

.2 *Libya

Class early history to 644 in 939.74

(.201) Early history to 644

(Optional number; prefer 939.74)

.202 Periods of Arab rule and Ottoman Empire, 644–1911

.203 Period of Italian rule, 1911–1952

.204 1952–

.204 1 Reign of Idris I, 1952–1969

.204 2 Period of Muammar Qaddafi, 1969–

962 Egypt and Sudan

SUMMARY

962.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of Egypt and Sudan
.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Egypt
.02–.05 Historical periods of Egypt
.4 Sudan
.5 Eastern and Northern regions of Sudan
.6 Khartoum province and Central region of Sudan
.7 Darfur region of Sudan
.8 Kordofan region of Sudan
.9 Southern regions of Sudan

.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of Egypt and Sudan

As modified under 930–990

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Egypt

As modified under 930–990

*Add as instructed under 930–990

(.01) Early history to 640

(Optional number; prefer 932)

Add to base number 962.01 the numbers following 932.0 in 932.01–932.02, e.g., period of New Kingdom 962.0114

> 962.02–962.05 Historical periods of Egypt

Class comprehensive works in 962, early history in 932

(Option: Class early history in 962.01; prefer 932)

.02 Period of Arab rule, 640–1517

.03 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1517–1882

.04 Period of British occupation and protectorate, 1882–1922

.05 1922–

.051 Reign of Fuad I, 1922–1936

.052 Reign of Faruk I, 1936–1952, and regency (Fuad II), 1952–1953

For Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949, see 956.042

.053 Administrations of Mohammed Naguib and Gamal Abdel Nasser, 1953–1970

Including United Arab Republic, 1958–1961

Class Syrian part of United Arab Republic in 956.91042

For Sinai Campaign, 1956, see 956.044; Israel-Arab War, 1967, 956.046

.054 Administration of Anwar Sadat, 1970–1981

For Israel-Arab War, 1973, see 956.048

.055 1981–

Including administration of Muhammad Hosni Mubarak, 1981–

.4 *Sudan

For parts of Sudan, see 962.5–962.9

.401 Early history to 500

.402 500–1820

Specific kingdoms relocated to area of the kingdom in 962.5–962.9, e.g., kingdom of Nobatia 962.5022, of Alwa 962.62022

.402 2 Period of Christian kingdoms, 500–1504

.402 3 Period of Funj Sultanate, 1504–1820

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.403 Period as Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, 1820–1956

Class here period of Egyptian and British rule

.404 1956–

Including administration of Jafar Muhammad Numayri, 1969–1985

> **962.5–962.9 Parts of Sudan**

Class comprehensive works in 962.4

.5 *Eastern and Northern regions of Sudan

Class early history to 500 in 939.78

(.501) Early history to 500

Class here ancient Ethiopia

(Optional number; prefer 939.78)

.502 500–1820

.502 2 Period of Christian kingdoms, 500–1504

Examples: kingdoms of Mukhara, Nobatia [*both formerly* 962.402]

.502 3 Period of Funji Sultanate, 1504–1820

.503 Period as a part of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, 1820–1956

.504 1956–

.6 *Khartoum province and Central region of Sudan

Add to base number 962.6 the numbers following 962.4 in 962.401–962.404, e.g., period as a part of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan 962.603

.7 *Darfur region of Sudan

Add to base number 962.7 the numbers following 962.4 in 962.401–962.404, e.g., period as a part of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan 962.703

.8 *Kordofan region of Sudan

Add to base number 962.8 the numbers following 962.4 in 962.401–962.404, e.g., period as a part of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan 962.803

.9 *Southern regions of Sudan

Add to base number 962.9 the numbers following 962.4 in 962.401–962.404, e.g., period as a part of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan 962.903

963 *Ethiopia

.01 Early history to 640

Kingdom of Axum relocated to 963.501

See also 939.78 for ancient Ethiopia (a part of what is now modern Sudan, not modern Ethiopia)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.02 640–1543

.03 1543–1855

.04 1855–1913

.041 Reign of Theodore II, 1855–1868

.042 1868–1889

Including reign of John IV, 1872–1889

.043 Reign of Menelik II, 1889–1913

Including reign of Menelik II during 1889–1913 [*formerly* 963.052], Ethiopian War, 1895–1896
(Option: Class Ethiopian War in 945.091)

.05 1913–1941

Class here 20th century

Class 1900–1913 in 963.043, 1941–1974 in 963.06, 1974– in 963.07

[.052] Reign of Menelik II during 1889–1913

Relocated to 963.043

.053 Reign of Lij Yasu, 1913–1916

.054 Period of Jah Rastafari (Haile Selassie) as regent and king, 1917–1930

.055 Reign of Haile Selassie (Jah Rastafari) as emperor, 1930–1974

Class reign of Haile Selassie during 1935–1974 in 963.056–963.06

.056 Italo-Ethiopian War, 1935–1936

(Option: Class in 945.091)

.057 Period of Italian rule, 1936–1941

.06 1941–1974

Including deposition of Haile Selassie, 1974

.07 1974–

Including chairmanship of Mengistu Haile-Mariam, 1977– ; Somali-Ethiopian conflicts, 1977–

.5 *Eritrea province

.501 Early history to 640

Including period of kingdom of Axum [*formerly* 963.01]

964 Northwest African coast and offshore islands Morocco

.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of northwest African coast and offshore islands

As modified under 930–990

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Morocco

As modified under 930–990

(.01) Ancient history to 647

(Optional number; prefer 939.71)

> 964.02–964.05 Historical periods of Morocco

Class comprehensive works in 964, early history to 647 in 939.71

(Option: Class early history to 647 in 964.01; prefer 939.71)

.02 Periods of Arab and Berber rule, 647–1830

.03 1830–1899

Including Spanish-Moroccan War, 1859–1860
(Option: Class Spanish-Moroccan War in 946.072)

Class here 19th century

Class 1800–1830 in 964.02

.04 1900–1956

Including reign of Muhammad V, 1927–1961

Class here period of French and Spanish protectorates, 1912–1956

Class reign of Muhammad V during 1956–1961 in 964.05

.05 1956–

Including reign of Muhammad V during 1956–1961, Hassan II, 1961–

.9 *Canary Islands

.906 Early history to 1402

.907 Periods of French, Portuguese, Spanish rule, 1402–1927

.908 Period as Provinces of Spain, 1927–

.908 1 1927–1939

.908 2–.908 3 Periods of Francisco Franco and Juan Carlos I, 1939–

Add to base number 964.908 the numbers following 946.08 in 946.082–946.083, e.g., 1960–1969 964.90826

965 *Algeria

Class early history to 647 in 939.71

(.01) Early history to 647

(Optional number; prefer 939.71)

.02 Periods of Arab and Berber rule and Ottoman Empire, 647–1830

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.03 Period of French rule, 1830–1962

For 1900–1962, see 965.04

.04 1900–1962

.05 1962–

Including administration of Chadli Bendjedid, 1979–

.5 *Northeastern departments

Add to base number 965.5 the numbers following 965 in 965.01–965.05, e.g., period of French rule 965.503

Class ancient Numidia to 647 in 939.72

.7 *Sahara departments

Add to base number 965.7 the numbers following 965 in 965.01–965.05, e.g., period of French rule 965.703

Class ancient Gaetulia to 647 in 939.77

966 *West Africa and offshore islands

SUMMARY

966.01–.03	**Historical periods**
.1	**Mauritania**
.2	**Mali, Burkina Faso, Niger**
.3	**Senegal**
.4	**Sierra Leone**
.5	**Gambia, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Cape Verde**
.6	**Liberia and Ivory Coast**
.7	**Ghana**
.8	**Togo and Benin**
.9	**Nigeria**

.01–.03 Historical periods

Add to base number 966.0 the numbers following 960 in 960.1–960.3, e.g., early history to 640 966.01

.1 *Mauritania

.101 Early history to 1903

.101 6 300–1200

Class here comprehensive works on period of Ghana Empire

Class period of Ghana Empire in Mali history in 966.2301

.101 7 1200–1500

Class here period of Mali Empire

.103 French period, 1903–1960

.105 1960–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.2 *Mali, Burkina Faso, Niger

.201 Early history to ca. 1900

.201 7 1200–1400

Class here period of Mali Empire

Class period of Mali Empire in Mauritanian history in 966.1017

.201 8 1400–1500

Class here period of Songhai Empire

.202 French period, ca. 1900–1960

.203 1960–

.23 *Mali

.230 1 Early history to 1902

Class comprehensive works on Mali Empire in 966.2017

.230 3 Period as French Sudan, 1902–1960

Class here French period

.230 5 1960–

Class here administration of Moussa Traoré, 1968–

.25 *Burkina Faso

Former name: Upper Volta

.250 1 Early history to 1897

Including kingdom of Mossi

.250 3 French period, 1897–1960

.250 5 1960–

Including administration of Thomas Sankara, 1983–1987

.26 *Niger

.260 1 Early history to 1900

.260 3 French period, 1900–1960

.260 5 1960–

Including administration of Seyni Kountché, 1974–1987

.3 *Senegal

.301 Early history to 1895

Including kingdom of Tekrur

.303 French period, 1895–1960

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.305 1960–

Including administration of Abdou Diouf, 1981– ; Confederation of Senegambia, 1982–

Class Gambian part of Senegambia in 966.5103

.4 *Sierra Leone

.401 Early history to 1787

.402 Period as a British colony, 1787–1896

.403 Period as both colony and protectorate, 1896–1961

.404 1961–

.5 *Gambia, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Cape Verde

.51 *Gambia

.510 1 Early history to 1807

.510 2 Period as a British colony, 1807–1965

.510 3 Administration of Dawada Kairaba Jawara, 1965–

Including period as a part of Senegambia, 1982–

.52 *Guinea

.520 1 Early history to 1882

.520 3 Period as French Guinea, 1882–1958

.520 5 1958–

.57 *Guinea-Bissau

.570 1 Early history to 1879

.570 2 Period as Portuguese Guinea, 1879–1974

.570 3 1974–

.58 *Cape Verde

.580 1 Early history to 1900

.580 2 1900–1975

.580 3 Administration of Aristides Pereira, 1975–

.6 Liberia and Ivory Coast

.62 *Liberia

.620 1 Early history to 1847

.620 2 1847–1945

.620 3 1945–

Including administration of Samuel K. Doe, 1980–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.68 *Ivory Coast

.680 1 Early history to 1904

.680 3 French period, 1904–1960

.680 5 Administration of Félix Houphouët-Boigny, 1960–

.7 *Ghana

See also 966.1016 for Ghana Empire

.701 Early history to 1874

.701 6 Period of Akan states, 1295–1740

Examples: Akwamu, Bono kingdoms

.701 8 Period of Asante (Ashanti) empire, 1740–1874

.703 Period as Gold Coast, 1874–1957

Class here British period

.705 1957–

Including administration of Kwame Nkrumah, 1957–1966; of Jerry J. Rawlings, 1981–

.8 Togo and Benin

.81 *Togo

.810 1 Early history to 1894

.810 2 German period, 1894–1914

.810 3 Anglo-French period, 1914–1960

.810 4 1960–

Including administration of Gnassingbé Eyadéma, 1967–

.83 *Benin

See also 966.9301 for kingdom of Benin

.830 1 Early history to 1904

.830 18 Period of kingdom of Dahomey, 1600–1904

.830 3 French period, 1904–1960

.830 5 1960–

.9 *Nigeria

.901 Early history to 1886

[.901 3–.901 8] Specific realms

Relocated to area of each realm in 966.91–966.98, e.g., kingdom of Benin 966.9301, Fulani empire 966.9501, kingdom of Kanem-Bornu 966.9801

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.903 Period as a British colony, 1886–1960

.905 1960–

.905 1 1960–1967

.905 2 Period of Nigerian Civil War, 1967–1970

.905 3 1970–

Including administration of Ibrahim Badamosi Babangida, 1983–

[.99] Islands of Gulf of Guinea

Relocated to 967.1

967 *Central Africa and offshore islands

Class here Sub-Saharan Africa (Africa south of the Sahara)

Class each specific part of Sub-Saharan Africa not provided for here with the part, e.g., Nigeria 966.9

SUMMARY

967.01–.03	**Historical periods**
.1	**Cameroon, Sao Tome and Principe, Equatorial Guinea**
.2	**Gabon and Republic of the Congo**
.3	**Angola**
.4	**Central African Republic and Chad**
.5	**Zaire, Rwanda, Burundi**
.6	**Uganda and Kenya**
.7	**Djibouti and Somalia**
.8	**Tanzania**
.9	**Mozambique**

.01–.03 Historical periods

Add to base number 967.0 the numbers following 960 in 960.1–960.3, e.g., early history to 640 967.01

.1 *Cameroon, Sao Tome and Principe, Equatorial Guinea

Class here Islands of Gulf of Guinea [*formerly* 966.99], Lower Guinea area

.11 *Cameroon

.110 1 Early history to 1884

.110 2 Period as Kamerun, 1884–1916

Class here German period

.110 3 Anglo-French period, 1916–1959

.110 4 1960–

Including administration of Paul Biya, 1982–

.15 *Sao Tome and Principe

.150 1 Early history to 1975

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.150 2 Period of Republic, 1975–

.18 *Equatorial Guinea

.180 1 Early history to 1469

.180 2 Portuguese, British, Spanish periods, 1469–1968

.180 3 1968–

Including administration of Teodoro Obiang Nguema Mbasogo, 1979–

.2 *Gabon and Republic of the Congo

.201 Early history to 1910

.203 Period as French Equatorial Africa, 1910–1959

Class here comprehensive works on French Equatorial Africa [*formerly* 967.2403]

For Ubangi-Shari as part of French Equatorial Africa, see 967.4103; Chad as part of French Equatorial Africa, 967.4302

.205 1959–

.21 *Gabon

.210 1 Early history to 1839

.210 2 French period, 1839–1960

Including period as a part of French Equatorial Africa

.210 4 1960–

Including administration of Omar Bongo, 1967–

.24 *Republic of the Congo

.240 1 Early history to 1885

.240 3 Period as Middle Congo, 1885–1960

Class here French period

Comprehensive works on French Equatorial Africa relocated to 967.203

.240 5 1960–

Including administration of Denis Sassou Nguesso, 1979–

.3 *Angola

.301 Early history to 1648

Specific kingdoms relocated to area of the kingdom in 967.31–967.35, e.g., Lunda kingdom 967.3401

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.302 1648–1899

Including 17th century

Class 1600–1648 in 967.301

.303 1900–1975

.304 1975–

Including administrations of António Agostinho Neto, José Eduardo dos Santos

.4 *Central African Republic and Chad

.41 *Central African Republic

.410 1 Early history to 1890

.410 3 Period as Ubangi-Shari, 1890–1960

Class here French period, period as part of French Equatorial Africa

.410 5 1960–

.43 *Chad

.430 1 Early history to 1850

Including kingdom of Kanem

Class Kanem-Bornu in 966.9801

.430 2 Colonial period, 1850–1960

Including period as part of French Equatorial Africa

.430 4 1960–

Including administration of Hissein Habré, 1982–

.5 Zaire, Rwanda, Burundi

.51 *Zaire

.510 1 Early history to 1885

Specific kingdoms relocated to specific area of kingdom in 967.511–967.518, , e.g., kingdom of Kongo 967.511401, of Luba 967.51801

.510 2 Belgian period, 1885–1960

.510 22 Period as Congo Free State, 1885–1908

.510 24 Period as Belgian Congo, 1908–1960

.510 3 1960–

Class here administration of Mobutu Sese Seko, 1965–

.57 *Rwanda and Burundi

Class here former Ruanda-Urundi

.570 1 Early history to 1899

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.570 2 German period, 1899–1917

.570 3 Belgian period, 1917–1962

.570 4 1962–

.571 *Rwanda

.571 04 1962–

Including administration of Juvénal Habyarimana, 1973–

.572 *Burundi

.572 04 1962–

Including administration of Jean-Baptiste Bagaza, 1976–1987

.6 *Uganda and Kenya

Class here East Africa

.601 Early history to 1894

.603 1894–1961

.604 1961–

.61 *Uganda

.610 1 Early history to 1894

Including kingdoms of Ankole, Buganda, Bunyoro, Busoga, Karagwe

.610 3 British period, 1894–1962

.610 4 1962–

Including administrations of A. Milton Obote, Idi Amin, Yoweri Museveni

.62 *Kenya

.620 1 Early history to 1895

.620 3 British period, 1895–1963

.620 4 Administrations of Jomo Kenyatta and Daniel Arap Moi, 1963–

.7 *Djibouti and Somalia

Class here Somaliland

.71 *Djibouti

.710 1 Early history to 1881

.710 3 French period, 1881–1977

.710 32 Period as French Somaliland, 1881–1967

.710 34 Period as French Territory of the Afars and Issas, 1967–1977

.710 4 1977–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.73 *Somalia

.730 1 Early history to 1884

Including kingdom of Mogadishu

.730 3 Period of British and Italian control, 1884–1960

.730 5 1960–

Including administration of Maxamed Siyaad Barre, 1969–

Class Somali-Ethiopian conflicts, 1977– , in 963.07

.8 *Tanzania

.804 Period as United Republic, 1964–

Including administration of Julius K. Nyerere, 1964–1985

.81 *Zanzibar and Pemba regions

.810 1 Early history to 1700

.810 2 Period of Arab rule, 1700–1890

.810 3 Period as a British protectorate, 1890–1963

.810 4 1963–

.82 *Tanganyika

.820 1 Early history to 1884

.820 2 German period, 1884–1916

.820 3 British period, 1916–1961

.820 4 1961–

.9 *Mozambique

.901 Early history to 1648

.902 1648–1900

Including 17th century

Class here Portugese period, 1648–1974

Class 1600–1648 in 967.901

For 1900–1975, see 967.903

.903 1900–1975

.905 1975–

Including administration of Samora Machel, 1975–1986

*Add as instructed under 930–990

968 *Southern Africa Republic of South Africa

See Manual at 968

SUMMARY

968.02–.06	**Historical periods of Republic of South Africa**
.2	**Transvaal**
.4	**Natal**
.5	**Orange Free State**
.7	**Cape of Good Hope**
.8	**Botswana, Lesotho, Swaziland, Namibia**
.9	**Zimbabwe, Zambia, Malawi**

> 968.02–968.06 Historical periods of Republic of South Africa

Class comprehensive works in 968

.02 Early history to 1488

.03 Period of European exploration and settlement, 1488–1814

.04 1814–1910

.041 1814–1835

Class here Mfecane (Difaqane)

.042 Great Trek, 1835–1838

.044 1838–1854

.045 1854–1899

See also 968.2046 for First Anglo-Boer War

.048 South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War, 1899–1902

(Option: Class South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War in 941.081)

[.048 08] South African War with respect to kinds of persons

Do not use; class 968.0481

.048 092 Persons

Class personal narratives in 968.0488

.048 1 Social, political, economic history

Including causes, results, efforts to preserve or restore peace, relation of specific classes of persons to the war, internment camps

Class general diplomatic history in 968.0482; prisoner-of-war camps in 968.0487; results in and effects on a specific country with history of the country, e.g., on Great Britain 941.0823

.048 2 Diplomatic history

Class diplomatic causes, efforts to preserve or restore peace, diplomatic results in 968.0481

.048 3 Participation of specific countries, localities, groups

Class military participation of specific countries, localities, groups in 968.0484

.048 31 Great Britain

.048 32 Boer Republics

.048 4 Military operations

Including military units

Class units engaged in a specific type of operation or service with the operation or service, e.g., medical units 968.0487

.048 6 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Including decorations and awards, rolls of honor, cemeteries, monuments

.048 7 Prisoner-of-war camps, health and social services

.048 8 Other topics

Including personal narratives, military life and customs, unconventional warfare, propaganda

Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., medical units 968.0487

.049 1902–1910

.05 Period of Union, 1910–1961

.052 Prime ministership of Louis Botha, 1910–1919

.053 First prime ministership of Jan Christiaan Smuts, 1919–1924

.054 Prime ministership of James Barry Munnik Hertzog, 1924–1939

.055 Second prime ministership of Jan Christiaan Smuts, 1939–1948

.056 Prime ministership of Daniel François Malan, 1948–1954

.057 Prime ministership of Johannes Gerhardus Strijdom, 1954–1958

.058 Prime ministership of Hendrik Frensch Verwoerd, 1958–1966

Including Sharpeville Massacre, 1960

For 1961–1966, see 968.061

.06 Period as Republic, 1961–

.061 Period of prime ministership of Hendrik Frensch Verwoerd under republic, 1961–1966

.062 Prime ministership of B. J. Vorster, 1966–1978

.062 7 1976–1977

Class here Soweto and related riots

.063 Prime ministership of P. W. Botha, 1978–

[.1] Botswana, Lesotho, Swaziland

Relocated to 968.8

.2 *Transvaal

.203 Early history to 1835

.204 1835–1910

Class here 19th century

Class 1800–1835 in 968.203

.204 2 Period of Great Trek and Boer settlement, 1835–1852

.204 5 Period as South African Republic, 1852–1877

.204 6 Period of British control, 1877–1881

Including First Anglo-Boer War, 1880–1881

.204 7 1881–1899

.204 75 Jameson raid, 1895–1896

.204 8 Period of South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War, 1899–1902

.204 9 Period as Transvaal Colony, 1902–1910

.205–.206 Periods of union and republic, 1910–

Add to base number 968.20 the numbers following 968.0 in 968.05–968.06, e.g., period of World War II 968.2055

.4 *Natal

.403 Early history to 1824

.403 8 Period of early Nguni kingdoms, ca. 1500–1816

Examples: kingdoms of Mthethwa, Ndwandwe, Qwabe

.403 9 Reign of Shaka, 1816–1828

Including 1820–1824 [*formerly* 968.404]

Class reign of Shaka during 1824–1828 in 968.4041

.404 1824–1910

Class here period of Zululand, 1816–1879

1820–1824 relocated to 968.4039

For reign of Shaka, see 968.4039

.404 1 Period of early British settlement, 1824–1835

Class here reign of Dingaan, 1828–1840

Class reign of Dingaan during 1835–1840 in 968.4042

.404 2 Period of Great Trek and Boer settlement, 1835–1843

Including Battle of Blood River, 1838; republic of Natalia

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.404 5 Period as a British colony, 1843–1899

Including reign of Cetewayo, 1872–1879; Zulu War, 1879; annexation of Zululand, 1897

.404 8 Period of South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War, 1899–1902

.404 9 1902–1910

.405–.406 Periods of union and republic, 1910–

Add to base number 968.40 the numbers following 968.0 in 968.05–968.06, e.g., period of World War I 968.4052

.5 *Orange Free State

.503 Early history to 1828

.504 1828–1910

Class here 19th century

Class 1800–1828 in 968.503

.504 2 Periods of Great Trek and as Orange River Sovereignty, 1835–1854

.504 5 Period as Orange Free State, 1854–1899

.504 8 Period of South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War, 1899–1902

.504 9 Period as Orange River Colony, 1902–1910

.505–.506 Periods of union and republic, 1910–

Add to base number 968.50 the numbers following 968.0 in 968.05–968.06, e.g., prime ministership of James Barry Munnik Hertzog 968.5054

.7 *Cape of Good Hope

.702 Early history to 1488

.703 Period of exploration and settlement, 1488–1814

.703 1 1488–1652

.703 2 Period of Dutch control, 1652–1795

Including 1780–1795 [*formerly* 968.7033]

Class period of control by Batavian Republic in 968.7033

.703 3 1795–1806

Contains periods of British occupation, 1795–1803, control by Batavian Republic, 1803–1806

1780–1795 relocated to 968.7032, 1806–1814 to 968.7042

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.704 1806–1910

.704 2 Period of British control, 1806–1854

Including 1806–1814 [*formerly* 968.7033], period of Great Trek

Class period of British occupation, 1795–1803, in 968.7033

.704 5 Period of self-government, 1854–1899

.704 8 Period of South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War, 1899–1902

.704 9 1902–1910

.705–.706 Union and republic, 1910–

Add to base number 968.70 the numbers following 968.0 in 968.05–968.06, e.g., first prime ministership of Jan Christiaan Smuts 968.7053

.8 *Botswana, Lesotho, Swaziland [*all formerly* 968.1], Namibia

.801–.803 Historical periods

Add to base number 968.80 the numbers following 960 in 960.1–960.3, e.g., 20th century 968.803

Historical periods of Namibia relocated to 968.8101–968.8103

.81 *Namibia

> 968.810 1–968.810 3 Historical periods of Namibia [*formerly* 968.801–968.803]

Class comprehensive works in 968.81

.810 1 Early history to 1884

.810 2 German period, 1884–1915

.810 3 South African period, 1915–

.83 *Botswana

.830 1 Early history to 1885

.830 2 Period as Bechuanaland, 1885–1966

Class here British period

.830 3 1966–

Including administration of Seretse Khama, 1966–1980

.85 *Lesotho

.850 1 Early history to 1868

.850 2 Period as Basutoland, 1868–1966

Class here British period

.850 3 Reign of Moshoeshoe II, 1966–

Including prime ministership of Leabua Jonathan, 1966–1986

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.87 *Swaziland

.870 1 Early history to 1840

.870 2 British period, 1840–1968

.870 3 1968–

Including reigns of Sobhuza II, 1968–1982; Mswari III, 1986–

.9 *Zimbabwe, Zambia, Malawi

.901 Early history to 1888

.902 Period of British control, 1888–1953

.903 Period as Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland (Central African Federation), 1953–1963

Class here prime ministership of Roy Welensky, 1956–1963

.904 1964–

.91 *Zimbabwe

.910 1 Early history to 1889

Including Karanga kingdoms of Changamire, the Monomotapas

.910 2 Period as Southern Rhodesia, 1889–1953

Class here British period

.910 3 Period of federation, 1953–1963

.910 4 Period as Rhodesia, 1964–1980

Class here prime ministership of Ian Douglas Smith, 1965–1979

.910 5 Period as Republic of Zimbabwe, 1980–

Class here prime ministership of Robert Gabriel Mugabe, 1980–

.94 *Zambia

.940 1 Early history to 1890

Including kingdoms of the Barotse, of the Bemba

.940 2 Period of British control, 1890–1953

Contains periods as North-eastern Rhodesia and North-western Rhodesia provinces, 1890–1911; as Northern Rhodesia, 1911–1953

.940 3 Period of federation, 1953–1963

.940 4 Period as Republic of Zambia, 1964–

Class here administration of Kenneth D. Kaunda, 1964–

.97 *Malawi

.970 1 Early history to 1891

Including kingdom of Malawi

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.970 2 Period as Nyasaland, 1891–1953

Class here British period

.970 3 Period of federation, 1953–1963

.970 4 Administration of H. Kamuzu Banda, 1964–

969 †South Indian Ocean islands

.1 *Madagascar

.101 Early history to 1895

Including kingdoms of Betsimisaraka, Boina, Menabe, Merina

.103 French period, 1895–1960

.105 1960–

Including administration of Didier Ratsiraka, 1975–

.4 †Comoros (Federal and Islamic Republic of the Comoros)

.6 †Seychelles

.7 †Chagos Islands

.8 *Réunion and Mauritius

.81 *Réunion

.810 2 Early history to 1946

.810 4 Period as a Department of France, 1946–

.82 *Mauritius

.820 1 Early history to 1810

.820 2 Period of British rule, 1810–1968

.820 3 1968–

.9 †Isolated islands

Contains Amsterdam, Cocos (Keeling), Crozet, Kerguelen, Prince Edward, Saint Paul

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

970 General history of North America

SUMMARY

970.001–.009 Standard subdivisions
.01–.05 Historical periods
971 Canada
972 Middle America Mexico
973 United States
974 Northeastern United States (New England and Middle Atlantic states)
975 Southeastern United States (South Atlantic states)
976 South central United States Gulf Coast states
977 North central United States
978 Western United States
979 Great Basin and Pacific Slope region of United States Pacific Coast states

.001–.003 Standard subdivisions

.004 Racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 970.004 notation 03–99 from Table 5, e.g., general history and civilization of North American native peoples in North America 970.00497
(Option: Class North American native peoples in North America in 970.1, specific native peoples in 970.3)

Specific native peoples in a specific place relocated to the place in 971–979 with use of subdivision 00497 from table under 930–990, e.g., the Hopi in Arizona 979.1004974

Class history and civilization of North American native peoples in a specific place before European discovery and conquest with the place, without using notation 00497, e.g., Aztecs before 1519 972.018

See Manual at 970.004

.005–.009 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 930–990

> 970.01–970.05 Historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 970

.01 Early history to 1599

.011 Earliest history to 1492

Including pre-Columbian claims

For Chinese claims, see 970.012; Norse claims, 970.013; Welsh claims, 970.014

.012 Chinese claims

.013 Norse claims

.014 Welsh claims

> 970.015–970.019 Period of European discovery and exploration

Class comprehensive works in 970.01

.015 Discoveries by Columbus

.016 Spanish and Portuguese explorations

.017 English explorations

.018 French explorations

.019 Explorations by other nations

.02 1600–1699

.03 1700–1799

.04 1800–1899

.05 1900–

.051 1900–1918

Class here period of World War I, 1914–1918

.052 1918–1945

Class here period of World War II, 1939–1945

.053 1945–

.053 4 1945–1949

.053 5 1950–1959

.053 6 1960–1969

.053 7 1970–1979

.053 8 1980–1989

.053 9 1990–1999

(.1) North American native peoples Indians of North America

(Optional number; prefer 970.00497)

Class special topics in 970.3–970.5

(.3) Specific native peoples

(Optional number; prefer 971–979 with use of subdivision 00497 from table under 930–990, e.g., the Hopi in Arizona 979.1004974)

Arrange alphabetically by name of people

Class government relations with specific native peoples in 970.5

(.4) Native peoples in specific places in North America

(Optional number; prefer 971–979 with use of subdivision 00497 from table under 930–990, e.g., native peoples in United States 973.0497, in Arizona 979.100497)

Add to base number 970.4 the numbers following —7 in notation 71–79 from Table 2, e.g., Indians in Arizona 970.491

Class government relations in specific places in 970.5, specific native peoples in specific places in 970.3

(.5) Government relations with North American native peoples

History and policy

(Optional number; prefer 323.1197 for comprehensive works; a specific subject with the subject, e.g., Black Hawk War 973.56, relation to the state in Canada 323.1197071)

> 971–979 Countries and localities

Class specific native peoples in a specific place [*formerly* 970.00497] with the place in 971–979 with use of subdivision 00497 from table under 930–990, e.g., the Hopi in Arizona 979.1004974
(Option: Class native peoples in specific places in North America in 970.4)

Class comprehensive works in 970

971 *Canada

SUMMARY

971.01–.06	**Historical periods**
.1	**British Columbia**
.2	**Prairie Provinces**
.3	**Ontario**
.4	**Quebec**
.5	**Atlantic Provinces Maritime Provinces**
.6	**Nova Scotia**
.7	**Prince Edward Island**
.8	**Newfoundland and Labrador, Saint-Pierre and Miquelon**
.9	**Northern territories**

SUMMARY

971.01	**Early history to 1763**
.02	**Period of early British rule, 1763–1791**
.03	**Period of Upper and Lower Canada, 1791–1841**
.04	**Period of Province of Canada, 1841–1867**
.05	**Period of Dominion of Canada, 1867–1911**
.06	**1911–**

*Add as instructed under 930–990

> 971.01–971.06 Historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 971

.01 Early history to 1763

.011 Earliest history to 1632

.011 1 Period before European discovery and exploration

.011 2 Norse explorations

.011 3 French explorations

.011 4 English explorations

.016 Period of French and English expansion, 1632–1689

.016 2 Period of Company of New France, 1632–1663

.016 3 1663–1689

.018 Period of struggle of France and England for supremacy, 1689–1763

Including periods of War of the League of Augsburg, 1688–1697; War of the Spanish Succession, 1701–1714; War of the Austrian Succession, 1740–1748

Class here comprehensive works on period as a French royal province, 1663–1763

(Option: Class here North American aspects of War of the League of Augsburg, War of the Spanish Succession, War of the Austrian Succession; prefer 973.25 for War of the League of Augsburg, War of the Spanish Succession, 973.26 for War of the Austrian Succession)

Class comprehensive works on War of the League of Augsburg in 940.2525, War of the Spanish Succession in 940.2526, War of the Austrian Succession in 940.2532; North American aspects of War of the League of Augsburg, War of the Spanish Succession in 973.25, War of the Austrian Succession in 973.26

For 1663–1689, see 971.0163

.018 7 Expulsion of Acadians, 1755

.018 8 Period of Seven Years' War, 1756–1763

(Option: Class here North American aspects of Seven Years' War; prefer 973.26)

Class comprehensive works on Seven Years' War in 940.2534, North American aspects in 973.26

.02 Period of early British rule, 1763–1791

.022 1763–1774

Including Quebec Act, 1774

(Option: Class here Pontiac's conspiracy, 1763–1764; prefer 973.27)

.024 Period of American Revolution, 1774–1783

Including settlement of Loyalists from United States, 1774–1789

Class settlement of Loyalists during 1783–1789 in 971.028

.028 1783–1791

Class here Constitutional Act, 1791

.03 Period of Upper and Lower Canada, 1791–1841

.032 1791–1812

.034 Period of War of 1812, 1812–1814

(Option: Class here War of 1812; prefer 973.52)

.036 1814–1837

.038 Period of rebellions of 1837–1838

Including Family Compact of Upper Canada, Chateau Clique of Lower Canada

.039 1838–1841

Class here Durham mission and report, 1838–1839; Act of Union, 1840

.04 Period of Province of Canada, 1841–1867

.042 1841–1864

.048 Period of Fenian activities, 1866–1871

.049 Period of Confederation, 1864–1867

Including Charlottetown and Quebec Conferences, 1864; British North America Act, 1867

For period of Fenian activities, see 971.048

.05 Period of Dominion of Canada, 1867–

For 1911– , see 971.06

.051 First prime ministership of Sir John A. Macdonald, 1867–1873

Including Riel's first (Red River) rebellion, 1869–1870

Class Fenian activities during 1867–1871 in 971.048

.052 Prime ministership of Alexander Mackenzie, 1873–1878

.054 Second prime ministership of Sir John A. Macdonald, 1878–1891

Including Riel's second (Northwest) rebellion, 1885

.055 1891–1896

Including prime ministerships of Sir John J. C. Abbott, 1891–1892; of Sir John Sparrow Thompson, 1892–1894; of Sir Mackenzie Bowell, 1894–1896; of Sir Charles Tupper, 1896

.056 Prime ministership of Sir Wilfrid Laurier, 1896–1911

.06 1911–

.061 1911–1921

.061 2 Prime ministership of Sir Robert Laird Borden, 1911–1920

.061 3 First prime ministership of Arthur Meighen, 1920–1921

.062 1921–1935

.062 2 First and second prime ministerships of William Lyon Mackenzie King, 1921–1930

Including second prime ministership of Arthur Meighen, 1926

.062 3 Prime ministership of Richard Bedford Bennett, 1930–1935

.063 1935–1957

.063 2 Third prime ministership of William Lyon Mackenzie King, 1935–1948

.063 3 Prime ministership of Louis Stephen Saint-Laurent, 1948–1957

.064 1957–

.064 2 Prime ministership of John G. Diefenbaker, 1957–1963

.064 3 Prime ministership of Lester B. Pearson, 1963–1968

.064 4 First prime ministership of Pierre Elliott Trudeau, 1968–1979

.064 5 Prime ministership of Joe (Charles Joseph) Clark, 1979–1980

.064 6 Second prime ministership of Pierre Elliott Trudeau, 1980–1984

Including prime ministership of John Turner, 1984

.064 7 Prime ministership of Brian Mulroney, 1984–

> **971.1–971.9 Specific provinces and territories**

Class comprehensive works in 971

.1 *British Columbia

.101 Early history to 1790

.102 Period of settlement and colony, 1790–1871

Including colony of New Caledonia

.103 Period as a Province of Canada, 1871–

For 1945– , see 971.04

.104 1945–

.2 *Prairie Provinces

.201 Early history to 1869

Including Rupert's Land

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.202 1869–1945

.203 1945–

.23 *Alberta

Add to base number 971.23 the numbers following 971.2 in 971.201–971.203, e.g., establishment as a Province of Canada, 1905, 971.2302

.24 *Saskatchewan

Add to base number 971.24 the numbers following 971.2 in 971.201–971.203, e.g., establishment as a Province of Canada, 1905, 971.2402

.27 *Manitoba

Add to base number 971.27 the numbers following 971.2 in 971.201–971.203, e.g., establishment as a Province of Canada, 1870, 971.2702

.3 *Ontario

.301 Early history to 1791

.302 Period of Upper Canada and Act of Union, 1791–1867

.303 Period as a Province of Canada, 1867–

For 1945– , see 971.304

.304 1945–

.4 *Quebec

.401 Early history to 1763

.401 2 Earliest history to 1608

Including period of explorations by Jacques Cartier, 1534–1535

.401 4 French period, 1608–1763

.402 British period, 1763–1867

Including period of Lower Canada, 1791–1841

.403 Period as a Province of Canada, 1867–

For 1945– , see 971.404

.404 1945–

.5 *Atlantic Provinces Maritime Provinces

For Nova Scotia, see 971.6; Prince Edward Island, 971.7; Newfoundland and Labrador, 971.8

[.501–.504] Historical periods of New Brunswick

Relocated to 971.5101–971.5104

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.51 *New Brunswick

> 971.510 1–971.510 4 Historical periods of New Brunswick [*formerly* 971.501–971.504]

Class comprehensive works in 971.51

.510 1 Early history to 1784

.510 2 Period as separate province, 1784–1867

.510 3 Period as a Province of Canada, 1867–

For 1945– , see 971.5104

.510 4 1945–

.6 *Nova Scotia

.601 Early history to 1763

Including Acadia

.602 Period as a British colony, 1763–1867

.603 Period as a Province of Canada, 1867–

For 1945– , see 971.604

.604 1945–

.7 *Prince Edward Island

.701 Early history to 1769

.702 Period as separate province, 1769–1873

.703 Period as a Province of Canada, 1873–

For 1945– , see 971.704

.704 1945–

.8 *Newfoundland and Labrador, Saint-Pierre and Miquelon

.801 Early history to 1855

.802 1855–1934

.803 Period of suspension of parliamentary government, 1934–1949

.804 Period as a Province of Canada, 1949–

.82 *Labrador

.820 1 Early history to 1763

.820 2 Period when claimed by Lower Canada (Quebec) and Newfoundland, 1763–1927

.820 3 Period as dependency of Newfoundland, 1927–1949

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.820 4 Period as part of Newfoundland, 1949–

.88 †Saint-Pierre and Miquelon

.9 *Northern territories

Add to base number 971.9 the numbers following 971.2 in 971.201–971.203, e.g., 1945– 971.903

972 Middle America Mexico

SUMMARY

972.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of Middle America
.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Mexico
.01–.08 Historical periods of Mexico
.8 Central America
.9 West Indies (Antilles) and Bermuda

.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of Middle America

As modified under 930–990

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Mexico

As modified under 930–990

> 972.01–972.08 Historical periods of Mexico

Class comprehensive works in 972

.01 Early history to 1519

.016 Classical period, ca. 100–ca. 900

.017 Ca. 900–1325

Class here period of Toltec empire, ca. 900–ca. 1200

.018 Aztec period, 1325–1519

Including 1516–1519 [*formerly* 972.02]

.02 Conquest and colonial period, 1519–1810

1516–1519 relocated to 972.018

.03 Revolutionary period and period of independence, 1810–1822

.04 Periods of first empire and republic, 1822–1845

Class here 19th century

Class a part of 19th century not provided for here with the part, e.g., period of second empire 972.07

.05 Period of war with United States, 1845–1848

(Option: Class here Mexican War; prefer 973.62)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

.06 Period of reaction and reform, 1848–1861

.07 Period of European intervention, 1861–1867

Class here period of second empire, 1864–1867

.08 Period of Republic, 1867–

.081 1867–1917

.081 2 1867–1876

.081 4 Porfiriato, 1876–1910

Class here administrations of Porfirio Díaz, 1876–1880, 1884–1910

.081 6 Period of Mexican Revolution, 1910–1917

.082 1917–1964

.082 1 Administrations of Venustiano Carranza and Adolfo de la Huerta, 1917–1920

.082 2 Administration of Alvaro Obregón, 1920–1924

.082 3 Administration of Plutarco Elías Calles, 1924–1928

.082 4 Administrations of Emilio Portes Gil, Pascual Ortiz Rubio, Abelardo L. Rodríguez, 1928–1934

.082 42 Administration of Emilio Portes Gil, 1928–1930

.082 43 Administration of Pascual Ortiz Rubio, 1930–1932

.082 44 Administration of Abelardo L. Rodríguez, 1932–1934

.082 5 Administration of Lázaro Cárdenas, 1934–1940

.082 6 Administration of Manuel Avila Camacho, 1940–1946

.082 7 Administration of Miguel Alemán, 1946–1952

.082 8 Administration of Adolfo Ruiz Cortines, 1952–1958

.082 9 Administration of Adolfo López Mateos, 1958–1964

.083 1964–

.083 1 Administration of Gustavo Díaz Ordaz, 1964–1970

.083 2 Administration of Luis Echeverría Alvarez, 1970–1976

.083 3 Administration of José López Portillo, 1976–1982

.083 4 Administration of Miguel de la Madrid Hurtado, 1982–

> **972.8–972.9 Other parts of Middle America**

Class comprehensive works in 972

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.8 *Central America

.801 Early history to 1502

.802 Period of European discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1535

.803 Colonial period, 1535–1821

.804 1821–1899

Including period of United Provinces of Central America, 1823–1840

.805 1900–

.805 1 1900–1944

.805 2 1944–1979

.805 3 1979–

.81 *Guatemala

.810 1 Early history to 1502

.810 16 Mayan period, ca. 300–ca. 900

Class here comprehensive works on Mayan period in Middle America

Class a specific aspect of the Mayan period not provided for here with the aspect, e.g., Mayan period from ca. 900 to 1325 in Mexico 972.6017

.810 2 Period of European discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1524

1524–1535 relocated to 972.8103

.810 3 Colonial period, 1524–1821

Including 1524–1535 [*formerly* 972.8102]

.810 4 1821–1871

1871–1899 relocated to 972.81051

.810 42 1821–1839

Class here period as a part of United Provinces of Central America, 1823–1839

.810 44 1839–1871

Class here administration of Rafael Carrera, 1839–1865

.810 5 1871–

.810 51 1871–1931

Including 1871–1899 [*formerly* 972.8104]

1931–1945 relocated to 972.81052

.810 52 1931–1986

Including 1931–1945 [*formerly* 972.81051], 1979–1986 [*formerly* 972.81053]

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.810 53 1986–

1979–1986 relocated to 972.81052

.82 *Belize

.820 1 Early history to 1502

.820 2 Period of Spanish discovery and colonization, 1502–1638

Including 1535–1638 [*formerly* 972.8203]

.820 3 1638–1862

Including 1821–1862 [*formerly* 972.8204]

Class here period of British involvement, 1638–1963

1535–1638 relocated to 972.8202

For period as a British colony, see 972.8204

.820 4 Period as a British colony, 1862–1963

Including 1900–1945 [*formerly* 972.82051], 1945–1963 [*formerly* 972.82052]

1821–1862 relocated to 972.8203

.820 5 1964–

[.820 51] 1900–1945

Relocated to 972.8204

[.820 52] 1945–1979

Use of this number for 1964–1979 discontinued; class in 972.8205

1945–1963 relocated to 972.8204

[.820 53] 1979–

Number discontinued; class in 972.8205

.83 *Honduras

.830 1 Early history to 1502

.830 2 Period of Spanish discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1542

Including 1535–1542 [*formerly* 972.8303]

.830 3 Colonial period, 1542–1821

1535–1542 relocated to 972.8302

.830 4 1821–1838

Class here period as a part of United Provinces of Central America, 1823–1838

1838–1899 relocated to 972.83051

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.830 5 1838–

.830 51 1838–1924

Including 1838–1899 [*formerly* 972.8304]

1924–1945 relocated to 972.83052

.830 52 1924–1978

Including 1924–1945 [*formerly* 972.83051]

.830 53 1978–

.84 *El Salvador

.840 1 Early history to 1524

Including 1502–1524 [*formerly* 972.8402]

.840 2 Period of Spanish discovery, exploration, conquest, 1524–1542

Including 1535–1542 [*formerly* 972.8403]

1502–1524 relocated to 972.8401

.840 3 Colonial period, 1542–1821

1535–1542 relocated to 972.8402

.840 4 1821–1859

1859–1899 relocated to 972.84051

.840 42 1821–1839

Class here period as a part of United Provinces of Central America, 1823–1839

.840 44 1839–1859

.840 5 1859–

.840 51 1859–1931

Including 1859–1899 [*formerly* 972.8404]

1931–1945 relocated to 972.84052

.840 52 1931–1979

Including 1931–1945 [*formerly* 972.84051]

.840 53 1979–

.85 *Nicaragua

.850 1 Early history to 1502

.850 2 Period of Spanish discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1527

1527–1535 relocated to 972.8503

.850 3 Colonial period, 1527–1821

Including 1527–1535 [*formerly* 972.8502]

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.850 4 1821–1893

1893–1899 relocated to 972.85051

.850 42 1821–1838

Class here period as a part of United Provinces of Central America, 1823–1838

.850 44 1838–1893

.850 5 1893–

.850 51 1893–1934

Including 1893–1899 [*formerly* 972.8504]

Class here period of interventions by United States, 1909–1933

1934–1945 relocated to 972.85052

.850 52 1934–1979

Including 1934–1945 [*formerly* 972.85051]

.850 53 1979–

.86 *Costa Rica

.860 1 Early history to 1502

.860 2 Period of Spanish discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1560

Including 1535–1560 [*formerly* 972.8603]

.860 3 Colonial period, 1560–1821

1535–1560 relocated to 972.8602

.860 4 1821–1948

.860 42 1821–1838

Class here period as a part of United Provinces of Central America, 1823–1838

.860 44 1838–1948

Including 1900–1945 [*formerly* 972.86051], 1945–1948 [*formerly* 972.86052]

.860 5 1948–

[.860 51] 1900–1945

Relocated to 972.86044

[.860 52] 1945–1979

Use of this number for 1948–1979 discontinued; class in 972.8605

1945–1948 relocated to 972.86044

[.860 53] 1979–

Number discontinued; class in 972.8605

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.87 *Panama

.870 1 Early history to 1514

1514–1550 relocated to 972.8702

.870 11 Early history to 1501

.870 12 Period of Spanish discovery, exploration, conquest, 1501–1514

.870 2 Colonial period, 1514–1821

Including 1514–1550 [*formerly* 972.8701]; period as a part of Viceroyalty of New Granada, 1739–1810

.870 3 Period as a part of Gran Colombia, 1821–1903

[.870 4] 1903–1904

Relocated to 972.87051

.870 5 1903–

.870 51 1903–1977

Including 1903–1904 [*formerly* 972.8704], 1945–1977 [*formerly* 972.87052]

[.870 52] 1945–1977

Relocated to 972.87051

.870 53 1977–

.9 *West Indies (Antilles) and Bermuda

Class here Caribbean Area

Class a part of Caribbean Area not provided for here with the part, e.g., Venezuela 987

.901 Early history to 1492

.902 Period of European discovery and early colonial period, 1492–1608

.903 1608–1801

.904 1801–1902

.905 1902–

.905 1 1902–1945

.905 2 1945–

.91 *Cuba

.910 1 Early history to 1492

.910 2 Period of European discovery, exploration, conquest, 1492–1514

.910 3 1514–1763

.910 4 1763–1810

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.910 5 1810–1899

For Spanish-American War, see 973.89

.910 6 1899–

Class here period of Republic, 1902–

.910 61 Period of American military occupation, 1899–1902

.910 62 1902–1933

.910 63 1933–1958

.910 64 Period of Fidel Castro, 1959–

.92 *Jamaica and Cayman Islands

> 972.920 1–972.920 6 Historical periods of Jamaica

Class comprehensive works in 972.92

.920 1 Early history to 1494

.920 2 1494–1607

.920 3 1607–1832

.920 31 Last period of Spanish rule, 1607–1655

.920 32 1655–1692

Including Great Earthquake, 1692

.920 33 1692–1782

.920 34 1782–1832

Class here antislavery struggle and emancipation

.920 4 1832–1904

Class here 19th century

Class 1801–1832 in 972.92034

.920 5 1904–1962

Class here 20th century

Class 1901–1904 in 972.9204, 1962– in 972.9206

.920 6 Period of independence, 1962–

.921 †Cayman Islands

.93 *Dominican Republic

.930 1 Early history to 1492

.930 2 Period of European discovery and early colonial period, 1492–1608

.930 3 1608–1801

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

.930 4 1801–1902
.930 5 1902–
.930 52 1902–1930
.930 53 Period of Rafael Léonidas Trujillo Molina, 1930–1961
.930 54 1961–
.94 *Haiti
.940 1 Early history to 1492
.940 2 Period of Spanish rule, 1492–1625
.940 3 Period as a French colony, 1625–1804
.940 4 1804–1915
.940 5 Period of American occupation, 1915–1934
.940 6 1934–1957
.940 7 1957–
.940 72 Periods of François Duvalier and Jean-Claude Duvalier, 1957–1986
.940 73 1986–
.95 *Puerto Rico
.950 1 Early history to 1493
.950 2 Period of European discovery and early colonial period, 1493–1602
.950 3 1602–1804
.950 4 1804–1899
.950 5 1900–
.950 52 1900–1952
.950 53 Period of Commonwealth, 1952–
.96 †Bahama Islands
.97 †Leeward Islands

For Dominica, see 972.9841

.972 †Virgin Islands
.973 †Anguilla and Saint Christopher-Nevis
.974 †Antigua and Barbuda
.975 †Montserrat
.976 †Guadeloupe
.977 †Leeward Netherlands islands

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

.98 †Windward and other southern islands

.981 †Barbados

.982 †Martinique

.983 *Trinidad and Tobago

.983 01 Early history to 1498

.983 02 Spanish period, 1498–1797

.983 03 British period, 1797–1962

.983 04 Period of independence, 1962–

.984 †Windward Islands

.984 1 †Dominica

.984 3 †Saint Lucia

.984 4 †Saint Vincent and the Grenadines

For Carriacou, see 972.9845

.984 5 †Grenada and Carriacou

.986 †Netherlands islands

For Leeward Netherlands islands, see 972.977

.99 †Bermuda

973 United States

SUMMARY

973.01–.09	**Standard subdivisions**
.1	**Early history to 1607**
.2	**Colonial period, 1607–1775**
.3	**Periods of Revolution and Confederation, 1775–1789**
.4	**Constitutional period, 1789–1809**
.5	**1809–1845**
.6	**1845–1861**
.7	**Administration of Abraham Lincoln, 1861–1865 Civil War**
.8	**Reconstruction period, 1865–1901**
.9	**1901–**

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 930–990

(If optional notation 734–739 from Table 2 is chosen, use 973.01–973.09 for historical periods, and 973.001–973.009 for standard subdivisions)

.1 Early history to 1607

Add to base number 973.1 the numbers following 970.01 in 970.011–970.019, e.g., French explorations 973.18

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

.2 Colonial period, 1607–1775

> 973.21–973.22 Period of early settlements, 1607–1643

Class comprehensive works in 973.21; specific European settlements with the settlement in 974–975, e.g., settlement of Jamestown 975.5425101

.21 Period of Virginia settlements, 1607–1620

.22 Period of other early settlements, 1620–1643

Including Pequot War, 1636–1638

.23 1643–1664

.24 1664–1689

Including King Philip's War, 1675–1676

.25 1689–1732

Including King William's War (North American aspect of War of the League of Augsburg), 1688–1697; Queen Anne's War (North American aspects of War of the Spanish Succession), 1701–1714
(Option: Class North American aspects of King William's War, Queen Anne's War in 971.018)

Class comprehensive works on War of the League of Augsburg in 940.2525, on War of the Spanish Succession in 940.2526

.26 Period of extension of English rule, 1732–1763

Including King George's War (North American aspects of War of the Austrian Succession), 1740–1748; French and Indian War (North American aspects of Seven Year's War), 1756–1763
(Option: Class North American aspects of War of the Austrian Succession in 971.018, of Seven Years' War in 971.0188)

Class comprehensive works on War of the Austrian Succession in 940.2532, on Seven Years' War in 940.2534

.27 End of colonial period, 1763–1775

Including Pontiac's Conspiracy, 1763–1764
(Option: Class Pontiac's Conspiracy in 971.022)

Class events of 1763–1775 as causes of American Revolution in 973.311

.3 Periods of Revolution and Confederation, 1775–1789

.308 Kinds of persons during 1775–1789

Class relation of kinds of persons to the Revolution in 973.315

.309 2 Persons

Class personal narratives in 973.38

SUMMARY

973.31	**Social, political, economic history**
.32	**Diplomatic history**
.33	**Operations**
.34	**Military units**
.35	**Naval history**
.36	**Celebrations, commemorations, memorials**
.37	**Prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services**
.38	**Other topics**

.31 Social, political, economic history

For diplomatic history, see 973.32

.311 Causes

.311 1 Stamp Act, 1765–1766

.311 2 Commercial restrictions

Including Navigation Acts, Townshend Acts, burning of the Gaspée, 1772

For tax on tea, see 973.3115

.311 3 Quartering of troops and Boston Massacre, 1770

.311 4 Taxation and representation

.311 5 Tax on tea and Boston Tea Party, 1773

.311 6 Boston Port Bill, 1774

.312 Continental Congress

.313 Declaration of Independence, 1776

.314 Loyalists (Tories)

Class settlement of Loyalists in Canada in 971.024

.315 Relation of kinds of persons to the Revolution

Add to base number 973.315 notation 03–99 from Table 7, e.g., doctors 973.31561

.316 Results

For Treaty of Peace, see 973.317

.317 Treaty of Peace (Versailles Treaty), 1783

.318 Period of confederation, 1783–1789

> 973.32–973.38 Aspects of American Revolution

Class comprehensive works in 973.3

.32 Diplomatic history

Class here relations of United States with other nations

Add to base number 973.32 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–49 from Table 2, e.g., relations with France 973.324

For Treaty of Paris, see 973.317

.33 Operations

For naval operations, see 973.35

.331 Of 1775

.331 1 Battles of Lexington and Concord, 1775

.331 2 Battle of Bunker Hill, 1775

.332 Of 1776–January 3, 1777

.333 Of 1777

Class Battle of Princeton in 973.332

For winter at Valley Forge, see 973.3341

.334 Of 1778

.334 1 Winter at Valley Forge, 1777–1778

.335 Of 1779

.336 Of 1780

.337 Of 1781

.338 Of 1782

.339 Of 1783

.34 Military units

Class here organization, history, rosters, service records

Class operations of military units in 973.33, units engaged in a special service with the service, e.g., privateering 973.35

For naval units, see 973.35; rolls of honor, lists of dead, 973.36

.341 British troops

For mercenary troops, see 973.342; American native peoples as allies, 973.343

.342 Mercenary troops

.343 American native peoples as allies of British

.344–.345 American troops

Add to base number 973.34 the numbers following —7 in notation 74–75 from Table 2, e.g., Pennsylvania troops 973.3448

.346 Auxiliary troops on American side

Including Polish, Spanish, Swedish

For French troops, see 973.347

.347 French troops

.35 Naval history

Class here operations, ships, units

Including privateering

.36 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., Battle of Bunker Hill 973.3312

.37 Prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services

Including exchange of prisoners

.371 British prisons and prison ships

.372 American prisons

.375 Medical services

For hospitals, see 973.376

.376 Hospitals

.38 Other topics

Including personal narratives, military life and customs

Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on medical services 973.375

.381 Treason

For treason of Benedict Arnold, see 973.382; of Charles Lee, 973.383

.382 Treason of Benedict Arnold

.383 Treason of Charles Lee

.385 American secret service and spies

Class here comprehensive works on secret service and spies

For British secret service and spies, see 973.386

.386 British secret service and spies

.388 Propaganda

.4 Constitutional period, 1789–1809

.41 Administration of George Washington, 1789–1797

Including period of Indian wars, 1790–1791 [*formerly* 973.42]

For second term, see 973.43

[.42] Period of Indian wars, 1790–1791

Relocated to 973.41

.43 Second term of the administration of George Washington, 1793–1797

.44 Administration of John Adams, 1797–1801

Class here period of troubles with France, 1797–1800 [*formerly* 973.45]

[.45] Period of troubles with France, 1797–1800

Relocated to 973.44

.46 Administration of Thomas Jefferson, 1801–1809

For Tripolitan War, see 973.47; second term, 973.48

.47 Tripolitan War, 1801–1805

(Option: Class in 961.023)

.48 Second term of the administration of Thomas Jefferson, 1805–1809

.5 1809–1845

Class here 19th century

Class events of 1809–1845 as causes of Civil War in 973.711; a specific part of 19th century not provided for here with the part, e.g., Civil War 973.7

.51 Administration of James Madison, 1809–1817

For War of 1812, see 973.52; war with Algiers, 973.53

.52 War of 1812, 1812–1814

(Option: Class in 971.034)

.520 92 Persons

Class personal narratives in 973.528

.521 Social, political, economic history

Including causes, results

For diplomatic history, see 973.522

.522 Diplomatic history

Relations of United States with other nations

.523 Operations

For naval operations, see 973.525

.523 8 In the South

For Battle of New Orleans, see 973.5239

.523 9 Battle of New Orleans, 1814

.524 Military units

Class here organization, history, rosters, service records

Class operations of military units in 973.523, units engaged in a special service with the service, e.g., privateering 973.525

For naval units, see 973.525; rolls of honor, lists of dead, 973.526

.524 1 British troops

.524 2 American native peoples as allies of the British

.524 4–.524 7 American troops

Add to base number 973.524 the numbers following —7 in notation 74–77 from Table 2, e.g., Pennsylvania troops 973.52448

.525 Naval history

Class here operations, ships, units

Including privateering

.525 4 Battle of Lake Erie, 1813

.525 6 Battle of Lake Champlain, 1814

.526 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., Battle of Lake Erie 973.5254

.527 Prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services

Including exchange of prisoners

.527 5 Medical services

Including hospitals

.528 Other topics

Including personal narratives, military life and customs

Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on medical services 973.5275

.528 5 Secret service and spies

.53 War with Algiers, 1815

(Option: Class in 961.023)

.54 Administration of James Monroe, 1817–1825

Including First Seminole War, 1818; Missouri Compromise, 1820

.55 Administration of John Quincy Adams, 1825–1829

.56 Administration of Andrew Jackson, 1829–1837

Including Black Hawk War, 1832
(Option: Class Black Hawk War in 970.5)

.561 Nullification movement

.57 Administration of Martin Van Buren, 1837–1841

Including Second Seminole War, 1835–1842

.58 Administrations of William Henry Harrison and John Tyler, 1841–1845

.6 1845–1861

Class events of 1845–1861 as causes of Civil War in 973.711

.61 Administration of James Knox Polk, 1845–1849

Including Wilmot Proviso, 1847

For Mexican War, see 973.62

.62 Mexican War, 1845–1848

(Option: Class in 972.05)

.620 92 Persons

Class personal narratives in 973.628

.621 Social, political, economic history

Including causes, results

For diplomatic history, see 973.622

.622 Diplomatic history

Relations of United States with other nations

.623 Operations

For naval operations, see 973.625

.624 Military units

Class here organization, history, rosters, service records

Class operations of military units in 973.623, units engaged in a special service with the service, e.g., naval operations 973.625

For naval units, see 973.625; rolls of honor, lists of dead, 973.626

.625 Naval history

Operations, ships, units

.626 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., capture of Chapultepec 973.623

.627 Prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services

.627 5 Medical services

Including hospitals

.628 Other topics

Including personal narratives, military life and customs, unconventional warfare, propaganda

Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on prisoner-of-war camps 973.627

.63 Administration of Zachary Taylor, 1849–1850

.64 Administration of Millard Fillmore, 1850–1853

Including Compromise of 1850

.66 Administration of Franklin Pierce, 1853–1857

.68 Administration of James Buchanan, 1857–1861

For Dred Scott decision, see 973.7115; John Brown's Raid, 973.7116

.7 Administration of Abraham Lincoln, 1861–1865 Civil War

[.708] Civil War with respect to kinds of persons

Do not use; class 973.715

.709 2 Persons

Class personal narratives in 973.781–973.782

SUMMARY

973.71	**Social, political, economic history**
.72	**Diplomatic history**
.73	**Operations**
.74	**Military units**
.75	**Naval history**
.76	**Celebrations, commemorations, memorials**
.77	**Prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services**
.78	**Other topics**

.71 Social, political, economic history

For diplomatic history, see 973.72

.711 Causes

For the South and secession, see 973.713

.711 2 Extension of slavery

.711 3 Wilmot Proviso, 1847, and compromises

Examples: Missouri Compromise, 1820; Compromise of 1850

.711 4 Abolition movement

.711 5 Fugitive slaves

Including underground railroad, Dred Scott decision

.711 6 John Brown's Raid, 1859

.712 Efforts to preserve or restore peace

For compromises, see 973.7113

.713 The South and secession

Confederate States of America in the war

.714 Results

Including Emancipation Proclamation, 1863; establishment of Freedmen's Bureau, 1865

Class a result as a specific event with the event, e.g., Reconstruction 973.8

.715 Relation of kinds of persons to the war

.715 03–.715 87 Occupational and miscellaneous groups

Add to base number 973.715 notation 03–87 from Table 7, e.g., doctors 973.71561; however, class refugees in 973.7159, southern Union sympathizers in 973.717, northern Confederate sympathizers in 973.718

.715 9 Refugees

.717 Southern Union sympathizers

.718 Northern Confederate sympathizers

.72 Diplomatic history

.721 Relations of Confederacy with other nations

.722 Relations of Union with other nations

.73 Operations

For naval operations, see 973.75

.730 1 Strategy

Do not use for philosophy and theory; class in 973.73

.730 12 Union side

.730 13 Confederate side

.731 Opening phase, 1861–April, 1862

.732 May-August, 1862

.733 September, 1862–May, 1863

.733 6 Lee's invasion of Maryland, 1862

.734 June-August, 1863

.734 4 Siege and fall of Vicksburg, 1863

.734 9 Battle of Gettysburg, 1863

.735 September-December, 1863

.735 9 Chattanooga campaign, 1863

.736 January-May, 1864

.737 June-December, 1864

.737 8 Sherman's March to the Sea and Savannah campaign, 1864

.738 1865

.74 Military units

Class here organization, history, rosters, service records

Class operations of military units in 973.73, units engaged in a special service with the service, e.g., privateering 973.75

For naval units, see 973.75; rolls of honor, lists of dead, 973.76

.741 Union troops

For state units, see 973.744–973.749

.741 5 Black troops

.742 Confederate troops

For state units, see 973.744–973.749

.744–.749 State units

Add to base number 973.74 the numbers following —7 in notation 74–79 from Table 2, e.g., Ohio troops 973.7471

.75 Naval history

Including operations, privateering, blockade running

.752 Battle of Monitor and Merrimac, 1862

.754 Battle of Kearsarge and Alabama, 1864

.757 Confederate Navy

Ships and units

.758 Union navy

Ships and units

.76 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., Battle of Antietam 973.7336

.77 Prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services

Including exchange of prisoners

.771 Confederate prisoner-of-war camps

.772 Union prisoner-of-war camps

.775 Medical services

For hospitals, see 973.776

.776 Hospitals

.777 Welfare work

Including United States Sanitary Commission

.778 Religious life and chaplain services

.78 Other topics

> 973.781–973.782 Personal narratives

Class comprehensive works in 973.78; personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on prisoner-of-war camps 973.77

.781 Personal narratives of individuals from Union side

.782 Personal narratives of individuals from Confederate side

.783 Military life and customs of Union side

Class here comprehensive works on military life and customs

For military life and customs of Confederate side, see 973.784

.784 Military life and customs of Confederate side

.785 Union secret service and spies

Class here comprehensive works on secret service and spies

For Confederate secret service and spies, see 973.786

.786 Confederate secret service and spies

.788 Propaganda

.8 Reconstruction period, 1865–1901

.81 Administration of Andrew Johnson, 1865–1869

.82 Administration of Ulysses Simpson Grant, 1869–1877

.83 Administration of Rutherford Birchard Hayes, 1877–1881

.84 Administrations of James Abram Garfield and Chester Alan Arthur, 1881–1885

.85 First administration of Grover Cleveland, 1885–1889

.86 Administration of Benjamin Harrison, 1889–1893

.87 Second administration of Grover Cleveland, 1893–1897

.88 Administration of William McKinley, 1897–1901

For Spanish-American War, see 973.89

.89 Spanish-American War, 1898

(Option: Class in 946.074)

.890 92 Persons

Class personal narratives in 973.898

.891 Social, political, economic history

Including causes, results

For diplomatic history, see 973.892

.892 Diplomatic history

Relations of United States with other nations

.893 Operations

For naval operations, see 973.895

.893 3 Cuban campaign, 1898

.893 5 Puerto Rican campaign, 1898

.893 7 Philippine campaign, 1898

.894 Military units

Class here organization, history, rosters, service records

Class operations of military units in 973.893, units engaged in a special service with the service, e.g., naval operations 973.895

For naval units, see 973.895; rolls of honor, lists of dead, 973.896

.895 Naval history

Class here operations, ships, units

.896 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., Battle of Manila Bay 973.895

.897 Prisoner-of-war camps; health and social services

.897 5 Medical services

Including hospitals

.898 Other topics

Including personal narratives, military life and customs, unconventional warfare, propaganda

Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on prisoner-of-war camps 973.897

.9 1901–

.91 1901–1953

.911 Administration of Theodore Roosevelt, 1901–1909

.912 Administration of William Howard Taft, 1909–1913

.913 Administration of Woodrow Wilson, 1913–1921

.914 Administration of Warren Gamaliel Harding, 1921–1923

.915 Administration of Calvin Coolidge, 1923–1929

.916 Administration of Herbert Clark Hoover, 1929–1933

.917 Administration of Franklin Delano Roosevelt, 1933–1945

.918 Administration of Harry S Truman, 1945–1953

.92 1953–

.921 Administration of Dwight David Eisenhower, 1953–1961

.922 Administration of John Fitzgerald Kennedy, 1961–1963

.923 Administration of Lyndon Baines Johnson, 1963–1969

Class here period of Vietnamese War, 1961–1975

Class 1961–1963 period of Vietnamese War in 973.922, 1969–1974 period in 973.924, 1974–1975 period in 973.925

.924 Administration of Richard Milhous Nixon, 1969–1974

.925 Administration of Gerald Rudolph Ford, 1974–1977

.926 Administration of Jimmy (James Earl) Carter, 1977–1981

.927 Administration of Ronald Reagan, 1981–

> 974–979 Specific states of United States

Class comprehensive works in 973

For Hawaii, see 996.9

> 974–975 Northeastern and southeastern United States

Add to notation for each term identified by † as follows:

01 Early history to 1620
02 Colonial period, 1620–1776
03 1776–1865
04 1865–
041 1865–1918
042 1918–1945
043 1945–

Class comprehensive works in 974

974 *†Northeastern United States (New England and Middle Atlantic states)

.1 *†Maine

.2 *†New Hampshire

.3 *†Vermont

.4 *†Massachusetts

.5 *†Rhode Island

.6 *†Connecticut

.7 *†New York

.8 *†Pennsylvania

.9 *†New Jersey

975 *†Southeastern United States (South Atlantic states)

.1 *†Delaware

.2 *†Maryland

.3 *District of Columbia (Washington)

.301 Early history to 1799

.302 1800–1865

.303 1865–1933

.304 1933–

.4 *†West Virginia

.5 *†Virginia

.6 *†North Carolina

.7 *†South Carolina

.8 *†Georgia

.9 *Florida

.901 Early history to 1763

.902 English period, 1763–1783

.903 Spanish period, 1783–1821

.904 Territorial period, 1821–1845

.905 Early statehood period, 1845–1865

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add historical periods as instructed under 974–975

.906 1865–
.906 1 1865–1918
.906 2 1918–1945
.906 3 1945–

976 *South central United States Gulf Coast states

.01 Early history to 1700
.02 1700–1799
.03 1800–1865
.04 1865–
.041 1865–1918
.042 1918–1945
.043 1945–

.1 *Alabama

.101 Early history to 1701
.102 French period, 1701–1763
.103 British period, 1763–1783
.104 Spanish and territorial periods, 1783–1817
.105 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1817–1865
.106 1865–
.106 1 1865–1918
.106 2 1918–1945
.106 3 1945–

.2 *Mississippi

Add to base number 976.2 the numbers following 976.1 in 976.101–976.106, e.g., British period 976.203

.3 *Louisiana

.301 Early history to 1718
.302 French period, 1718–1763
.303 Spanish period, 1763–1803
.304 French and territorial periods, 1803–1812
.305 Early statehood period, 1812–1865
.306 1865–
.306 1 1865–1918

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.306 2 1918–1945
.306 3 1945–

.4 *Texas

.401 Early history to 1680
.402 Spanish and French periods, 1680–1821
.403 Mexican period, 1821–1836
.404 Period of the Republic, 1836–1846
.405 Early statehood period, 1846–1865
.406 1865–
.406 1 1865–1918
.406 2 1918–1945
.406 3 1945–

.6 *Oklahoma

.601 Early history to 1682
.602 French and Spanish periods, 1682–1803
.603 Period of Indian Territory, 1803–1866
.604 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1866–1907
.605 1907–
.605 2 1907–1945
.605 3 1945–

.7 *Arkansas

.701 Early history to 1686
.702 French and Spanish periods, 1686–1803
.703 Preterritorial and territorial periods, 1803–1836
.704 Early statehood period, 1836–1865
.705 1865–
.705 1 1865–1918
.705 2 1918–1945
.705 3 1945–

.8 *Tennessee

.801 Early history to 1682
.802 French, Spanish, English periods, 1682–1769

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.803 Early settlement and territorial periods, 1769–1796

Including District of Washington, State of Franklin

.804 Early statehood period, 1796–1865

.805 1865–

.805 1 1865–1918

.805 2 1918–1945

.805 3 1945–

.9 *Kentucky

.901 Early history to 1736

.902 1736–1792

Including periods of French, British, Virginian control; Transylvania Colony

.903 Early statehood period, 1792–1865

.904 1865–

.904 1 1865–1918

.904 2 1918–1945

.904 3 1945–

977 *North central United States

.01 Early history to 1787

.02 1787–1865

.03 1865–

.031 1865–1918

.032 1918–1945

.033 1945–

.1 *Ohio

.101 Early history to 1763

.102 British and early United States periods, 1763–1787

.103 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1787–1865

.104 1865–

.104 1 1865–1918

.104 2 1918–1945

.104 3 1945–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.2 *Indiana

Add to base number 977.2 the numbers following 977.1 in 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period 977.203

.3 *Illinois

Add to base number 977.3 the numbers following 977.1 in 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period 977.303

.4 *Michigan

Add to base number 977.4 the numbers following 977.1 in 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period 977.403

.5 *Wisconsin

Add to base number 977.5 the numbers following 977.1 in 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period 977.503

.6 *Minnesota

.601 Early history to 1660

.602 French period, 1660–1783

.603 Preterritorial period, 1783–1849

.604 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1849–1900

.605 1900–

.605 1 1900–1918

.605 2 1918–1945

.605 3 1945–

.7 *Iowa

.701 Early history to 1838

.702 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1838–1899

.703 1900–

.703 1 1900–1918

.703 2 1918–1945

.703 3 1945–

.8 *Missouri

.801 Early history to 1750

.802 French and Spanish periods, 1750–1803

.803 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1803–1899

.804 1900–

.804 1 1900–1918

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.804 2 1918–1945

.804 3 1945–

978 *Western United States

.01 Early history to 1799

.02 1800–1899

.03 1900–

.031 1900–1918

.032 1918–1945

.033 1945–

.1 *Kansas

.101 Early history to 1803

.102 Territorial period, 1803–1861

.103 Statehood period, 1861–

.103 1 1861–1918

.103 2 1918–1945

.103 3 1945–

.2 *Nebraska

.201 Early history to 1854

.202 Territorial period, 1854–1867

.203 Statehood period, 1867–

.203 1 1867–1918

.203 2 1918–1945

.203 3 1945–

.3 *South Dakota

.301 Early history to 1861

.302 Territorial period, 1861–1889

.303 Statehood period, 1889–

.303 1 1889–1918

.303 2 1918–1945

.303 3 1945–

.4 *North Dakota

Add to base number 978.4 the numbers following 978.3 in 978.301–978.303, e.g., territorial period 978.402

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.6 ***Montana**

.601 Early history to 1864

.602 Territorial period, 1864–1889

.603 Statehood period, 1889–

.603 1 1889–1918

.603 2 1918–1945

.603 3 1945–

.7 ***Wyoming**

.701 Early history to 1868

.702 Territorial period, 1868–1890

.703 Statehood period, 1890–

.703 1 1890–1918

.703 2 1918–1945

.703 3 1945–

.8 ***Colorado**

.801 Early history to 1803

.802 Acquisition and territorial periods, 1803–1876

.803 Statehood period, 1876–

.803 1 1876–1918

.803 2 1918–1945

.803 3 1945–

.9 ***New Mexico**

.901 Early history to 1598

.902 Spanish period, 1598–1821

.903 Mexican period, 1821–1848

.904 Territorial period, 1848–1912

.905 Statehood period, 1912–

.905 2 1912–1945

.905 3 1945–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

979 *Great Basin and Pacific Slope region of United States Pacific Coast states

Add to base number 979 the numbers following 978 in 978.01–978.03, e.g., 1900– 979.03

.1 *Arizona

Add to base number 979.1 the numbers following 978.9 in 978.901–978.905, e.g., territorial period 979.104

.2 *Utah

.201 Early history to 1848

.202 Territorial period, 1848–1896

.203 Statehood period, 1896–

.203 1 1896–1918

.203 2 1918–1945

.203 3 1945–

.3 *Nevada

.301 Early history to 1861

.302 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1861–1899

.303 1900–

.303 1 1900–1918

.303 2 1918–1945

.303 3 1945–

.4 *California

.401 Early history to 1769

.402 Spanish period, 1769–1822

.403 Mexican period, 1822–1848

.404 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1848–1899

.405 1900–

.405 1 1900–1918

.405 2 1918–1945

.405 3 1945–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.5 ***Oregon**

.501 Early history to 1778

.502 Spanish and British periods, 1778–1819

.503 Preterritorial and territorial periods, 1819–1859

.504 Statehood period, 1859–

.504 1 1859–1918

.504 2 1918–1945

.504 3 1945–

.6 ***Idaho**

.601 Early history to 1863

.602 Territorial period, 1863–1890

.603 Statehood period, 1890–

.603 1 1890–1918

.603 2 1918–1945

.603 3 1945–

.7 ***Washington**

.701 Early history to 1818

.702 British and preterritorial periods, 1818–1853

.703 Territorial period, 1853–1889

.704 Statehood period, 1889–

.704 1 1889–1918

.704 2 1918–1945

.704 3 1945–

.8 ***Alaska**

.801 Early history to 1799

.802 Russian period, 1799–1867

.803 Preterritorial period, 1867–1912

.804 Territorial period, 1912–1959

.805 Statehood period, 1959–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

980 General history of South America

Class here Latin America

For Middle America, see 972

SUMMARY

980.001–.009 Standard subdivisions
.01–.03 Historical periods
981 Brazil
982 Argentina
983 Chile
984 Bolivia
985 Peru
986 Colombia and Ecuador
987 Venezuela
988 Guiana
989 Paraguay and Uruguay

.001–.003 Standard subdivisions

.004 Racial, ethnic, national groups

Add to base number 980.004 notation 03–99 from Table 5, e.g., general history and civilization of South American native peoples in South America 980.00498
(Option: Class South American native peoples in South America in 980.1, specific native peoples in 980.3)

Specific native peoples in a specific place relocated to the place in 981–989 with use of subdivision 00498 from table under 930–990, e.g., the Arua in Pará state 981.15004984

Class prehispanic history and civilization of South American native peoples in a specific place with the place, without using notation 00498, e.g., Incas before 1519 985.01

.005–.009 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 930–990

> 980.01–980.03 Historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 980

.01 Early history to 1806

.012 Prehispanic period to 1498

.013 Period of European discovery, exploration, colonization, 1498–1806

.02 Period of struggles for independence, 1806–1830

.03 1830–1999

.031 1830–1899

Class here 19th century

Class 1801–1806 in 980.013, 1806–1830 in 980.02

.032 1900–1918

.033 1918–1949

Class here 20th century

Class a specific part of 20th century not provided for here with the part, e.g., 1950–1959 980.035

.035 1950–1959

.036 1960–1969

.037 1970–1979

.038 1980–1989

.039 1990–1999

(.1) South American native peoples (Indians)

(Optional number; prefer 980.00498)

Class special topics in 980.3–980.5

(.3) Specific native peoples

(Optional number; prefer 981–989 with use of subdivision 00498 from table under 930–990, e.g., the Arua in Pará state 981.15004984)

Arrange alphabetically by name of people

Class government relations with specific native peoples in 980.5

(.4) Native peoples in specific places in South America

(Optional number; prefer 981–989 with use of subdivision 00498 from table under 930–990, e.g., native peoples in Brazil 981.00498)

Add to base number 980.4 the numbers following —8 in notation 81–89 from Table 2, e.g., native peoples in Brazil 980.41

Class government relations in specific places in 980.5, specific native peoples in specific places in 980.3

(.5) Government relations with native South Americans

(Optional number; prefer 323.1198 for comprehensive works; a specific subject with the subject, e.g., conquest of Incas by Pizarro 985.02, relation to state in Chile 323.1198083)

> **981–989 Countries and localities**

Class a specific native people in a specific place [*formerly* 980.00498] with the place in 981–989 with use of subdivision 00498 from table under 930–990, e.g., the Arua in Pará state 981.15004984

(Option: Class South American native peoples in specific places in South America in 980.4)

Class comprehensive works in 980

981 *Brazil

.01 Early history to 1533

.012 Prehispanic period to 1500

.013 Period of European explorations, 1500–1533

.02 Period of hereditary captaincies, 1533–1549

.03 Colonial period, 1549–1822

.04 Period of Empire, 1822–1889

For Paraguayan War, see 989.205

.05 Period of First Republic, 1889–1930

.06 Period of Second Republic, 1930–

Class here 20th century

Class 1901–1930 in 981.05

.061 Period of Getúlio Vargas, 1930–1954

Including administrations of José Finol Linhares and Eurico Gaspar Dutra, 1945–1951

.062 1954–1967

Contains administrations of João Café Filho, Carlos Coimbra da Luz, Nereu Ramos, Juscelino Kubitschek, Jânio Quadros, João Belchior Marques Goulart, Humberto de Alencar Castelo Branco

.063 1967–

Contains administrations of Artur da Costa e Silva, Emílio Garrastazu Médici, Ernesto Geisel, João Baptista de Oliveira Figueiredo

982 *Argentina

.01 Prehispanic period to 1516

.02 Period of European discovery, conquest, colonization, 1516–1810

.022 Period of European discovery and conquest, 1516–1580

.023 Colonial period, 1580–1810

For period of viceroyalty of La Plata, 1776–1810, see 982.024

.024 Period of viceroyalty of La Plata, 1776–1810

.03 Period of struggle for independence, 1810–1829

.04 1829–1861

Class here 19th century

Class 1801–1810 in 982.024, 1810–1829 in 982.03, 1861–1900 in 982.05

.05 1861–1910

For Paraguayan War, see 989.205

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.06 1910–

.061 1910–1946

.062 First administration of Juan Domingo Perón, 1946–1955

.063 1955–1973

.064 1973–

Including second administration of Juan Domingo Perón, 1973–1974; administration of Isabel Perón, 1974–1976

983 *Chile

.01 Prehispanic period to 1535

.02 Period of European discovery and conquest, 1535–1560

.03 Colonial period, 1560–1810

.04 Period of early republics, 1810–1861

Class here 19th century

Class a specific part of 19th century not provided for here with the part, e.g., 1879–1883 in 983.061

For period of autocratic republic, 1830–1861, see 983.05

.05 Period of autocratic republic, 1830–1861

.06 Period of later republics, 1861–

.061 Period of liberal republic, 1861–1891

Including War of the Pacific, 1879–1883
(Option: Class War of the Pacific in 984.045)

.062 Revolution of 1891

.063 Period of parliamentary republic, 1891–1925

.064 1925–1973

Class here 20th century

Class 1901–1925 in 983.063, 1973– in 983.065

.064 1 1925–1932

.064 2 1932–1946

.064 3 1946–1958

.064 4 Administration of Jorge Alessandrí Rodriguez, 1958–1964

.064 5 Administration of Eduardo Frei Montalva, 1964–1970

.064 6 Administration of Salvador Allende Gossens, 1970–1973

[.064 7] Period of military rule, 1973–

Relocated to 983.065

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.065 Period of military rule, 1973– [*formerly* 983.0647]

984 *Bolivia

.01 Prehispanic period to 1532

Including period of Inca rule

.02 Period of European discovery and conquest, 1532–1559

.03 Colonial period, 1559–1809

.04 1809–1899

.041 Period of struggle for independence, 1809–1825

.042 Period of formation of the Republic, 1825–1831

.044 Administration of Andrés Santa Cruz, 1831–1839

Including Peru-Bolivian Confederation, 1836–1839

.045 1839–1883

(Option: Class here War of the Pacific; prefer 983.061)

.046 Period of conservative republic, 1883–1899

.05 1899–

.051 1899–1952

(Option: Class here Chaco War; prefer 989.2071)

.052 1952–

Including revolution of 1952

985 *Peru

.01 Prehispanic period to 1519

Including Incan rule

.02 Period of European discovery and conquest, 1519–1555

(Option: Class conquest in 980.5)

.03 Colonial period, 1555–1808

.04 Period of struggle for independence, 1808–1824

.05 1824–1867

Class here 19th century

Including Peru-Bolivian Confederation, 1836–1839

Class a specific part of 19th century not provided for here with the part, e.g., 1867–1883 985.061

.06 1867–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.061 1867–1883

For War of the Pacific, see 983.061

.062 Period of reconstruction, 1883–1895

.063 1895–

.063 1 1895–1933

.063 2 1933–1968

.063 3 1968–

986 *Colombia and Ecuador

.1 *Colombia

.101 Early history to 1550

.102 Colonial period, 1550–1810

Including periods as Viceroyalty of New Granada, 1718–1724 and 1740–1810

Class here comprehensive works on Viceroyalty of New Granada

For Panama as part of Viceroyalty of New Granada, see 972.8702; Ecuador as part of Viceroyalty of New Granada, 986.602; Venezuela as part of Viceroyalty of New Granada, 987.03

.103 Period of struggle for independence, 1810–1819

.104 Period of Gran Colombia, 1819–1830

Class here comprehensive works on Gran Colombia

For Panama as a part of Gran Colombia, see 972.8703; Ecuador as part of Gran Colombia, 986.604; Venezuela as part of Gran Colombia, 987.05

.105 1830–1863

.105 2 Period of Republic of New Granada, 1830–1858

.105 3 Period of Granadine Confederation, 1858–1863

.106 Period of later republics, 1863–

.106 1 Period of United States of Colombia, 1863–1886

.106 2 Period of Republic of Colombia, 1886–

For 1930– , see 986.1063

.106 3 1930–

Class here 20th century

Class 1901–1930 in 986.1062

.106 31 Period of liberal domination, 1930–1946

.106 32 1946–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.6 *Ecuador

.601 Early history to 1562

.602 Colonial period, 1562–1810

Including period as part of Viceroyalty of New Granada, 1740–1810

.603 Period of struggle for independence, 1810–1822

.604 Period as part of Gran Colombia, 1822–1830

Class here Quito Presidency

.605 1830–1859

Including period of formation of Republic

.606 1860–1895

.607 1896–

.607 1 1896–1925

.607 2 1925–1948

.607 3 1948–1960

.607 4 1960–

987 *Venezuela

.01 Prehispanic period to 1498

.02 Period of discovery and conquest, 1498–1528

.03 Colonial period, 1528–1810

Including 1806–1810 [*formerly* 987.04], period as part of Viceroyalty, 1740–1810

.04 Period of struggle for independence, 1810–1821

Including 1819–1821 [*formerly* 987.05]

1806–1810 relocated to 987.03

.05 Period as part of Gran Colombia, 1821–1830

1819–1821 relocated to 987.04

.06 Period of Republic, 1830–

.061 1830–1864

.062 1864–1899

Class here period of Antonio Guzmán Blanco, 1870–1888

.063 1899–

.063 1 1899–1935

.063 12 Period of Cipriano Castro, 1899–1908

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.063 13 Period of Juan Vicente Gómez, 1908–1935

.063 2 1935–1959

.063 3 1959–

988 *Guiana

.01 Early history to 1815

.02 1815–1945

.03 1945–

Class here 20th century

Class 1901–1945 in 988.02

.1 *Guyana

.2 *French Guiana (Guyane)

.3 *Surinam

989 Paraguay and Uruguay

.2 *Paraguay

.201 Prehispanic period to 1524

.202 Period of European discovery, exploration, conquest, 1524–1537

.203 Colonial period, 1537–1811

.204 Period of struggle for independence, 1811–1814

.205 Period of dictatorship, 1814–1870

Including Paraguayan War (War of the Triple Alliance), 1865–1870

.206 1870–1902

.207 1902–

.207 1 1902–1940

Including Chaco War, 1933–1935
(Option: Class Chaco War in 984.051)

.207 2 1940–1958

.207 3 1958–

.5 *Uruguay

.501 Prehispanic period to 1516

.502 Period of European discovery and conquest, 1516–1724

.503 Colonial period, 1724–1811

.504 Period of struggle for independence, 1811–1830

Including 1825–1830 [*formerly* 989.505]

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.505 Period of Republic, 1830–

1825–1830 relocated to 989.504

For 1886– , see 989.506; Paraguayan War, 989.205

[.505 5] 1830–1886

Number discontinued; class in 989.505

.506 1886–

.506 1 1886–1917

.506 2 1917–1933

.506 3 1933–1951

.506 4 1951–1966

.506 5 1966–

990 General history of other parts of world, of extraterrestrial worlds Pacific Ocean islands

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of Pacific Ocean islands

As modified under 930–990

[991] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 17

[992] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 17

993 *New Zealand

> 993.01–993.03 Historical periods [*formerly* 993.101–993.103]

Class comprehensive works in 993

.01 Early history to 1840

Including history of Maoris before European settlement, of European settlers

.02 Colonial period, 1840–1908

.021 Period as a Crown colony, 1840–1853

Including Maori Wars of 1843–1847

.022 Period of provincial governments, 1853–1876

Class here comprehensive works on Maori Wars

For Maori Wars of 1843–1847, see 993.021

.023 Period of centralized government, 1876–1908

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.03 Dominion period, 1908–

.031 1908–1918

.032 1918–1945

.035 1945–1969

.037 1970–

.1 Specific islands

Use of this number for comprehensive works on New Zealand discontinued; class in 993

[.101–.103] Historical periods

Relocated to 993.01–993.03

[.2–.7] Melanesia

Relocated to 995

994 *Australia

.01 Early history to 1788

.02 Period of settlement and growth, 1788–1851

.03 Period of development of self government, 1851–1901

.031 Period of gold discovery and consolidation, 1851–1891

.032 1891–1901

.04 Period of Commonwealth, 1901–

For 1945–1966, see 994.05; 1966– , 994.06

.041 1901–1922

.042 1922–1945

Including first prime ministership of Robert Gordon Menzies, 1939–1941

.05 1945–1966

Class here second prime ministership of Robert Gordon Menzies, 1949–1966

.06 1966–

.061 1966–1972

.062 1972–1975

.063 1976–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

995 †Melanesia [*formerly also* 993.2–993.7] New Guinea

Class here Oceania

Class Polynesia in 996

> **995.1–995.7 New Guinea**

Class comprehensive works in 995

.1 *Irian Jaya

Add to base number 995.1 the numbers following 959.8 in 959.801–959.8103, e.g., period of administration of Sukarno 995.1035

.3 *Papua New Guinea New Guinea region

For Papuan region, see 995.4; Highlands region, 995.6; Momase region, 995.7; Bismarck Archipelago, 995.8; North Solomons Province, 995.92

.301 Early history to 1884

.302 1884–1942

.302 1 1884–1921

Class here German New Guinea

.302 2 1921–1942

Class here period as Territory of New Guinea, 1921–1949

Class 1942–1945 in 995.303, 1945–1949 in 995.304

.303 Period of World War II, 1942–1945

.304 1945–1975

Class here Territory of Papua and New Guinea, 1949–1975

.305 Period of independence, 1975–

.4 *Papuan region

.401 Early history to 1884

.402 1884–1942

.402 1 Period as British New Guinea, 1884–1906

.402 2 1906–1942

Class here period as Territory of Papua, 1906–1949

Class 1942–1945 in 995.403, 1945–1949 in 995.404

.403 Period of World War II, 1942–1945

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

.404 1945–1975

Class here Papuan region as a part of Territory of Papua and New Guinea, 1949–1975

.405 Period of independence, 1975–

.6 *Highlands region

Add to base number 995.6 the numbers following 995.3 in 995.301–995.305, e.g., period of World War II 995.603

.7 *Momase (Northern coastal) region

Add to base number 995.7 the numbers following 995.3 in 995.301–995.305, e.g., period of World War II 995.703

.8 *Bismarck Archipelago

Add to base number 995.8 the numbers following 995.3 in 995.301–995.305, e.g., period of World War II 995.803

.9 †Other parts of Melanesia

.92 *North Solomons Province

Add to base number 995.92 the numbers following 995.3 in 995.301–995.305, e.g., period of World War II 995.9203

.93 †Solomon Islands

.95 †Vanuatu

.97 †New Caledonia

996 Other parts of Pacific Polynesia

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Polynesia

As modified under 930–990

.1 †Southwest central Pacific, and isolated islands of southeast Pacific

.11 †Fiji

.12 †Tonga (Friendly Islands)

.13 †American Samoa

.14 †Western Samoa

.15 †Tokelau (Union Islands)

.18 †Isolated islands of southeast Pacific

.2 †South central Pacific

.3 †Southeast central Pacific

For isolated islands of southeast Pacific, see 996.18

.4 †Line Islands

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

.5 †West central Pacific (Micronesia) Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands

.6 †Federated States of Micronesia and Republic of Belau (Palau)

.7 †Mariana Islands

.8 †Islands of eastern Micronesia

.81 †Kiribati

.82 †Tuvalu

.83 †Marshall Islands

.85 †Nauru (Pleasant Island)

.9 North central Pacific Hawaii

.900 01–.900 09 Standard subdivisions of north central Pacific

As modified under 930–990

.900 1–.900 9 Standard subdivisions of Hawaii

As modified under 930–990

> 996.902–996.904 Historical periods of Hawaii

Class comprehensive works in 996.9

.902 Early history to 1898

.902 7 Period of kingdom, 1810–1893

.902 8 Period of republic, 1893–1898

.903 Territorial period, 1898–1959

.904 Statehood period, 1959–

.99 †Outlying islands

997 †Atlantic Ocean islands

Class each specific island or group of islands not provided for here with the island or group of islands, e.g., Azores 946.99

.1 †Falklands and Bouvet

.3 †Saint Helena and dependencies

998 †Arctic islands and Antartica

.2 †Greenland

999 Extraterrestrial worlds

Class here speculation on and the search for intelligent life on other worlds

Do not add from table under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

The 20th edition of the Dewey Decimal Classification was designed by Lisa Hanifan of Albany, New York. Edition 20 is the first edition to be generated from an online database. Database design, technical support, and programming for this edition were provided by John J. Finni and Cora M. Arsenault from Inforonics, Inc., of Littleton, Massachusetts. Composition was done in Times Roman and Helvetica on a Linotronic L100 under the supervision of Inforonics, Inc. The book was printed and bound by Hamilton Printing Company of Rensselaer, New York.

VOLUME 3
ISBN 0-910608-40-7